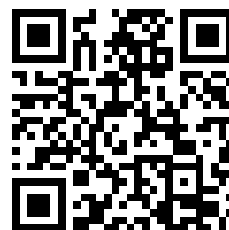


---

This is a reproduction of a library book that was digitized by Google as part of an ongoing effort to preserve the information in books and make it universally accessible.

Google<sup>TM</sup> books

<https://books.google.com>

















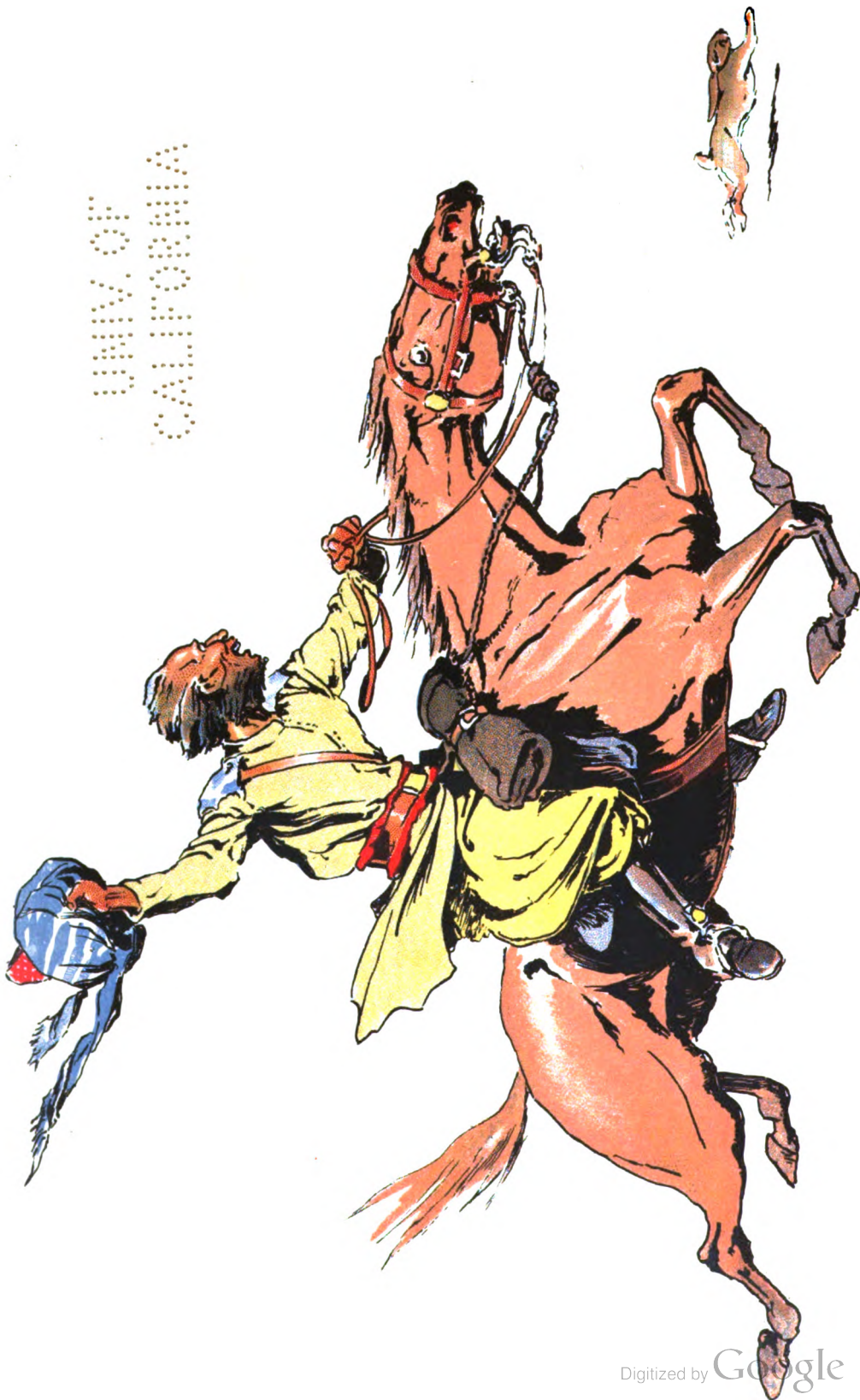






2000





A SPORTING SOWAR.

# THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

WITH THE SANCTION OF THE ARMY COUNCIL, AND  
UNDER THE DIRECTION OF MAJOR-GENERAL R. S. S. BADEN-POWELL, C.B.,  
INSPECTOR OF CAVALRY

UNION OF  
CAVALRY  
*Vol. I.*

*JANUARY to OCTOBER*



LONDON  
ROYAL UNITED SERVICE INSTITUTION, WHITEHALL, S.W.  
PUBLISHED BY  
C. GILBERT-WOOD,  
DACRE HOUSE, ARUNDEL STREET, STRAND, W.C.  
1906



UE 1  
C 3  
v. 1



## EDITORS AND SUB-EDITORS

### Managing Editor :

Lieut.-Colonel A. LEETHAM (By permission of the Council of the  
Royal United Service Institution).

### Editor :

Colonel Hon. O. LUMLEY.

### Spotting Editor :

Lieut.-Colonel J. W. YARDLEY.

### Sub-Editors :

*Royal Horse and Royal Field Artillery.*—Lieut.-Colonel F. D. V. WING, C.B., R.F.A.

*Imperial Yeomanry.*—Colonel R. B. COLVIN, C.B., Essex Imperial Yeomanry.

*Australia.*—Major E. C. HAAG, 18th Hussars.

*Canada.*—Lieut.-Colonel VICTOR WILLIAMS, Royal Canadian Dragoons.

*Egypt.*—Captain G. GILLSON, Royal Artillery.

*India.*—Lieutenant P. HOWELL, Queen's Own Corps of Guides.

*New Zealand.*—Colonel BAUCHOP, C.M.G.

*South Africa.*—Lieut.-Colonel H. G. H. KENNARD, 5th Dragoon Guards.

### Sole Publisher and Advertisement Contractor :

Mr. C. GILBERT-WOOD, F.R.G.S., Dacre House and Granville House,  
Arundel Street, Strand, London, W.C.

### Printers :

SPOTTISWOODE & CO. LTD., NEW-STREET SQUARE, LONDON, E.C.

# INDEX

- Ansell, Major G. K.* : Problem No. 1 (*with Map*), 112
- Balaclava (October 25, 1854), 388
- Balance of the Horse, The. By *The Inspector of Cavalry (Illustrated)*, 257
- Barrom, Major G. des* : The Spirit of Cavalry, 12
- Barry, Major S. L., D.S.O.* : Signalling in the Cavalry during the late South African War (*with Maps*), 167
- Big Game in South Africa. By *Major Stevenson Hamilton*, 489
- Bone Disease in Horses, 475
- British Cavalry, 1853-1903. By *Field-Marshal Sir Evelyn Wood, V.C., G.C.B., G.C.M.G., &c., &c. (Illustrated)*, 146
- Broadwood, Brigadier-General, C.B.* : The Place of Fire Tactics in the Training of the British Cavalry, 90
- Brown, Captain Walter James* : Petawawa Artillery Practice Camp, 440
- Cavalier* : The Height of Polo Ponies, 109
- Cavalry and Horse Artillery. By *Lieut.-Colonel F. V. Wing, C.B., R.F.A.*, 155
- Cavalry in Battle. By *Captain P. A. Charrier (with Maps)*, 185, 464
- Cavalry : Its True Functions in Modern War. By *Charles Sydney Goldman*, 65
- Cavalry Lessons of the War, The, 56
- Cavalry of Greater Britain, The. By *Major-General Sir E. Hutton, K.C.M.G.*, 24
- Cavalry Reorganisation, 94
- Cavalry School at Netheravon, The. By *Colonel the Hon. J. Lindley*, 49
- Cavalry Swordsmanship. By *Staff-Sergeant-Major Instructor-of-Fencing J. E. Williams (Illustrated)*, 470
- Cavalry Training in England, Recent Steps in. By *The Inspector of Cavalry (Illustrated)*, 127
- Challis, M. Lucke* : The Squadron Cup Finals (1920), 280
- Charrier, Captain P. A.* : Cavalry in Battle (*with Maps*), 185, 464
- Correspondence :  
     Horse Artillery and Cavalry, 501  
     'Squadron Cup Finals,' 505
- Cromwell's Cavalry. By *Brevet-Major W. H. Greenly, D.S.O.*, 179, 321, 427 (*with Maps*)
- Cultivation of the Sense of Direction, The. By *Major Smyth, V.C. (Illustrated)*, 46
- Deane, Colonel T., C.B.* : Thoroughbred Horses, 205
- Development of Mounted Infantry Training at Home, The. By *Colonel A. J. Godley*, 52
- Development of the Sword, The. By *B. E. Sargeant, Assistant Curator, Royal United Service Museum (Illustrated)*, 305

M36368

- Explanations.** By *Lieut.-Colonel A. Leetham, Managing Editor*, 1
- Fire Tactics in the Training of the British Cavalry, The Place of.** By *Brigadier-General Broadwood, C.B.*, 90
- Foxhunting and Soldiering.** By *Colonel F. V. Wing, C.B., R.F.A.*, 495
- Gillson, Captain Godfrey, R.A.* : My First Experiences in Search of Remounts, 196, 327 (*Illustrated*), 458
- Godley, Colonel A. J.* : The Development of Mounted Infantry Training at Home, 52
- Goldman, Charles Sydney* : Cavalry : Its True Functions in Modern War, 65
- Grand International, The.** By *The Inspector of Cavalry (Illustrated)*, 270
- Greenly, Brevet-Major W. H., D.S.O.* : Cromwell's Cavalry, 179, 321, 427 (*with Maps*)
- Hamilton, Major Stevenson* : Big Game in South Africa, 489
- Height of Polo Ponies, The.** By *Cavalier*, 109
- Horsemastership for Long-distance Riding.** By *Lieutenant W. Paget-Tomlinson*, 40
- Horses, Bone Disease in,** 475
- Horse-shoes for Military Purposes.** By *Major C. B. Levita, M.V.O., R.F.A. (Illustrated)*, 346
- How to Carry out Orders,** 344
- Hudson, Major H., C.I.E.* : Two Cavalry Staff Rides, India, 1904-5, 82 (*with Maps*), 174
- Hutton, Major-General Sir E., K.C.M.G.* : The Cavalry of Greater Britain, 24
- Infantry Officer, An* : Reminiscences of Cavalry in War and Peace, 452
- Inspector of Cavalry, The* : Manmastership, 410
- Inspector of Cavalry, The* : Recent Steps in Cavalry Training in England (*Illustrated*), 127
- Inspector of Cavalry, The* : The Balance of the Horse (*Illustrated*), 257
- Inspector of Cavalry, The* : The Grand International (*Illustrated*), 270
- Inspector of Cavalry, The* : What Lies before us, 3
- International Strategy,** 61
- Internationale Revue: Beiheft 74 (Illustrated),** 481
- Leetham, Lieut.-Colonel A., Managing Editor* : Explanations, 1
- Levita, Major C. B., M.V.O., R.F.A.* : Horse-shoes for Military Purposes, 346
- Lindley, Colonel the Hon. J.* : The Cavalry School at Netheravon, 49
- Manmastership.** By *The Inspector of Cavalry*, 410
- Mounted Forces of the British Empire, The,** 97
- Mounted Rifles and Mounted Infantry,** 29
- My First Experiences in Search of Remounts.** By *Captain Godfrey Gillson, R.A.*, 196, 327 (*Illustrated*), 458
- Notes,** 115, 231 (*Illustrated*), 365 (*Illustrated*), 509
- Notes on the Cavalry of Morocco.** By *the late Major Angus Ogilvy, D.S.O. (Illustrated)*, 422
- Ogilvy, the late Major Angus, D.S.O.* : Notes on the Cavalry of Morocco (*Illustrated*), 422

- Orders, How to Carry out, 344
- Our Colonial Cavalry, 406
- Our Indian Cavalry. By *Rissalah*, 390
- Paget-Tomlinson, Lieutenant W.* : Horsemastership for Long-distance Riding, 40
- Persimmon, 106
- Petawawa Artillery Practice Camp. By *Captain Walter James Brown*, 440
- Polo Ponies, The Height of. By *Cavalier*, 109
- Problem No. 1. By *Major G. K. Ansell (with Map)*, 112
- Problem No. 1—Result, 362
- Problem No. 2. By *the Author of 'Bonnie Bertie, or the Blue-eyed Bombardier' (Illustrated)*, 226
- Problem No. 2—Result, 507
- Purdon, Major H. G.* : The Scoutmaster-General, 333
- Raids, 33
- Recent Steps in Cavalry Training in England. By *The Inspector of Cavalry (Illustrated)*, 127
- Reminiscences of Cavalry in War and Peace. By *An Infantry Officer*, 452
- Reviews, 191, 356 (*Illustrated*)
- Rifle, The Thorneycroft (*Illustrated*), 224
- Rissalah* : Our Indian Cavalry, 390
- Royal Naval and Military Tournament, The, 218
- Russian Cavalry in the War with the Japanese. By *Staff-Colonel Zaleskij in the Ruskii Invalid*, 314
- Sargeant, B. E.* : The Development of the Sword (*Illustrated*), 305
- Scouting Tips. By *Sergeant Weston*, 336
- Scoutmaster-General, The. By *Major H. G. Purdon*, 333
- Second Cavalry Brigade in Sussex, The (*Illustrated*), 444
- Signalling in the Cavalry during the late South African War. By *Major S. L. Barry, D.S.O. (with Maps)*, 167
- Smyth, Major, V.C.* : The Cultivation of the Sense of Direction (*Illustrated*), 46
- Some Notes on Mounted Infantry. By *Brigadier-General A. W. Thorneycroft, C.B.*, 161
- Spirit of Cavalry, The. By *Major G. des Barron*, 12
- Sporting Notes, 122, 243 (*Illustrated*), 375, 523
- Squadron Cup Finals, 1920, The. By *M. Lucke Challis*, 280
- Strategy : International, 61
- Sugar as a Food for Animals, The Use of, 212
- Thorneycroft, Brigadier-General A. W., C.B.* : Some Notes on Mounted Infantry, 161
- Thorneycroft Rifle, The (*Illustrated*), 224
- Thoroughbred Horses. By *Colonel T. Deane, C.B.*, 205
- To Tether a Single Horse Temporarily (*Illustrated*), 105
- Tournament, The Royal Naval and Military, 218
- Treasure Hunt Scheme, The, 295



Two Cavalry Staff Rides, India, 1904-5. By *Major H. Hudson, C.I.E. (with Maps)*, 82, 174

*Weston, Sergeant.* Scouting Tips, 336

What Lies before us. By *The Inspector of Cavalry*, 3

Which is the Weapon for Cavalry? A French View, 80

*Williams, Staff-Sergeant-Major Instructor-of-Fencing J. E. :* Cavalry Swordsmanship (Illustrated), 470

*Wing, Colonel F. V., C.B., R.F.A. :* Foxhunting and Soldiering, 495

*Wing, Lieut.-Colonel F. V., C.B., R.F.A. :* Cavalry and Horse Artillery, 155

*Wood, Field-Marshal Sir Evelyn, V.C., G.C.B., G.C.M.G., &c. &c. :* British Cavalry, 1853-1903 (Illustrated), 146

*Zalesskij, Staff-Colonel :* The Russian Cavalry in the War with the Japanese, 314

## PLATES

	<i>To face page</i>
A SPORTING SOWAR . . . . .	<i>Frontispiece</i>
THE CULTIVATION OF THE SENSE OF DIRECTION . . . . .	<i>Between pages</i> 48-49
PERSIMMON . . . . .	106
TACTICAL PROBLEM No. 1 ( <i>Map</i> ) . . . . .	114
OLIVER CROMWELL . . . . .	127
'CIRCUS TRICKS' . . . . .	<i>Between pages</i> 132-133
THE 3RD CAVALRY BRIGADE AT LUSK, 1905 . . . . .	136
EVELYN WOOD, 13TH LIGHT DRAGOONS, 1855 . . . . .	146
THE THORNEYCROFT RIFLE . . . . .	224
PHOTOGRAPHS TO NOTES :—1. GENERAL TAMURA. 2. CHINESE CAVALRY PONIES IN THE YAMEN COMPOUND. 3 AND 4. A JAPANESE TROOPER. 5. A CHINESE MOUNTED ORDERLY. 6. COLONEL KOYKE . . . . .	231
AN ENGLISH 'GALLOPER' ( <i>after a drawing by C. Vernet</i> ) . . . . .	257
THE GRAND INTERNATIONAL: LIEUT. VIRMONT . . . . .	<i>Between pages</i> 276-277
THE DEVELOPMENT OF THE SWORD . . . . .	312-313
IN SEARCH OF REMOUNTS . . . . .	326-327
HORSE-SHOES FOR MILITARY PURPOSES: MACHINE-MADE SHOES . . . . .	352
THE 21ST LANCERS AT OMDURMAN . . . . .	387
MANŒUVRES IN SUSSEX . . . . .	<i>Between pages</i> 448-449
MR. JOHN GOLDHAM, LONDON VOLUNTEER CAVALRY, EXECUTING THE SIX DIVISIONS OF AUSTRIAN BROADSWORD EXERCISE WITH A SABRE IN EACH HAND . . . . .	474
JUMPING: STYLE OF THE ITALIAN CAVALRY SCHOOL, PINEROLO . . . . .	484
THE 5TH DRAGOON GUARDS ON THE VELDT, SOUTH AFRICA, 1906 . . . . .	508

THE  
CAVALRY JOURNAL

No. 1.—JANUARY 1906.

A FEW minor explanations with regard to the 'make up' of the Journal may be of interest :

St. George 'of Merrie England' is, as every good cavalry man knows, the patron saint of cavalry all over the world, but more especially of English cavalry ; we have therefore put his badge upon our cover, and we had intended to issue that cover in his colours, red and white, but taking into consideration the wear and dust of travel which it will have to undergo in reaching our more distant readers, the more serviceable and modern hue of khaki has been adopted.

The mounted figure on the cover is intended to symbolise the thrusting spirit of cavalry.

Few of us like reading long drawn out articles, and therefore every effort will be made to place our subjects as briefly as possible before our readers. We propose to act in the spirit of the 'Letters of a Self-Made Merchant to his Son,' where he says : 'Have something to say,' 'Say it,' 'Stop talking,' and we hope our contributors will sometimes keep the same motto in view.

The heading of an article does not always convey an idea of its contents, so we propose to give a short summary of each article below its heading.

It frequently happens in reading a magazine that one wants to tear out and keep certain illustrations or articles, especially

those which are continued in successive numbers; with a view to helping such readers we have had the pages perforated and each article printed separately.

As will be seen on the title page, officers have kindly consented to act as our representatives in each of the colonies, and we shall be very glad to receive, either through them or direct, articles or paragraphs, and sketches or photographs, likely to be of general interest to our readers.

And now a word as to finance.

We have, I am pleased to say, received, or been guaranteed, an ample sum of money to insure the whole expense of the Journal for its first year, and mostly by officers now serving, **FINANCE.** in the cavalry at home. The whole of the editorial staff, both at home and abroad, are giving their services gratuitously, so no expense will be incurred in that direction. The Council of the Royal United Service Institution have kindly granted the Journal the use of a room in the Institution for a small nominal rent. We propose, should the Journal prove a financial success, in the first instance to pay off our guarantors, after which either to reduce the cost of the Journal or to increase the number of issues in the year, and to devote further funds in offering substantial prizes for essays &c., and the solution of the tactical schemes which it is intended to put forward for both officers and non-commissioned officers. We also intend each year to publish an audited account of our receipts and expenditure, so that our subscribers may be kept fully acquainted as to what has been done with the funds subscribed.

With these few words of explanation I hope every officer of the mounted forces throughout the Empire will help us all he can to make the Journal a '*Great Success*.'

ARTHUR LEETHAM  
(*Managing Editor*).

'Viret in aeternum.'

## WHAT LIES BEFORE US

The following notes are intended to show how mounted tactics have gradually been developing from the iron-bound into more elastic form, to meet the varied requirements of modern war, and how, in consequence, individual knowledge and efficiency of every man are as necessary as collective training of the mass, in preparing for war.

I THINK it may be as well in commencing this Magazine just to sketch what is wanted of mounted troops in the present day, as it will partly explain the intention of the CAVALRY JOURNAL. The whole subject is a very large one, but I will merely give a condensed outline of it, and leave the reader to think out for himself the details that it may suggest.

### THE MOUNTED RÔLE

The mission of our Army is to second the Royal Navy in maintaining peace. If, as a nation, we do not make ourselves strong enough to defend ourselves, we are guilty of provoking others to attack us and deserve to be smashed.

Our duty, therefore, is to make ourselves efficient in every branch, naval and military.

The Cavalry and mounted forces must not be behindhand in taking their share in this.

In making for efficiency in the mounted branch it must in the first place always be borne in mind that our main object is to help the Infantry to win battles.

In speaking of mounted troops I assume roughly that the term includes the following branches, with the aim and action herein assigned to each :

*Cavalry*, capable of shock action, dismounted action, reconnaissance, protection, long-distance raids, &c.



*Mounted Rifles*, capable of the same, except shock action, which requires special training and discipline of men and horses.

*Mounted Infantry*. Although properly speaking intended for Infantry action with the power of being rapidly transferable from point to point in the battlefield, Mounted Infantry is, in practice, frequently used in the rôle of Mounted Rifles.

*Royal Horse Artillery*, machine guns, pompoms, &c., to accompany and assist the action of the above with their fire.

*Royal Engineers*, to help the above in their mobility, defence, and communications.

*Medical, Veterinary, Remount, Ordnance, Supply and Transport Services*, to accompany and help to render the Cavalry mobile and independent.

In so brief an outline I can only refer to the action of 'Cavalry,' but in using that term it must be understood that the remaining mounted troops are included, co-operating in their respective rôles all through.

#### CAVALRY IS ASSISTANT TO THE INFANTRY

I repeat that as a first point in importance it must always be remembered that the Infantry is the arm which does the fighting and wins the battles, and that the Cavalry assists the Infantry to do this by destroying the enemy's Cavalry as a first step, then by finding his main force, by co-operating on the battlefield, and eventually by turning his defeat into a disaster.

Close comradeship and mutual sympathy, therefore, are necessary between Cavalry and the other arms in war, and must on that account be cultivated in every way in peace.

#### HOW MOUNTED TACTICS HAVE DEVELOPED

People are apt to think, because no great change is visible in the *principles* of Cavalry action, that therefore no change is possible or desirable.

But if we look back to history—and *military history is the key to military knowledge*—we see that change has gone on steadily in the past, and is steadily going on below the surface, so that it behoves us to have our eyes open and to keep abreast of the times.

And we must also study the changes of tactics in our sister arms so as to understand them and co-operate intelligently in the field.

Although he is still too little regarded as such in England, Cromwell is fully appreciated and studied as a Cavalry authority by the Germans. He was one of the first to recognise the value of a Cavalry capable of rapid movement in good order from point to point of the battlefield; he was able to fling his well-drilled squadrons in at the decisive point, and at the critical moment, with unerring success, when all the dash of the Cavaliers failed to make up for their want of cohesion and system.

The value of drill and discipline in manœuvre then became recognised, and this routine was carried out to the full in the great continental armies, until in course of years they became so tied by it that they could do little else but manœuvre and charge and this went on up to comparatively recent times.

In the Peninsula a little individual scouting by a few of our officers, such as probably amounted to no more than the ordinary day's work of one of our present regimental scout-masters, was looked upon then as quite a new step, and at the beginning of the Franco-German war want of reconnoitring ability on both sides was conspicuous, until remedied later on on the part of the Germans.

Ability to manœuvre in large masses and to charge in good order, without any other attribute—such as reconnoitring, distant raiding, rifle action, &c.—was then found to give very inadequate results in return for the enormous number of men and horses employed.

In the American war, where the Cavalry, being newly

organised, were untrammelled by old traditions, but were trained and led as common-sense directed, new tactics came into use.

Charges with sabre and revolver were carried out continually, and with valuable results when the country was favourable; but much of it was enclosed and wooded, and here the Cavalry, after being armed with rifles, did invaluable work in dismounted action. Their scouting and reconnaissance, learnt from wars with the Red Indians, were most effective, and their raids against their opponents' communications were a new feature in war and of highest strategical importance.

In short, by experience their men became individually trained to each kind of duty, and their leaders adopted on each occasion that which was most suitable to the local conditions of the moment. The result was that the action of the Cavalry on both sides was of the greatest value, and at times almost overshadowed the doings of the other arms.

Our latest experience of Cavalry in modern war is derived from the Russo-Japanese campaign.

Briefly, this war has shown that Cavalry is more than ever a necessity to complete the success of the Infantry. It has been said on good authority that had the Japanese possessed a proper Cavalry force Liao Yang would have been a disaster and Mukden a Sedan for the Russians. [This is a confirmation to-day of the principle of Xenophon's times, that 'without Cavalry an army risks a great deal and cannot possibly reap the fruits of victory.']

As it was, the Japanese Cavalry, being weak in numbers and efficient horses, were reduced to defending themselves with rifles against superior masses of Russian Cavalry, though on two or three occasions, by pluck and good leading, they managed to effect important raids against the enemy's communications.

With the Russians, the want of good leaders and adequate peace training nullified their advantage in numbers. With both, therefore, the want of peace training and the impossibility of extemporising an efficient Cavalry in war were demonstrated, and should have their lessons for us.

## REASONS FOR BEING PREPARED FOR CIVILISED WAR

Critics are apt to say, 'What is the good of our preparing for fighting on European lines? We shall never have cause to fight a continental Power on a large scale.'

But it is absolutely essential that if we want to keep the peace we must show ourselves prepared at every point for war. If our friendship is to be worth having by other nations we must be prepared to take sides on the Continent as we have done before.

Moreover, many of our frontiers which used to be isolated have gradually become conterminous with those of Russia, Portugal, Germany, France, Italy, &c., in various parts of the world, and an invasion of England, of India, or of one of our colonies is merely improbable—not impossible.

Wars often arise with great suddenness from most unexpected and even trivial causes.

No one could have foreseen war between ourselves and our brothers in America over a tax, or over Mr. Jenkins having his ear cut off, or the Mutiny about greased cartridges, or the Crimean war against Russia about a shrine in Jerusalem, or even the late South African War over a question which is probably already forgotten by most people; but these have come off.

It is from very small sparks and with great suddenness that big fires flare up, and we must be prepared for them in whatever quarter they may break out.

Our training, therefore, should be directed to that end and brought to such standard as not merely satisfies us who are in the Cavalry, but to such as meets the needs of the sister forces whom we assist, and such as equals the standards of our possible enemies.

CAVALRY IS NOT A SEPARATE ENGINE BUT PART OF A  
GREAT MACHINE

In England the Cavalry has rather suffered from the attentions of its friends as well as of others whom Colonel Henderson



describes as 'a certain school of tacticians who have let their zeal—whether in praising or condemning—outrun their love of truth or discretion.'

They advance their personal opinions based on personal experiences which are as nothing when compared with the study of experiences of the great captains of all countries.

On the Continent such personal opinions have no effect on the training or organisation of Cavalry, because the armies cannot there afford to work in compartments, as we have been rather prone to do in England.

Abroad all branches have their definite place or rôle in the general scheme without any question of being liked by one authority or disliked by another, or having to struggle against criticism or against each other for recognition. This is an evil which has with us affected not merely the Cavalry, but almost every branch in its time.

The remedy comes largely from within : criticism is disarmed when each branch knows itself and its duties in the first place, and knows and understands its sister branches in the second, and works in close co-operation with them. It then fits into its proper place in the whole, and outside opinion cannot affect it.

Let us then see what is our work in the Cavalry in helping towards success for the whole.

#### DUTIES OF CAVALRY

'The careful study of your duties in war is the one and only guide to what you should train for in peace.'

The main duties of Cavalry are briefly these :

1. *Strategically*, to cover the front of the Army, and, by gaining full information of the enemy's main force and concealing their own, *to give their commander-in-chief complete liberty of action* ; also to prevent enemy's Cavalry doing the same on their part. To threaten enemy's communications and force him to waste strength in defending them, &c.

2. *Tactically*, to destroy the enemy's Cavalry ; to keep the Infantry informed and protected ; to cut off and hold enemy (as at Paardeberg) for the Infantry to attack ; to 'chip in' where required on the battlefield ; to smash up the enemy in pursuit or to protect one's own side from pursuit.

### SPECIAL DUTIES OF BRITISH CAVALRY

But in addition to these the British mounted troops have so many different kinds of enemy and of country and climate to contend with that they have to be veritable 'handy men' and trained to every kind of fighting. The ordinary continental training would not be sufficient.

It has been questioned in a well-known book on Cavalry whether the Germany Cavalry of 1870 would not have met with their match in the more versatile American cavalymen had they been pitted against them in 1864.

And though we may have something to learn from our neighbours in the matter of continental fighting, it is possible that they, on the other hand, might have got some useful hints from us before fighting their present irregular enemies in South-West Africa.

From the foregoing remarks, then, it will be understood that Cavalry has been gradually emerging from the close iron-bound formations of the past century and is developing into a more elastic arm where careful individual training of every officer and every man in each branch of his duty is the key to efficiency and success.

In our service he may be required for accurate reconnaissance, or for shock tactics, for dismounted action, or protective duties, or for far-reaching strokes against enemies' communications, or for flying columns against any kind of enemy, civilised or savage, and in every kind of country and climate under the sun.

It is a large order to train for all these different duties, and

requires the full development, in the first place, of the Cavalry spirit of energy and dash and self-sacrifice, and, in the second place, a complete knowledge of a variety of arms, such as lance, sword, rifle, machine gun, and, above all, the horse.

#### CHOICE OF WEAPONS

But once the man is trained to all these it depends on the nature of the country and enemy which arm the commander chooses to employ.

For instance, in close and broken countries like England, parts of America, and, in fact, parts of most countries, or where a unit is largely outnumbered, the rifle becomes of first importance, and its possession has given an increased power to Cavalry in recent years.

In more open countries, as on the Continent, in Afghanistan, South Africa, &c., shock tactics, in combination with fire, whether of rifles, machine guns, or artillery, would be desirable.

In fog, storm, or darkness, or against an enemy 'fed up' with incessant marching, retreat, or low in ammunition, or inferior in numbers, &c., opportunities will frequently arise for overwhelming rushes by Cavalry alone.

The modern widespread battlefields, with their necessarily long lines of communication, often consisting of railway and telegraph lines, offer to an enterprising Cavalry splendid chances for doing invaluable work in cutting communications or forcing the enemy to employ a good deal of his strength away from the fighting line in protecting these.

For each and all of these duties must Cavalry be equally well trained in peace time. It then lies with the leader to decide at the moment which form of action and which weapon will best meet the occasion.

But for each and all of them the weapon which is of highest importance to the cavalryman—after the essential spirit of untiring keenness and 'go'—is his horse, and practical horsemanship is his most useful qualification.

In the Cavalry, above all other branches, each man, whether he be officer or trooper, gets exceptional chances of personal distinction. It therefore behoves him, for his own sake and that of his country, to perfect himself in peace time for the many parts he may be called upon to play in war.

#### CONCLUSION

From what I have said it will be understood that the whole efficiency of Cavalry to meet the numerous requirements of modern war depends on the training of the individual officers and men in peace time : and in a future article I will endeavour to show what we are doing in this direction.

R. S. S. B.-P.



### *THE SPIRIT OF CAVALRY*

The recurring lessons of the utility of Cavalry taught by great masters of war—Belief in the power of Cavalry by its leaders—The question of losses in action—The arm of opportunity.

1. IF we glance through the pages of military history we find that from the earliest times there has been a recrudescence of the impression that the days of Cavalry, as such, are past. The utility of the man on the horse has not been questioned, but the principle of Cavalry, as embodied in the idea of the man and the horse, has been declared obsolete. If we have not lately been passing through one of these constantly recurring phases of thought, we have, at any rate, come very near to it. The dividing line between Cavalry and Infantry has become blurred; to some it is not even visible. Judging from the opinions one not unfrequently hears expressed, concerning the employment of the mounted arm, it would seem that even among Cavalrymen there are some who, while in no way deficient in esprit de corps and zeal for their own branch, are nevertheless in the possession of very indefinite ideas as to where the rôle of Infantry ends and that of Cavalry begins.

### THE LESSONS OF SEVERAL CENTURIES

2. The teachings of the past are the surest foundations on which to base our theories of the future. 'There is no new thing under the sun,' and to those who care to learn the lessons of history the conclusion is inevitable that Cavalry, both

tactically and strategically, is as living a factor now as it has ever been.

It would be possible, in support of this statement, to go back as far as the Punic wars, but we shall obtain sufficient illustration if we confine ourselves to the last four or five centuries. Owing mainly to social and other conditions into which it is not necessary to enter here, Cavalry had played for a long period preceding the close of the thirteenth century the most conspicuous rôle in the armies of those days. It was not till the fourteenth century that Infantry began to re-assert itself, and to take once more the position from which it had been ousted by the chivalry of the early middle ages. When the long-bow men of England met the horsemen of France they did so well that work for which they are renowned that Cavalry fell into disrepute. Just as it was beginning to recover itself the matchlock was invented, which gave it another throw-back, and when after a time it succeeded in breaking down the prejudices which the introduction of firearms had raised against it, an improved weapon in the shape of the snaphaunce made its appearance, and again the cry was raised that the days of the charge and of mounted action were numbered; and so they were for two centuries, for the critics of the mounted arm gained and maintained the upper hand and even the Cavalry lost all faith in itself. The result of this was that up to the time of Frederick the Great, Cavalry confined itself to fire tactics, just as so many wish it to do in these days. But Seydlitz and Ziethen then came along and lifted it back into its proper sphere, and, in spite of further improvements in firearms and musketry training, every bit as great an advance on the past as any that has taken place since the Crimean War, the Cavalry under Frederick played a great part as a mounted fighting force. With the departure from the scenes of Frederick and his Cavalry leaders it was again relegated to a secondary place, and, like a limb which is never used, it shrank in size and strength till it became of very little count. But a great master of

war now appeared, and all through the Napoleonic wars we see Cavalry doing glorious work both on the field of strategy and battle, and this notwithstanding the fact that the musket of those days was as superior to the old snaplock (which, let it be remembered, was supposed at the time of its introduction to have given the death-blow to the mounted arm) as the modern magazine rifle is to the Brown Bess. After Napoleon's days another period ensued during which Cavalry was looked at askance and its proper employment misunderstood, till the Franco-German War once again brought it to the front, and, although the working of the German Cavalry in that conflict left much to be desired, still we can see the strategical idea of its employment working strongly in the mind of Moltke, as evidenced in his constantly repeated orders and directions for the mounted troops to be pushed well to the front in order to discover the hostile forces while screening their own. But however clearly Moltke saw, as so deep and intense a student could not fail to see, the incalculable advantages to be obtained by a full and free use of mounted troops, he must have been greatly disappointed with the results obtained by the German horsemen, considering that they were entirely unopposed by any corresponding force on the French side and in this respect had it all their own way. However, the immediate results were not appreciated by the world at large, and for many years it was only the German military authorities themselves who knew how far they had fallen short of the mark, and wherein the causes of their partial failure lay. Of late years opinion on the Continent has been divided, and while the French and the Germans have both been active in training their horsemen to act as Cavalry and in masses, the Russians have once again fallen under the fetish of rifle-range theories, and have taught their mounted men to look on the rifle as more important than the horse, with what fatal results the war in Manchuria has shown us.

## THE INFLUENCE OF CAVALRY LEADERS

3. A consideration of the above facts should be sufficient to make any serious critic of Cavalry pause before indulging in the wholesale condemnation to which we have been so liberally treated during the last few years. If we dig below the surface, in order to find the causes of the alternate ascendancy and degeneration of Cavalry, we find the same old arguments and the same old prejudices with which we are so familiar repeating themselves *ad nauseam*, first with the appearance of the men of the long bow, then with the invention of the firearm, later with the introduction of cannon, rifles, and breech-loaders, and through all the changes and improvements of weapons of war till we come down to the magazine rifle of the present day. According to the theories of trajectory, energy, penetrative intensity, rapidity of fire and ballistics, there should long ago have ceased to be a place for Cavalry on the battlefield, and so there would have been had it not been for the timely influence exerted by certain great commanders, under whose direction, as nearly always happens, leaders of horse in the true sense of the word came to the front and showed by their achievements the fallacies of those who occupied themselves in crying down the credit of Cavalry.

With so much historical experience to guide us we should be quite justified in forming the conclusion, based on the process of deduction, that the fundamental principles of the employment of the mounted arms remain practically unchanged to this day.

Unfortunately, the newspaper critics of our arm are not its most dangerous enemies—we could afford, perhaps, to ignore these—the danger comes from within. Those who doubt, as those who hesitate, are lost, and, worse, they cause others to be lost also. For doubt is infectious, the seeds of it take root easily, and lie dormant and unsuspected, only springing suddenly

into life when the moment for decision has arrived. Every leader, whether of brigade, regiment, squadron, or troop, who is not strong in his belief in the power of Cavalry on the battlefield and as the strategic arm, works mischief to its best interests and to the interests of the Army which it serves. This is a strong indictment, but not too strong when we consider, as we shall presently do, that the strength of Cavalry lies in its moral force, and there can be no true moral force where doubt comes creeping in.

#### THE MORAL AND MATERIAL ASPECT OF WAR

4. And now we come to the question, 'Why is it that Cavalry alone of the three arms has had to sustain such frequent and periodic adverse criticism; and how is it that, even among those to whom is the honour of belonging to that force which has come to us as the heritage of the knights of old, there are to be found men who are still floating in a sea of indetermination, in whom the spirit of Cavalry has almost ceased to exist?' The answer is that whereas full recognition is given to the *material* part of war, the still more important side, the *moral*, is often entirely overlooked. Perhaps there is no maxim of war so frequently quoted as that which tells us that the moral is to the physical in the proportion of three to one, and there is none so systematically ignored. And yet the moral forces constitute the spirit of Cavalry and are the very soul of its existence. But, however much weapons may change, the human factor remains the same, and of the two elements in war—the human and the material—the former is the more important. When the vital energies are expended it is a matter of indifference whether, as Hoenig says, the men are armed with modern repeating rifles or with pitchforks. It needs no argument to prove that when this time comes, as it constantly does in all great conflicts, the opportunities for Cavalry are just as great as ever they were, even before firearms were ever thought of.

## THE IMPORTANCE OF SEIZING THE PSYCHOLOGICAL MOMENT

5. Let us now picture a portion of a modern battlefield and consider the opportunities it offers for mounted action. We see the attacking Infantry stretching in long, extended, and irregular lines. They have reached a point where their nervous energy is nearly exhausted, partly owing to fatigue and excitement, partly to the wearying strain of a long period passed under exposure to rifle and artillery fire, and to the sights of mutilation and death around them; for hours their eyes have been fixed on the portion of the hostile position immediately facing them, till they have no thought for anything but what is in their immediate front. It is true that, theoretically, these lines should have received the constant additions of fresh men, bringing with them new life and energy; but for many causes, such as are common in war, this has not been done—the reserves, which have been prematurely exhausted, are required to repel a counter-attack elsewhere, are too far behind, &c. At this moment the appearance of anything sudden and unexpected, the rapid charge of a few squadrons of horse, the thunder of their hoofs and the gleam of their sabres, will suffice to turn back those attenuated lines, which if unmolested would have held their ground till the arrival of the reinforcements which would have swept them on to victory. That sudden decision of the Cavalry commander, born of faith in his own arm, has warded off defeat or gained a victory at a moment when a dark cloud was hanging over his own side and the men in the trenches were beginning to cast backward looks. That the effect of the sudden onslaught of the Cavalry on the minds of the attacking Infantry is not overdrawn, let me quote, in the words of our greatest military historian, one incident from among thousands to show the result that the ‘unexpected’ may have on occasion on the minds of even the bravest soldiers. ‘General Walker, leaping forward sword in hand, at the moment when one of the enemy’s cannoneers was discharging a gun, fell covered with so many wounds that it was wonderful

how he could survive, and some of the soldiers immediately after, perceiving a lighted match on the ground, cried out "A mine!" At that word, such is the power of imagination, those troops whom neither the strong barrier, nor the deep ditch, nor the high walls, nor the deadly fire of the enemy could stop, staggered back, appalled by a chimera of their own raising, and in this disorder a French reserve . . . drove on them with a firm and rapid charge, and, pitching some men over the walls and killing others outright, again cleared the ramparts even to Vincente.'

Now let us take another picture—the commander of an army on the defensive has organised a great counterstroke, which takes place over undulating ground, against the flank of the attacking troops. The Cavalry division is working on the outward flank of this counter-attack. The enemy's advance is brought to a standstill, and he then retires before the counter-striking Infantry. Taking advantage of the confusion introduced into the ranks of the hostile Infantry by their check and subsequent retirement, a portion of the Cavalry division gallops through a succession of lines, turning check into a rout, the other portion, following in pursuit, converts what would have been a repulse into a crushing defeat.

The above are but two thumbnail sketches of how Cavalry may be employed in modern battle; they are only two examples taken from among a host of others which suggest themselves, 'for the combinations of war are infinite.'

#### THE DREAD OF POSSIBLE LOSSES

6. But they are not a few who say: 'What about the losses? Cavalry would be annihilated if it did this, that, and the other.' Well, even supposing that Cavalry does undergo heavy losses and is sometimes repulsed without having gained any success, or maybe even suffers practical annihilation—what of that? Does this justify in any way the assumption that it can never again engage in mounted action, that its employment as

the 'arm of opportunity' is obsolete? Infantry goes forward to the attack and is repulsed again and again, whole battalions are wiped out, the attack fails with a loss of several thousand men. And yet does anyone deduce from this that the days of Infantry are also past; and if not for Infantry, why for Cavalry? It is not logical. Cavalry must be prepared to face heavy losses, to suffer annihilation if victory is gained thereby, and it will do this if imbued with the right spirit, it will never do it if nursed in the school of those who would in the intervals between processions and reviews keep it wrapped in cotton wool for fear of the paint getting rubbed or the horses' legs coming off.

But there is something else to be said about the heavy losses which it is generally taken for granted that mounted action will entail. Although Cavalry must be prepared to pay a big butcher's bill when necessary, it by no means follows that this bill will always be presented. Let us return for a moment to the first of our illustrations above, and look at facts as they are, as opposed to theoretical calculations on the rapidity of fire and the accuracy of the modern rifle. The long lines of extended Infantry cannot be wheeled up to face the onslaught of the squadrons thundering down on their flanks, because they are too extended, under fire of their enemy, and, as we know, because Infantry once launched to the attack can only move backwards and forwards—Cavalry has nothing to fear from these. But the charging squadrons will have the rifles of the covering troops and the guns of the Artillery turned on them? Perhaps so, but when we consider the sudden change of objective, the difficulty of ranging and aiming accurately on a rapidly moving target, the danger of hitting one's own troops, and then throw into the balance all those moral factors which make battle shooting a very different thing from range shooting, we maintain that the number of casualties will not be so very appalling, and there will be many a trooper left to fight another day!

If battles were fought on gigantic billiard tables, Cavalry would indeed be only suited to the duties to which so many



would nowadays relegate it; but neither sight nor bullets can pass through hillsides, and an extraordinary amount of cover can be obtained from even the most gentle undulations, not to speak of that afforded by villages, cultivation, &c., and there are few fields of action which do not afford abundant opportunities for cover, concealment, and surprise to those who know how to make skilful use of its natural and artificial features.

It must always be remembered that Cavalry is the 'arm of opportunity'—a fact not generally recognised by our critics. In this rôle it has been utilised not only by all great Cavalry leaders, but by nearly all great commanders of armies in the field—by Hannibal, Marlborough, and Napoleon. They have never asked or expected of their horsemen to charge Infantry entrenched and unshaken, or to achieve lasting results without suffering loss; no, they have kept it in hand, and then, when the psychological moment, the *événement*, has arrived, they have launched it in masses against the attenuated ranks of the enemy, careless of the ravages of hostile shot and shell so long as success has followed in the track of the horses' hoofs.

Ignorance of military history has led to the same false ideas regarding the strategic rôle of Cavalry as it has to its tactical employment. We have only to read the campaigns of Napoleon in order to see that the idea of the strategic use of Cavalry is not a recent growth dating from the Franco-German War, as many seem to think, and where, by the way, its use left very much to be desired on both sides. And in carrying out its strategic duties, Napoleon did not expect that it should act without suffering loss, for he wrote: 'The use of Cavalry demands boldness and ability, above all it should not be handled with any miserly desire to keep it intact;' and again, 'I do not wish the horses to be spared, if they can catch men.' 'Take no heed of the complaints of the Cavalry, for if such great objects can be attained as the destruction of a whole hostile army the State can afford to lose a few hundred horses from exhaustion.'

In discussing the question of the relative value of Cavalry in

these days the case is nearly always unfairly stated. The power of the modern rifle is put into the balance against the sword or lance. But the opposing factors in reality are the rifle plus the man firing it under abnormal conditions of fatigue, excitement, and danger versus the rapid and unexpected and cohesive charge of bodies of horse riding down and over all whom they reach, and then, if we accept the value of the moral as being greater than the material in war, we find that after all the rifle takes quite a secondary place in our calculations of what the result under these circumstances is likely to be.

#### THE RIFLE AS A WEAPON OF DEFENCE

7. Although the development of small-arm fire has not in any way given the death-blow to Cavalry, or even materially affected its power of offence, on the other hand, by giving the trooper a weapon similar to that carried by the Infantry its strength has been incalculably increased. Without detriment to its mounted action, the rifle in the hands of mounted men enables fire to be rapidly transferred from one spot to another, or to be applied at distant points as circumstances may require. And strategically it allows of the Cavalry working with greater freedom and boldness, inasmuch as it has no longer to suffer the indignity of being held up by every small body of Infantry it may chance upon during the execution of its reconnaissance and covering duties, or of being terrorised by bands of armed peasants and francs-tireurs.

A good leader will use his weapons as the moment best requires and will not be tied down to fixed rules, and there will be occasions for the mounted and occasions for the dismounted action of Cavalry ; but because the possibilities of the latter have been so developed and come into special prominence of late years, that is no reason for discarding the former. The man who cut off his right leg because his left had become very strong would be something more than a fool ; and because Cavalry has gained

a great increase of power from the possession of a firearm, that is no reason for depriving it of its still more valuable property—the moral force on which its mounted action is based, and which finds its highest ideal in the combination of rapidity and surprise united with cohesion and mass.

The anti-Cavalry school will no doubt point to the contest between Russia and Japan as a proof that the mounted service has lost its influential position in modern war. I hold that it proves just the contrary. If we go below the surface and seek the reason why the Russian Cavalry has played so subordinate a part in this titanic struggle, we will find that it lies in the fact that for many years the Russians have been teaching theirmen to look on the rifle as the principal thing, the horse taking only the second place as a useful means of conveyance. The result is inevitable and apparent. In all ranks the spirit of Cavalry is dead, and therefore nothing useful and effective is achieved. The Russian Cavalry has become a more or less negligible quantity. The Japanese Cavalry, owing to numerical inferiority and variety of causes, has had to be content with a subordinate rôle.

#### THE 'TONE' IMPARTED BY THE GENUINE CAVALRY LEADER

8. We are fortunate in possessing at this critical time one or two leaders in whom the spirit is strong and who have done much, both by their system of training and by the spoken word, to counteract that feeling of mistrust in itself which at one time threatened to take hold of our Cavalry.

Cultivate the spirit and the form improves, destroy it and the form degenerates. This is true of all things in nature and in art. It is specially true of Cavalry, in which the moral forces count for so much. Take away the spirit of Cavalry and it becomes useless to the army it is supposed to serve, and that army has then to fight crippled and half blind.

Cavalry must be prepared to sacrifice itself both on the field of battle and in the execution of its strategic duties, so long as

the sacrifice helps to nail victory to the standards ; and it will do this if, casting care aside, it acts boldly, without fear of loss and free of all lurking suspicion that it is an anachronism and that its action, though magnificent, belongs to the bygone generations.

Such sacrifices, such action is not vain, as history, as great Commanders have shown us time after time, and as we can see for ourselves if we study and learn to understand nature and the human element in war.

‘Men act according as they think well or meanly of themselves,’ says Pelagius, and we may well apply the sentiment to our own arm.

Let every Cavalry leader, whatever his rank may be, study history and think out for himself the conditions of war, without allowing himself to be led by the suggestions of others ; and when he has come to the one conclusion which I hold to be inevitable if this course is followed let all his actions and all his teaching of those whom it is his lot to instruct be ordered with a view to the development of that spirit, of that perfect confidence and faith in itself, which alone enables Cavalry to carry out the special duties which belong to it and to obtain great results in war.

G. DES BARROW, *Major,*  
*4th Cavalry (Indian Army).*

### *THE CAVALRY OF GREATER BRITAIN*

This article, by an officer of unique experience, shows the reserve of strength for Cavalry which lies in the Light Horse Mounted Rifles of our colonies.

It has been given to few soldiers of the regular British army to have opportunities of really gauging from personal knowledge and experience the valuable qualities that are combined in the mounted troops of Australia, Canada, and South Africa. It is not possible within the limits of the present brief notice to dilate upon this vastly important subject beyond a few brief notes.

The fact has been recently pressed upon the public opinion of the United Kingdom that the British regular Cavalry bears a very dangerously low proportion to the number of troops available for war—more especially the regular army. It is obvious that, when a national emergency arises, the existing number of our regular Cavalry will require to be largely supplemented. There may be some enthusiasts for Mounted Infantry who, misreading the lessons of the South African war, imagine that Infantry soldiers trained as Mounted Infantry and led by selected and capable officers can be substituted for a highly-trained and well-led Cavalry. Nothing more erroneous, or more fraught with dangerous consequences to the well-being of the British army in all its variety, could well be imagined. Mounted Infantry were originally organised, trained, and equipped as a force which should 'add to the power of Cavalry and bring their rifles into play to form rallying points in case of reverse, or points for their attacking lines,' and which 'should give an account of an enemy's Infantry, and deal with him in a manner which Cavalry organised and trained upon a European model could never hope to do' (speech at the discussion upon the late

Major James's lecture on 'Cavalry' on January 8, 1891). Although experience has shown that Mounted Infantry may, *after prolonged training and practice in the field*, be utilised as a substitute for Cavalry in scouting and reconnoitring duties, this rôle was not originally contemplated for them in the adoption of the existing system of organisation and training.

Valuable, therefore, as selected Infantry detachments may be when trained in the mounted duties pertaining to Infantry as an adjunct to a Cavalry force, we must look elsewhere for an effective supplement to that arm.

The Imperial Yeomanry of Great Britain, and the Cavalry, or the more appropriately named Light Horse of Greater Britain, are precisely the troops which can most readily comply with the conditions required. Although none of the troops thus enumerated now serve under Acts of Parliament which admit of their being employed beyond the confines of their respective countries, it is probable that at no distant date the limits of the Acts in question will at least be modified, if not swept away. It will in any case be advantageous to consider (1) the especial value of the Cavalry of Greater Britain, and (2) the numbers available.

It has rightly been said that the astounding superiority of the Japanese soldiers over those of Russia was due to their higher courage, intelligence, education, and enthusiasm. If to these qualities be added natural aptitude as horsemen, strong individuality, unquenchable self-reliance, and a hardy physique, the sum total of the value of the Light Horse of Greater Britain will be obtained. Military qualities of the highest order will, however, effect but little without a sound organisation to give them full scope. The system adopted in Canada and Australia in raising the Militia Cavalry is well worth careful study. It is strictly territorial, so as to associate defined districts, towns, villages, and hamlets with definite regiments, squadrons, troops, and groups. By this means each regiment and lesser unit becomes representative of a defined locality. Officers and men

thus bring with them as representatives of their own countryside all the cohesion, feeling of comradeship, and of local association which are such valuable elements in providing the highest standard of discipline in the field and of gallantry before the enemy. The advantages thus gained require only to be tempered by a degree of military training to produce troops which under competent leaders form ideal Light Cavalry.

Accustomed to shift for themselves in Australian or Canadian bush, or Australian plains, or on the wild prairies of North America, under the most trying conditions of heat and cold, the Light Horse of Greater Britain thrive where soldiers unaccustomed to bush or prairie life would die. Horsemen such as these make up in the sterner qualities of men what they lack as soldiers in the European sense of the word, and will always form an element of unquestioned power to regular Cavalry in any campaign to which Imperial interests may call them.

The Light Horse of Australia have a complete brigade organisation, and each unit has a peace and war establishment, as the following example will show.

It will be noted from the schedule on page 27 that the peace establishments are little more than half those allotted to war. The avowed object of the organisation thus adopted by Australia is to provide a framework of a field army, which—complete in time of peace with its required complement of trained officers and non-commissioned officers, but with a nucleus only of privates—shall in time of war be capable of expansion to the utmost extent. This plan, relying upon the large amount of splendid material for soldiers available in Australia and in Canada, is suited to the political instincts of our over-sea sister nations, who inherit the truly British dislike of large permanently organised military forces. It moreover gives a defined basis of organisation which not only enables the requisite training and instruction of the cadres to be carried out methodically, but also enables the necessary equipment, arms, and ammunition to be procured and held ready for a sudden emergency.

## COMMONWEALTH OF AUSTRALIA FIELD FORCE 2ND LIGHT HORSE BRIGADE (NORTHERN BRIGADE, N.S.W.)

State	Permanent, Militia, Volunteer	Detail		Establishment		Provided for on Estimates, 1903-4
		Arm of Service	Units	Peace	War	
New South Wales	M.	Staff	—	10	23	
			4th Australian Light Horse Regiment (N.S.W. Lancers)	294	581	174
			5th Australian Light Horse Regiment (N.S.W. Mounted Rifles)	294	581	278
	M.	Light Horse	6th Australian Light Horse Regiment (Australian Horse)	294	581	214
	M.	Artillery	No. 1 N.S.W. Battery (Australian Field Artillery)	76	181	76
	M.	Engineers <sup>1</sup>	No. 1 Field Company (Mounted Section)	28	55	Nil
	M.	Army Service Corps	No. 2 L.H. Supply Column	44	77	44
			Officers attached to Regiments and Units	4	4	4
	M.	Army Medical Corps	No. 2 Mounted Bearer Company	25	50	Nil
			No. 1 Field Hospital (Half)	15	30	15
	M.	Veterinary Department	Officers attached to Regiments	3	3	3
Total				1,087	2,166	809

<sup>1</sup> Staff Field Company not included.

The Militia Cavalry of Canada are similarly, but not at present so completely organised.

In regard to numbers, Australia has now six Light Horse brigades, which include eighteen regiments of Light Horse, numbering on the peace establishment 6,445 all ranks, with twenty-four guns, and on war establishment 12,996 with thirty-six guns. Canada has fifteen regiments of Militia Cavalry of varying strength, with, in addition, three squadrons of regular



Cavalry and Mounted Rifles, and four of Militia Light Horse and Mounted Rifles. The brigade organisation is, it is believed, in process of completion.

It may be safely assumed that since the war in South Africa great strides towards efficiency, not only in organisation, but in training and military knowledge, have been made both in Australia and in Canada. These two young nations would, it is believed, gladly welcome the introduction of a national Militia system for the defence of the Empire upon the basis of inter-co-operation between Great and Greater Britain.

EDWARD HUTTON, *Major General*  
*Late Commanding the Military Forces of Canada, 1898-1900,*  
*and of Australia, 1901-1904.*

## ***MOUNTED RIFLES AND MOUNTED INFANTRY***

The chief difference between Mounted Rifles and Mounted Infantry is here shown to be that Mounted Rifles are horsemen armed with a rifle, and used principally for strategical work ; while Mounted Infantry are riflemen, made mobile by use of cobs, &c., primarily for tactical work.

THE Imperial Yeomanry and most of our colonial mounted forces are organised and trained as Mounted Rifles or Light Horse, and there are regular and volunteer units trained as Mounted Infantry ; but there is a good deal of confusion in the minds of some people as to what is the difference between Mounted Rifles and Mounted Infantry.

### **MOUNTED RIFLES**

Mounted Rifles, sometimes called Light Horse, Dragoons, &c., are *horsemen* capable of carrying out all the duties of Cavalry except shock tactics, which require a long and special training of both man and horse. Nor are they sufficiently numerous or highly trained in Infantry attack work to act as Mounted Infantry proper.

The importance of Mounted Rifles is clearly stated by Sir Edward Hutton, in the Manual for the Australian mounted troops, where he says : ‘ Good, bold horsemen, ably and intelligently led, who are capable of developing the power of modern fire-arms to the highest point, will undoubtedly exercise a controlling effect in future war.’

They are not a new invention, but a revival of the original ‘ Dragoon ’ of the days when the army was organised to consist of

Horse (Cavalry)

Foot (Infantry)

Dragoons (Mounted Rifles).

As with Cavalry, their chief weapon is their horse, and their most useful attribute is horse-mastership. They must be good shots with the rifle, and they usually have a bayonet for defence and nightwork.

Their dismounted action resembles that of Cavalry ; that is, it is generally temporary, consisting of the quick seizure of successive commanding points from which to deliver telling rifle-fire, rather than sustained action on foot away from their horses. In fact Cavalry, when not engaged in shock action manoeuvre, are themselves Mounted Rifles of the best type now that they are armed with a reliable rifle.

The standard of drill for Mounted Rifles requires that they should be able to get about rapidly across country in small bodies, seldom larger than a squadron, in good order, so as to ensure the least possible distress to the horses or confusion among the men.

They have to be efficient in reconnaissance and scouting, both for protective and intelligence purposes, and capable of long-distance raids, &c.

Their chief duties are to act with the Cavalry, in Cavalry strategical work, or to form independent flying columns, to co-operate with the other arms tactically, and to carry out pursuits, &c. These duties require that they should individually be specially bold and intelligent men, good horsemen, and good shots, but not necessarily so highly trained in collective manoeuvring power as the Cavalry.

Their best unit within the squadron, whether for training, for routine-duties, or for fighting, is the section ; that is, five men under a capable section leader.

Our Imperial Yeomanry and Colonial mounted forces are pre-eminently adapted to the above kind of work, and are generally therefore organised as Mounted Rifles.

Their value and utility in this rôle were amply demonstrated in the late campaign in South Africa.

## MOUNTED INFANTRY

Mounted Infantry, on the other hand, are primarily a tactical force intended for Infantry action pure and simple, but are mounted on cobs, or any form of conveyance best suited to the requirements of the country operated in, which will bring them most rapidly to the scene for action, but which they can then leave behind them.

They go through all the long and careful training of Infantry in the manœuvre and discipline of the sustained attack, or defence of positions, &c., and should not be employed as Cavalry, for they do not attempt the higher school of horsemanship, skill at arms, or long-distance reconnaissance, &c., and more particular work of that arm.

The idea of their organisation is to provide the general officer commanding with a mobile force of trained Infantry which he can apply at any moment at any part of the battlefield ; either for rapid seizure of important advanced positions ; for preliminary skirmishing or drawing enemy to expose his position or to deploy ; for rapid out-flanking movements ; for sudden reinforcement at any critical point, and for covering retirements, &c., &c. ; and in these days of widely extended fighting areas, their special value as a mobile support in reserve is steadily increasing.

Their chief weapons are the rifle—and the bayonet.

Mounted Infantry were used in the Peninsular War, but instead of taking a nucleus from several battalions to form a corps of Mounted Infantry, a complete battalion was mounted as a unit.

The Earl of Peterborough utilised in this way the 13th (Somersetshire) Light Infantry, and gave Cavalry commissions to the officers. To this day the officers of that regiment have the special right to wear Cavalry mess waistcoats, and are looked upon by Cavalry officers as particularly closely allied to themselves.

In the Continental armies Mounted Infantry have as yet only found favour when mounted on bicycles, or, as in Algeria, on mules.

Bicycles are generally well enough suited to the countries operated over abroad; but they have their limits of utility. Also the authorities find that, apart from the great expense in forage, the adequate mounting of the Cavalry in war is liable to be interfered with if a large number of horses are also taken for Mounted Infantry. Probably also the officers and men of their Infantry do not adapt themselves so readily as ours do to riding.

The fact that Mounted Infantry have with experience on service frequently become Mounted Rifles, and are expected to perform the work of Mounted Rifles with the Cavalry brigade, and are actually shown in some commands as the 'Cavalry' of the force, has led to considerable confusion of ideas as to their original rôle and use.

Indeed, both in Burmah and in the South African campaigns, where our enemies were typical Mounted Rifles, the Mounted Infantry, with characteristic resourcefulness, adapted themselves in a very short time to that rôle to meet the circumstances.

## ***RAIDS***

These notes were recently issued by the Inspector of Cavalry with reference to a raid practised by the Scottish Horse Imperial Yeomanry with the 17th Lancers and trained scouts of the 18th Hussars co-operating. They give, generally, instances of raids, and the necessity for careful training in peace time of men and horses for long-distance riding.

CAVALRY and Mounted Rifles have a special opening for the performance of exceedingly valuable work in war, namely, in the execution of raids against enemies' communications, supply depôts, important strategical points, &c., or for enveloping his flanks and cutting off line of retreat, &c.

Military history is full of instances of their use, and occasionally of their misuse.

It must be remembered that raids are only valuable when they are carried out with a specific purpose and in order to help other arms or forces in their operations. Too often they have been carried out by cavalry intent on 'cutting a dash' on their own account, or who have been driven to it because the generals commanding forces, not understanding the use of Cavalry, have kept them bottled up under their hand, and then complained of their uselessness.

For effective raiding a body of Cavalry must be able to cover some 200 or 300 miles and upwards at fast pace without transport. It can only accomplish this, after experience in horse-management, pace, feeding, &c., gained in peace practices by well-trained men and horses. For an inexperienced body of men to attempt it means failure, and possibly disaster.

## TRAINING NECESSARY

Individual training is everything, and must begin at the beginning.

The horse must be well balanced, that is, trained to hold itself so that it does not throw undue weight on the fore legs or strain on the hind legs; and it must be trained so that every muscle and tendon is up to its work.

The officer who won the last great long-distance race in France stated that the points which led him to select from the whole squadron the horse with which he won were, first, that it was well bred; secondly, that it was well balanced. In other respects it was not one of the best in the squadron.

The man must not only be a good rider, but also a good horseman—that is, he must understand riding his horse so as to save him as much as possible; he must understand the best ways of feeding him with gruel, sugar, cocoa, or whatever suits him best for a long strain; he must understand fitting and easing the saddlery, shoeing, minor ailments and remedies; and he must be a judge of pace for long distance, which can only come from practice in peace time. For long-distance riding, the rider must be himself in hard condition, and able to go through the strain on short allowance of food and sleep.

The strain of fatigue entailed in a raid invariably tells very soon on men unaccustomed to it, and causes them to lose heart and to 'grouse.' It is then that the good soldier comes out and shows an example of cheeriness and endurance which is often of the highest value in bucking up the 'softies.'

A noteworthy instance of men thus tired out, but playing up to the occasion, was that of Stuart's Cavalry at Gettysburg. They had done 150 miles (including crossing the Great Potomac River and fighting a fight), in three days, and were apparently knocked up when they were called upon to make an extra effort to rejoin their army, which badly wanted their help; but they rose to the occasion—as Captain Battine writes: 'They gamely

responded to their leader's call for a supreme effort to reach the battlefield. Their great raid still remains a record of what such a large body (nearly 6,000 men) of Cavalry can accomplish when they are well led and well trained. But occasions are rare when it is worth while thus to expend the strength of men and horses.'

#### WHAT IS DONE ABROAD

Although in the Peninsula the British officers were famed and respected by our enemies for their wonderful ability in long-distance riding, too little attention has been given to its practice in our army of late years. But this is not so abroad.

A valuable review of the subject, and one which should be read by every officer of Cavalry and Mounted Rifles, is contained in Chapter XVI. of Colonel Maude's book, 'Cavalry: Its Past and Future.'

As regards individual training for long-distance work, our neighbours on the Continent have all been carrying out practical experiments for some years past. At first, these produced numerous regrettable results as far as the horses were concerned, but 'you cannot make omelettes without breaking eggs,' and the lessons then learnt gave such results that now one never hears of horses being killed or knocked up, although distances and pace are much in excess of what would have been considered possible a few years ago.

[Last year one regrettable exception occurred.]

In Germany, France, Russia, Austria, and Italy, long-distance rides are an annual institution for officers of Cavalry. In Germany, in each army corps, individual officers are sent out to reconnoitre on given themes, and all garrisons are warned to be on the look-out to shoot at such, if seen. The officer who gains the best information in the shortest time, without being shot at, wins a cup presented by the Emperor.

In France, the subject was brought forward by General Gallifet in 1899, and has developed the endurance and speed of



Cavalry patrols to a very high point. Captain Geraud and five men of the 2nd Dragoons in that year made a reconnaissance of 130 miles in 40 hours 40 minutes. A group of officers of the 8th Cavalry Brigade reconnoitred 100 miles in 17 hours 52 minutes.

#### INSTANCES OF LONG-DISTANCE RIDES

In 1902, and again in 1903, international long-distance races were run on the Continent, in which 250 miles were covered in 15 hours. But in these latter the cruelty to the horses was deplorable, chiefly owing to the want of knowledge on the part of the riders.

In the French competition in 1903, Lieutenant Bausil rode from Paris to Deauville, 87 miles, in 4 hours 14 minutes.

This last year the French officers had a competition over 124 miles, the first 80 miles of which were done at a pace of from 6 to 8 miles an hour, and the last 40 at any pace desired; the average proved to be 11 miles an hour. The general condition of the horses at the end of the contest was very satisfactory, and the last part of the run took place over a course of jumps.

The practical results of this competition are stated in the report to be that 'fast long-distance riding has proved itself to be practicable for horses and men, provided that proper precautions are taken; these precautions can only be ascertained by practice and experience.' The required experience has been gained in France; long-distance riding has passed the experimental stage there, and is an accomplished fact. Their success has silenced former opponents and critics, and their teachings in horse-management and long-distance patrols are spreading throughout the cavalry; and there is no longer the cruel distress to horses which, owing to the ignorance of the art of long-distance riding, was formerly the case.

It is now known that a horse, if thoroughly trained, and ridden by a man who understands long-distance riding, can cover up to 60 miles at a rate of from 12 to 15 miles an hour.

In the final stages of the French race this year 40 miles was covered by the winner at a rate of  $14\frac{1}{2}$  miles an hour. All the riders, without exception, adopted the canter as their regular pace, with occasional halts, walks with the rider dismounted, or slow jog trots. Rate of progress is gained by maintenance of a steady pace rather than by occasionally hurrying it up.

### INSTANCES ON SERVICE

The training of men and horses for distant patrols has also occupied the attention of the American Cavalry, and has proved of the greatest value in their dealings with Indians. Colonel Dodge, United States Army, in his book on 'The Riders of Many Lands,' says: 'Knowledge of pace and the instinctive feel of the horses' condition is the highest grade of horsemanship.' Civilians are wont to think that to hunt, play polo, or win a race over a flat or over sticks, or to perform high school airs demands the highest of skill; but let anyone undertake to ride a horse, or, better, to lead a troop 100 miles in 24 hours, and, despite all he may have learnt in peaceful sports, he will find his knowledge of real horsemanship distinctly limited.'

He gives numerous instances of patrols actually carried out on service. In 1878 Colonel Mackenzie rode his command into Mexico in pursuit of Indians, beat them in a sharp fight, and returned, doing 145 miles in 28 hours. In 1874 he rode his command 85 miles in 15 hours. In 1880 Captain Wood took a patrol of eight men in pursuit of a deserter, 140 miles in 31 hours. These were not picked men or horses.

Other instances of long-distance patrols by parties of not less than a troop were as follows:

80 miles in 16 hours				
70	„	„	12	„
85	„	„	14	„
108	„	„	33	„
170	„	„	$66\frac{1}{2}$	„

The doings of larger bodies may be found in the history of wars in almost all parts of the world. Accounts of the principal raids in the American War are given in Captain Battine's new book 'The Crisis of the Confederacy.'

In studying these, officers should notice and remember which raids were useful and carried out with a reason and design, and which were useless. Thus Averell's raids, like those of De Wet in South Africa, or Mishchenko's in Manchuria, were a useless waste of men and horses in rushing about fiddling with telegraph wires and pulling up an occasional rail on the railway without any design or co-operation with other forces.

Stuart's first raid, which completely encircled the Federal army near Richmond, was, on the other hand, carried out in co-operation with General Lee's plans, in order to gain information as to the whole of the enemy's dispositions and to establish alarm both at Washington and at McClellan's headquarters. Again, Stuart's raid against Pope's communications in August 1862, in co-operation with Johnston's Infantry, was successful. His raid at Gettysburg, on the other hand, was not successful. The latest instance of a successful raid is that of the Japanese Cavalry immediately before the battle of Mukden, when, by raiding the railway in rear of the Russians and making a great demonstration with a small force, they succeeded in drawing away after them the whole of the Russian cavalry, and thus uncovering the Russian right flank to the onslaught of Nogi's army.

The Japanese also carried out several successful smaller raids. They have practised themselves fully, in peace time, in the necessary details.

#### CONCLUSION

The above remarks are not intended to be an essay on the subject of raids and long-distance riding, but are merely a few notes hastily strung together with the intention of showing what our line and standard should be in developing within our mounted

forces the ability to carry out these enterprises against enemies' communications and lines of retreat, &c.

For a force in which every horse and man has been trained to long-distance work immense possibilities are open towards accomplishing successes hitherto unthought of, especially in these days when communications depend to so large an extent on vulnerable points like railways, telegraphs, bridges, &c.

## ***HORSEMASTERSHIP FOR LONG-DISTANCE RIDING***

‘The key to efficiency in the field of all mounted troops, of whatever kind, is horsemanship, that is, ability to keep the horses fit for long and arduous work.

‘Without knowledge and experience in this art all other training is comparatively valueless.

‘To be effective such knowledge and experience must be possessed, not only by every officer but also by every man.’

This important subject was given as the theme for an essay by the students of the Cavalry School, Netheravon, last term. That written by Lieut. W. Paget-Tomlinson, 7th Hussars, was adjudged to be the best, and he accordingly won the prize offered by the Inspector of Cavalry. Lieut. G. Browne, 20th Hussars, came second with one of almost equal merit.

The following is the text of Lieut. Paget-Tomlinson's essay, together with the notes thereon by the Inspector of Cavalry.—Ed.

By ‘Horsemanship’ is meant care of the horse in the stable, at exercise, at work, and on the line of march, to enable him to perform the duties required of him without serious detriment to his efficiency. I do not intend here to treat at length of horsemanship in all its branches, but chiefly with regard to long-distance riding. By long-distance rides I don't mean long-distance races, of say 400 miles or so, like they had in Belgium some few years ago—these I consider cruel and useless. The participants in these races are enticed into them in the hopes of winning some large prize. The horse on these occasions—provided he performs the single task—is a secondary consideration, and is kept going by receiving stimulants at regular intervals on the road; he probably dies of broken heart after the race is over, and supposing he doesn't die, his constitution is so seriously damaged that he will be of little use in the future. What is wanted is that Cavalry men should be able to ride between 60

and 80 miles in the day—when called upon to do so—on active service, without unnecessarily fatiguing their horses. Most of our disappointments during the war in South Africa were in a great measure due to want of mobility in our troops, and every effort should be made to qualify them in this branch of military training. This can only be obtained by constant practice, and by observing certain fixed principles.

#### CONDITIONING THE HORSE

For a horse to be able to perform long distances he must be in perfect condition to start with. His condition depends entirely on the way he is cared for by his rider in the stable. To ensure every possible care being taken of a regiment's horses, every man, and especially every scout, of whom long-distance work is chiefly required, should be given a horse, and allowed to keep it. Nothing puts a good man out of conceit with his work so much as the practice of continually changing his horse; he no sooner gets it in good condition and looking well than it is taken away from him. It is extraordinary how keen a man gets on his horse, and how proud he is of its accomplishments, if he is certain of keeping it.

The mere fact of an officer being present at stables will not keep the horses in good condition, although no doubt it does a great deal towards it; a satisfactory result can only be ensured when the men are heart and soul in their work. It is a noticeable fact that a spare horse—although to all outward appearances he gets the same care as the remainder—never looks well; nobody thinks of stealing for him an extra feed after a long day, or taking him out to graze at odd moments. All these little things, small as they may seem, tend to keep horses fit and prepare them for any hard work that may suddenly be required of them.

#### INSTRUCTION OF THE MAN

In training men for this branch of military efficiency they should be given more latitude. In my opinion too much is done

for men coming into the army, from the time they join until they are time-expired. Everything is done for them—they are never required to think for themselves. The result is that when they suddenly find themselves alone they are quite at a loss how to act. Men serving abroad certainly do get more freedom, and are allowed to take their horses out alone, and it is extraordinary how they benefit by it, and how much more independent they become. Riding with a squadron under an officer is no practice for long-distance riding alone. They trot, walk, dismount, water and feed when they are told, and never reason amongst themselves why they do these things.

Individual practice alone will teach a man how to cover long distances in as short a time as possible without unnecessarily fatiguing his horse. A few failures will impress upon him the fact that a horse is not merely a machine that will go on for ever at any pace provided it is supplied with fuel, but a friend to be studied.

Before embarking on a long march, the first and most important consideration is a good and properly fitted saddle. The greatest care should be taken that the saddlery is in proper order—that the saddle is properly girthed up and does not oscillate.

The following points should also be impressed upon the rider, or rather he should have learnt them by practice, that steadiness and regularity of pace are all-essential factors in a successful march. Including all halts an average of five or six miles an hour should be kept up.

#### PACE

The rider should vary the pace at which he is moving—*i.e.* he should walk, trot, and canter in turn—it eases the horse. At a slow trot the horseman should support the whole weight of his body upon the inside of his thighs, the soles of his feet resting in the stirrups. He should never allow the body during the trot to touch the actual seat of the saddle; leaning forward he will in this manner relieve his horse's back of the weight of his

body, except so far as it is evenly distributed over the side bars of the saddle resting on the ribs.

He should practise changing the leading leg at the trot, so as to relieve himself and especially the horse on a long journey, but this requires a certain amount of practice to do. The same applies to the canter—the rider should canter for some time with the near fore leading and then on the off fore.

### CARE OF THE HORSE

Horses should always be walked when going up or down hill. The rider should periodically dismount and lead his horse, and always when the going down hill is bad. Besides easing the horse, the horse's back is thus relieved of the weight of the man, and the free circulation of the blood is allowed into the skin of the back under the saddle—one of the surest preventives of sore backs. Some slight veterinary knowledge on the part of the rider is absolutely essential; he should be able to detect the symptoms of minor ailments—colic for instance—and know how to treat for them. He should also carry a set of spare shoes, nails, and the necessary tools for putting them on.

Perhaps the most important point to be careful about is to ride well, to sit square and steady on your horse, and not to quit your stirrups—nothing tires a horse so much as the rider rolling about in his saddle or sitting unevenly.

With regard to the feeding and watering of the horse on the march. Horses' stomachs are small in proportion to the size of their bodies and their food requirements; it is, therefore, most advisable that, if possible, at each half-hour's halt, they should be first watered, and then, if possible, a small feed should be given. If a watering place is available on the road, the horse should be watered a mile from the halting place and then taken on quietly for the remainder of the distance; by doing this he will arrive cool, and so the chances of his catching a chill will be lessened. Horses should be watered slightly whenever possible, especially in hot climates.



## INSTRUCTIONAL RIDING

The following routine is a rough guide for instructional purposes in long-distance riding.

*First Hour*

Start.			
Walk . . .	5	} 30 minutes— $3\frac{3}{4}$ miles.	
*Trot . . .	10		
Walk . . .	5		
*Trot . . .	10		
Short halt . .	5	} Tighten girths, look round saddle &c.	
March on foot	10		
*Trot . . .	15		30 minutes— $2\frac{1}{4}$ miles

*Second Hour*

Walk . . .	10	} 30 minutes— $2\frac{1}{4}$ miles.	
*Trot . . .	5		
Short halt . .	5		
March on foot	10	} 30 minutes— $3\frac{3}{4}$ miles.	
*Trot . . .	10		
Walk . . .	5		
*Trot . . .	15		

Long halt for half an hour and small feed.

By careful attention to the principles above indicated, and by constant care, long-distance rides of sixty miles or more may be made, without serious detriment to the efficiency of horses and men.

W. PAGET-TOMLINSON.

*Extract from Notes by the Inspector of Cavalry on the Essays*

Lieut. Paget-Tomlinson's essay is the best, though there are others of merit, notably that of Lieut. Brown.

In the latter the following sentences are worthy of note :—

'The first duty of a horsemaster is to ascertain, as soon as possible, the characteristics of the horse of which he is in charge.

---

\* Most authorities prefer the canter to the trot.—Ed.

‘It is not the duty of only the officer to become an expert horsemaster, but also that of every man in the Cavalry to know something of this great art.

‘Off saddle completely when halting to rest, and allow the horse when off saddled to roll.’

With regard to Lieut. Paget-Tomlinson's essay, it may be remarked that the foreign long-distance races of which the writer speaks have, with the experience gained on the occasions to which he alludes, now lost their character for cruelty, and have since developed into a more valuable training for Cavalry officers in the art of accomplishing long distances at fast paces without undue distress to their horses. One unfortunate exception occurred last year.

The pace which is almost universally adopted for long-distance riding is the canter—as being least tiring to men and horse.

In dealing with the attitude of the rider, one important point is omitted in this essay, namely, the balance of the horse. This is a matter which at all times, but more especially in long-distance riding, requires careful study on the part of the rider. If he rides a horse which is not light in the fore-hand, or if he puts the saddle on too far forward, or adds his own weight to the horse's fore-hand by leaning forward too much, he puts an undue strain on the horse's fore-legs and shoulders, with the result that the horse tires and goes lame more easily.

The balance for long-distance riding is not the same as that for a five-furlong gallop.

Then, a little more detail as to the best way of feeding horses undergoing the extra strain of a long-distance march would have been valuable, as well as hints on their care when halting. For instance, a note would have been useful to the effect that the horse should be fed at the rate of a pound of forage an hour for the twenty-four hours, and that this should be acted up to at all halts.

Information on the various forms of condensed food would also have been useful, such as sugar (used by the French, and by the natives of India, &c.), forage biscuits, &c. Also the value of carrying meal, with which to make gruel, in preference to oats, where weight and bulk have to be economised.

Then a few examples from history would have been interesting [see article on ‘Raids’ in this CAVALRY JOURNAL], to show what standard of time and distance may be aimed at, having regard to what has been done before.

R. S. S. B.-P.

## ***THE CULTIVATION OF THE SENSE OF DIRECTION***

By MAJOR SMYTH, V.C., *The Carabiniers*

A simple method is here given of finding the way by the stars at night, which should commend itself to Cavalry officers—especially scout-masters.

AN unerring instinct guides the vast herds of springbok in their great treks across the deserts of Namaqualand to districts where rain has caused a new growth of herbage on the parched veldt. The homing impulse leads the swallows from their Algerian winter quarters to the eaves of a British cottage, and the white storks from the steppes of Russia to the Nile sources. The same power in man we dignify sometimes as a sixth sense, but might we not insert a syllable and more accurately describe it as a science, for it is both acquired and improved by practice ?

When the desert Arab points to a spot on the sky-line as the direction of an oasis ten marches away, and the line is verified by compass and map as the correct bearing, if we go to the root of the matter we are always forced to the conclusion that, inborn though it may be, he has developed his sense of direction by experience and observation ; by the use of such rough and ready methods as watching the angle between his shadow and his course, marking directions by the rising or setting of the moon or stars, by deductions from the ground, the country, the sky.

It is the same with the red man and all wild races who excel in the art of path-finding ; the same with our unsurpassed colonial scouts ; ‘ it is by the eyes of the mind, the conjoint use of his reasoning powers, that he sees, knows, and judges.’

In the last operations in Somaliland we have it on the best

authority that the Indian Camel Corps sowars, when used as despatch riders, could always be relied on to take a straight line and get through quicker than even the native Somali riders, who, trusting more to landmarks, took a less direct course. This is truly an inestimable attribute in men who, judged by our perhaps too pedantic European standard, are comparatively uneducated, yet the lack of this very attribute has been responsible for crushing disaster to civilised forces.

In our island of fogs, so densely populated that the benighted traveller is seldom out of sight of the lights of civilisation, it is not surprising that the study of the heavenly bodies is so far neglected that most people are unable to differentiate between what are to the educated the most familiar constellations, whose separate stars, if observed on the zenith with so portable an instrument as a pocket sextant or a three-inch theodolite, will give results enabling us to compute our exact position in latitude and longitude. But, should calculations of precision be beyond our aspirations, we may without any instruments fix the points of the compass by merely raising our eyes to the expanse of heaven which is spread out for our guidance.

To be able to do even this much is of untold value and a matter of no difficulty to anyone possessed of a board school education. But the star charts generally procurable are far too confusing for casual study, and the great numbers of stars studding the heavens on a moonless night are equally bewildering to the uninitiated.

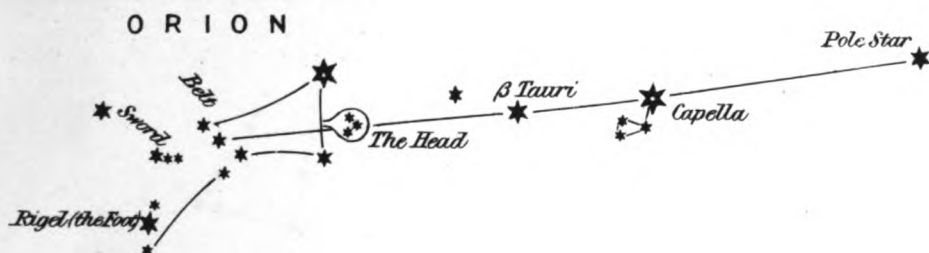
Let us simplify matters and start with the most easily recognised of all the fixed star groups, Orion, visible, between his rising and setting, from any spot on the globe, and in this way unlike, for instance, the Southern Cross, which is of course below the horizon from northern latitudes.

Pick out the different stars of Orion which are known as the head, belt, sword, and foot. A line drawn from the centre of the belt through the head leads through  $\beta$  *Tauri* (the Bull), a star of the second magnitude, past the very radiant star of the first

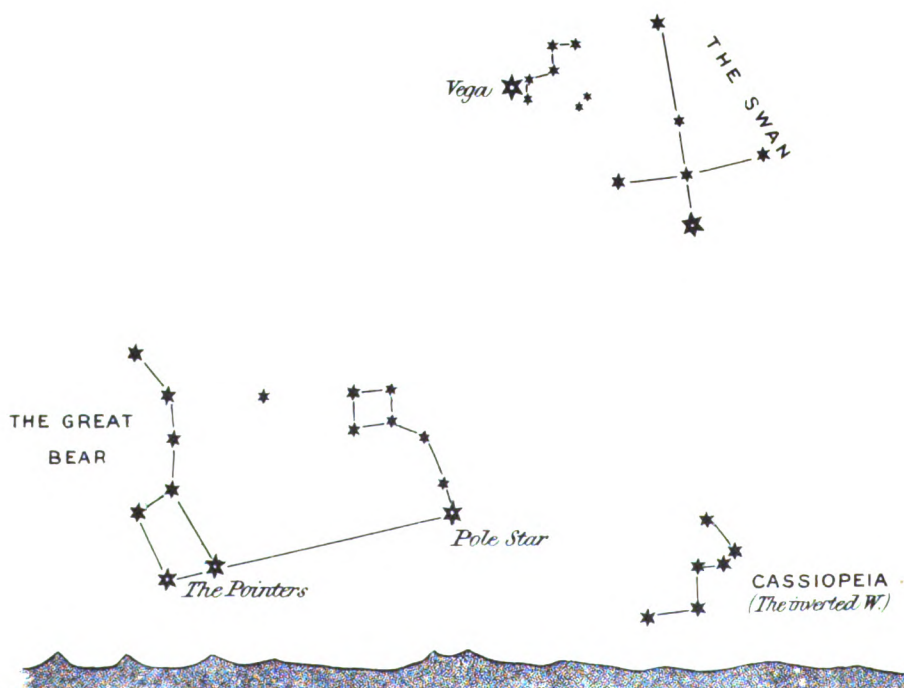
magnitude, Capella, with her triangle of small stars of third and fourth magnitudes on the west, and our line strikes the Pole Star, which gives us for our purposes the true north. The Pole Star may of course be identified by that most familiar northern constellation the Great Bear, whose two pointers are always directed to it as the Bear turns over from east to west, but when the Great Bear is below the horizon the bright stars of the inverted letter W (*Cassiopeia*) are to be seen at a corresponding distance from the Pole Star, and assist in his recognition.

Reverting now to Orion, a line drawn from the centre star of the belt through the centre star of the sword may be continued through the west star of the triangle, as it appears to the eye, of Columba (the Dove), and, leaving the flashing Canopus, of the first magnitude, to the east, it leads straight towards the imaginary point round which the southern constellations revolve, known as the South Pole, which when Orion has set may be determined by the Cross and the Triangle.

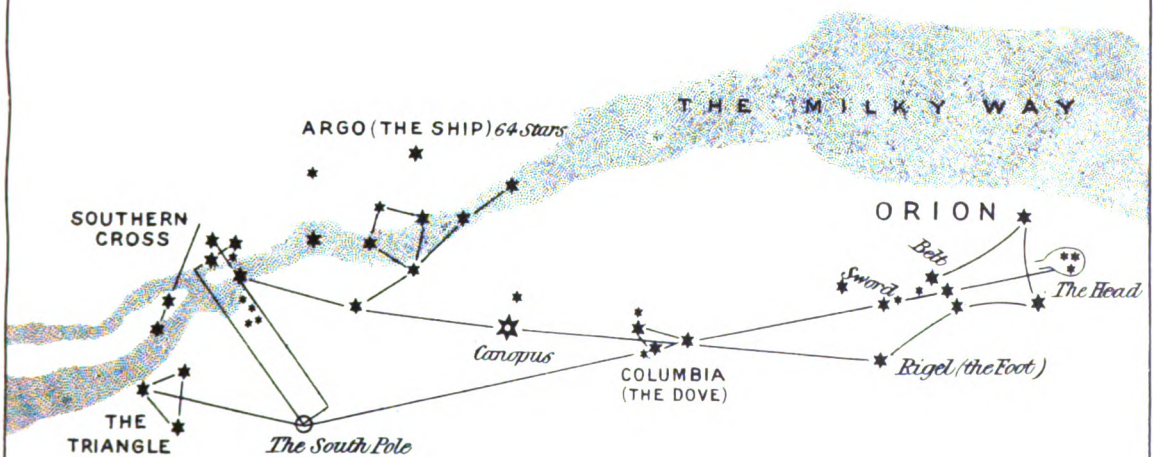
It will, perhaps, be conceded that even a superficial study of the stars on the above lines, starting from Orion, will be a useful addition to every Cavalry scout's repertory.



ORION *who always stands true N & S  
leading to the North Pole of the Heavens.*



NORTHERN STARS - GREAT BEAR about to set. The inverted W rising ORION having set is straight below the Pole Star.



ORION who always stands true North & South leading to the South Pole of the Heavens. When ORION has set the Cross & the Triangle are guides to the Pole.





## THE CAVALRY SCHOOL AT NETHERAVON

This is a short account, by Col. the Hon. J. Lindley, of the Cavalry School in England which he directs.

THE Cavalry School has been in existence such a short time that only a limited number of officers have at present been through the course, and therefore a few words describing the origin of the establishment, and the nature of the work done there, may be of interest to the readers of this journal.

With the development of the squadron system came an increased responsibility of the squadron leader, and it became recognised that the efficiency of a cavalry regiment depended very largely upon the latitude given by the commanding officer to his squadron leaders—the greater the latitude, the higher the resulting efficiency. Any increase in responsibility and decentralisation was hailed as a step in the right direction, and it came to be asked why did we not in our service follow the same system as prevailed in most foreign armies—*i.e.*, entrust the education of both horses and men from the first day of their service to their respective squadron leaders instead of, as was our custom, centralising it in the hands of the adjutant and riding-master. The answer was that the squadron leader had not the machinery at his disposal for carrying the system into effect. It was with the view of creating this machinery that the Cavalry School was formed at Netheravon in the spring of 1904; the Cavalry Riding Establishment has now been affiliated to it, and by the time these lines are in print will have left Canterbury for its new home in Wiltshire.

Learning the art of Equitation, with the view of teaching it, must therefore be considered the *raison d'être* of the existence of

the school, and the course of equitation is consequently a comprehensive one, and besides advanced riding, includes tackling, backing and breaking the young horse, and the instruction of the recruit in every progressive stage of riding, and in the effective use of his arms when mounted.

A veterinary and Cavalry engineering course are also included in the syllabus, and certificates similar to those given at Aldershot and Chatham are granted to the officers who pass in these subjects in the final examination before leaving the school.

Other subjects practised at the school are horseback sketching and reconnaissance, bivouac and billeting schemes, compass and despatch riding, tracking, &c. ; whilst during the course the Commandant gives a series of lectures on strategy and tactics, and from time to time lectures are given on special subjects by experts who come down for the purpose. Every officer is also practised in lecturing on the various duties that may fall to the cavalry soldier in the field.

The exact establishment of the school may be seen by turning to p. 29 in the Army Estimates (1905-06) ; but in considering the figures there given it must be remembered that in addition to the two courses held annually for the regulars, there are five Yeomanry classes of approximately thirty officers and non-commissioned officers between February and August of each year.

For the regulars there are two courses annually, one for officers, the other for non-commissioned officers, the former lasting six and the latter eight months ; to each of these classes all cavalry regiments at home or in the colonies send two representatives. Each officer brings two and each N.C.O. one trained horse with him (except officers and N.C.O.s of regiments in the Colonies, for whom trained horses are provided on their arrival), and on the day of joining is allotted an untrained remount which at the end of the course is inspected by a representative of the Remount Department, and if considered thoroughly trained, is passed into

## THE CAVALRY SCHOOL AT NETHERAVON 51

the army for use as a charger, trooper, or for whatever it is considered best suited.

The school, apart from discipline, is under the Director of Military Training at the War Office, but it goes without saying that its progress is closely watched by the Inspector of Cavalry, whose duty it is to officially inspect it.

For the moment the school is severely handicapped by temporary shortage of instructors, and by the fact that although it has been two years included in the Estimates, there are at present insufficient permanent quarters for its accommodation at Netheravon; this necessitates an annual winter migration, and in addition a spring move of the entire personnel (in 1904 the school was at Bordon for the winter and at the present moment it is accommodated in a tin hutment at Bulford). It is sincerely to be hoped that these drawbacks will be speedily removed, when there is every reason to suppose that the school not only will not fall short of the high standard those most interested in it have set up, but may become recognised as the institution where the many Cavalry problems of the day are studied, and the various questions arising out of them threshed out and followed to their legitimate conclusions.

### *THE DEVELOPMENT OF MOUNTED INFANTRY TRAINING AT HOME*

A short account of the expansion of the system of training at present carried out in the United Kingdom.

For a first article on Mounted Infantry, I think that readers interested in the subject may like to hear of the developments which have taken place in Mounted Infantry training at home since its institution by Major (now Major-General Sir Edward) Hutton in 1888.

The training began with one company quartered in the Cavalry barracks and mounted on Cavalry horses. Later, cobs (about 120) were bought, on which this company was mounted, and at the end of the summer's training they were sold by auction at Tattersall's, some of them fetching very good prices, £60 and more.

This system obtained for two or three years, and then it was decided to keep up a permanent establishment of cobs for one company and train all the year round.

The officers and men were chosen in various ways, which changed from time to time, the first system being to have Irish, English, Highland, Fusilier, Light Infantry, or Rifle companies, composed of four sections from different Infantry battalions of that nationality or description, and styled Highland company, Light Infantry company, &c.

Later, this was changed, and companies were sent by districts from battalions quartered in those districts, and styled Eastern District company, &c.

This system was in force up to the South African war.

## MOUNTED INFANTRY TRAINING AT HOME 53

The duration of the training varied from six weeks to two and a half months.

In the meantime the small permanent staff, consisting of the commanding officer (who was really a D.A.A.G. on the head-quarter staff at Aldershot, and only commanded the Mounted Infantry amongst many other multifarious duties), the adjutant (who was not seconded, and was therefore only lent under protest by an Infantry battalion), the sergeant-major (who was not a warrant officer, but only an acting appointment), a few other non-commissioned officers, and the 120 cobs, led a chequered existence, and laid their heads where they could.

As a rule the mess was in an old condemned wooden hut, the officers were living in married quarters (I have a vivid recollection of it as my first near acquaintance with a kitchen range), the office was anywhere where it could force an entrance, the men lived in any spare accommodation that could be found in Marlborough lines, and the cobs were stabled in the Royal Artillery lines, half a mile away or more.

In the summer a second company was generally raised, and mounted on Cavalry horses, and the camps at Bourley, Jersey Brow, &c., will be well remembered by all old Mounted Infantry officers and men.

A company or two was also trained at the Curragh, and in 1898 a battalion was formed for the Cavalry manoeuvres on Salisbury Plain, composed of two companies trained at Aldershot and two at Hounslow, three of the four being mounted on Cavalry horses.

When the war broke out this system produced the first two Mounted Infantry battalions which went out, and these were the only Aldershot-trained Mounted Infantry in South Africa, a fact which is sometimes overlooked by critics who wondered why the rest were not all up to their standard.

After the war was over, and it was decided that Mounted Infantry must be trained on a far larger scale, proper permanent staffs were provided and the present training centres at

Longmoor (Aldershot), Bulford (Salisbury Plain), and Kilworth (Ireland) established, on exactly the same principles as the old Aldershot training school, but with the important difference that this development will produce on mobilisation from battalions quartered at home, twenty battalions instead of two.

The present system is that every Infantry battalion quartered at home (exclusive of Guards, who have not yet been included in the scheme) shall have a company of Mounted Infantry trained ready for use as such, if required, on mobilisation. To this end battalions of the Aldershot Army Corps, and of the Eastern command south of the Thames, send companies to be trained at Longmoor, all other battalions quartered in England, Scotland, and Wales send them to Bulford, and battalions in Ireland to Kilworth.

There are about 80 battalions quartered at home, exclusive of Guards, which gives 80 Mounted Infantry companies = 20 battalions.

When the scheme is in full working order, these 20 battalions will be trained annually, five at a time, for four trainings each of three months, January–March, April–June, July–September, October–December, two at Longmoor, two at Bulford, and one at Kilworth.

The training thus goes on incessantly all the year round, winter and summer.

At Longmoor complete Mounted Infantry companies come from the Infantry battalions, and this system has been found far more satisfactory than that of composite companies made up of four sections of different regiments.

The experiment has been tried, and with success, of sending a double company just as it stands (after eliminating any very old or fat or obviously unsuitable men), and there is no fear, from the Mounted Infantry point of view, but that the right sort of officers and men will somehow or the other drift into the Mounted Infantry company or double company of the battalion.

NOTE.—The strength of the Mounted Infantry company being

about the same as that of a squadron, an infantry company is too small and a double company is too big.

To test the system Sir John French has ordered a concentration of the Mounted Infantry of the Aldershot Army Corps during the past two summers, and this year five Mounted Infantry battalions, one from each brigade (except Guards), were encamped together for three days, and mounted on Mounted Infantry cobs, Cavalry, R.A., R.E., and A.S.C. horses for his inspection in the field.

Each Infantry brigade found its own Mounted Infantry battalion complete, *i.e.* battalion commander and staff, one company from each of the battalions of the brigade, and pom-pom and Maxim sections, and Sir John French expressed himself as satisfied with the result, which should save us, in a future campaign, from having to hastily raise untrained Mounted Infantry, as had to be done in South Africa to supplement the two original Aldershot trained battalions.

The new scheme has so far only reached its full development at Longmoor, where we now have two battalions always under training and all our buildings and institutions well on the road to completion.

At Bulford four companies are now training, and by next year they should have their two battalions.

Kilworth, for want of accommodation and delay in their building, is worst off, and has only been able, so far, to train a battalion in the summer, and in winter has had to shrink to a company quartered at Longford.

A. J. GODLEY, *Colonel*

*Commandant School of Instruction for Mounted Infantry.*



### *THE CAVALRY LESSONS OF THE WAR*

By the courtesy of 'The Times' we are able to publish extracts from the admirable letter of their special correspondent, which appeared under the above heading in that paper on the 23rd of last August.

THE prime value of Cavalry lies in its mobility. As an actual fighting unit in battle a body of Cavalry is much inferior to an equal body of Infantry. The discrepancy is less marked if the Cavalryman carries a rifle, but there is always the encumbrance of the horses, which require the attention of one man in every four when the rifle is employed.

Cavalry has been conspicuous not by its absence, but by its utter and astonishing ineffectiveness. From Liau-yang northwards both armies have occupied part of the level plain traversed by the Liau river. The right of the Russian army and the left of the Japanese have faced each other for nearly twelve months, in country as flat as a billiard table and as suitable for Cavalry evolutions as any of the low countries in which the famous leaders of last century made their reputations.

The cause of the ineffectiveness of Japanese Cavalry is not far to seek. The men are the most intelligent of the Japanese soldiers, and their many fine patrol performances are evidence of the sound methods in which they have been trained. The weakness lies in the poor quality of the horses and the fact that the Russian cavalry outnumbers them by six to one. Marked inferiority of force, in all forms of rivalry, is a fatal disadvantage, and it is for this reason that the Japanese have failed to shine in the rôle which experience has assigned to Cavalry. The Russian

Cavalry, on the other hand, is estimated to number 30,000 sabres, a force of mounted men which, in the circumstances, ought to have made the lives of the Japanese commanders on the flank of the army a burden to them. Instead of which, life in the rear of the Japanese front has been a sinecure, a positive *dolce far niente*, undisturbed even by the distant flash of any of these sabres.

Is this a proof that, if the sabres had been rifles, something could have been accomplished? Very far from it. It is because the Russian Cavalry, armed as it is with rifle and—shade of Seydlitz!—bayonet, is trained to fight only on foot, thereby throwing away its most valuable weapon, mobility, that it has proved no more effective in the field than a flock of sheep. That the microscopic force of Japanese Cavalry has held the Russian throughout the campaign, an exceedingly remarkable performance when it is remembered how indifferently the Japanese are mounted, testifies clearly enough that there must be something futile about the arming and training of the Russians.

The history of the Japanese Cavalry in this war consists of one long record of laborious observation; an eternal alertness, to compensate for lack of numbers and of mobility. There have been brilliant episodes, such as the reconnaissances from Feng-hwang-chenn to the north-east of Mukden, and from the Sha-ho to the neighbourhood of Kharbin. But where the tactics in which they are trained might have been employed the Japanese have been compelled to hold off. Almost invariably, when they have met the Russian Cavalry they have had to face a superior force, and where numbers were equal they had still to deal with men much more heavily mounted, and of considerably longer reach. It is not the policy of the Japanese to risk their slender force of irreplaceable Cavalry in quixotic tilting; the men and horses are needed for indispensable scouting and reconnoitring. And so we have seen nothing of the shock tactics that the Cavalryman dreams of in his sleep, and the mere thought of which makes the Mounted Infantryman gnash his teeth.

Immensely superior in numbers, the Russians showed themselves devoid of any initiative whatever, unless that of harrying the unfortunate Chinese villages constitutes a legitimate *raison d'être*. They failed as cavalry and they failed as riflemen, and the reason of the failure was that they are neither flesh, fowl, nor good red herring. They are organised as Cavalry, but have been trained to dismount on service. In peace they are armed with lance and sword, and in war they are asked to fight with rifle and bayonet.

Shock tactics in the days of muzzle-loading rifles were understood to mean the assault of Infantry by masses of Cavalry. How effective a Cavalry charge could be is within the knowledge of all who dip into military history. But the magazine rifle, which permits the firing of many shots per man in a short period of time, has rendered the chances of Cavalry onslaught exceedingly remote. Shock tactics in these days refer to the shock of Cavalry against Cavalry. Yet at Mukden it is undeniable that well-handled Cavalry might have ridden over the Japanese Infantry time after time. No observer of events and things in this war can doubt that the advent of a sufficient body of hard-riding lancers and swordsmen would have severely tried Japanese nerves.

The Russian Cavalry has been trained to fight dismounted, and the result is that the Russians have divested themselves of the one arm which, many keen observers believe, might have availed to turn the tide in their favour. The battle of Mukden was a great defeat, though not an overwhelming disaster. At one period the result absolutely hung in the balance, and it is no wild statement to say that, if the Russian Cavalry had been armed and trained in orthodox Cavalry fashion, and handled in a manner consistent with Cavalry tradition, Mukden would have proved a drawn battle. It is my firm belief—a belief shared with many others more competent to judge—that, if French, with

10,000 British Cavalry, had been given a free hand early in the war on the Russian side, there would have been no necessity for Kuropatkin to retire from his strong position at Liao-yang. And I have no less hesitation in saying that, if the same able commander, with such a Cavalry force as I have mentioned, had been attached to the Japanese side at Liao-yang or at Mukden, there would be no Russian army in Manchuria to-day.

The Japanese, inhabiting a hilly country practically devoid of wide plains, and having comparatively little use and small liking for horses, have restricted the Cavalry arm in their military organisation to the smallest possible dimensions. The war has brought home to them the value of Cavalry, and one of the very first reforms in their army will be the augmentation of the mounted branch of service. The Japanese are an eminently practical people. From the weakness in their own Cavalry, and from the consciousness that properly-handled Russian Cavalry could have played havoc with their dispositions in action and in inaction, they have learnt the Cavalry lesson, and they mean to profit by it. It is impossible to observe events in the war, and to discuss the question with Japanese officers and officers of many foreign armies, without being forced to the conclusion that the Japanese are sound in their interpretation of the Cavalry lesson—that genuine Cavalry, and plenty of it, is essential to an army.

---

#### SOME REMARKS BY A JAPANESE STAFF OFFICER

There were few instances in which a large Cavalry corps acted independently at any considerable distance from its main army. The services of the Cavalry were principally required for the protection of an army's flank, or for threatening the enemy's flank. In such flanking duty, the side in possession of the superior force of Cavalry, if judiciously made use of, was always able to occupy a strategically superior position. This had a twofold advantage, directly on the fighting line, and indirectly in cutting the

enemy's line of communications, thus obliging him to abandon his position.

In the battle of Telitsu the left flank of Oku's army was exposed to the enemy, and it was the Cavalry's duty to protect it. The Russians, who were in possession of a superior Cavalry force, fortunately did not attack this flank, but had they done so would have greatly hindered our movement towards Liao-yang, and would have disturbed our pre-arranged scheme.

The need for Cavalry was especially apparent after the battle of the Hung river was frozen, and our left flank was exposed to grave danger. General Mishchenko's action at the time was strategical, but fortunately his scheme failed. Had we been in possession of a superior force of Cavalry at this time, and thus been able to demonstrate in the district west of Mukden, as Mishchenko did, we should undoubtedly have inflicted great damage on the enemy.

At the battle of Mukden the need for cavalry was intensified. Had we been in possession of a Cavalry force sufficiently powerful to have made a wide turning movement, it would have greatly contributed towards the enemy's annihilation. All these facts tend to the conclusion that the Cavalry strength of an army should be the maximum that circumstances permit.

Those who read the foregoing remarks, and also the extracts from the article which appeared in 'The Times' of August 23, 1905, on the Cavalry lessons of the war, cannot fail to be impressed with the stress which is laid on the possession of an adequate force of Cavalry, in sufficient proportion to co-operate efficiently with the Infantry and Artillery of an army in the field.

The proportion at present in vogue is :

Germany, 5 squadrons to every 6 battalions of Infantry.

France, 3 " " " 5 " " "

Russia, 7 " " " 12 " " "

England, 9 " " " 22 " " "

## *INTERNATIONAL STRATEGY*

The following synopsis of a lecture delivered by Dr. T. Miller-Maguire, M.A., at the Royal United Service Institution on November 29, 1905, gives interesting food for reflection both in England and in our Colonies :—

PITT said in 1805 : ‘ Roll up that map of Europe, it will not be required for ten years.’

We may say of every map of the world at large, as it existed in 1871 : ‘ Roll it up, it will never be required again.’

Since that date the frontiers of our Empire, which previously were practically conterminous with no great State except the United States and a few unimportant spots in Africa, have become by what Niox calls the ‘ European Expansion ’ conterminous with Russia, France, and Germany, as well as China, Afghanistan, Abyssinia, Italy, and Portugal.

Changes in the whole system of the European body politic resulting from the victories of 1866 and 1870–1, and the very high standard of military excellence since maintained by Germany.

Aims and ambitions of Germany ; industrial and intellectual triumphs ; pursuit of ‘ knowledge, which is power ’ ; Dual and Triple Alliances ; necessity for, and direction of, German expansion. It is quite absurd to ridicule or be jealous of Germany. It would be much more sensible to try to rival her industry and intelligence.

Absurd prophecies of professional and party politicians. Prophecy of the ruin of the United States as a nation in 1862–3 ; of the certainty of peace, 1870 ; of the impossibility of Russia reaching Merv after its failure at Constantinople, 1878 ; Russia’s expansion.

Theory as late as 1898—even after the British evacuated Port Arthur—that Russia in Asia could be stopped by England alone.

Russia's expansion ; Canada's expansion ; and United States' expansion to the Pacific. Utter failure of ordinary politicians to see the importance of inter-continental railways or canals or new routes to the valley of the Euphrates and the Persian Gulf.

Complete misapprehension of the value of British Columbia and of the West Indian Isles—the very focus of international commerce and strategy for ages, and now more important than ever. (See Mahan.)

Napoleon looked much further into the future than any European statesman outside Berlin and St. Petersburg. He saw that Europe must in due time give way to Asia again. European thought and art and machinery and religion utterly futile when applied by Europeans to Asiatics. Not one European race has ever produced any permanent impression on Asiatics.

These may use their inventions and machinery, but the gulf is there, not to be fathomed ; it may be slightly bridged over only, never filled.

Modern European civilisation paltry, and in many respects utterly contemptible. The state of the upper classes and the poor classes. Rise of Japan explained. The 'Souls of Man ignored in the back streets of large cities and in the sweltering sweating dens. But the soul and mind are all in all to the Asiatic. . . . 'Cherish our bodies, cultivate our minds, and give us back our souls,' should be the cry if we are to maintain our strategic position.

Policy pursued by Japan, intellectual and military and social, before and since 1894. Brilliant results. Comparison between the Japanese in the east of Asia in 1905 and the British in the west of Europe, 1805.

United States. Americans very decided, bold, and enterprising since 1783 ; they challenged England, 1812, but in spite

of enormous expansion in territory, were not welded together till the great Civil War.

War is not a disease, but is a preventive of decay. Utter inanity of calling war a disease or ferocious folly. It would be as reasonable to call jurisprudence or surgery a disease.

Nations have perished by cultivating the arts of peace ; no nation ever perished or decayed or got diseased by cultivating the arts of war. (See Bacon, see Marsh, see Herbert Spencer.)

Nations are enormously elevated by war, and skilful preparation for war conduces to national improvement in literature, morals, and health. (See Byron, Burke, Milton, Shakespeare, Edmund Spenser, Chaucer, Virgil.)

America as a World Power. War with Spain ; seizure of strategic positions of the first importance. The 'Monroe Doctrine' : Mere impudence at first sight, but a fine international theory supported by force. . . . the only counsel of perfection to which the vast majority of men have paid the least regard, either before or since 1871. Hague Conventions : Mere wind. Arbitrations mostly ingenious frauds ; 'springes to catch woodcocks.' Let me ask one simple question : Why did not the United States arbitrate about the Confederacy, about Cuba, the Philippines, and the Monroe Doctrine ? Will they submit the principles and application of this doctrine to International Law experts even now ?

President Roosevelt's recent speeches. . . . The Panama Canal.

Value of Alliances. But they are often the devices of the feeble decadent States ; they certainly never saved any State. The future of Britain now, as in the period 1805 to 1815, depends on Britons.

The position of the Chinese. The greatest reserve of military and industrial force that ever existed. Consequences of the neglect of the art of war. As to commerce and labour, the European masses, as Colonel Browne and Mr. Bancroft say, are in a 'position of hopeless inferiority.'



Every condition of international strategy in 1905 differs from those in 1871, except in one respect, to wit, that self-denying nations, whose people ignore games and luxury, and worship honour and knowledge, and prepare for war in time of peace, will always defeat ill-prepared, ignorant nations, badly led, however numerous or brave.

The only true foundation of 'the Greatness of Kingdoms and Estates' is a race of well-trained military men, fit to fight by land and sea. A State which is not fit for war, under modern conditions, is not only diseased, but dying.

These views exemplified in two recent treatises, *i.e.* Baron Suyematsu's 'Risen Sun,' and 'The War in the Far East' by the military correspondent of the *Times*; as well as in the works of Napier, Alison, Gibbon, Bacon, Tacitus, Cicero, Thucydides, and Euripides.

## CAVALRY: ITS TRUE FUNCTIONS IN MODERN WAR

BY CHARLES SYDNEY GOLDMAN <sup>1</sup>

The views of several foreign critics on the Cavalry lessons of the South African war are dealt with—The abnormal conditions of that war—Offensive and defensive action—The importance of mobility.

OUR foreign critics are inclined to assume that we have drawn deductions from our experiences in the war in South Africa which are antagonistic to the employment of Cavalry except in the rôle of Mounted Infantry.

If this assumption were based upon the Army Order issued in 1903 on the subject of the future employment of Cavalry, in which it was laid down that the carbine (or rifle) will henceforth be considered as the 'Cavalry soldier's principal weapon,' it is possible that there would be some justification for such an opinion, but expert opinion in this country has decided that the substitution of dismounted for mounted action as the principal rôle of Cavalry is not warranted in the light of our dearly bought experience.

It is interesting, therefore, to consider the conditions which existed in South Africa, and to see how far they were normal and how far they justify foreign criticism of past action or future intention, as well as to consider the views of foreign writers themselves.

For this purpose let us consult the pages of General von Pelet-Narbonne, of the Prussian Cavalry, who is well known

<sup>1</sup> Note by MANAGING EDITOR.—Mr. C. Sydney Goldman, author of *With General French and the Cavalry in South Africa*, was one of the original promoters of this journal.

in England as a high authority and a thoroughly impartial critic where we are concerned.

The text of his article we give in a foot-note.<sup>1</sup> To many of his facts we cannot from personal knowledge unreservedly subscribe, but the main conclusions are certain—that had it been

<sup>1</sup> As to the British Cavalry, in order to understand their relatively small achievements in the early days of the campaign until Lord Roberts took over the command, it must be borne in mind that it was at that time scattered about under conditions which rendered it difficult, if not impossible, to concentrate and employ it as a whole.

When circumstances changed, and a Cavalry Division had been formed and had been placed under the enterprising command of General French, it proceeded to contribute very materially by its exertions to the success of the operations, and that in spite of the great defects which were peculiar to it.

If under the circumstances anything at all material was achieved, then it was only due to the personality of its leader and to nothing else.

In many cases where the Cavalry might have acted decisively they were prevented from doing so, owing to the complete exhaustion of the horses due to the want of food or to the neglect of or, indeed, want of opportunities of watering them.

This last difficulty was a peculiarity of the theatre of war, and in Europe can scarcely assume the same proportion, and sufficient water is more indispensable than the provision of sufficient food. Even in dismounted combat the Cavalry did little. On February 16, 1900, at the engagement of Drieduit, the dismounted men of two brigades, in spite of the support of Mounted Infantry and twenty-four guns, did not succeed in turning a rearguard of the Boers amounting to about 100 men out of a good position.

The great deficiencies of this Cavalry could not be overcome even by the energy and enterprise of such a man as General French; but the campaign teaches us, nevertheless, that to-day Cavalry can still bring about decisive results even when pitted against a formidable enemy.

I cannot attach the same importance which is assigned to it by Number 33 der Kriegsgeschichten Schriften, to the so-called charge of the Cavalry Division on the Modder River on February 15, 1900, since the superiority of the Cavalry Division over the 900 Boers with three guns distributed over fronts of 4,500 yards was altogether overwhelming, and their charge was moreover supported by the fire of nine batteries and two heavy field guns, but the losses of nineteen killed and wounded, together with thirty-two horses, were quite unusually trivial. If the attempt seemed to an English officer, who actually rode in the charge, as altogether hopeless, and he claims to speak for others also, who evidently had the idea that only few would ever return from it alive, this suffices to me as proof of the erroneous and damaging conceptions of their duties to which a false training of the troops in peace can lead.

But this point is of interest, that the moral impression of the galloping mass

possible to bring our horses on to the field in the full and normal condition which would obtain in European warfare all the results that Von Pelet-Narbonne indicates could have been fully and abundantly achieved.

If it is concluded that a change of tactical principle is to be assumed from the conclusions derived from the Boer War it is important to inquire whether such change is based upon these

of Cavalry upon the otherwise unsusceptible Boers, who, however, had already stood up to a heavy artillery fire, proved altogether demoralising and spread its action round even to the camps of the commandoes lying further away to the rear.

In any case, the consequent relief of Kimberley is exclusively due to the action of the Cavalry Division, which might have found itself in a position to end the whole campaign then and there, had French not been led off on a side issue in the pursuit of the besiegers of Kimberley. This mistaken action broke down his horses without purpose and delayed him from attaining the main objective, which was unquestionably the rounding up the force under Cronjé.

Nevertheless, he succeeded, in spite of this mistaken movement, in anticipating the Boers at Koedoesdrift on February 17 and holding them with the help of his horse batteries and some 1,000 of his own men fighting dismounted, all day long until the Infantry could arrive on the scene. Since the horses were too exhausted to ride a charge, as an attempt which was actually made, sufficiently proved, the result which finally led to the capture of Cronjé must in fairness be attributed to the dismounted form of action, which here, although on the offensive at Drieput attained nothing, on the defensive fully justified this employment. Again, in the fighting round Paardeberg on the next day, the Cavalry Division intervened with dismounted skirmishers, thus hindering the further withdrawal of the enemy.

In the further advance on Bloemfontein after Cronjé's surrender the Cavalry Division were again directed upon the lines of retreat of such detachments of Boers as still held their ground. When after the engagement at Poplar Grove the British Infantry had got the Boers on the run, French was only 5,000 yards from their line of retreat, and might with care have annihilated them had his exhausted horses been capable even of a trot. All he could do was to follow the flying Boers slowly. Had it been possible to put in the Cavalry at the right place in time, the result probably would have been the capture of the last remaining commandoes in the field and possibly also of President Kruger, who happened to be with them, an event which would probably have brought about the end of the war.

Since there was no opposing Cavalry, the task of the British horsemen was materially simplified. The Boers can only be characterised as Mounted Infantry; but it is, nevertheless, worth while pointing out that one of their commandoes under Delarey on March 7, 1903, at Tweebosch, by attacking at a gallop and firing from the saddle, succeeded in dispersing an English detachment of 1,200 men, of whom no less than 900 men were mounted.

conclusions only, or upon a study of modern warfare under normal conditions.

If the first is the case, it is important to consider if the conditions of the Boer War were such as to enable us to draw sound conclusions from the events which occurred. If these conditions were sufficiently normal for a decision to be arrived at respecting the use of Cavalry in the future, has a right conclusion been made?

As a matter of fact, the conditions which obtained in the war of 1899-1902 may for the following reasons be considered as entirely abnormal:

1. There was no equality of training between the forces engaged. The result was, that one side was practically reduced *ab initio* to a defensive rôle under conditions which were peculiarly favourable—e.g. the great extent of the country which was the scene of operations, the physical difficulties of the district, which was very sparsely inhabited, the absence of any point vital to the system of defence, &c.

The offensive action taken temporarily in Natal was due to local conditions, came early to an absolute standstill, and was finally abandoned.

2. The extraordinary length of our 'line of communication' made supply, especially of horses and draught animals, extremely difficult.

The result was that horses arrived at the front in a perfectly useless condition, and after the first few weeks of 1900, the Cavalry as an effective force had almost ceased to exist. Even late in 1901 this difficulty had not been overcome. The strategical plan of campaign subsequent to the occupation of Bloemfontein and the insufficiency of organisation aggravated this state of affairs. Had the enemy possessed any organisation worth the name, or any leader possessing an even elementary knowledge of strategy, the occupation of Pretoria could only have been followed by its hasty evacuation.

At all events, any deduction for future use based upon this

campaign should be made with great care and after due consideration. But if every care is taken to balance these questions correctly, has a correct decision been arrived at, which assumes that the rifle is the principal weapon of the mounted man in the future?

Apparently this theory is based on the assumed fact that during the war a handful of dismounted riflemen 'held off' comparatively large bodies of Cavalry, and were able to secure the retirement unmolested of the remainder of the force. The argument which might be drawn from this fact, if fact it really is, would appear to be that the Cavalry were not sufficiently energetic and mobile in dealing with opposition of this kind, and a criticism of its previous training or of the higher leading might be justified. At the same time, such criticism, to be correct, must take into account such factors as the special circumstances of each case, the orders issued by Head Quarters, comparative values of armament, &c.

At most, the events of the war, for the purposes of argument, would seem to show that a mobile force, given plenty of room and a superior firearm, can, by defensive action, temporarily restrict the action of the Cavalry arm to a limited extent.

To do this most effectively it must have plenty of space and be opposed by a mounted force whose power of action mounted has been practically destroyed.

Even then, in nearly all conditions of modern warfare we must expect that the defensive rôle has a limit to its action, and that sooner or later the force bent on avoiding a definite conclusion, must be forced to abide by the issue of a pitched battle.

It may certainly be expected, that where the strategical conception of a plan of campaign is limited to the occupation of so-called capitals, and where such elementary considerations as making the enemy's field force the strategical objective are entirely neglected, great opportunity will be given to that enemy to give powerful expression to a defensive plan of action.

The offensive action of the component parts of the force which is hampered by such conceptions of the art of war is not likely to be very effective or to produce very decisive results.

And one result will assuredly be that in many minds the effectiveness of purely defensive tactics will gain an exaggerated importance.

The highest expression of Cavalry action is the vigorous offensive, and to train it in a fashion mainly applicable to the defence must be looked upon as a new and doubtful tactical principle.

If under the adverse circumstances, such as want of food, want of water, low condition in the horses due to sea voyage and the hurry of railway concentration, the Cavalry could attain such results as they actually did, how much greater may we reasonably estimate their possibilities under normal conditions! Further, Von Pelet-Narbonne seems hardly to have realised the numerical insufficiency of our horsemen for their task. With a combatant strength which probably at no time exceeded 2,800 sabres, French was at any time liable to the attack of from 5,000 to 7,000 Boers; the Boers being in their own country and on salted horses.

Had he even disposed of, say, double the number of horsemen, the higher command would never have been compelled to place restrictions, which may well have been necessary under the circumstances, on the initiative of the independent Cavalry commander.

The term Cavalry Division as employed by Von Pelet-Narbonne implies independence in its leader, but this is precisely what the Cavalry Division subsequent to Ramdam never enjoyed. Employed independently, as at Colesberg, it sufficiently showed what it could do.

If the principle to which we have referred were accepted, let us see how it would apply to the conditions on our Indian frontier. As against our possible native enemies there is and has never been any doubt that a vigorous offensive and pursuit with cold steel are the predominant qualities. Precision of drill, hence accurate manœuvring of large bodies, is of main importance, but against possible European opponents the case is somewhat

different. Here, if we choose our own theatre of operations, there are great rolling expanses of veldt, where divisions, even corps of Cavalry, can manœuvre without let or hindrance, and we shall have to meet an enemy who is perfectly aware of all the facts.

Before 1879 the Russians carried the Mounted Infantry ideas to the utmost extreme. The results around Plevna and in other districts were simply pitiable. Since that date their ideas have undergone a complete revolution, and the spirit which breathes through their instructions is as vigorous as any in Europe. In 1879, General Gourko, who had most unfortunate experiences with his Cavalry in the Balkans, issued the following order :

‘The increased importance of fire will necessitate Cavalry acting on foot more frequently than formerly. But, notwithstanding the great importance which this method of action has acquired, we must not indulge in dangerous imaginations : on the contrary, we must bear in mind that Cavalry must always be more redoubtable mounted than on foot.’

The principal elements of the strength of Cavalry are rapidity of movement, which enables it to take advantage of even momentary disorder in the enemy’s ranks, the possibility of appearing suddenly at a point where it is not expected, and the irresistible force of the shock of collision.

Subsequently, in 1890, the Grand Duke Vladimir gave expression to the same idea in the following order :

‘Cavalry must seek to develop power of manœuvre on the part of the troop, and *coup d’œil*, presence of mind, and decision on the part of officers.

‘It must be admitted that the chief strength of Cavalry rests, before everything else, on the use of the horse and the *arme blanche* ; dismounted action will, therefore, only be resorted to in exceptional circumstances.’

If we were committed to the defensive rôle of the rifle as our principal weapon in the stationary fire fight, how should



we stand as against our possible opponents, whose training teaches them to fight mounted when they can, dismounted only when they must. The essence of Cavalry action is mobility—to dismount means to sacrifice mobility. Can we or any other Power afford to sacrifice the advantages of surprise and initiative, of all, in fact, which mobility confers? When men are trained to fight principally on the defensive, they are always looking for defensive opportunities. They do not ask how can we surprise the enemy, but how can we prevent the enemy surprising us; and whilst looking for a favourable field of fire they overlook the facilities for concealed approach.

It is not to be inferred from this that I belong to the extreme school—if indeed any such exists—who maintain that there have been no changes in the methods of employing Cavalry in the field; nor do I hold that the possession of a firearm of necessity ties Cavalry to the defensive. On the contrary, I fully realise that occasions may—in fact, must—arise, according to the ground over which the Cavalry is working, in which they will be compelled to dismount, leave their horses, and attack; but whether that attack will succeed or not must depend on the mobility which enables them to reach the place at the right time to achieve their purpose.

Again, Cavalry—thanks to its mobility—can break off a dismounted action and renew it again at some other place and time; but in every case the mobility depends ultimately on the individual training of man and horse, and this training cannot be implanted unless the man is taught to look upon his horse (his sabre) as the primary condition of his purpose.

That this is the view generally held in all Continental Cavalries may be inferred from the writings of such authorities as General von Bernhardt, Von Pelet-Narbonne, General von Kleist, and others.

Thus, Von Pelet-Narbonne in his pamphlet,<sup>1</sup> 'The Indispen-

<sup>1</sup> *Beiheft Militär-Wochenblatt*, 1904. Verlag Ernst Siegfried Mittler und Sohn, Berlin.

sable Conditions of Success for Cavalry in the next European War,' says: 'The Cavalry must be thoroughly conversant with dismounted skirmishing fighting, whose importance must be impressed upon them by the highest commanders, who must inspect them, not only occasionally, but thoroughly, and also in large bodies. The time for thorough training in these duties can only be found if they are confined strictly to the practical requirements of active service. Rapid dismounting and extension in skirmishing lines, quick mounting and withdrawals without any attention to precise order, operations on horseback in every kind of ground in order, ultimately, to fight dismounted, these are all-important subjects for exercise. But the fundamental principle must always be borne in mind; the attack mounted with cold steel remains the chief form of action of the Cavalry, and dismounted combat is only then to be employed where the task is impracticable for men on horseback to solve. The more we lay stress on the fact of dismounted action by Cavalry not being shirked, the more, on the other hand, we must strive to maintain the true Cavalry spirit and lay stress upon reckless daring. All this will be encouraged by the retention of the lance, which I hold *par excellence* 'to be the queen of weapons, because it gives to its bearer a feeling of unconditional superiority over the man with the sword, and I still adhere to this opinion, although I do not deny that it is exceedingly inconvenient in dismounted work.'

General Von Bernhardt,<sup>1</sup> in his chapter, 'Tactical Command in Mounted Combats,' page 42, says: 'Although the importance of dismounted fighting has increased very materially, more particularly on the offensive, the combat with cold steel remains, as ever, the principal form of action of the Cavalry, and, in considering the principles according to which the arm is to be handled on the field of battle, the first object must always be to bring about the Cavalry collision.'

'The task of the leader must be to transmit the mechanical

<sup>1</sup> *Unsere Kavallerie im naechsten Kriege.* E. S. Mittler und Sohn, 1904.

power inherent in the troops in the form of momentum upon the enemy. Where he with a clear purpose before him acts with daring and thorough comprehension, it is in his power to intensify this momentum many times, and this holds true with the Cavalry to a greater degree than with any other arm. For with the horsemen the personal impression conveyed by the appearance and bearing of the leader reacts on the mass as in no other case. And this is further accentuated by the fact that the excitement of motion on horseback inherent in the performance of Cavalry duties contains something electrifying, kindling to the imagination and exciting to the nerves, which communicates its influence to the leader, and thus in turn supports him.'

That Von Bernhardt, although thoroughly imbued with the Cavalry spirit, is by no means inclined to minimise the importance of its dismounted action, is sufficiently shown from the following citations :

'Although hitherto the general conception has been that Cavalry should only make use of the carbine for defence, nowadays its employment in attack must be recognised as of the utmost importance.

'Undoubtedly, however, it is and must remain even to-day the chief aim of every leader in whose veins flows the hot Cavalry blood to seize his opportunities wherever they offer themselves, and, above all, to attack the enemy's Cavalry, wherever and whenever accessible, with cold steel ; but we cannot conceal from ourselves the fact that nowadays numerous occasions will present themselves to the Cavalry which can only be solved by fire action.

'In the pursuit of an enemy's beaten Cavalry, we shall happen upon Infantry detachments sent out to cover their retreat, or upon defiles which have been occupied for a similar purpose. Important communications will be held by strong detachments of Cyclist Infantry ; further, they will find in woods and villages protection and favourable opportunities to use their weapons.

‘All these means of resistance lie beyond the field of mounted action, but they must be overcome if one’s duty is to be carried through.

‘In the pursuit the main object is to keep the beaten enemy on the run, to give him neither peace nor rest until complete exhaustion sets in. But for the mass of the Cavalry the idea of a purely frontal pursuit should not be encouraged, for Cavalry, even supported by several batteries, can easily be held up by any rearguard position in which a few intact troops remain.

‘This frontal pursuit must be left to the other arms, whilst with all energy a pursuit on parallel lines is initiated in order that we may appear unexpectedly and repeatedly against the flanks of the enemy’s columns, with the ultimate intention of anticipating him at some point on the line of his retreat, such as a defile, thus bringing him between two fires in a sheerly desperate position.

‘Man and horse must in these cases be driven to the utmost limit of their powers of endurance.

‘It is evident that in such situations the principal rôle falls to the firearm.

‘What can be achieved in this direction is best illustrated by Sheridan’s Cavalry, whose successful flanking operations, and intercepting the lines of communication of General Lee’s heroic army, brought about the capitulation of Clover Hill.’

At another place he points out that even in covering the retreat of a beaten army, Cavalry will do better to attack the flanks of the pursuing army by fire action, to distract the attention of the enemy from his true objective, rather than by sacrificing himself by charges against his victorious Infantry and Artillery.

That General Von Bernhardt is not inclined to underrate the teaching of the South African war is sufficiently indicated by his illustrations to show that the Boers fighting as Mounted Infantry were able to hold up and frequently defeat upwards of three to five times their number of British Infantry.

With reference to the War of Secession, Van Borcke,<sup>1</sup> late Chief of Staff to General J. E. B. Stuart, tells us that any idea of using the Cavalry principally dismounted, except during the last year of the war, was out of the question. In the latter stages circumstances altered, because of the exertion due to the long period of operations, cold and wet winters, indifferent forage, which greatly diminished the quality and the numbers of the best horses.

General Wade Hampton, who succeeded Stuart, did employ his men often dismounted, but it was also under his command that the famous squadrons were in the old dashing way led into many victorious charges, and in the great Cavalry combat at Trevilian Station he gained in 'that way much glory.'

Van Borcke, who fought alongside of Stuart through eight great battles and some fifty hotly contested fights, claims knowledge of Stuart's intention as a leader of Cavalry.

This is what he says :

'He was a Cavalryman from head to heel, and he wished nothing more than to form his troopers into dashing Cavalry soldiers. Gifted with highest courage, with the sharp eye of a falcon and a celerity of decision like lightning, he was to me the ideal of a splendid chieftain. His combinations were excellent, and they were executed with an energy, circumspection, and boldness unsurpassed in history. Stuart delighted in the charge with sabres drawn, and he frequently regretted that the difficulties of the ground we had to operate on, the roads lined with wooden or stone fences and the fields enclosed by them, the many patches of wood spread all over the country, or in less cultivated regions great forests, did frequently not allow of the full development of his lines for that purpose.'

'How would it have been possible to execute that famous ride through McClellan's whole army in the days from June 12 to 15, 1862, with Mounted Infantry? Stuart, well aware of what he was undertaking, selected for this bold ex-

<sup>1</sup> Van Borcke's correspondence with General Fraser.

pedition the best squadrons of his best regiments, and we were obliged to fight all our way through, charging continually and dispersing again and again sabres in hand the hostile Cavalry forces which in all haste were despatched to oppose our progress. Any development for dismounted fighting would have been out of the question, the great bodies of the enemy's Infantry camping in plain view to the right and left of our road. Nothing but celerity, entire surprise of the hostile troops, and the most dashing riding could save our comparatively small command and secure its success; a few minutes of undecided lingering would have given us without any doubt into the hands of our adversaries. . . .

‘The most significant proof of the Cavalry qualities of both armies was given by the great Cavalry battle at the open plains of Brandy Station.

‘It was the finest, most striking picture of a Cavalry fight possible, charges and counter-charges taking place all over the ground as far as the eye could reach by brigades, regiments, and small bodies.

‘Stuart, as much as he was in favour of the charge with drawn sabres (and he was mortally wounded on May 11, 1864, just after a victorious charge of one of his brigades against Sheridan's much superior forces at Yellow Tavern, seven miles from Richmond), was by no means an adversary of fighting with dismounted Cavalry, which was frequently executed in great style, but only when the nature of the ground or other particular circumstances required it.’

General Kuropatkin,<sup>1</sup> at that time Chief of the Staff to General Skobelev, expresses the following opinion of the bearing of the Russian Cavalry in September 1877. At the time it was detailed to cover the investment of Plevna, and was particularly instructed to display the utmost energy and activity :

‘Ninety Russian and Roumanian squadrons and Sotnias under an intelligent commander should have sufficed to make us

<sup>1</sup> *Kritische Rueckblicke auf den russisch-tuerkischen Krieg von 1877-1878.*

masters of the whole district round Plevna, over a zone of several marches. It should have been able, by its appearance, to compel the Turkish Cavalry and Circassians to clear away, and should have been invulnerable to the Turkish Infantry, had it only refrained from engaging the latter on foot. If it had only had the firm conviction that even nowadays, under favourable circumstances, a clever attack upon Infantry divisions on the march, in bivouac, or on convoy, is certain to attain great results at small cost, it might have become a most efficient comrade to the sister arms. It might have kept us informed of the most insignificant movements of the enemy upon the whole theatre of the operations, and the supply of stores or reinforcements of all sorts would have been either entirely prohibited or rendered most difficult.'

As to the causes of the little support which the Russians derived from their Cavalry, Kuropatkin gives the following :

'Fear of the commanders to undertake missions which, though within their power, would have brought them into collision with the Turkish Infantry, and thus occasioned losses.' Also he speaks of the fundamental error prevailing in the Cavalry at the time, that in consequence of the perfection of modern firearms the rôle of the Cavalry on the battlefield had reached its end. They were convinced that Cavalry attacks during an action were of no use, as they had no hopes of attaining adequate results.'

But he goes on to say : 'Nowadays, as formerly, a comparatively small increase of force on the one side or the other thrown into the fight, whether of Infantry, Artillery, or Cavalry, can decide the victory.'

'To hold back the Cavalry in these decisive moments is a monstrosity, no matter what loss their use may entail. Even if whole Cavalry divisions go under, but by their sacrifice tear victory from the hands of the enemy or save our army from disaster, it is a necessity to sacrifice them. We should train our Cavalry in peace to be ready to meet such demands.'

Colonel Baykoff<sup>1</sup> expresses similar opinions as to the Russian Cavalry in this campaign, and maintains that if the dash of the Cavalry is to be kept up, it must not allow itself too frequent application of dismounted actions.

‘Dismounting,’ he says, ‘is, too, the consequence of the desire for self-preservation, and hence men eagerly seize at it who wear the uniform of the Cavalry soldier, but who have not his keen and eager spirit to dare anything on horseback.’

And, discussing these authors, Von Pelet-Narbonne adds : ‘ I can only subscribe to their conclusions. We must draw the deduction from their experience, that the armament of Cavalry with a reliable rifle must not be allowed to destroy the spirit of the arm, and hence we must hold fast the fundamental principle that Cavalry may only then dismount, when the ground precludes them from attaining their object on horseback.’

If we can in any way assume that the above-quoted opinions are characteristic of Continental opinions of the present day, far from the Cavalry having lost in importance relatively to the other arms in recent years, it is precisely because of the immense changes which have evolved themselves in every sphere of life, not only in conditions of armament, that their opportunities for decisive action in all branches of their employment have increased, almost in the same proportion as the size of the armies involved. The greater the masses, the wider the area covered, the more dependent they become on exterior sources of supplies, and the prospects of successful action must grow with the product of these two factors ; but to reap these advantages the true Cavalry spirit must be preserved and the secret of that must be *mobility, and again mobility.*

<sup>1</sup> *Anwendung und Ausfuehrung des Fussgefechts der russischen Kavallerie.*



## WHICH IS THE WEAPON FOR CAVALRY?

### A FRENCH VIEW

The following are some ideas which are prevalent in France on the subject of Cavalry armament as set forth by the well-known authority Lieut.-Colonel Picard in his book, 'L'Armement de la Cavalerie.'

THE question is whether rifle or *arme blanche* is the thing. He puts the order of importance thus :

The horse,  
The rifle,  
The gun or machine gun,  
The sword or lance,  
The revolver.

Starting with the assumption that the horse is the important arm for all circumstances, he discusses in turn each different kind of armament, the preparation for its employment, its use under the different circumstances.

In favour of the rifle he brings forward strong arguments, and shows how it ought to be a short weapon with a long range, rapid fire, with a system of led horses with reserve ammunition for its effective use. He considers a bayonet unnecessary, but omits to consider it with regard to night attacks. He thinks a rifle that makes a noise is preferable to the modern silent one for Cavalry, as giving greater moral effect.

He considers that collective fire is the important one for service, the Cavalry section being the unit for collective fire. The education of the section leader in the tactical use of fire, selection of ground, appreciation of distance, &c., is all important. He gives a number of useful ideas on the subject well worthy of practice at field firing.

To employ fire without good reason, merely for the sake of acting on foot, he looks on as a criminal fault.

As also to employ Cavalry dismounted for executing attack on foot. Cavalry, even in dismounted action, must remain Cavalry, quick, mobile, free and unhampered in its action—making use of its various arms as occasion may demand.

Then he goes into the pros and cons of the revolver as a second arm for Cavalry, quoting numerous interesting instances from the American War of Secession, but he does not consider it a weapon for use against Cavalry—though possibly of value in attacking Artillery, or even Infantry under certain circumstances.

In any case it is a personal weapon of secondary value.

He sums up his able dissertation on firearms with the remark that his idea is not to replace Cavalry with Mounted Infantry, but to develop the efficiency of Cavalry for action dismounted when required.

Then he considers the *arme blanche*, sword, lance, and hunting knife, giving their respective merits and disadvantages. There is not much to choose between these.

The principal weapon all the time is the horse, and whatever steel weapon is employed success depends on the ability of the man to use it.

He quotes a number of interesting opinions regarding the lance from Kellerman, Montecuculli, Maurice de Saxe, Jomini, Generals de Sparre, de Vitre, de Preval, de Brack, Lord Vivian, Descartes, Marbot, and several others, with numerous historical instances, and goes fully into its advantages and disadvantages for modern war.

As regards the sword he gives reasons why it ought to be carried on the off side of the saddle.

Comparing the relative values of straight and curved swords—a cut-and-thrust sword gives greater confidence to the user.

He describes methods of fighting sword against lance, &c.

But in effect he deduces that the best man on the best horse will win in the end whatever his weapon.

‘And so say all of us.’

*TWO CAVALRY STAFF RIDES, INDIA, 1904-5*

Two Staff Rides are here described which were lately carried out in India on parallel lines to the operations of Napoleon in 1809, and to those before Metz in 1870, and interesting experiences were gained.

## PART I

THE REASONS FOR ESPECIALLY PRACTISING CAVALRY  
OFFICERS IN STAFF RIDES

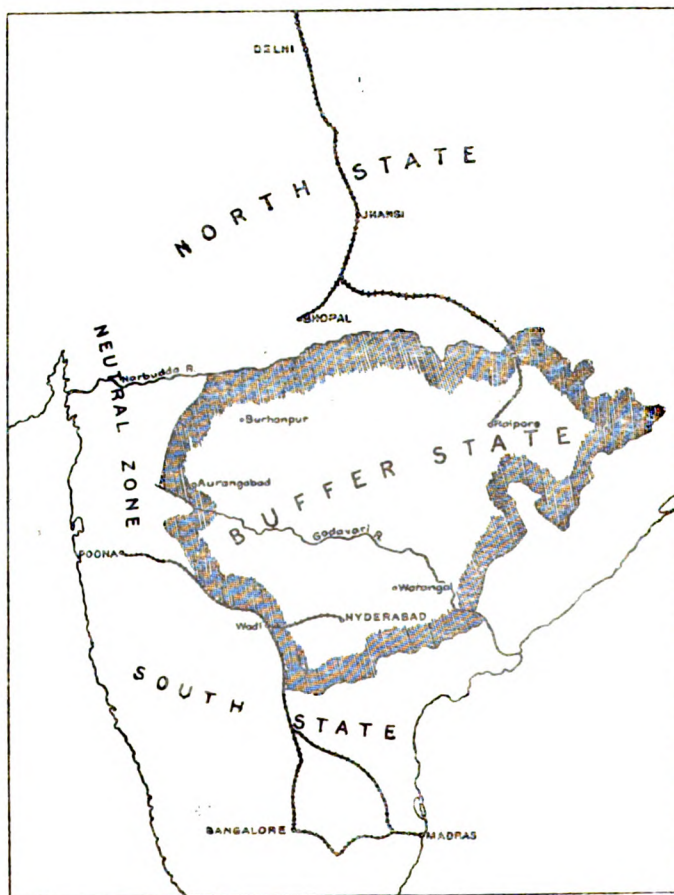
ONE of the most striking developments in civilised warfare during the last century has been the gradual evolution of the strategical rôle of Cavalry. Napoleon, in the early part of the 19th century, fully realised the strategical value of the arm, but owing, probably, to the uncertain quality of his instrument and the exceptional results he had reaped from its tactical use, only employed it occasionally in an independent rôle. Later on in the same century we find the Germans, in the campaign of 1870, making use of it in a nervous and hesitating manner, and generally anchoring it securely to the supporting Infantry. In the later stages of the war they became bolder, but it was more the boldness engendered by the absence of any resistance than that fortified by confidence in itself. In both cases the cause may be traced to the same fact—that it had been accepted as a creed that Cavalry had no power of defence, and could not, therefore, act independently at any great distance from its supporting Infantry. So thoroughly had this disability been accepted that no attempt was made to increase the defensive power of Cavalry by a suitable armament—rather the reverse—since they were given a firearm which deliberately placed them at a disadvantage when opposed to Infantry.

It will be realised, then, that by re-arming our Cavalry with a firearm equal in every way to that of the Infantry, we have conferred on them an independence of action which would have been impossible in the past. Given this independence it follows as a natural sequence that with a well-trained and equipped Cavalry, the feature of wars, in the future, will be a still further development of the strategical rôle of the arm, and that too, without detriment to its value on the actual field of battle. Now a staff ride is considered by our Field Service Regulations as affording its most valuable instruction during the initial stages of the supposed campaign: it would seem then that this form of training is of particular value to Cavalry officers, since, in the initial phases of a campaign, it is the Cavalry arm that will play the most prominent part—a part which will be of greater importance in the future than in the past. There is also an additional advantage to be gained from a staff ride, in the opportunity it provides for discussion. To quote the remarks of the Inspector-General of Cavalry in India: ‘Much has been done by Lord Kitchener to improve the organisation of the Cavalry in India, but a great deal still remains to be done, and Cavalry officers must assist by thinking out what are the requirements of a Cavalry force in the field besides officers, men and horses: such things for instance as transport, means of communication, and Royal Engineers services generally. Again, to lead and rightly employ Cavalry it is indispensable that there should be a clear understanding as to the part it has to play. Now to arrive at a more or less unanimous opinion as to the principles of our action, it behoves officers to study the past and try to apply their conclusions to actual situations of to-day. This and the fact of so many Cavalry officers from different stations meeting together to consider tactical matters, is one of the greatest uses of these Cavalry staff rides. Having decided on our principles of action, it is possible then to determine the most suitable tactical formations and perfect our instructions as leaders at camps of instruction.’ Such, then, were the lines on which the two Cavalry

staff rides, the subject of the following notes, were conducted in India during the cold weather of 1904-5.

**NARRATIVE OF FIRST STAFF RIDE IN THE DECCAN—THE QUESTION OF A BUFFER STATE—HOW TO EMPLOY IMPERIAL SERVICE TROOPS—INTERPRETERS.**

The first of the two rides took place in the Deccan, over the same country as that traversed by Wellington in his campaign of



1803, which resulted in the overthrow of the Mahratta power at Assaye, the events of which formed the subject of a lecture

delivered during the ride. Omitting the names of places, the general idea was somewhat as follows. An Asiatic State, called the Buffer State, lies between two European Powers, known respectively as North and South. The population of the Buffer State consists of a number of mixed races which are traditionally antagonistic under the strong hand of its ruler, local disturbances have been suppressed, and a force of irregulars, numbering about 50,000, has been raised and armed. A treaty of alliance exists between the Government of the South State and the ruler of the Buffer State, by which the integrity of the latter's dominions is guaranteed. The North State, having recently built a new line of railway strategically threatening the Buffer State, suddenly extends it and over-runs the northern portion of that State. Upon this the Buffer State calls on the South State to fulfil its pledges.

It is not difficult to trace a parallel between the situation thus disclosed and the problem which has confronted the army in India for many years past and still faces it. The Director<sup>1</sup> took Napoleon's campaign of 1809 as presenting a basis for the consideration of the scheme. In that campaign, it will be remembered, Napoleon's enemy, the Austrians, also had the initiative; he, too, was bound by a treaty to protect the country of his allies, Bavaria, Würtemberg, and Italy. The condition of Europe at the commencement of the 19th century may also be taken as similar to that of the Buffer State at the present day, in this respect, that there were no railways, and the roads few and indifferent. What steps did Napoleon take to attain his object, which was in this, as in all his campaigns, a numerical superiority unexpectedly developed at the decisive point? By dividing the theatre of war into a primary and secondary division: a covering force to be organised in the former to give him the time required to concentrate his forces at the decisive point, and by the provision of supply dépôts in entrenched camps in a certain prescribed area, which would give him freedom of manœuvre.

<sup>1</sup> I.-G. of Cavalry.

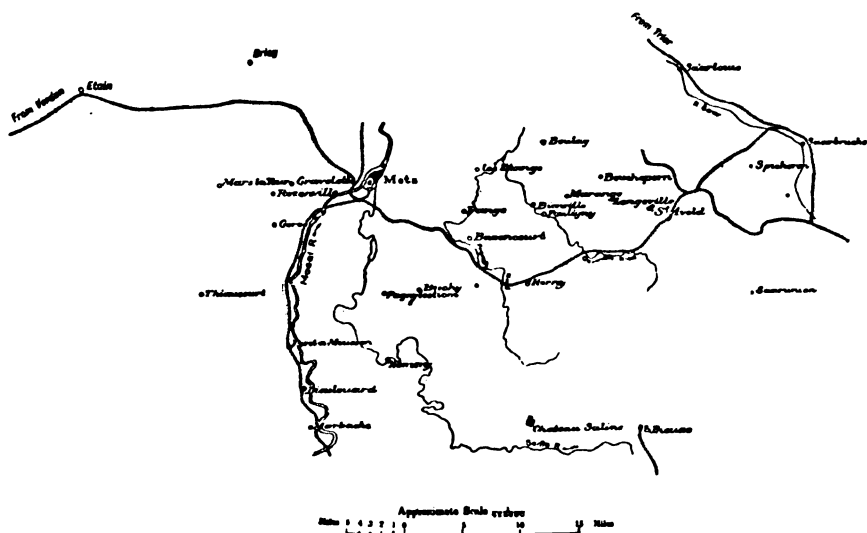
‘This last point—Napoleon’s use of entrenched camps,’ remarked the Director, ‘should be particularly noticed. Railways have, to a great extent, replaced them in modern war in Europe. But should it be necessary to wage war in a country in which there are no railways, the employment of large masses will be impossible without them.’ Another great advantage to be derived from such depôts is the economy effected in the number of troops required for lines of communication and convoy duties.

It must not, however, be supposed that this application of the 1809 campaign professed to provide the solution to any concrete problem—it was merely intended to serve as an illustration of an analogous situation and to provide subject for thought and discussion. The general idea, also, gave rise to the consideration of the following questions: How should we employ the semi-regular forces of the Buffer State? Successful co-operation between allied armies has but rarely been attained in European warfare, even where highly trained troops have been employed: how much more difficult will be the problem when the army of one of the allies consists of partly-trained Asiatics? Again, how would we most advantageously employ our Imperial Service troops? These are regularly organised forces, maintained by the native States, but trained and equipped under the supervision of British inspecting officers on the same lines as our own troops, and officered entirely by natives; thus differing from our native army, in which, on service, the proportion of British officers is about 2 per cent. of native ranks. Again, how best to organise a corps of interpreters so as to facilitate communication and co-operation with our Asiatic allies? It is not possible within the limits of a short paper to review or even give a précis of the various suggestions made in answer to the above questions; but those making a study of a prospective campaign under similar conditions will do well to take them into consideration. The theatre of war presented country of every description. A tableland, some 2,000 feet above sea level, intersected by streams, which after a small rainfall are rapidly converted into unfordable

ivers; level plains, rising gradually to more hilly country, providing excellent defensive positions; and finally precipitous hills traversed by difficult passes and intersected by blind nullahs only to be crossed at certain places.

#### NARRATIVE OF SECOND STAFF RIDE HELD NEAR DELHI— STRATEGICAL IMPORTANCE OF INDEPENDENT CAVALRY

Turning next to the second of the two rides, which was held near Delhi. The general idea was taken from the situation

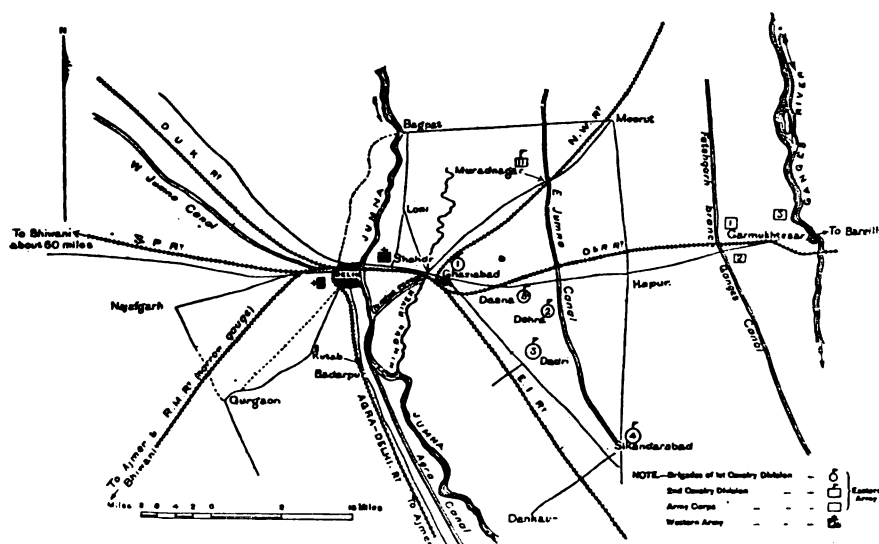


presented to the German army before Metz in August 1870, which resulted in the disaster to Bazaine's army. If a map of the country around Metz be taken and for the town of Metz be substituted Delhi, for the Mosel the Jumna, and for the Seille the river Hindun, the parallel between the theatre of war chosen for the staff ride and that of 1870 is almost complete, even down to the railways, four of which also converge on Delhi. The Jumna, however, is only bridged in one place, and its importance as an obstacle varies with the seasons.

The situation was the same as that of August 1870—that is to say, the western army (French) had been defeated by the



eastern (German), and had fallen back on Delhi (Metz). To pave the way for the consideration of the general idea, the Director, before the assembly of the staff ride, issued some brief notes on the operations of the German Cavalry in August, 1870, as a basis for the ride. These, after commenting on the defective organisation of the German Cavalry at the commencement of the war—an organisation which frittered away the arm into a numerous divisional Cavalry and a still more numerous army corps Cavalry—remarked that it provided no independent Cavalry,



that is to say no organised body operating under the orders of the commander-in-chief for strategical reconnaissance in the interests of the whole force. It was further pointed out that this faulty organisation exerted a fatal influence, not only on the operations of the Cavalry but on the work of the several armies. The paper went on to trace in some detail the action of the several Cavalry divisions, their deliberate movements, and, finally, the want of unity in their operations, resulting in the surprises of Spicheren and Rezonville and the extremely hazardous position of the German army around Metz, when disaster was averted

only by the incapacity of the leaders of the French. All this was traced to the defective organisation of the German Cavalry.

The Delhi staff ride had for its object the execution of the same plan, but with Cavalry organised in such a manner as to place an independent force of the arm at the disposal of the commander-in-chief as his instrument for strategical reconnaissance.

In India the brigade is the highest peace organisation of the Cavalry arm : it consists of one British and two native regiments of Cavalry, one battery of Horse Artillery, an ammunition column, with field hospitals and a supply column. At each staff ride, eight Cavalry brigades were assumed to be available for employment as an independent force, and in both cases this force was divided into two divisions of five and three brigades respectively. It may be argued that a division of five brigades is unwieldy ; it must, however, be remembered that the five brigades were massed for the specific purpose of strategical reconnaissance ; an organisation, then, which would at first sight appear to tend to over-centralisation is, in reality, only productive of unity.

H. HUDSON, *Major, 19th Lancers.*

(*To be continued.*)

## ***THE PLACE OF FIRE TACTICS IN THE TRAINING OF THE BRITISH CAVALRY***

Showing that improved rifles have increased the power of our cavalry, to help to compensate for its weakness in numbers, but that it must be trained to each kind of arm for use according to circumstances.

THE experiences of the South African War caused an apparent split in Cavalry opinion. The word 'apparent' is used advisedly, as the split was chiefly a verbal one. The increased power of the rifle was brought home to all Cavalry officers, but while with some of us the proximity of our experiences caused an exaggerated insistence on the importance of fire tactics, with others the swerve at the label 'Mounted Infantry' landed us in equally exaggerated professions of adherence to the *arme blanche*.

In spite of these differences of terms, we need not doubt that Cavalry opinion in the main follows the same line, and that much of the apparent difference rises from the fact that men are more ready to change their opinions than their labels. Difference as to details there must be, nor is healthy development possible without them, but it is harmful to our service that they should be considered to indicate separate schools of Cavalry thought.

Discussions are always of use in raising points of interest, but it would be waste of force to allow questions such as 'Can Cavalry attack unbroken Infantry?' or 'Is the rifle or sword the principal arm of the Cavalry?' to amount to controversies; the practical answer to the first appears to be 'Yes, but only with full knowledge of the circumstances of each case can it be decided with what chance of success, and whether the attempt is worth making'; to the second 'Whichever you like to call

so, provided you are equally prepared to use either.' War is not an exact science, and generalisations must be sparingly accepted in view of the tendency of men to describe incidents with a colour lent by their own theories.

We are beginning to digest the experiences of the South African War and to check them by the experiences of other campaigns. I do not suppose that any Cavalry officer would forgo the increased power that is given to the trooper by the possession of a long-range rifle, nor would anyone claim that Cavalry dependent on fire action alone is fully equipped for war. All agree as to the principal or strategic rôle of Cavalry, but there are differences of opinion as to the comparative value of fire and shock.

The tactical action of Cavalry may be broadly considered under two heads: first, while obtaining freedom to execute its strategical rôle; second, that rôle having been fulfilled, its actions during the consequent battle. As regards the second, I do not think one can forecast further than that Cavalry must be prepared to act against all arms and at all risks. As regards the first, its action will be against forces of which Cavalry will presumably form the preponderating part, and it is in this contingency that the relative value of shock and fire may be usefully considered.

It appears to the present writer that the leader will usually have the advantage who utilises fire action in his manœuvres, though such action will be with a view to the culminating charge which will drive the enemy from the field. Those who argue that, owing to the weight of the modern bullet, a scattered line of riflemen will have no retarding effect on determined Cavalry, and so will not give to the leader using it that advantage of time which is all important in a Cavalry fight, appear to ignore the psychological consideration—*i.e.* the effect on the mind of the leader unable to ascertain what force is covered by this line. The Donnybrook Fair tactics which so often characterise Cavalry manœuvres are made possible by the leaders

knowing, as a rule, the exact strength of each other's force. This must not be understood as ignoring the insistence for prompt action by a leader who finds himself in possession of the tactical advantage at first contact, whether from superiority of ground, numbers, moral, or whatever cause; but the preliminary to the charge will usually be a struggle for the tactical advantage, and the leader who works for this by fire action will retain the power of avoiding or postponing the encounter, which power will be lost to a leader trusting entirely to linear tactics. It may be urged that it is contrary to the Cavalry spirit to give weight to the question of avoiding or postponing an encounter, but we must face the probability that, as our system of Imperial defence places our battlefields overseas, our horsemen will, even in India, find themselves in numerical inferiority.

When more detailed accounts of the fighting in the Far East are available it will be interesting to get the answers to the following questions: 'Did the Cavalry of Japan, the soul of whose fighting is the offensive, find frequent opportunities for shock tactics?' and 'If they did not, what was the reason?' I fancy the answer to the first will be 'No,' and to the second 'Numbers.'

It is freely conceded that, when our Imperial organisation provides for the placing in the field of ten Cavalry divisions, the above considerations will have lost much of their weight, but meanwhile it would be dangerous to base our training on the results of the thought of those charged with the training of the great continental armies.

In considering the proportion of time that should be given to the training for fire tactics—after deducting that necessary for the perfecting of the individual in equitation, horsemanship, scouting, use of his arms, &c.,—it must be remembered that such tactics depend for their efficiency on intelligent interpretation of orders and use of the ground by the leaders of the smallest units and by individuals, and that this use of the ground does not come naturally to men brought up among the conditions of civilisation.

It is, therefore, evident that the occasional perfunctory

dismounting of a troop or squadron, which was formerly considered adequate training in fire tactics, is no longer sufficient for the development of the fire power of Cavalry.

In conclusion, it seems clear that, given an efficiently trained force, victory will fall to the leader who, untrammelled by shallow generalisation or by a false Cavalry spirit, is prepared to employ shock and fire in the proportion that circumstances demand. If this be true of all Cavalry leaders, how much more is it so of our own service, called on to be ready to meet enemies in all parts of the world among the most varying conditions of ground, armament, and tactics ?

R. G. BROADWOOD, *Brigadier-General*.

### CAVALRY REORGANISATION

The following contains the chief points in the memorandum explanatory of the scheme for the reorganisation of the Cavalry of the Line, recently issued by the Army Council.

It is intended to give the Cavalry of the Line an organisation which shall be elastic and unaffected by any alteration in the distribution of Cavalry regiments at home and abroad, and which will no longer make it necessary for one regiment to find, from its establishment, drafts for another. Under this system a soldier will remain in the regiment to which he is posted on enlistment, and will not be removed therefrom unless in exceptional circumstances as detailed hereafter.

It is not possible to give full effect to this reorganisation until barracks are available for depôts, and the inauguration of the system will therefore be gradual. It is, however, desirable that immediate effect shall be given to that part of the scheme which is practicable at the present time.

*Organisation of Cavalry Regiments.*—Regiments at home will be organised in three service squadrons and a machine-gun section. Regiments in the Colonies will have three service squadrons and a reserve troop. Each service squadron will consist of four troops. The reserve squadron will cease to exist in time of peace, but will be formed on mobilisation, when it will be composed of all officers, N.C.O.s, and men who, from any cause, are unable to proceed with their regiment on active service.

*Depôts.*—Two depôts will be established at home—one combined dépôt for Dragoon Guards, Dragoons, and Lancers, and another for Hussars. Until barrack accommodation is available, the existing organisation will continue.

*Enlistment.*—Enlistment will be as at present for the corps of Dragoons, Lancers, and Hussars. The term of enlistment will be for seven years with the colours and for five years in the Reserve, or, if the man completes his seven years' service with the colours while beyond the seas, then for a further period, not exceeding one year, with the colours, and the remainder of the twelve years in the Reserve. The *minimum* age will be 19 years for regiments at home,  $19\frac{1}{2}$  years for regiments abroad. The *maximum* age will be 25 years. The physical conditions will be as at present, with a *maximum* weight of 10 st. 7 lbs. for men under 20 years; 11 st. for men 20 years and upwards. Recruits will not be accepted for Cavalry unless they are able to write.

*Disposal of Recruits.*—Recruits on enlistment will be sent to the *depôt* of the corps for which they are attested. Those posted to regiments at home will remain at the *depôt* for three months, when they will be drafted to their regiments. Recruits posted to regiments abroad will remain at the *depôts* for six months.

*Recruit Officers.*—Officers on first appointment will not be sent to the *depôts*, but direct to their regiments, whenever possible. In cases where this cannot be done they will be attached temporarily to the affiliated regiment at home.

The method of raising a regiment next on roster for India up to Indian establishment will be as follows :—

During the last three years of a regiment's service at home men of five years' army service should be encouraged to pass to the Reserve, their places being filled with recruits, thus reducing to a *minimum* the number of men ineligible for India when the regiment embarks. The regiment will be sent out at the commencement of the trooping season as strong as possible, and a draft, made up of its men who have in the interim matured, will follow at the end of the trooping season.

*Training at Depôts.*—The system of training the recruit will from the outset aim at the gradual development of his mental and physical powers. During the first three months a recruit is not



to be employed on stable duty, nor is he to be instructed in equitation. His course of instruction will be limited to individual training on foot, musketry instruction, physical training, miniature range practice, and sword and singlestick practice. A recruit should attend school for two hours daily until he has obtained a third-class certificate. At the conclusion of the first three months recruits will commence instruction in equitation and stable duties, special care being given to instruction, both by lectures and practical illustration, in the care of horses under all circumstances. All musketry practices will, after a recruit has been three months at the dépôt, be carried out on a practice range.

The regiments are affiliated as follows :—

#### DRAGOONS AND DRAGOON GUARDS

- 1st Dragoon Guards with 5th Dragoon Guards.
- 2nd Dragoon Guards with 6th Dragoons.
- 3rd Dragoon Guards with 6th Dragoon Guards.
- 4th Dragoon Guards with 7th Dragoon Guards.
- 1st Dragoons with 2nd Dragoons.

#### LANCERS

- 5th Lancers with 12th Lancers.
- 9th Lancers with 21st Lancers.
- 16th Lancers with 17th Lancers.

#### HUSSARS

- 3rd Hussars with 7th Hussars.
- 4th Hussars with 8th Hussars.
- 10th Hussars with 18th Hussars.
- 11th Hussars with 13th Hussars.
- 14th Hussars with 20th Hussars.
- 15th Hussars with 19th Hussars.

# ***THE MOUNTED FORCES OF THE BRITISH EMPIRE***

## **GREAT BRITAIN**

- 1st Life Guards.**
- 2nd Life Guards.**
- Royal Horse Guards (The Blues).**
- 1st (King's) Dragoon Guards.**
- 2nd Dragoon Guards (Queen's Bays).**
- 3rd (Prince of Wales's) Dragoon Guards.**
- 4th (Royal Irish) Dragoon Guards.**
- 5th (Princess Charlotte of Wales's) Dragoon Guards.**
- 6th Dragoon Guards (Carabiniers).**
- 7th (Princess Royal's) Dragoon Guards.**
- 1st (Royal) Dragoons.**
- 2nd Dragoons (Royal Scots Greys).**
- 3rd (Kings Own) Hussars.**
- 4th (Queen's Own) Hussars.**
- 5th (Royal Irish) Lancers.**
- 6th (Inniskilling) Dragoons.**
- 7th (Queen's Own) Hussars.**
- 8th (King's Royal Irish) Hussars.**
- 9th (Queen's Royal) Lancers.**
- 10th (Prince of Wales's Own Royal) Hussars.**
- 11th (Prince Albert's Own) Hussars.**
- 12th (Prince of Wales's Royal) Lancers.**
- 13th Hussars.**
- 14th (King's) Hussars.**
- 15th (The King's) Hussars.**
- 16th (The Queen's) Lancers.**
- 17th (Duke of Cambridge's Own) Lancers.**

18th (Victoria Mary, Princess of Wales's Own) Hussars.

19th (Alexandra, Princess of Wales's Own) Hussars.

20th Hussars.

21st (Empress of India's) Lancers.

#### IMPERIAL YEOMANRY

Royal Wiltshire (Prince of Wales's Own).	Buckinghamshire (Royal Bucks Hussars).
Warwickshire.	Derbyshire.
Yorkshire Hussars (Alexandra Princess of Wales's Own).	Dorset (Queen's Own).
Notts (Sherwood Rangers).	Gloucestershire (Royal Hussars).
Staffordshire (Queen's Own Royal Regiment).	Herts.
Shropshire.	Berks.
Ayrshire (Earl of Carrick's Own).	Middlesex (Duke of Cambridge's Own).
Cheshire (Earl of Chester's).	Royal 1st Devon.
Yorkshire Dragoons (Queen's Own).	Suffolk (Duke of York's Own Loyal Suffolk Hussars).
Leicestershire (Prince Albert's Own).	Royal North Devon (Hussars).
North Somerset.	Worcestershire (Queen's Own Worcestershire Hussars).
Duke of Lancaster's Own.	West Kent (Queen's Own).
Lanarkshire.	West Somerset.
Northumberland (Hussars).	Oxfordshire (Queen's Own Oxfordshire Hussars).
Notts (Southern Notts Hussars).	Montgomeryshire.
Denbighshire (Hussars).	Lothians and Berwickshire.
Westmoreland and Cumberland.	Lanarkshire (Queen's Own Royal Glasgow).
Pembroke.	Lancashire Hussars.
Royal East Kent (Duke of Connaught's Own) (M.R.)	Surrey (Princess of Wales's).
Hampshire (Carabiniers).	Fifeshire and Forfarshire.
	Norfolk (King's Own).
	Sussex.

Glamorganshire.	Essex.
Lincolnshire.	King's Colonials.
City of London (Rough Riders).	North of Ireland.
2nd County of London (Westminster Dragoons).	South of Ireland.
8rd County of London (Sharpshooters).	Northamptonshire.
Bedfordshire.	East Riding of Yorkshire.
	Lovat's Scouts.
	Scottish Horse.

# INDIA

Governor-General's Body Guard.	
Governor's Body Guard (Madras).	
Governor's Body Guard (Bombay).	
1st Duke of York's Own Lancers.	Skinner's Horse.
2nd Lancers.	Gardner's Horse.
3rd Skinner's Horse.	
4th Cavalry.	
5th Cavalry.	
6th Prince of Wales's Cavalry.	
7th Hariana Lancers.	
8th Cavalry.	
9th Hodson's Horse.	
10th Duke of Cambridge's Own Lancers.	Hodson's Horse.
11th Prince of Wales's Own Lancers.	Probyn's Horse.
12th Cavalry.	
18th Duke of Connaught's Lancers.	Watson's Horse.
14th Murray's Jat Lancers.	
15th Lancers.	Cureton's Multanis.
16th Cavalry.	
17th Cavalry.	
18th Tiwana Lancers.	
19th Lancers.	Fane's Horse.
20th Deccan Horse.	
21st Prince Albert Victor's Own Cavalry.	Frontier Force.
Daly's Horse.	

22nd Sam Browne's Cavalry. Frontier Force.  
23rd Cavalry. Frontier Force.  
25th Cavalry. Frontier Force.  
26th Light Cavalry.  
27th Light Cavalry.  
28th Light Cavalry.  
29th Lancers. Deccan Horse.  
30th Lancers. Gordon's Horse.  
31st Duke of Connaught's Own Lancers.  
32nd Lancers.  
33rd Queen's Own Light Cavalry.  
34th Prince Albert Victor's Own Poona Horse.  
35th Scinde Horse.  
36th Jacob's Horse.  
37th Lancers. Baluch Horse.  
38th Central India Horse.  
39th Central India Horse.  
Queen's Own Corps of Guides. Lumsden's.

N.B.—The Imperial Service Corps Regiments are not included in this list.

#### VOLUNTEERS

Behar Light Horse.  
Surma Valley Light Horse.  
Calcutta Light Horse.  
Bombay Light Horse.  
Punjab Light Horse.  
Assam Valley Light Horse.  
United Provinces Light Horse.

#### AUSTRALIA

1st Australian Light Horse Regiment. New South Wales  
Lancers.  
2nd Australian Light Horse Regiment. New South Wales  
Mounted Rifles.

## MOUNTED FORCES OF BRITISH EMPIRE 101

- 3rd Australian Light Horse Regiment. Australian Horse.
- 4th Australian Light Horse Regiment. New South Wales Lancers.
- 5th Australian Light Horse Regiment. New South Wales Mounted Rifles.
- 6th Australian Light Horse Regiment. Australian Horse.
- 7th Australian Light Horse Regiment. Victorian Mounted Rifles.
- 8th Australian Light Horse Regiment. Victorian Mounted Rifles.
- 9th Australian Light Horse Regiment. Victorian Mounted Rifles.
- 10th Australian Light Horse Regiment. Victorian Mounted Rifles.
- 11th Australian Light Horse Regiment. Victorian Mounted Rifles.
- 12th Australian Light Horse Regiment. Tasmanian Mounted Infantry.
- 18th Australian Light Horse Regiment. Queensland Mounted Infantry.
- 14th Australian Light Horse Regiment. Queensland Mounted Infantry.
- 15th Australian Light Horse Regiment. Queensland Mounted Infantry.
- 16th Australian Light Horse Regiment. South Australian Mounted Rifles.
- 17th Australian Light Horse Regiment. South Australian Mounted Rifles.
- 18th Australian Light Horse Regiment. West Australian Mounted Infantry.

The above compose the Mounted Field Force ; there are in addition eleven squadrons attached, which form the garrison troops.

CANADA.

The Royal Canadian Dragoons.	} Permanent Corps.
The Royal Canadian Mounted Rifles.	
Governor-General's Body Guard.	
1st Hussars.	
2nd Dragoons.	
3rd Prince of Wales Canadian Dragoons.	
4th Hussars.	
5th The Princess Louise Dragoon Guards.	
6th Duke of Connaught's Royal Canadian Hussars.	
7th Hussars.	
8th Princess Louise's New Brunswick Hussars.	
9th Toronto Light Horse.	
10th Queen's Own Canadian Hussars.	
11th Hussars.	
12th Manitoba Dragoons.	
13th Scottish Light Dragoons.	
14th King's Canadian Hussars.	
Duke of York's Royal Canadian Hussars.	
Prince Edward Island Light Horse.	
Canadian Mounted Rifles.	

NEW ZEALAND

4 Battalions Auckland Mounted Rifle Volunteers.  
 4 Battalions Wellington Mounted Rifle Volunteers.  
 2 Battalions North Canterbury Mounted Rifle Volunteers.  
 1 Battalion South Canterbury Mounted Rifle Volunteers.  
 2 Battalions Otago Mounted Rifle Volunteers.  
 1 Battalion Nelson Mounted Rifle Volunteers.

SOUTH AFRICA

CAPE OF GOOD HOPE

10 Squadrons Cape Mounted Riflemen.  
 6 Squadrons Border Light-Horse Volunteers.

- 2 Squadrons Western Light-Horse Volunteers.**
- 2 Companies Transkei Mounted Rifles.**
- 1 Company Bechuanaland Rifles, Mounted Infantry.**

Each of the following Regiments have one or more Companies of Mounted Infantry :—

- Duke of Edinburgh's Own Volunteer Rifles.**
- Queenstown Rifle Volunteers.**
- 1st City (Grahamstown) Volunteers.**
- Kimberley Regiment.**
- Cape Mounted Police.**

**NATAL**

- Natal Carbineers.**
- Natal Mounted Rifles.**
- Umvoti Mounted Rifles.**
- Border Mounted Rifles.**
- Northern District Mounted Rifles.**
- Zululand Mounted Rifles.**
- Natal Royal Regiment of Mounted Infantry.**
- Durban Light Infantry—Mounted Infantry.**

**TRANSVAAL**

- Imperial Light Horse—Right and Left Wing.**
- South African Light Horse.**
- Johannesburg Mounted Rifles.**
- Scottish Horse.**
- Central South African Regiment—Volunteer Mounted Company.**
- Northern Rifles—4 Squadrons Mounted Infantry.**
- South African Constabulary.**

**RHODESIA**

- Mounted Infantry Companies—Southern Rhodesia Volunteers.**
- British South African Police.**



## EAST AFRICA

2 Camel Corps Companies—King's African Rifles.

## WEST AFRICA

## NORTHERN NIGERIA

1 Battalion Mounted Infantry.

## CEYLON

1 Company Mounted Infantry.

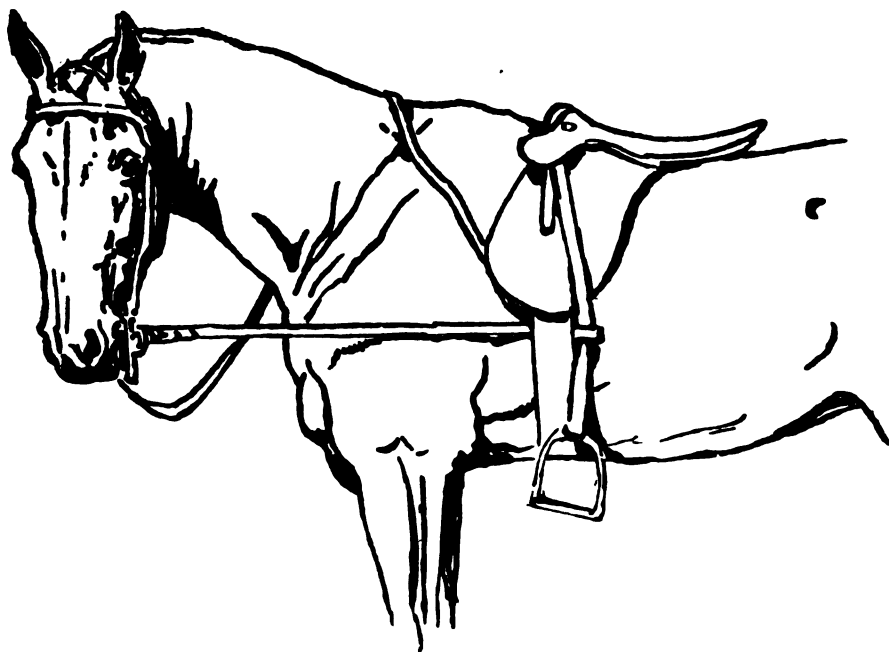
## LEEWARD ISLANDS

Antigua Defence Force. St. John's Company Mounted Infantry.

St. Kitts Nevis Defence Force. 1 Company Mounted Infantry.

## TRINIDAD

5 Troops Trinidad Light Horse.



## ***TO TETHER A SINGLE HORSE TEMPORARILY***

*(This system is now in use in the Cavalry)*

Pass the loop of the reins between the girth and the horse's side from front to rear (say) on near side.

Draw the near rein tight until the horse's head comes round towards his shoulder.

Pass near stirrup iron and leather through the loop behind the girth.

Draw the loop tight by pulling the off-rein forward, and letting it hang loose over horse's neck.

Thus tethered the horse, if he moves at all, will only go round in a small circle.

*PERSIMMON*

HIS MAJESTY THE KING-EMPEROR'S brown horse Persimmon was bred by him, when Prince of Wales, at Sandringham, in Norfolk. Being by St. Simon—Perdita II., he is a beautifully bred horse, with the leading strains of blood of Galopin, King Tom, and Ion. He was aptly named Persimmon, which is the date-plum tree, common in America, and which grows to the height of 60 feet. An expression common in the Southern United States is 'That's persimmon !' meaning 'That's fine !'

In due course he was sent to Mr. R. Marsh at Newmarket to be trained, and ran three times as a two-year-old, winning the Coventry Stakes at Ascot, the Richmond Stakes at Goodwood, and then finishing a bad third to St. Frusquin and Omladina in the Middle Park Plate at Newmarket. The following year he could not be got ready for the Two Thousand, but commenced his three-year-old performances by winning the Derby on June 4, 1896. There were eleven runners, of which St. Frusquin, also a son of St. Simon's, started a hot favourite ; after a desperate finish, Persimmon won by a neck from St. Frusquin, with Earwig a bad third. It was a magnificent race, never to be forgotten by the multitude who witnessed it ; the enthusiasm was intense, and no more popular Derby has ever been won. The next month his brother St. Frusquin turned the tables by beating him half a length for the Princess of Wales Stakes of £10,000 at Newmarket—a mile race ; it was another great struggle, and Regret, who started favourite, ran third. Persimmon then easily won the St. Leger in September, and also the Jockey Club Stakes of £10,000 at Newmarket in October. In 1897 he only ran twice, winning the Gold Cup at Ascot and the Eclipse Stakes, another



Digitized by Google

ten-thousand pounder, at Sandown. This ended his racing career. For all his races this great horse was trained by Mr. R. Marsh at Newmarket, and ridden by J. Watts, who thought he was the best horse he ever rode. He only twice suffered defeat, and his total winnings amounted to £34,726. He was a good-constituted horse, charming to ride, but not easy to train, as he wanted an immense amount of work. It was, unfortunately, decided to run him in the Middle Park Plate when he had been coughing badly for some time: this caused his defeat, and also prevented his being got fit to run for the Two Thousand Guineas.

He was a good-tempered horse, but had his peculiarities: one was an objection to being boxed for travelling; when he went to Epsom to run in the Derby it took one hour and twenty minutes to box him at Dullingham Station. He did not always show his true form in his gallops, but had his days of showing what he could do. His trial gallop before the Gold Cup was remarkable; he was sent over the distance with five other horses; he carried 9 st. 10 lbs. and won by about a  $\frac{1}{4}$  mile, giving the horse that had finished second in the Great Metropolitan (also a four-year-old) 3 st. 9 lbs.

At the stud he has been the greatest success, and is now at the Stud Farm, Sandringham, the fee being 300 guineas. A whole brown horse, except for some grey hairs on the near hind pastern, standing 16.1 hands, with  $8\frac{1}{2}$ -inch bone, he is a magnificent specimen of the thoroughbred stallion, and in Mr. Marsh's opinion he has developed into the best-looking stud horse in the world. His progeny have already won races to the following value: in 1901, £20,455; in 1902, £36,868; in 1903, £24,472; in 1904, £10,808; in 1905, £16,444 15s. These figures speak for themselves. To mention a few of the progeny, first and foremost comes that great mare Sceptre, out of Ornament; she was sold as a yearling for 10,000 guineas and has made a world-wide reputation; then there are Mead, Chatsworth, Zinfandel, Shah Jehan, Peroration, Plum Centre, Colonia, and many other winners, both on the flat and across country. Some very promising

youngsters are now coming on, and it is the wish of all good sportsmen that one of them may win yet another Derby for our King.

Our illustration is taken from a small silver replica (now at the South Kensington Natural History Museum) of the life-size model of Persimmon, which was presented by the members of the Jockey Club to His Majesty, and which is to be erected in Sandringham Park. It was executed by Captain Adrian Jones, who has kindly supplied the illustration. Many of our readers must have met him during his twenty-three years' service with the 3rd Hussars, Queen's Bays, and 2nd Life Guards, and those who have not met him are probably familiar with some of his colossal works, amongst them being the Royal Marines Memorial in St. James's Park, National Memorial to the South Australian Contingent in Adelaide, statue of General Sir Redvers Buller, V.C., at Exeter, &c., &c.. He is now at work upon an equestrian statue of the late H.R.H. the Duke of Cambridge, which is to be erected in Whitehall.

## ***THE HEIGHT OF POLO PONIES***

The writer suggests that there should be no hard and fast limit to the height of polo ponies, and gives his reasons.

Is it advisable in military polo to adhere to the rules in reference to the height of polo ponies? Would polo ponies under 15.2 hands high suit the convenience of officers for purposes of sport and their military duties better?

The theory that the bigger the pony, the more dangerous the polo becomes, will not, in the opinion of many good judges, hold water.

They urge that the greatest danger comes from the young and inexperienced player, the bad horseman, the vicious player and the untrained pony. They also urge that the stronger the pony, the less likelihood there is of his falling. It is generally conceded that above a certain height ponies are not easier to play upon. I am not certain as to what height they would lay down as the limit for sufficient handiness for polo, but the question of height, measured at the withers, has very little indeed to do with the matter. It is far more a question of the weight of the pony. Some of the best ponies are 15.2 hands high over their quarters, and not more than 14.3 over the withers. These pass the standard with little difficulty; but this form or shape of pony is rare, and when it is combined with speed and handiness, is really the most desirable polo pony.

Each spring and autumn officers are put to the greatest difficulty and expense through their inability to stable both their polo ponies and hunters at the same time. Now, whilst it is not suggested for a moment that any polo pony would be suitable amongst the cut-me-downs with anything but a feather-weight



on its back, still there are many hunting countries, especially in Ireland, where excellent sport can be obtained on a cob. He can get up to the top of a bank and down again almost as well as, and in some cases better than, a horse; and whilst few ponies can cope with the big ditches of Meath, still in nearly every other county in Ireland ponies may be seen in the first flight.

It is obvious that the more the height is increased the easier it would be to get good ponies at a reasonable price.

Cavalry officers are not likely to object to the danger (if any) of riding and playing on bigger ponies.

Those who have not long purses would find it a great convenience to hunt, play polo, and ride on parade the same animals.

On service, the horse which is capable of the greatest amount of fatigue on short rations is undoubtedly the small horse—as all those who rode consistently through the campaign in South Africa will readily agree.

When it was proposed in India to raise the height of polo ponies there was the usual selfish outcry by all those who thought they had vested interests; and no doubt the same cry would be raised in England. But if it is for the general interest that the height should be raised, we can very well afford to ignore it.

At present there is little doubt in my mind that, owing to the limited amount of stabling generally at their disposal, cavalry officers usually buy their ponies in the spring when they are dearest, and sell them in the autumn, when it is difficult to get a price for them. Similarly, through want of room, they buy the extra hunters which they require about the middle of September, and sell them at the end of the hunting season, when hunters are worth two-thirds of their price. This is a very serious expense to officers, and might be minimised by raising the height of polo ponies, so that, at any rate, light and medium weights could get some hunting out of the same animal.

Many officers have no convenience for turning out their polo ponies in the winter, or summering their hunters; and to these

the relaxation of the rules of height for polo ponies might be a boon.

It would be quite unnecessary to point out that every cavalry officer should play polo and hunt. If he is to keep hardy and fit up to the age of forty, he must go in for the hardest and most continuous exercise.

Polo is the training for the *mêlée*, whilst hunting trains an officer not only to have an eye to the country, but to make up his mind quickly and decidedly; and it is those officers whose natural abilities have been quickened on the polo ground and in the hunting field who are most suited for cavalry leaders.

I do not for one moment believe that those officers who are well off enough to keep plenty of polo ponies and hunters will be so selfish as to prejudice the interest of their brother officers who find it extremely hard to keep pace with them; and my appeal is to all those who have the welfare of the cavalry arm at heart.

CAVALIER.

NOTE BY EDITOR.—Possibly some of our readers may not see with the same eye as the writer.

**PROBLEM NO. 1**

By MAJOR G. K. ANSELL, *Brigade-Major, 3rd Cavalry Brigade*

‘THE General wants to see you at once, sir.’

‘Very well, I must be off,’ said Major Jones, and, turning to Sergeant Brown, he added: ‘Well, Sergeant, those are all the orders I can give you, so away you go and make the best arrangements you can to carry them out. If I get back in time, look me up before you start and tell me what you are going to do. In any case, I am sure you will carry out the work all right and I wish you good luck.’

\* \* \* \* \*

The scene is laid in South Africa early in February 1900. A small British force under General X is in position covering JOHNSTOWN, and blocking one of the main lines of advance for the Boers into Cape Colony.

General X’s orders are to show constant activity against the enemy, and by this means prevent his further advance south.

The Boer forces are holding a continuous line of strong posts along the Klip Ridge; their extreme right at Henry’s Farm and left on Spitz Kop. Their main laager is on the road some four or five miles in rear.

The 90th Hussars, in which regiment Major Jones commands ‘A’ squadron, are the only mounted troops at General X’s disposal, with the exception of a handful of Mounted Infantry just arrived from England. All others have been withdrawn to take part in a big turning movement about to be carried out some forty miles further to the west.

The British troops covering Johnstown have had a hard time

lately. The Boers, who considerably outnumber them, having found that the mounted men under General X are diminishing in numbers, have proportionately become more aggressive, and several times lately it has been as much as General X could do to hold on to his positions. About 10.30 P.M. on February 8, Major Jones was told by his commanding officer to send off a special patrol to find out what was going on in rear of the Boer laager.

It appeared that news had reached the General to the effect that the enemy were secretly and slowly withdrawing portions of their force to the north across the FLOOD RIVER to assist in checking our turning movement in the west, of which they had got wind.

It was of the greatest importance to verify this information, which, having been brought in by a 'loyal' Dutchman, General X thought quite possibly to be a ruse.

\* \* \* \* \*

'Who are you going to send?' said the Colonel.

'Well, Sergeant Brown must go,' replied Major Jones; 'he is just the man for the job, and I think it will be best to let him carry it out his own way.'

'H-m,' said the Colonel. 'It certainly ought to be a job for an officer.'

'That is all very well,' answered the Major, 'but, as you know, sir, I never had my full complement to start with and have only one subaltern left now, and his hands are kept full here.'

'Quite true, Kennedy has a broken leg and Smithson a bullet through his lungs, and the other squadrons are not much better off. It just shows what a wastage takes place amongst troop leaders in the field. All right then, you can send Brown.' Whereupon the Colonel went off, and the Major sent for Sergeant Brown, to whom he explained the situation. He was also able to give him the accompanying sketch map, which was known to be accurate. They were lucky to have it, as it had been made quite by chance before the war.

In conclusion the Major said :

‘It is now a quarter to eleven, so you ought to be off by a quarter past. You can take as many men of your troop as you like up to ten. You can work the job your own way, but let me know if you want us to make any arrangements here as to signalling or other help.’

At this point the orderly from the General interrupted, as noted above, and Sergeant Brown was left to himself.

---

*Time—10.45 p.m. A cold, cloudless night ; moon at end of first quarter.*

Now, place yourself in Brown’s shoes, and state briefly what arrangements you would make and where you would go. Give your reasons for the plan you propose.

Write distinctly and keep your reply short. In no case should it exceed 800 words.

You can show a great deal on the sketch map, which must be detached from the Journal and sent in with your reply.

N.B.—There are a few Dutch and native inhabitants scattered about the country, all of whom are hostile to England.

# JAAGERS RUST

The F  
it is d  
rocks  
There  
eithe

Kop

The Sea  
anywh  
banks

JOUBERTS  
FARM

370 ft Spitz Kop

20 Miles  
from Kleind

Contours 50 Ft V.I. Heights given  
in feet above lowest contour on sketch.

N.B. British position lies just off this  
sketch along a ridge about 8 miles south  
of the Boer position & facing it. The 90<sup>th</sup>  
Hussars are camped close to the main road.



PROBLEM NO. 1

OPEN to non-commissioned officers of the Mounted branches of the Regular or Auxiliary Forces at home and abroad.

All solutions (which must in no case exceed 300 words) must be attached to this page, with name, rank, and address of sender, must be countersigned by the officer commanding his Squadron, or the Adjutant, and must reach

The EDITOR,

CAVALRY JOURNAL,

Royal United Service Institution,

Whitehall, London, S.W.

not later than May 15, 1906.

A prize of a 'Cavalry' watch will be given to each of the first three whose solutions are considered the best.

The Editor's decision will be final.

*From*

*Name* .....

*Rank* ..... *Regt.* .....

*Address* .....

*Countersigned by* .....





## NOTES

### THE STAFF COLLEGE

THE following remarks taken from the report of the Director of Staff Duties on the last examination for admission to the Staff College are worthy of attention. We feel assured that there is no lack of excellent material in the Cavalry, which we trust future examinations will verify.

‘It is again remarked with regret that Cavalry officers are practically ceasing to attempt to enter the Staff College. This year there have been only three competitors; in 1904, there were six; in 1903, nine; in 1902, ten. It is, of course, notorious that service in the Cavalry for some time past has not been popular. On the one hand, resignations in recent years have been numerous, on the other, candidates for commissions in the Cavalry to take the places of those resigning have not been forthcoming. The causes for this regrettable state of affairs are not within the scope of this report to discuss. But one effect of them is such a serious shortage in the establishment of officers, that duties have become exceptionally heavy for those who still remain, and they probably find little time for the steady and serious study which is absolutely necessary for those who hope to compete successfully for admission to the Staff College.

It is to be earnestly hoped that steps which are being taken to attract officers to the Cavalry will be effective, and that the commissioned ranks will soon again be up to their full strength. It may be confidently anticipated when this is the case, that Cavalry officers will enter as freely for the Staff College as officers of the other arms. In no branch of the service is higher training required, nor can any arm in the field contribute more to great and successful results. It is therefore most desirable that

Cavalry officers should have the great advantage of a Staff College training, and it is sincerely hoped that as soon as improved conditions permit, they will compete freely for admission as they have done in the past.

There are a few minor changes in the syllabus for the next entrance examination to be held in August 1906. In order to qualify, candidates will be required to make .5 of the marks in each paper, instead of .5 in each subject, and in order to be eligible for nomination, three-eighths of the marks in each paper must be obtained instead of three-eighths in each subject as heretofore.

There will be only one paper in Military Engineering carrying 400 marks instead of two papers carrying 600 marks between them.

Candidates may take up in future two languages only, not three.

---

#### CAVALRY IN WAR

Maj.-Gen. H. J. Scobell, C.B., commanding the 1st Cavalry Brigade, delivered a lecture last month on Cavalry before a very large gathering of the Aldershot Military Society. Lieut.-Gen. Sir John French presided.

Gen. Scobell said that the introduction of firearms had played an important part in the rôle of Cavalry, but not sufficient to justify the disuse of the *arme blanche* and with it the dash and energy which should always characterise Cavalry. Regarding the part Cavalry played in the war in Manchuria little could be learnt, as on the Russian side there were some 30,000 or 40,000 Cossacks with little or no training as Cavalry, and on the other side only a few thousand who had been trained as Cavalry proper. There was nothing in that war to comment upon in regard to Cavalry except in a negative way ; for if either side had possessed a substantial force of trained Cavalry more complete results would have been obtained on the side possessing them. The rôle that Cavalry was destined to play in twentieth-century

battles was one which called for the highest qualities both from the leaders and the men.

Maj.-Gen. F. J. W. Eustace, C.B., spoke of the opportunity of using Horse Artillery in connection with Cavalry as it occurred on the day on which they entered Kimberley, the fire of the guns covering the charge. He thought there were future possibilities in this direction.

Sir John French said it was certainly the case that Cavalry had been blamed in the last two wars, and it had been urged in excuse that those wars were exceptional wars. In some respects they were so. The Boer War was exceptional in regard to Cavalry work, for men could not charge flies. In the late war there was an exception, inasmuch as the Japanese and Russian Cavalry had been trained as Mounted Infantry, and not as real Cavalry. It was difficult, until we got a correct account of the history of this campaign, to come to proper conclusions. It stood to reason that, if we trained our Cavalry to act as Mounted Infantry or Mounted Rifles, they would perform those duties.

---

### THE DUTIES OF CAVALRY

The Inspector of Cavalry writes that the day after he wrote the article with which this number commences he read in Machiavelli's 'Arte of Warre' a definition of the rôle of Cavalry which is interesting as a comparison of the principles prevalent in 1520 with those of to-day :—

‘ There ought to bee horse [*i.e.* Cavalry] but for seconde not for firste foundation of an armie [*i.e.* secondary to Infantry]. For that

‘ To make discoverie [*i.e.* reconnaissance],

‘ To overrun and destroye the enemies countrie,

‘ To keep troubled and disquieted the armie of the same and in their armours alwayes,

‘ To let [deprive] them of their victuals :  
horsemen are for these uses necessary and most profitable.

‘ And also they are meeter to followe the enemie being discomfited than to do anything other.

‘ Also they are profitable for the daye of battaile and for the fighte in the field, which is the importaunce of warre and the ende for which armies are ordeined.’

---

#### AMERICA

The United States army have adopted a new sword, a light, short, cutting and thrusting, slightly curved weapon. To be kept always sharp. Wooden leather-covered scabbard. For mounted men it is thirty-two inches long, centre of gravity five inches from base of hilt. For dismounted men (officers &c.), it is twenty-eight inches long, centre of gravity three and a quarter inches from base of hilt. A certain value is assigned to up-cuts with the back of the sword after passing &c., and eight inches of the back is sharpened.

---

#### INDIA

The great military review at Rawalpindi of 55,000 troops before H.R.H. the Prince of Wales, went off without a hitch, which is the more creditable to the troops concerned, as there had been no rehearsal. Lord Kitchener, in the second part of the review, showed His Royal Highness the war divisions at full strength, just as they would take the field under the new scheme of reorganisation.

The Infantry went by in brigades massed by divisions with the Cavalry on the outer flank in ‘mass,’ and the Artillery in column of batteries.

---

#### THE IMPERIAL YEOMANRY

The traditions of the Yeomanry have always been closely allied with those of the Cavalry, and we trust that the subjects of mutual interest which appear in this Journal may tend to strengthen this alliance. We trust in future numbers to be able

to ventilate some of the questions which occupy the minds of thoughtful Yeomanry officers.

\* \* \* \* \*

The Army Council has sanctioned the issue of allowances at Cavalry rates to lieutenants of Imperial Yeomanry who may be attached for duty to Cavalry regiments at home, in which vacancies exist for subaltern officers.

---

### CANADA

Our sub-editor for Canada, writing from Kingston, says :

‘The idea of having a “Cavalry Journal” for the Imperial Mounted Forces is, to say the least, an excellent one, and one that all loyal colonials should, and will, I know, support in every way.

‘Those serving in England will be able to follow the various movements of their brothers in arms serving in the colonies, while those in the colonies will be able to see what is going on in England.

‘The Journal will bring into touch all the mounted troops of the Empire.

‘Those who served from the colonies during the late South African war will long remember the pleasure it gave them to rub shoulders with their English brothers in arms. A great deal was learnt from that war. It was the first time that any number of Canadian soldiers left the shores of Canada to fight for the Empire. May it not be the last. Soldiers of Canada will always be ready to fight the battles of the Empire, no matter in what part of the world it may be.

‘The garrisoning of the forts at Halifax and Esquimalt by Canadian troops has done much to help the martial spirit of Canadians. Many men are anxious to enlist, so that they may be of assistance to the mother country in case their services are required. The permanent forces of the Dominion have been considerably increased, and will, I understand, be still more

added to by degrees. The reorganisation of the Canadian forces by Major-General P. Lake, the Chief of the Canadian General Staff, is very rapidly being developed. The Government of the Dominion are doing all that lies in their power to assist in this reorganisation.

‘The training of the Cavalry forces of the Dominion takes place during the months of June and July at the various camps of instruction of the Dominion, and my notes in your October edition will contain a thorough description of all work done by them throughout the Dominion, and will, I trust, be of sufficient interest, not only to the Canadian troops themselves, but to our brothers in arms from not only England, but from sister colonies.’

---

#### APPOINTMENTS

Many of our readers will have noted with satisfaction the appointment of our former Inspector-General in India and subsequently in England, Lieut.-General Sir George Luck, K.C.B., to the Lieutenancy of the Tower of London. Three years after he joined the 15th Foot (now the East Yorkshire Regiment), he went to the 6th Inniskilling Dragoons, and then to the 15th Hussars, which regiment he subsequently commanded.

---

Brig.-General M. F. Rimington, C.B., has been granted an extension of one year, from January 26, in his tenure of appointment as commander of the Third Cavalry Brigade at the Curragh.

---

#### REGIMENTAL HISTORIES

We understand that two cavalry regiments, the 2nd Dragoons (Royal Scots Greys) and the 11th (Prince Albert's Own) Hussars, are about to publish their regimental histories. No doubt either of these regiments would be very grateful to any of our readers for any anecdotes or special information relating to the subject.

## MOVES

The Cavalry Riding Establishment at Canterbury is to be amalgamated with the Cavalry School temporarily at Bulford, Salisbury Plain, pending completion of barracks at Netheravon.

We understand that during the spring the 1st Cavalry Brigade, commanded by Major-General H. J. Scobell, will be reconstituted, the 1st Dragoon Guards going to York, and the 8th Hussars to Brighton, being relieved by the 6th Dragoons from Dublin, and the 20th Hussars from Brighton. The latter move may not take place until later in the year.

---

ACCIDENTS

Colonel Malcolm Little, Staff Officer, Welsh and Midland Command, recently had a severe fall out hunting, which laid him up for some weeks. Brigadier-General E. H. H. Allenby also met with an accident whilst hunting ; he is progressing favourably, but will not be able to get about for some time, as two of his ribs were badly fractured by his horse when it fell. This officer was only recently appointed from the command of the 5th Lancers to the head of the 4th Cavalry Brigade at Colchester, in the room of Colonel J. R. P. Gordon, who had to relinquish the post owing to ill-health.

---

FRANCE

A French detachment of twenty men of the 4th Dragoons, with the commanding officer, one captain, and three lieutenants, accomplished a fine piece of extended reconnaissance last month. Leaving Chambéry at 6.30 A.M. the party reached Vizelle at 2.30 P.M., having done 48 miles with one halt. At 4 P.M. the return march to Chambéry was commenced *via* Grenoble and Les Echelles. Including a halt for the night, Chambéry was reached at noon the following day, making 121 miles in 28 hours. The horses came in fresh and well.

O. LUMLEY, *Col., Editor.*



*SPORTING NOTES*

## POLO

WE have received a letter from 'Cavalier,' which we print elsewhere, suggesting the raising the height of polo ponies to 15.2 hands. In our opinion 15 hands would have formed a better argument; there is the danger also of alienating military from civilian polo. No doubt it would add considerably to the variety and excitement of the game to watch such well-known players as Major Neil Haig on a 15.2-hand horse, and Major K. McLaren on a 14-hand pony. We should be glad, however, to have some of our readers' views on the subject.

*Polo: India.*—Polo, well supported by Lord Kitchener, has been more popular than ever in India during the past year. There has been some good polo recently at Hyderabad, the capital of the Nizam, and at the end of the tournament the cup was presented to the Golcondas by his Highness the Nizam. The Golcondas are a native team of officers in the Nizam's army. The first match was between the 26th Light Cavalry and the 20th Deccan Horse, which the latter won. The Golcondas then played the 13th Hussars. The teams were: Golcondas,—Duffadar Faiz Mahomed Khan (No. 1), Mr. Shah Mirza Beg (No. 2), Captain Osman Yah Dowlah (No. 3), and Mr. Kadir Beg (back); 13th Hussars,—Captain Spencer (No. 1), Captain Twist (No. 2), Colonel Wiggin (No. 3), and Major Church (back); umpires, Major Arnold and Captain Irvine. The Golcondas at once took the lead; after magnificent play they won by thirteen goals and five subsidiaries to one goal and two subsidiaries. Such a hollow victory was unexpected, and shows what a splendid team

the Golcondas are. After a good game the 20th Deccan Horse defeated the Fattah Maidan Gymkhana, and in the final the Golcondas won as they liked.

The annual tournament for the Champion Cup, which is usually competed for by the best regimental and native teams, will not take place as usual during the Army Cup week at Lucknow. Owing to the duties required of certain teams by the Royal visit, it has been decided to hold the tournament during the Civil Service Cup week next February. The 9th, 12th, and 17th Lancers, Calcutta Polo Club, Golcondas, Jodhpur, and Kishengarh are expected to send representative teams.

We are glad to hear that polo also flourishes in Canada. The Polo Club of the Royal Canadian Dragoons stationed at Toronto is one of the best in Canada. The officers are energetic in all matters pertaining to this king of games, and are looking forward with interest to the coming season.

A polo club has recently been formed in the Kingston garrison, Lt.-Col. Victor A. S. Williams, the late captain of the R. C. D. Club and the Toronto Hunt Polo Club, now Chief Staff Officer of the recently organised Eastern Ontario Command, is the moving spirit.

#### HUNTING

Hunting holds its own as the king of sports, and officers all over the country are pursuing the fox whenever duty permits: surely there can be no sport better calculated to train a cavalry officer. A glance at the names of Masters of Hounds shows to what extent fox-hunting is indebted to the Cavalry and Imperial Yeomanry for its leaders.

Amongst many well-known M.F.H.'s we might mention the Duke of Beaufort (late Royal Horse Guards), the Marquis of Zetland (late Royal Horse Guards), Mr. John Watson (late 18th Hussars), Major F. Wise (late 13th Hussars), Lord Southampton (late 10th Hussars), Lord Kensington (late 15th Hussars), Sir James Miller (late 14th Hussars), Col. B. Herbert

(late 17th Lancers), Col. P. J. Browne (late Royal Dragoons), Capt. Forrester (late 3rd Hussars), and many others.

#### RACING

The Aldershot autumn races were held on November 30 and December 1. They were marred by a fatal accident to Captain E. Meyricke of the Royal Engineers, who was killed by his horse falling in the Open Military Steeplechase. He was a most clever, popular officer, proficient at all games, and is a great loss to the service. This is the first fatal accident that has ever occurred at the Aldershot races, and cast a profound gloom over the large gathering. Otherwise the races were a great success. Captain Rasbotham of the King's Dragoon Guards rode three winners, and Captain Denny of the same regiment rode two winners. Mr. T. Lumley-Smith, of the 21st Lancers, also rode one of his horses to victory, and the same officer's horse Alert III. won the Past and Present Steeplechase. Considering that the majority of the races were open for professional riders the performances were excellent, and Captain Rasbotham's exhibition of jockeyship was one of the features of the meeting.

#### RACING IN INDIA

The Army Cup race was run for as usual at the Lucknow November meeting. It is open to Arab ponies, while the Civil Service Cup, which is run for at the February meeting, is open to all classes of ponies. The race excited great interest; there were forty-three entries, and it was won by William Rufus, the property of Mr. T. R. Badger of the 12th (Prince of Wales's Royal) Lancers. General Locke-Elliott, a staunch supporter of every form of mounted sport, won the Calcutta Turf Club Steeplechase with Look Out, ridden by Captain Barrett of the 15th (The King's) Hussars. Captain the Hon. C. Guest, of the 1st (Royal) Dragoons won the pony steeplechase with Perquisite, ridden by Mr. Tomkinson of the same regiment, son of the well-known

Cheshire sportsman. Messrs. Wood and Badger, both of the 12th Lancers, won the Members' Plate, with the Irish-bred Thomond.

## FOOTBALL

The team of New Zealanders have carried everything before them in England this season : it shows how necessary it is to be really fit and in combined hard training to be successful at football ; it is undoubtedly owing to this that their prowess has been so phenomenal. Their theory is that the best form of defence is attack (an excellent Cavalry maxim), and they put it into practice with unmistakable success until they met the Welsh footballers, who held the same view, with the consequence that there was very little tactical advantage to either side, and a fine game resulted in a bare win for Wales by the narrow margin of 3 points.

Matches for the Cavalry Football Association Challenge Cup are now taking place. The results of the competition hitherto have been :

- 1896. 8th Hussars beat 9th Lancers.
- 1897. 2nd Life Guards beat 15th Hussars.
- 1898. Royal Horse Guards beat 12th Lancers.
- 1899. 10th Hussars beat 8th Hussars.
- 1900. No competition.
- 1901. No competition.
- 1903. 6th Inniskilling Dragoons beat 1st Royal Dragoons.
- 1904. 17th Lancers beat 14th Hussars.
- 1905. 3rd Dragoon Guards beat 14th Hussars.

This season the 7th Dragoon Guards, after a good game, defeated the 14th Hussars, who have been the runners up for the last two years. The 21st Lancers have entered the third round, having defeated the Blues by one goal to nil, and the 7th Dragoon Guards by three goals to one, after first playing a drawn game of one goal all. The 3rd Dragoon Guards, 5th Lancers, 16th Lancers, 18 Hussars, and 21st Lancers are left in for the third round. Mention of the 14th Hussars reminds us that

this sporting regiment is on the roster for India, and will have a big sale of hunters and polo ponies at Tattersall's on May 7 next year.

*Football: India.*—With reference to football in India, it may be stated that in 1894 the first championship of India match was played under the management of the Rovers' Club. In the final that year the Royal Scots beat the Highland Light Infantry by one goal to nil. This year the championship has been revived, and the final was played during the Royal visit, between the Royals (who won the Durand), and the Seaforths (who won the Bombay Rovers Tournament). The latter were victorious by two goals to nil, after two drawn matches had been played.

#### BOXING

On November 14 and 15 the 18th Hussars held a most successful boxing tournament in the Riding School at York. It was open to the troops in the Northern Command, and was ably managed by Sergt.-Major Mordaunt. On the first night Private Casling, the Guards champion, beat Billy Johnson, the coloured champion of Leeds. On the second night Sergeant Brindley, East Yorkshire Regiment, had the best of a good fight with Jim Calpin, the light-weight champion of York.

On November 30 the 8th Hussars also gave a good boxing tournament at Aldershot. It was well arranged by Regt.-Sergt.-Major Burns, and some capital bouts were witnessed. Captain Van Der Byl acted as timekeeper, and at the conclusion of the entertainment the prizes were presented by Major Mussenden.

On December 14 Private Salter (middle-weight champion), 21st Lancers, won on points in a six-round contest against Private Pritchard (middle-weight champion), 14th Hussars.

In the interest of sport in the Army, we shall be grateful to correspondents if they will at any time send the editors brief accounts of sporting events that may come under their notice.

J. W. YARDLEY, *Lt.-Col., Sporting Editor.*

Digitized by Google

Portrait  
of  
Cromwell



Cromwell

Reproduced by kind permission of Dr. G. WILLIAMSON,  
author of 'The History of Portrait Miniatures.' The  
original is an unfinished portrait by S. COOPER, in  
possession of the Duke of Buccleuch.

# THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

---

APRIL 1906.

---

## *RECENT STEPS IN CAVALRY TRAINING IN ENGLAND*

BY THE INSPECTOR OF CAVALRY

The following is a review of the principal recent changes in the development of the Cavalry at home, which include—Organisation in Brigades composed of effective Regiments, with a 'striking force' immediately available for active service. Careful instruction of the individual, whether recruit, trained soldier, or horse, instead of mere drill of the mass. Delegation of responsibility on the junior officers, as well as the seniors. Institution of scouting and despatch riding on a recognised system. The foundation of a Cavalry school at Netheravon. Improved practical training in Brigades and Regiments, of which several examples are given.

The article further points out that much yet remains to be done, both in principle and detail, by increasing the establishment of Cavalry and by further study of their arm on the part of officers of both Regular and Auxiliary Cavalry.

### RECENT DEVELOPMENTS IN THE CAVALRY

CHANGES in the organisation and instruction of Cavalry have recently been gradually developing, and though it would be impossible within the limits of this article to go into the higher aspects of the Cavalry rôle, comparison with foreign Cavalries, and so on, yet it may be of interest to the readers of the CAVALRY JOURNAL, and especially to our comrades in the Colonial Mounted



Forces, to hear briefly what minor steps have been taken within the past two years to develop our training towards the greater ends.

#### A FIGHTING FORCE PERMANENTLY READY

In the first place as regards organisation, Regiments at home have been changed from 'skeletons' and have all been put on a full strength, though small, establishment of men and horses, and the numerous and expensive small depôts and provisional Regiments have been done away with.

Four complete Brigades have been organised, of which the Brigade at Aldershot has been made a striking force, immediately available for active service; and the Brigade in Ireland is on a footing to take the field with very little delay. The Cavalry generally has been remounted since the war, with a good class of young horse.

#### YOUNG OFFICERS INVESTED WITH RESPONSIBILITY

As regards the training and discipline, one great aim has been to give more responsibility to, and therefore, incidentally, to demand greater efficiency on the part of all officers, including the most junior. No officer or N.C.O. is to be without some definite 'job,' for which he is responsible, and in which he can do himself credit, and make a name for himself.

The group system has been developed in the troops, which is also a partial step in the same direction, since it places responsibility on section leaders by giving them a section of men and horses to administer both in barracks and in the field. It is essential for the system to work with success that the senior officer should do his part and really put responsibility on to the juniors. The successful commanding officer is he who first instructs his juniors clearly in what he wants done, and in the standard of efficiency which he requires, and who then trusts them with a pretty free hand to carry out his ideas, and subsequently gives them credit for their efforts, or blame for neglect.

INDIVIDUAL TRAINING BY INSTRUCTION RATHER THAN  
DRILL

We have further aimed at the development of the *individual* efficiency of man and horse, as the foundation and key to success with the whole—whether for close or extended order, for work as a body or for detached duties, whether against a civilised European foe, or against fanatic savages in rugged countries.

With the shortened service it became necessary to alter our methods to get men trained to a certain standard of efficiency as quickly as possible, and with the present more intelligent class of men, their education has to be on somewhat different lines to those formerly in vogue. That is to say, our training now has to be effected by *instruction* rather than by mere *drill*.

The above points have been more fully expounded in the new book of 'Cavalry Training,' in which general principles are inculcated, while much of the former 'detail' is omitted, and thus the useless N.C.O., who was formerly considered efficient if he was able to throw up his chin and to spout, parrotwise, a string of 'aids' to a squad of men, no longer passes muster where 'instruction' to each recruit is required in his own words and by his own demonstration. It gives an opening for initiative on the part of the keen instructor, and forces the less capable one either to think for himself—and therefore to improve—or else to be exposed.

The instruction of their men, from recruits to N.C.O.'s, is now entirely in the hands of the Squadron and Troop commanders. In order to make it the more thorough and effective, it has been based on a progressive system of step by step training, whether it be for the recruit, the trained soldier, or the remount; and 'Rides' and 'Drill Squads' (i.e. units for collective *drill*) of six or eight pupils, since that number is as great as can be individually taught by one instructor, have given place to classes for *instruction*.

## CIRCUS TRICKS

In order to make the instruction more practical and interesting for the men, both in elementary and in more finished work, competitions have been liberally introduced into the training—‘Circus Tricks’ some people call them. Officers are encouraged to invent them for themselves, with the sole restriction that in framing them, their real object must always be kept in view, viz., a practical development in some branch of Cavalry duty of the man or horse.

These ‘Circus Tricks’ in equitation have naturally been cavilled at by some critics, but their employment has not been sanctioned without due consideration and after study had been made of the systems of France, America, Austria, Germany, India, &c.

It is early yet to judge of results, but so far Commanding Officers report that they can turn out a recruit fit to ride in the ranks in four months, and—in every Regiment—that a ‘marked improvement’ has taken place in the riding of the men, in the handiness of the horses, and in their general efficiency for war.

This system of training, *when properly applied by the officers*, has excited the interest of the men taking part in it, and their keenness has resulted in the good effects stated.

A very long list of these practices and competitions might be given, but it is enough to quote for the guidance of those who have not seen them a few of the more prominent ones.

*Recruits.*—For the first three months after joining recruits are carefully trained in free gymnastics, swimming, map-reading, sword-fencing, semaphore-signalling, musketry, and general theory, &c., before they go to the Riding School and Horse Management.

They are then allowed to ride easy horses on saddles covered with a numnah, or on a numnah with roller and handles to give them confidence.

They have competitions in wrestling barebacked, and football

mounted, &c., by which they very quickly learn to stick on, to mount and dismount quickly, and to guide their horses.

After this they are taught the 'grammar' of riding, not in big classes, but individually by an instructor who is also mounted, and can thus demonstrate his teaching.

*Horses.*—Young horses are first taught to lie down in a sand-bath. They are then driven on long-reins till they act on these at the word of command for all paces, turns, and bending. And they learn jumping in the jumping-lane before being mounted.

*Free Jumping-Lane.*—Lanes with a series of jumps are now put up in all barracks. The horses are turned loose into these one by one, and are induced by food, not by whips, to go over the jumps; the squadron horses in many regiments being put through the lane every day on their way to stables. In this way the horses get to enjoy jumping and become very handy and clever at it.

*Sliding the Slope.*—Part of the horse's training now consists in being ridden down steep slopes.

*Boxing.*—Horses are further made handy for mounted combats by the riders without spurs fighting bouts with boxing-gloves, right hand only.

*Polo Race.*—Designed for teaching men to get down in their saddles, to use their weapons and to make horses handy. Consists in two teams being started composed of four men a side armed with hockey-sticks, each team being provided with a small football, which it endeavours to drive through a goal at some 300 yards distance before the opposing team can get their ball through.

*The Zigzag Race.*—For this three or four lines of posts are planted zigzag and competitors start at the same time, each galloping down his line of posts. This exercise is a test of the handiness of the horses and the riding of the men, and incidentally shows to the troop officer what alterations are required in the way of handling individual horses to make them really handy.

*Football Mounted (Barebacked)* teaches rapid mounting and dismounting.

*Card-sticking Race*.—Competitors using sword or lance to pick up cards strewn along the course. The greatest number of cards picked up in the shortest time secures the prize.

*Prize Snatching*.—Prizes in handkerchiefs on the ground or on low positions to be picked up by hand when at full gallop.

*Standing in Stirrups crossed over Saddle, or 'Cossack Riding,'* gives men confidence and accustoms horses to their vagaries. A holding-on strap to the head collar saves the horse's mouth from being pulled about by misuse of the reins.

*Mounted Dummies* on loose horses and wearing tin breastplates to be pursued by parties of three or four men; the first to pierce the breastplate with his sword wins the heat.

*Vaulting* on and off galloping horses, to make the men supple and active and horses quiet.

*Horses taught to lie down, to stand alone, &c.,* produces a better understanding between man and horse, and is often of value on service.

*Wire Jumping*, practised by 17th Lancers over wire fence, the top strand being made of cord for instruction.

*Pistol Practice (Mounted)* with blank cartridge at air balloons, or with slugs at figure targets, glass balls, &c.

*Tent-Pegging*, lime-cutting and other such competitions at speed are practised sparingly, since they are liable to strain horses and to make them excitable.

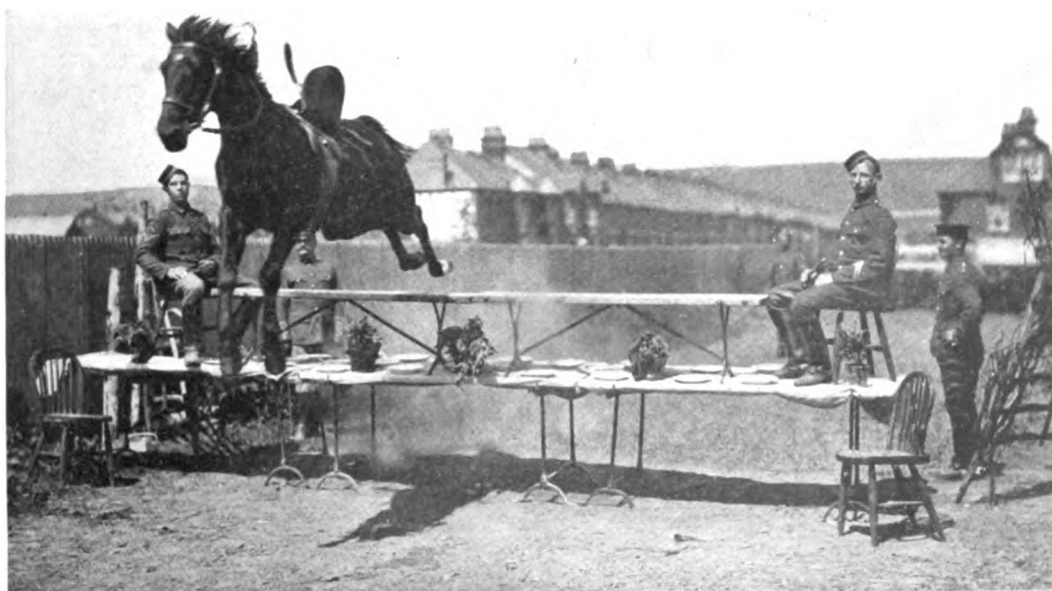
*Jumping Dummies*, or any other unexpected obstacle, such as dining-table, low cart, &c. To teach horses to jump whatever the rider puts them at.

*Charging Dummies*.—A line of standing dummy figures is set up to represent an opposing line of enemy, and beyond them for half a mile or so single dummy figures are dotted about in all directions to represent a flying enemy.

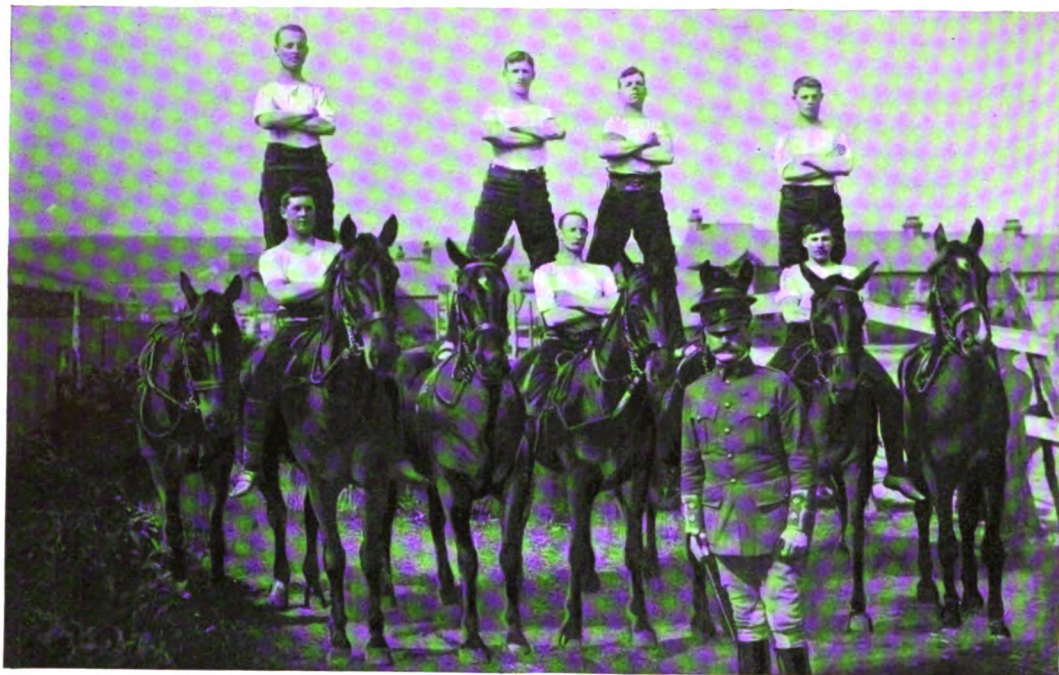
The competitors are generally divided into bodies of any strength from a section up to a troop, according to the number



**"CIRCUS TRICKS."**  
14th Hussars at Shorncliffe.







**"CIRCUS TRICKS."**  
14th Hussars at Shorncliffe.



of dummies available. The team charges the first line of dummies in line, and afterwards disperses to pursue the separate figures, and the time is taken on its arrival at a distant winning-post. The team which knocks over the largest number of dummies and completes the course in the shortest time is the winner.

This competition teaches men that their first object in the charge is to over-ride the enemy, and after that to use their weapons and their horses to the best advantage and best speed, and it accustoms the horses to riding down opponents.

### HORSEMASTERSHIP

*Horsemastership* is practically taught by sending out men in pairs on long-distance patrols of at least 120 miles to find their way by day and by night, and to report on certain points within a given time. This exercise gives the men experience in taking care of their horses and themselves, and develops their individuality; and, where there is a particularly unintelligent man, it is found a useful practice to send him alone on such an expedition, as he thus gradually acquires self-reliance and intelligence.

It is proposed to extend this practice of long-distance rides, with a view to gaining a fuller experience in the endurance of horses and ascertaining how best to secure and maintain it, and thus to acquire a higher standard of practical horsemaster-ship than heretofore among all ranks.

### SCOUTING AND DESPATCH RIDING

In the matter of scouting, a great step has been accomplished in placing it on a sound and permanent system. All officers and men are trained as scouts: the twelve best men in a Regiment are further perfected under the 'intelligence officer' (i.e., an officer selected to carry out intelligence duties of the Regiment), and are appointed to be 'regimental scouts.' Of the remainder,



at least four per squadron are trained by squadron scouting officers to be 'squadron scouts.'

These men are taught carefully the elements of reconnaissance, such as finding their way by map and stars, &c., quickness of vision, how and what to report, tracking, estimating distances, crossing rivers, care of horse and of self, &c., and are put through a large amount of practice in the field and in long-distance patrols, &c., in order to gain experience. On qualifying satisfactorily they are invested with a distinguishing badge, viz., a brass 'Fleur-de-Lys' (North Point) on the left arm.

The scouts, officers and men, only hold their appointment for eighteen months, when they have to qualify for these again, competing with new men coming on.

Information, however valuable, when gained by scouts extended over a wide area, *only becomes useful when it has been communicated to the officer commanding the main force*, and therefore special steps have been taken in training a number of men (usually about twenty) in each Regiment to act as despatch riders; these are partly horsemen, partly cyclists, whose training fits them for finding their way by map or otherwise over long distances in unknown country, at a fast sustained pace, and when necessary, from one moving body to another.

The above numbers have been trained in each regiment last year as a minimum; as instruction and experience develop more men will be trained, because, although the above are sufficient for a day's work at manœuvres, reliefs will be necessary for the more arduous work of active service when it has to be carried out by day and night, without intermission for long periods.

Scouting competitions such as 'Flag Stealing,' 'Spider and Fly,' 'Tracking,' 'Chart and Compass Races,' and 'Long-distance Reconnaissance' (as described in CAVALRY JOURNAL for January 1906), and other games are employed for practising the men, under conditions approaching the hustle and exigencies of war, in using their eyes and wits, and a few are appended that have been devised in Brigades during the past year.

*1st Brigade at Aldershot*

1. *Riding*.—K. D. G.'s classified their men as good first or second-class riders by making each man ride over test course.

Mount horse standing still . . . . .	10 points.
66 yards at canter (15 seconds) on given leg . . . . .	10 points.
58 yards at trot (15 seconds) . . . . .	10 points.
66 yards at canter (15 seconds) . . . . .	10 points.
Halt, dismount offside, mount near side (10 seconds) . . . . .	10 points.
Canter and jump single hurdle (15 seconds). . . . .	10 points.
Canter 66 yards (15 seconds) . . . . .	10 points.
Charge dummy and point him with sword . . . . .	10 points.

Correct time about 1 minute 25 seconds. Points deducted for over time. Special value, every man knows he will be examined individually, so all staff, employed, and other men try to get practice in riding. This classification is useful for determining a man's pay, and a good opportunity for instructors to note faults that should be corrected.

2. *War Game*.—Sand models are used for explaining contours, &c., also for tactical war games.

3. *Riding*.—Paper chases by paper dropped sparingly, or small articles such as buttons, pipes, &c., blazes on trees, hoof-tracks, &c. To develop observation of small signs.

*2nd Brigade at Canterbury*

1. *Scouting Practice*.—A pretender to the throne has appeared with a force at Reading, but getting the worst of it, decides to escape to Spain, having arranged for a ship to pick him up somewhere between Bournemouth and Lyme Regis. He and his escort, three men, may assume any disguise, but *must* ride troop horses. Lieut. Woodhouse, 14th Hussars, enacted the pretender, and started on the 15th from Reading; five officers and eighty-one scouts went out to stop him; getting away. These

were given 2s. a day to keep themselves and horses for five days. Scouts were spread over the country and correctly reported the escort at Winchester, but could not find the pretender, who travelled alone chiefly by night, and spread false reports through his escort. Two of these were captured on the 16th. He was eventually captured disguised as a farmer on the 18th by Captain Van de Byl, after a ride of 148 miles. He kept communication with his scouts by visiting pre-arranged spots where notes were hidden for him, or telegrams at certain offices. Horses were very well looked after by all concerned.

2. *Embarkation Practice*.—Carried out by regimental pioneers erecting derricks, and horses being slung into horse-boats, and re-landed from horse-boats on to bank. One regiment competing against another as to rate of doing so.

### *3rd Brigade in Ireland*

1. *Treasure Hunt, Scouting Practice*.—Assumed rebellion in North. Sympathisers in South try to send a cart containing treasure to them. Troops in centre, aware of this intention, endeavour to prevent it. Lieut. Osmond Williams, 19th Hussars, with about thirty scouts was given a cart containing box of 'treasure.'

All troops sent out parties of patrols and scouts to waylay him. After a most adventurous journey of some 300 miles he eventually got safely through, working chiefly by night. His most interesting report will be published.

2. *Spying*.—At the manœuvres of this Brigade three spies were authorised on each side—in any disguise so long as they did not dress as women. This gave a very practical turn to the scouting, &c., and also taught all ranks to avoid talking about the plans of the operations, though they were fully informed about them.

3. *Embarkation and Pioneering*.—Carried out on a large and very practical scale in a special camp of exercise at Lusk, on the coast.



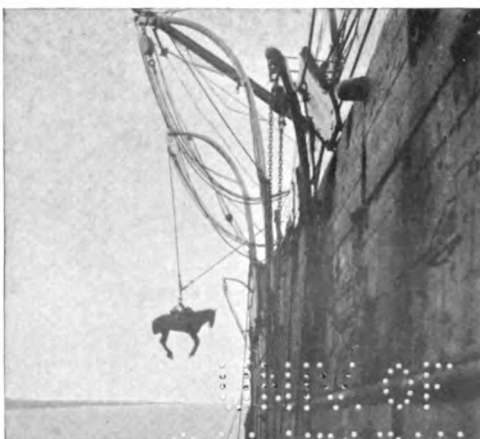
11th Hussars crossing estuary on raft, made of hay, wrapped in waterproof sheets.



11th Hussars on timber raft, crossing estuary at high tide.



Slings horse out of horse boat.



Lowering horse from transport into horse boat.

Digitized by Google

All ranks of the Brigade were taught swimming, swimming with their horses, rowing, management of small boats, slinging, bridge-building, rafting, embarking and disembarking horses in horse-boats, and on board ship.

4. *Combat Instruction*.—Three pairs of men are posted round a wide circle, two pairs mounted armed with single sticks or dummy lances, the third pair dismounted with spring bayonets. The competitor canters round the ring and fights each pair as he comes to them, delivering a point at first man and parrying a point from the second in each pair.

5. *Scouting Competition*.—Lasting five days. Teams, two scouts mounted, with one cyclist. Prize for best work done in reporting, finding way by day and night, care and condition of horse, turn-out of men and equipment on return. New direction given daily, and subject for special report. Results, by satisfying in every particular.

6. *Examination* of every man at end of troop training, practical skill, alarms, semaphore, judging distance : written examination in reconnaissance, stable management, musketry theory.

## *4th Brigade, lately formed at Colchester*

1. *Long Distance Patrolling*.—Each trained scout takes an untrained comrade on a long-distance patrol, if possible to his own village, where they stay three days. Certain points have to be reported on. The last day's march into barracks must be over fifty miles.

18th *Hussars Scouting and Spying*.—The inhabitants of York rebel, and besiege troops in barracks. A relieving force from the South endeavour to send a despatch into barracks through the rebels.

Lieut. Malet and a few scouts represent the despatch party, while Captain Gosselin with 18th Hussars represents the rebels. Corporal Walter, one of the rebel scouts, disguised himself as a fisherman, and went on his bicycle about the country until he found the party of despatch riders. He overheard some of their

conversation, and finally found them, dressing up one of their numbers as a girl. He telegraphed the news into York. Picquets watched all roads and railways. Private Brewer, of the despatch riders, dressed as a girl with despatches in a band-box, arrived by train at York, and passed the picquet (of his own squadron), but was recognised and arrested by Captain Lichtenberg.

The civilians at York entered into the spirit of the exercise with great interest, and passengers by train good-humouredly submitted themselves to examination by picquets, &c.

2. *Surprise Practice*.—A party of rebels were reported some fifteen miles from York; the Regiment was ordered out to surround them in the night, and capture them. It endeavoured to do so, but failed to get more than three.

More rebels with a pom-pom meantime, taking advantage of the fog, laid an ambush for the Regiment returning to York, but although nearly successful, two scouts of the Regiment (White and Ellis) discovered their presence, and gave warning just in time.

3. *Scouting Practice*.—To find the missing letter. A letter for each squadron was hidden at a spot fifty miles from barracks; a list of hints and clues was given by which a man might find his way; four scouts from each squadron were allowed to compete, mounted on bicycles. A prize of £2 to the first scout to find the letter for his squadron, and to hand it to the squadron commander in barracks. Scout Tooley, A squadron, succeeded in doing so in 10 hours 25 minutes after starting, having ridden 110 miles. Scout Lyne, B squadron, second, thirty-five minutes later.

4. *Despatch Riding*.—Competitors, four men from each squadron—to take a message about eight miles.—

Walking 2 miles,

Swimming 40 yards,

Running 1 mile,

Riding  $1\frac{1}{2}$  mile,

Cycling  $1\frac{1}{2}$  mile,

Rowing 2 miles.

Lieut. Sopper and Corporal Martin, A squadron, were first in sixty-seven minutes, just beating Private Loader, C squadron, on the post.

5. *Tactical Schemes*.—A prize was given for the best tactical scheme devised by a N.C.O. or man. Private Roome won.

*2nd Life Guards, Windsor*.—Swimming races of various kinds (including one where a dummy had to be rescued on opposite bank) with their horses across the Thames.

*Scots Greys, Riding*.—Jumping three hurdles in quick succession without reins or stirrups.

#### CAVALRY COLLEGE AT NETHERAVON

At Netheravon House, formerly the residence of Sir Michael Hicks-Beach (now Viscount St. Aldwyn), on Salisbury Plain, there has been started a school for Cavalry officers. Pending the addition of more accommodation, the school consists for the present of thirty officers selected from regiments at home and in South Africa.

The course lasts for six months, with the object of training the officers to become instructors in their regiments in riding and horse-training; but besides these, tactics, scouting, military engineering, horse management, skill at arms, &c., are also taught.

The institution is too young yet to be judged, but promises well to be of highest value in raising the standard of training and in giving a certain uniformity of system throughout the Cavalry. It is under the direction of Colonel Hon. J. Lindley, assisted by Captains Barnes and Hooper, with Captain Bailey as Qr.-Mr., and Major Dibble as Riding Instructor.

The 'Riding Establishment' from Canterbury is amalgamated with this school, with Captain W. F. Percy from 19th Hussars as Riding Master.

#### THE CAVALRY CLUB

A useful departure towards developing knowledge among the officers has been taken by the Cavalry Club in London, which



now possesses through the generosity and self-devotion of Colonel Elliott—the leading authority on Cavalry literature—an unique and complete library of books on Cavalry subjects, also a collection of Cavalry pictures of all countries and times. It also offers a room for discussion of Cavalry subjects, and hopes are entertained that eventually a museum of objects of interest to Cavalrymen will be established there.

#### MINOR STEPS IN PROGRESS

*Signalling.*—A knowledge of semaphore signalling has been made general throughout the Cavalry, for officers as well as for non-commissioned officers and men. It is a great economy in time and horse-flesh in the field.

*Musketry.*—The new short rifle has been issued to the Cavalry and is giving satisfactory results. Also an increased allowance of ammunition has been granted, which should enable the men to become really efficient marksmen. A marked improvement in the shooting has already come about.

*Judging Distance.*—A special development is also being made in the art of practical judging distance, since upon this depends so very much the efficiency of every man, both as a marksman and as a scout.

*Swords.*—The new sword is in course of manufacture and will shortly be issued to the 1st Cavalry Brigade. It is a light, well-balanced weapon, designed for thrusting rather than for cutting.

*Swimming.*—The practice of swimming with horses has been carried out pretty generally during the summer.

*Tactical War Game.*—The 21st Lancers have recently instituted a very practical tactical game for squadron instruction of troop and section leaders, &c., which will doubtless spread among other Regiments when its undoubted value becomes known.

## DISCIPLINE IS NOT TO SUFFER

In the development of individuality which is included in the new system of training, it is not intended to loosen the bonds of discipline; on the contrary, a higher form of discipline is engendered. Therefore, although useless, time-wasting, 'spit-and-polish' is discountenanced, smartness in detail as a matter of discipline is insisted upon as much as ever.

The soldier is taught to recognise that in perfecting himself as an individual man he is preparing himself for taking part in furthering the aims of his country, with a very good chance of attaining personal distinction in doing so. We have, in these over-civilised times, to educate the man up to facing death as a natural part of his duty, and to 'shoving on' regardless of personal danger, whether he be alone as a scout or one of a body of men in the attack. Such teaching as the above, *provided that it is properly carried out*, will supply a tie more elevated, more binding to the soldier, than letter-of-the-law discipline, in developing a spirit of patriotism, self-sacrifice, and loyalty to his officers, and in making him a better citizen.

## FURTHER STEPS STILL NECESSARY

These and many minor details are among the steps in the education of men and officers which have been inaugurated within the past two years. But a deeper and more general progress is still necessary.

There is a grave danger hanging over our country, which is patent enough to anyone who travels and who is in touch with military thought abroad, and who studies higher European politics.

But those of us who sit at home or in the Colonies, occupied with other affairs, do not fully realise this; we fail to recognise that we are not ahead of other armies in our development, and we do not see that they are quite aware of the fact and are shaping their plans accordingly.

To counteract this, everything depends on our officers, whether of the regular or auxiliary forces at home or in the Colonies. So soon as they take their work seriously, and make the safety of the Empire of at least equal importance to themselves as their ordinary pleasures or pursuits, we shall be in a position to face outside dangers with confidence, provided always that the strength of our Cavalry is brought up to a reasonable establishment.

An able lecturer on Cavalry recently spoke as follows :

‘ Herein lies one of the most serious dangers which will beset our Army in the next great campaign it undertakes, namely, our appalling numerical weakness in Cavalry. To give us anything like the proper proportion of Cavalry to other armies we require at least eight to ten more Cavalry regiments [or what amounts to the same thing, at less expense and trouble, an extra squadron to every existing regiment—ED.], and what the nation and her representatives who refuse to bear the cost should never forget, is that when a “ serious danger besets our Army in the next campaign ” that serious danger will beset the Empire also.’

#### IMPROVED ABILITY REQUIRED

The ability of officers depends to a large extent on how they have been educated. Unfortunately, judging by results, our Public School education, at any rate in England, is not as yet doing all that is possible towards preparing our rising generation for useful work, whether in the Army or in any other line, except perhaps Parliament.

A good many young officers now join the Service from school with some idea of Latin verse, and a very fair idea of cricket and football, bridge, and even motor-driving, but with no education in patriotism, no real acquaintance with the history or geography of their own or other countries ; unable to make a précis or to write English concisely or even grammatically ; unaccustomed to read general information for themselves other than under the

headings of 'The Daily Mail'; unable to talk a foreign language sufficiently well to travel abroad; with no knowledge of sciences such as elementary astronomy, hygiene, geology, electricity, &c., which are of military value nowadays, and with no experience in accounting or book-keeping, map-drawing, surveying, &c., or other practical useful accomplishments.

Although keen on sports myself, I am bound to confess that our young men are brought up in an atmosphere where cricket and football absorb the first place, while work and sense of duty come very much second, if they come in at all.

Instruction, instead of being made interesting and elevating, individual and competitive, is given on useless subjects, in the most unattractive form, to classes *en bloc*. Thus the rising generation of young officers is handicapped from the start. The fault lies with the parents and guardians rather than with the lads themselves, in allowing such out-of-dateness on the part of the school authorities, and the wonder is that, after joining the Army, the cadets and subalterns ever attempt to make up leeway.

But this they undoubtedly do, although under difficulties, and all the more credit is therefore due to them.

Already officers put their work if not before, at any rate on an equality with, their play; they are beginning to see the necessity that exists for their better knowledge of military history of our own and other armies. With the imposition of responsibility, there is already a steady growth of keenness and self-made ability on their part.

A number of officers have this year travelled abroad to compare notes on foreign troops, and I have had valuable reports from several. Also some excellent essays have come to me from young officers on such subjects as 'Scouting,' 'Training of Men and Horses,' 'Rôle of Cavalry and its Organisation,' and so on.

They now do their work and sacrifice their leisure more from a sense of duty to their country than was formerly the case.

All this is a hopeful sign, and once the sentiment becomes firmly established and mingled with the Cavalry spirit of energy and go, it will percolate through all ranks with the very best results.

### CONCLUSION

So on the whole the Cavalry have not stood still during the past two years.

But that does not mean that we can therefore sit down with folded hands and think that all is well and sufficient, because it is not.

We should rather be encouraged by the progress accomplished to 'take arms against our further sea of troubles' and push on.

Our business in the Cavalry is to make our branch the most perfect fighting machine of its kind, in order to compensate for its excessive weakness in numbers for war. This we can only do by patient, systematic work—and not too slowly, lest we get left, for our neighbours are all pressing forward on the same line also.

And by our successful labours must we win from our legislators the increase in numbers which is still essential to our efficiency for war.

Optimists at home are apt to think that this want of numbers can be made up on the outbreak of war by reinforcements from the Army Reserve, and from the Imperial Yeomanry, and Colonial Mounted Rifles. They forget that nowadays the Cavalry is the force of all others which has to be 'in being' on the very first day of the war.

The whole course of the campaign may, and most probably will, depend on the success or failure of the Cavalry in the first three or four days.

As regards the reservists, the new term of service now leaves very few useful reservists for Cavalry on mobilisation, but although as yet no provision has been made in our establishment to meet this, it will no doubt be done. As regards auxiliary Mounted

Rifles, it would be putting them at a considerable disadvantage to call upon them suddenly to change the rôle to which they have been trained, and to endeavour in the face of the enemy to become Cavalry. No doubt they would rise to the occasion and with their characteristic pluck and horsemanship would make a good bid for it ; but if we are to ward off aggression by a foreign Power, with its numerous and highly-trained regular Cavalry, we must ourselves have as our first line a complete force of regular Cavalry, ready, fully trained, and efficient in every detail. And we must have as second line well-trained auxiliary forces to reinforce the regular Cavalry within a few weeks.

Our training in the Cavalry is being made up to date in every respect with that intention, but our organisation is not as yet on the same footing.

A blunderbuss is a fine weapon with which to frighten away burglars, but even though loaded with cordite is of little use when we have to face a trained assailant armed with a modern rifle. We want then an accurate, carefully manufactured, up-to-date weapon, proven in all its parts, lock, stock, and barrel.

**BRITISH CAVALRY 1853-1903**

BY FIELD-MARSHAL SIR EVELYN WOOD, V.C.,  
G.C.B., G.C.M.G., &c., &c.

The Cavalry in the Crimea—The Routine of Drill—The Expenses of the Cavalry Officer—‘Inspection Fever’—Manœuvres—Polo—Horsemastership.

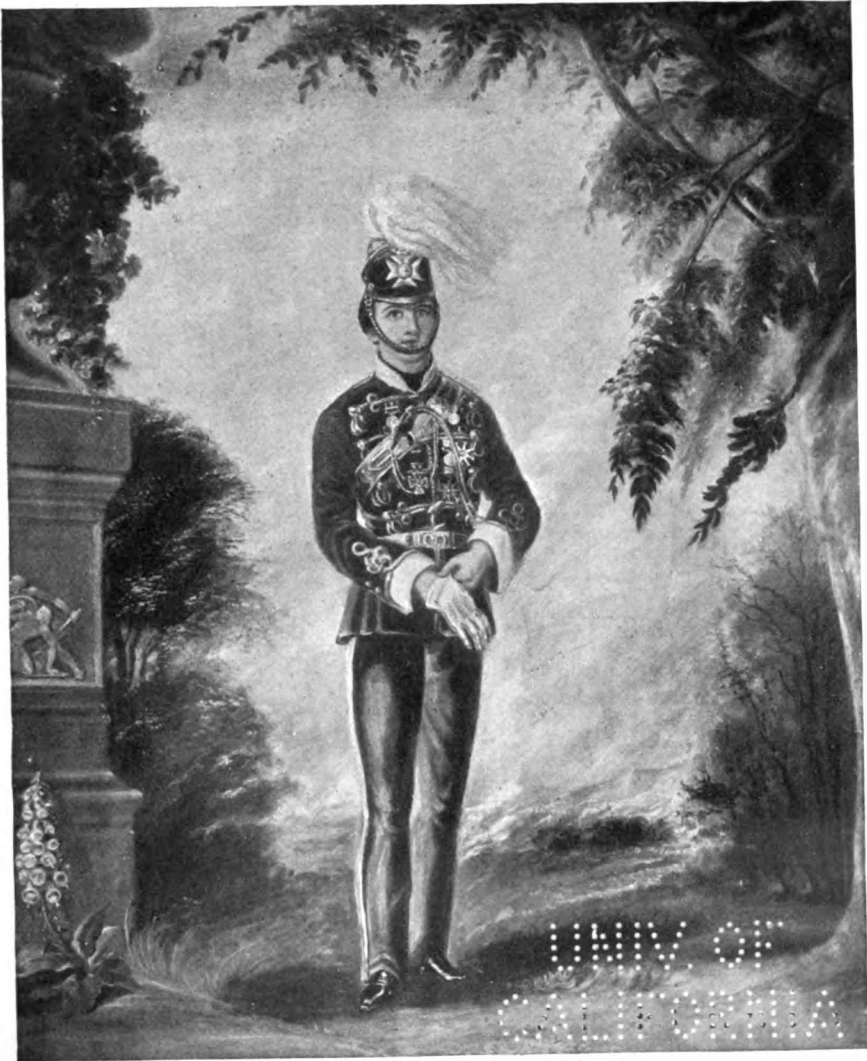
THE desirability of instituting another magazine for one Arm of the Service has doubtless been questioned, but the clear statements on page 4 of the initial number of this undertaking issued in January, that Cavalry should be regarded as an Auxiliary Arm to Infantry, go far to meet any such adverse criticism. Moreover, there is no longer any apprehension of the Cavalry reassuming the feeling of self-sufficiency which Mr. Punch satirised in 1854 in a masterly cartoon. Scene: Camp in Bulgaria. Two Cavalry officers greeting, ‘Oh, Fwed, have you heard? They say the Infantrwy are to accompany us to the Crimea.’

Fifty years ago, however, it was otherwise, and the reaction which set in when a thousand sabres looked on while the Infantry stormed the Alma Heights caused irritation amongst the ardent horsemen, which was not soothed until they had proved that no task was too great for their burning courage. A general officer wrote home at the time: ‘The Cavalry officers consider (themselves) that they have not been sufficiently forward.’<sup>1</sup>

In a book published in 1895<sup>2</sup> an explanation was given of the result of this pent-up feeling, which to some extent induced the

<sup>1</sup> Lord Raglan’s views were not known. ‘I will keep my Cavalry in a band-box.’

<sup>2</sup> *The Crimea in 1854 and 1894.* By General Sir Evelyn Wood, V.C.



Rehyn Wood  
13<sup>th</sup> Light Dragoons 1855



TO WHOM  
ATTENTION

glorious failure of the Light Brigade at Balaclava. It would be, however, an error to suppose that the grievous loss sustained was too dearly bought, for General Canrobert, deeply impressed by the determination of our men, made the occupation of the Heights of Inkermann by the French practically conditional on the Light Brigade, which numbered then only 330 effective sabres, being encamped close to them.

The officers of Light Cavalry in the early fifties were generally sons of the landed aristocracy ; not necessarily rich, for the sons of opulent merchants generally found their way into Heavy Cavalry regiments, in which the expenditure of officers was greater. The examinations for entrance to the Army were nominal, the chief qualification being that the candidate was the son of a gentleman.

We have on record that the general of the Cavalry Division in the Crimea spared no pains to instruct those under his command, exhorting, and admonishing them to perform their most elementary duties. Some regiments went to draw forage without ropes, forage nets, or sacks in which they could bring it away, and three weeks before the battle of Balaclava the general published in orders that he had found an advanced piquet as unprepared 'as if it were at Hounslow Barracks.' And again, five days after the battle, a captain hearing shouts in the enemy's camp, retired his piquet into camp, and then dismissed them without reporting what he had done !

Nor was there much improvement after the war, and indeed from 1860 to 1890 may be called the dark days of our Cavalry. At Aldershot, the Cavalry Headquarters, however, General Sir Hope Grant, a tried campaigner, an excellent horseman, and bold rider, endeavoured to teach the Cavalry outpost duties.

Generals and the War Office in the 'eighties, appreciating the enhanced accuracy of rifled weapons, confused the results obtained in peace practices on known ranges with the very different results of shooting on service. Umpire rules for tactical operations

were framed which seriously impaired the initiative and dash of Cavalry.

Inspections however, and they naturally induce the exercises throughout the year, might be summed up in the words, drill, drill, drill; and even in that respect one of its principal objects, the inculcating of uniform paces and direct leading over long distances, was not kept in view.

In the 'sixties regiments performed part of their musketry course in shooting from the saddle, and there was much grumbling at one commanding officer who made all the men shoot on the band horses, and thus obtained a higher 'figure of merit.' This same officer believed in marching past, and I have never seen any regiment excel it at 'the walk,' but he was averse to horses being jumped or galloped, and set his face against all such innovations as tent-pegging or lemon-cutting, 'heads and posts' in the riding school being as much as he would allow. Yet he was one of the best of the standard of those days, and when a commanding officer died, and the unusual circumstance occurred that the Major was declared unfit for promotion, he was brought back from half-pay and given the command, thus receiving eventually for the commission about the same amount as he had received from his own regiment on retiring on half-pay, a large sum of money. He was not singular in his anxiety to keep the Government horses sound. The troop officers invariably cut the horses' tails, that duty being considered too important to be entrusted to the private Dragoon.

Fifty years ago the tone of the rank and file was higher in Cavalry regiments than in the rest of the Army, but discipline was maintained in the barrack room by a system which could not now be permitted, the men themselves inflicting punishment for such crimes as they thought should not come to the notice of their officers; but I cannot recall any bullying of recruits or young soldiers, though each paid in beer or money to the old soldier who taught how to clean kits.

The regimental life of to-day differs materially from that at

the time of the Crimean War. Prince Albert had not then induced the creation of Aldershot, and from 1815 to the time of the Crimean War the only combined training was that afforded at the concentration of all three Arms of the Service at Chobham Camp, about ten miles north-east of where Aldershot now stands, but then represented only by the Union house, later to become 'the Union Hospital' in the Infantry barracks. Under Staple Hill, the eminence crowned by fir-trees, south of Sunningdale station, two forces, each of about 10,000, were assembled in succession for three weeks in 1853.

Life was easy, the residents in the neighbourhood of barracks showed the young Cavalry officers great hospitality, and they spent a considerable proportion of their time in winter in hunting and shooting. This, though pleasant, and, as regards hunting, good educationally for officers, was not sufficient; and it is perhaps not remarkable that the commanding officers of Cavalry regiments, accustomed to the convenience of a barrack—indeed as they had never been in camp it is not strange that it was so—protested against the shallow ponds prepared in the peaty soil for watering the Cavalry horses, which they feared would get bogged and drowned.

The Assistant Quartermaster-General was somewhat quick in his temper, and on being summoned by the Commander of the camp, General Lord Seaton,<sup>1</sup> objected to criticism of his arrangements, saying: 'My lord, will you order them to ride alongside of me, and we will gallop through every pond?' The order was given, and executed, to the great detriment of the officers' tunics, for in those days full dress was worn in camp.

Towards the end of the Crimean War, the supply of Cavalry officers did not equal the demand, for some having been killed and others having died, parents were no longer willing to pay £800 for a cornetcy; and when I joined on October 1, 1855, the dépôt of the regiment in which I had been given a commission was commanded by a Riding-master. The other

<sup>1</sup> He commanded the 52nd at Waterloo.

officers were three subalterns, the senior having six weeks' service. We breakfasted in our rooms, dined at an hotel in the town, and learnt our duties as best we could.

When one or two older subalterns who had served in other regiments arrived, they were not good instructors; in fact, the oldest, to show his contempt for anything done on foot, persisted in giving all mounted words of command, even in going to church, as 'Walk, march.' I had not much opportunity, however, of learning work at the dépôt, for I proceeded almost immediately to join the Service troops at Scutari opposite Constantinople, where the Cavalry had already got a pack of hounds.

On rejoining the regiment, after a long time spent in Scutari hospital, and afterwards recovering from typhoid complicated with inflammation of the lungs, I found the regiment in Ireland, with a pack of harriers hunted by the senior subaltern and managed, as were the regimental funds, by the medical officer. The most wealthy officer then with the regiment had about £500 a year, £300 being sufficient to meet all regimental subscriptions and to keep a third horse for hunting, which indeed was practically enforced by public opinion. Those who, like myself, were anxious for more hunting than they could afford often obtained a mount of a subaltern who, though he had a third horse as a hunter, did not care to ride it.

The war had not taught us much. Commanding officers had a mania for tall men, and when Lord George Paget, the Inspector-General, remarked on the excessive height of a Light Cavalry regiment he was inspecting at Brighton, he was gravely assured by the colonel that the men had all grown since they enlisted. As the General passed on for a moment out of hearing, the colonel observed in an undertone to a friend, a former comrade, who was looking on: 'I have sent half a dozen of my tallest men to bed in hospital, there to remain until the General leaves.'

Late in the 'fifties I saw a regiment inspected by Lord Cardigan, who preceded Lord George Paget as Inspector-General. 'Inspection fever' was at its height for a month before

the arrival of his lordship. The major practised sedulously the carbine and sword exercises on foot, and at the mounted parade when told to perform at his option two or three movements, went 'Threes about' and trotted away for half a mile, and with some help changed front two or three times, and then returned at the gallop. Lord Cardigan knew all about the officer, and observed dryly, 'I dare say you did it right, but you were somewhat too far off for me to see.'

When the experience of the Franco-Prussian War had been accepted, officers, notably General Keith Frazer, Inspector-General, endeavoured to raise the standard of efficiency. This he effected, but the result was unfortunate for officers, for their batman and groom were now constantly taken for parade, and thus the practice came in for every subaltern to have a private groom. The increased expenditure was not only attributable to this, but to a general rise in the scale of living and greater extravagance on all sides. The annual charge in regiments near London for race luncheons, even if the subaltern never attended, was £30. A Cavalry subaltern in the 'eighties offered to keep the regimental pack, which existed twenty-five years before at our station in Ireland, at his own expense, provided he was allowed to hunt it.

There has been considerable change in the management of our messes. We dined at seven o'clock in the Crimean period, and were never allowed to leave the table until the senior officer got up, the cost of all wine being shared alike. Our senior was often a Cavalry general, living in barracks, and besides marching us past every Sunday before church, he frequently honoured us with his presence at mess, and seldom left the table before half-past ten. There were no billiard-rooms in those days, and smoking was not permitted in the mess, and only cigars in the ante-room after dinner, the cheapest being at sixpence; and as cigarettes were not then invented the effect of these rules was to drive all the officers, who wished to smoke a pipe, off to their rooms.

The power of the senior lieutenant, commonly called 'the mother of the subalterns,' was unquestioned. In the summer of 1857 that officer looked up at breakfast time and said to me, 'You are for a ball at Dundalk next Tuesday.' I demurred, saying, 'But I don't want to go,' to which he replied severely, 'You are to go, I want to hear no more about it,' and I went.

In 1890-91 and 1893 the general officer in command at Aldershot, who took much interest in the Cavalry, got the use of ground, mainly from Lords Wantage and Craven, on the Berkshire downs, and assembled a Cavalry Division, and from that date the Cavalry have had more opportunities of learning their work. When General G. Luck<sup>1</sup> came from India great strides were made in Cavalry training, for Lord Lansdowne, as Secretary of State for War, had acquired fifteen miles by six on Salisbury Plain, and the sympathetic general had gone from Aldershot to the War Office, whence he assisted the Inspector-General. Shock tactics were practised, which necessitated uniformity of pace and true direction in leading, and scouting and screening duties were carefully taught.

Early in the nineties some of the senior Cavalry officers realised the mischief of the polo craze, educationally, financially, and as regards a proper sense of duty. Infantry in India had beaten all comers. An officer in a battalion who was a consummate judge of horses, a careful horse-master, a determined horseman, a good administrator, and understood how to combine the play of his team, achieved this result at small cost to his brother officers. It was said, 'What a grand, and yet cheap game!' So it was in that battalion, but the prices at which its ponies reached outsiders gave another aspect to the question.

When teams are equal in horsemanship, skill, in powers of combination, and conditioning of animals, victory must fall to the one mounted on the fastest and best-mannered ponies. Thus that excellent spirit, pride in regiment, sent up prices, and in

<sup>1</sup> Now Sir George Luck, K.C.B.

some cases induced pressure being put on parents of recruit officers to help the polo club.

The Inspector-General of Cavalry supported by some commanding officers induced the Commander-in-Chief to forbid tournaments, but within a week the order was cancelled, and ten years later a team asked for six months' leave to proceed to India to play, and a young officer, not rich for his position, gave fifteen hundred guineas for two ponies at Albert Gate.

Then the Commander-in-Chief had an order drafted forbidding tournaments, but the Secretary of State demurred. The next Secretary of State accepted the draft, but the new Commander-in-Chief demurred.

Prior to the war in 1899, while Infantry officers required from 70 to 73 per centum of marks to ensure getting into Sandhurst, Cavalry cadets succeeded with 50 per centum. During the war, and since those days, the educational test has been further lowered, and as the number of candidates is still insufficient for the establishment, strenuous efforts have been made to reduce expenditure.

The War Office has since the Boer War succeeded, mainly by concessions at the cost of the country, in reducing the expenses of Cavalry officers about 40 per centum. Eight years ago most commanding officers recommended an annual allowance of from £500 to £600. Now it is alleged a very careful officer may join the Cavalry at an initial expense of £400, and either hunt or play polo on an allowance of £300. So long as a regimental polo club exists, however, all good officers will pay to it, irrespective of their being players, and a day's hunting is educationally worth a season's polo.

The young Cavalry officers of to-day have certainly improved in professional knowledge to a degree which is hardly realised. Early in the 'nineties a subaltern arrived at Churn camp on the Berkshire downs to draw rations without any idea of the numbers concerned, and I think, in spite of the Cassandra-like prediction of those who declare that the Army Council is driving 'the



open-air boys' out of the Service, more education was essential, and, now it is being acquired, I believe the Arm will go on and prosper. Its greatest want is a knowledge of horses and their management, what horses can do and yet remain efficient, and what is impossible.

It was generally admitted in the Peninsula that the King's German Legion were better horse-masters than the British Cavalry, and although the five regiments composing the Light Brigade landed 1,500 horses in Bulgaria in 1854 and made only one patrol, yet the brigade in re-embarking for the Crimea was only able to put a thousand sabres in the field, the wastage of horses in four months having been one-third of the strength.

Three brigades in South Africa had a strength of 3,631 horses on February 28, 1900; their wastage in the two following months was 2,175. The Senior Veterinary officer of the Cavalry division considered that this excessive wastage was mainly due to want of food, with some loss from sore backs arising from improperly fitted saddles, and also from congestion of the feet. Other and senior veterinary authorities, however, have doubted whether more work could not have been got out of the horses had greater care been exercised by those in charge of them.

As regards tactical training, while the influence of the present commander of the Aldershot Army Corps predominates there is no cause for the believers in Cavalry, like myself, to be despondent. He was the first colonel to adopt the squadron system, and so far as his views are known, he, while insisting on skill with the rifle, holds that a horseman should never hesitate at all risks to 'ride home' in order to achieve victory.

## *CAVALRY AND HORSE ARTILLERY*

BY LIEUT.-COLONEL F. V. WING, C.B., R.F.A.

The necessity and opportunities for mutual co-operation between the two arms—The importance of a quick decision, and a thorough knowledge of the tactics and methods of both arms—Cavalry escorts to Artillery.

To those who have had the good fortune of serving with either of the above arms on active service the mention of the two together will, I think, bring memories of stirring events, staunch friends, and that freemasonry of comradeship in war which, when once participated in, can never be forgotten.

Professionally and socially mutual interests bring the two services together, and the importance of more closely knitting the ties of this relationship increases daily owing to the development of the scientific study of war, and the consequent necessity of the utmost mutual co-operation between the two arms.

In considering the opportunities of such co-operation we must bear in mind the largely extended field of modern Cavalry tactics owing to their being armed with rifles and their consequent power of fire effect as well as shock action, as well as the greatly increased rapidity of fire and range of modern field guns. As regards shock action a battery of modern guns must have, when boldly and rapidly handled, a much more decisive effect on the result of a combat than formerly, and if the conditions are equal, victory must accrue to that side whose guns have an advantage of position and fire effect, and whose fire can be brought to bear on the enemy's advancing squadrons most effectually up to the moment of impact.

To gain this object the Artillery commander must have,

besides a quick eye for country as regards the position in which to place his guns, a thoroughly acquired knowledge of the formation which his own Cavalry may have to deploy into, the time such deployment will take, and a knowledge of pace and distance to enable him to judge the probable point of impact of the two forces.

He will thus be able to choose a position from which, while keeping the enemy in full view of his guns, his fire will not be impeded by the advance of his own Cavalry, and he can hence use with deadly effect that great power of fire which a battery of quick-firers places in his hands.

The Cavalry commander too, while depending on this co-operation from his Artillery commander, must also have such knowledge of Artillery matters as to enable him to know exactly what assistance he can expect, and in his judgment of formation and direction he must assist the guns in their endeavour to give him the closest possible support.

Rapidity and decision in forming these judgments are essential to success, and this can only be ensured by an accurate knowledge of the technicalities of both arms.

In considering the greatly increased scope of Cavalry tactics owing to their capability of fire-action, a wider range of possible contingencies opens into view.

Wide and rapid turning movements may often result in the necessity of attack of positions by dismounted rifle fire, when the guns must be at hand to render close support and their commander ready to grasp at once the methods and necessities of the tactical situation.

For cutting communications and Cavalry raids various situations may occur, and positions may have to be stubbornly held while certain operations are carried out, and here again an important factor for success will be an accurate knowledge of the requirements of both arms by the commanders of each.

The Artillery commander must know just where and when the support of his guns is essential, and the Cavalry commander

must know how much support to expect from the former, besides bearing in mind the amount of ammunition available and what prospect there may be of renewing the supply.

The command of combined forces of Cavalry and Horse Artillery may be held by an officer of either arms, and casualties may occur on service when such command may devolve suddenly on and have to be taken up immediately by the senior regimental officer left with the force. It will require all the officer's capability to grasp the situation promptly, and to do so he must possess a thorough knowledge of the details of the tactics and methods of both arms.

It seems that this intimate mutual knowledge of the requirements of Cavalry and Horse Artillery is more than ever necessary to the officers of both, and with the object of fostering and maintaining this knowledge it is suggested that one of the qualifications for promotion of officers to field rank should be to have been attached for one month during the drill season to a unit of the other arm, whose commanding officer's certificate must be recorded that the officer has regularly attended all regimental and squadron or brigade and battery drills, as the case may be.

Such a suggestion could not fail to be advantageous to all officers whether they found themselves in command of forces of the two arms or working as regimental officers in mutual support of one another.

The new quick-firing guns have not yet had an opportunity of showing their value on active service, but it will be of great interest for all Cavalry officers to if possible watch these guns, when issued, at practice, and see for themselves what a very much heavier shower of shell can be concentrated on the target by a battery than formerly.

A matter worth considering, to which sufficient attention is often not given, is the function of Cavalry escorts to Artillery.

Experience as a battery commander impresses one with the great difference in ideas which officers commanding escorts often

have when carrying out this duty, though their anxiety to efficiently perform it is constantly appreciated by Artillery officers.

It is laid down in combined training that the senior officer of either arm commands the escort, which is perfectly sound, but in the case of a troop or squadron acting as escort to a battery, the battery commander is frequently senior, and as his duties in command of his battery require his utmost attention it is a great help to him if he can confidently delegate the direction, though still bearing the responsibilities, of the action of the escort to the officer commanding it.

To arrive at this satisfactory state of affairs it will be necessary to explain carefully to the escort commander the tactical object and intention of the battery commander, as well as any expected or probable action of the enemy, and then let the escort commander decide as to where and in what formation the escort is to march, and on the number and direction of patrols which may be required.

Circumstances may frequently occur when instantaneous action is required by battery commanders, and in such cases a good escort commander will grasp the situation and act at once on his own initiative.

A more important point, and one which is sometimes overlooked, is to be careful that neither the escort nor patrols draw the enemy's attention to the position of the guns, or the position which they are about to take up. I have seen cases in which the escort has been unwittingly a most useful indicator to the enemy of the position of the guns, though the most common delinquent in this respect is often a group of Staff officers who bring a bunch of horses alongside of a battery in action, where there is necessarily a good place of observation, forgetting that the horses are a far better ranging point to the enemy than the khaki-coloured guns and detachments.

Though the Artillery are of course responsible for their own observation patrols, the escort patrols may often be in a position

to give valuable information as to the effect of our fire, or the position of the enemy, some of whom may be visible to the patrols though unseen by the guns.

In such cases immediate reports should be sent, when possible, of the observations of the patrols.

Escorts to brigades or larger bodies of Artillery would carry out similar duties, but when in action one flank of these larger bodies would probably rest on their own troops, and the escorts' duties would devolve into watching the outer unprotected flank, and it is the smaller detached fights which give the greatest scope to escort commanders for displaying a prompt appreciation of the situation and of rendering valuable assistance to the guns.

The actual position in which an escort should travel with regard to the guns it is protecting varies so much according to the country and local circumstances; that its choice must be left to the common sense of its commander, whose duty it is to guard against surprise or sudden attack, and to drive away any small bodies of the enemy who may not be worth the attention of the guns.

Horsemastership alone is such an important study to the mounted branches that it forms a strong binding tie of interest between them, and a careful study should be made of the different points to be noted between the travelling powers of riding and draught horses. Cavalry officers should remember the extra collar work up hill that takes the wind out of the latter, and consequent adjustment of pace that is necessary.

When marching on hilly country, and especially in extended column on roads, sufficient distance should be available to the Artillery commander to enable him to check his pace when necessary, as, though the head of the column may be on a downward slope, part of it further back may be toiling up a stiff incline.

An endless variety of mutual co-operation between guns and Cavalry may be found in the records of military history, and

among these the history of Q Battery R.H.A. produces two events of interest, representing as they do the mutual aid which one arm can give to the other.

When at the engagement of Sanna's Post, in the South African War, the British column was entrapped in a well-planned and boldly executed ambush, the guns of Q Battery managed to come into action amid a hail of bullets and enable the mounted troops to reform and partially save the situation.

At a later date when in action in an advanced position, the same battery was suddenly assailed by the rifle fire of a dashing Boer attack. The Cavalry, however, was quickly to the rescue, and the danger was averted by a charge of the 12th Lancers, though with the loss of, besides others, the gallant Colonel Lord Airle, than whom a truer-hearted soldier never drew sword.

In the combined operations of Cavalry and Artillery the importance of having guns as close to the front as possible cannot be too strongly impressed on the commander.

On such occasions speed in coming into action may be all important, and a minute or two may make the difference between victory and defeat.

A battery of the new guns can fire from fifty to sixty rounds in a minute.

Thus the gain of one minute might result in a shower of fifty shells being poured into the ranks of the foe, and if the range and fuze are correct, such a fire must have a very decisive effect on the result of the fight, whether it is to be decided by shock action or rifle fire.

One of the most important helps to winning battles is for the General to grasp the situation from the point of view of the commanders of his units as well as from his own, and vice versâ.

The same principle applies to units working in co-operation, especially to Cavalry and Artillery, and this end can only be attained by that mutual study of technical details and sympathy of ideas, the fostering of which must always be the professional duty as it has been the pleasant custom of officers of both arms.

## *SOME NOTES ON MOUNTED INFANTRY*

BY BRIGADIER-GENERAL A. W. THORNEYCROFT, C.B.

(a) Its Organisation and Training in Peace. (b) Its Use in War.

THAT Mounted Infantry are a necessity for the varied requirements of our Army throughout the world is an assured fact. Innumerable instances, which are well known to students of history, can be given of their utility.

(a) The first question, therefore, at the present time, is how can we best organise and train them in time of peace?

In days gone by they have, for the most part, been hastily raised and equipped, and on conclusion of the service for which they were required sent to rejoin their battalions.

Later, schools of instruction were formed for training in times of peace: this was no doubt the best way out of the difficulty at the time, as, except at centres like Aldershot, there were few formed brigades of Infantry under Brigade Commanders; but these schools of instruction, although they are no doubt well conducted under experienced leaders, tend to make Mounted Infantry a separate arm, and for the most part out of touch of those who should have to direct them in war.

Now that Infantry brigades have been formed in England and Ireland, and the same organisation is in vogue in India under properly appointed Brigadier-Generals, the time has come to alter the training of the Mounted Infantry.

In each Infantry brigade there should be a seconded field officer specially selected for his knowledge of Mounted Infantry duties—there are many such in the Army at present—one officer



as Adjutant and Quartermaster, with a suitable complement of non-commissioned officers and a clerk.

The ideal organisation would be for each battalion to maintain a complete Mounted Infantry company, but if this is ruled out on account of cost, the following is the best alternative (not that I think that the cry of the financier should put a stop to all advancement. As a soldier I very much resent the constant cry of 'No funds'). Each battalion of the brigade should provide one complete section of Mounted Infantry at a time; the whole four sections should be trained under the selected field officer, under the direction of the Brigade Commander. Thirty-five cobs would be kept in each battalion, and the necessary stabling would have to be provided.

Thus in each brigade there would be an organisation—a school of training. These men would remain with their battalions, and the Brigadier-General would have many opportunities of working with Mounted Infantry, and *learn* how to make the best use of them in the field. How can Brigade Commanders train themselves to skilfully use troops which are only thrust upon them on the outbreak of war?

On mobilisation the section of each battalion would be expanded to a full company, making a complete Mounted Infantry battalion for the brigade. The extra equipment and clothing should be kept in the battalion Mobilisation Store.

(b) What is the rôle of Mounted Infantry in war?

According to 'Field Army Tables,' 1905, one battalion of Mounted Infantry forms part of each Cavalry brigade, while Cavalry are detailed as divisional troops to work with the Infantry of a division.

This, in my opinion, is quite a wrong use of these two mounted branches.

Let the whole of our Cavalry be utilised as Cavalry formed in brigades and divisions, and let the mounted duties which are inseparable from the movements of Field Artillery and Infantry be performed by Mounted Infantry.

If it is considered necessary by Cavalry leaders that brigades and divisions of that arm should be accompanied by mobile men who only fight on foot, then let the Imperial Yeomanry who are trained as Mounted Rifles perform that duty ; let them be trained in peace to act with Cavalry, and be made liable for service in war in case of national emergency.

In India perhaps Imperial Service troops could be trained in some cases as Mounted Rifles to take the place of Mounted Infantry in the Cavalry brigades, and could be trained to act with Cavalry in peace. The Mounted forces in Australia, New Zealand, South Africa, and in some proportion in Canada, are trained as Mounted Rifles, and would form an additional reserve to draw upon.

Here then is an ample supply of Mounted Rifles for attachment to Cavalry brigades provided that such an organisation is desirable, but it must not be forgotten that our Cavalry at present are highly trained as Mounted Rifles in addition to being trained for mounted shock action and the higher duties of Cavalry.

If the above suggestions are not acceptable to Cavalry leaders, then, if a regiment of Mounted Riflemen for each Cavalry brigade is a necessity, four regiments of Mounted Rifles must be raised in this country for the four Home Cavalry brigades, and be permanently quartered and trained with them, in the same manner as the field troop, Royal Engineers, should be.

Similarly for each Cavalry brigade in our Indian Army a regiment of Mounted Rifles must be raised and trained, or if this is too extravagant a view, let a requisite number of Infantry battalions be re-formed into Mounted Rifles.

Another alternative is to add a fourth Cavalry regiment to each brigade. There are at present, exclusive of Household Cavalry, three regiments on Home Service which do not belong to any brigade. One additional regiment would complete the Cavalry brigades at Home, and the grouping of four regiments would have to be carried out in India.

Improvisation on the outbreak of war with a determined and well organised enemy is fatal.

To take away from a brigade of Infantry 28 officers and 609 other ranks, the very pick of the battalions, and hand them over to the Cavalry is not the best organisation, but rather a disorganisation, leaving the Infantry brigades absolutely to their own resources on foot, without a mounted scout of any sort, while an Infantry division is little better off with one squadron of Cavalry.

In these days of long ranging artillery and rifles, it is difficult on the march to push out Infantry to the front and flanks, to adequately cover a force while in motion, and to picket commanding ground by day during a halt; the fatigue of such a method is very great, and can be much better performed by Mounted Infantry.

These points are touched upon in 'Combined Training,' 1905, with reference to Advanced Flank and Rear Guards, also outposts, of Infantry divisions and brigades.

The value of mounted troops is often referred to, and on page 58 the following note occurs *re* Advanced Guards :

'In open country mounted patrols should seldom be less than four or five miles distant in advance, and on the flanks of the main body. In any case all ground within effective Artillery range of the line of march must be searched.'

In Section 62 *re* a Rear Guard, 'It will usually be very strong in mounted troops,' and again, 'Mounted troops are indispensable for preventing the flanks being turned.'

'Mounted Infantry Training,' 1904, says, page 69, 'Mounted Infantry will frequently find themselves the only mounted troops with bodies of Infantry,' and gives the method of the employment of Mounted Infantry with Infantry.

It is unnecessary to quote the Training Manuals, which fully recognise the necessity of Mounted Infantry with Infantry, any further in these notes; but where are these mounted troops to come from?

The answer is, I think, patent—from the Mounted Infantry of the Infantry brigades.

If this point is conceded, and I cannot imagine any true Cavalry soldier wishing to provide the immediate services of security and information for Field Artillery and Infantry, then we must train Mounted Infantry in peace to act with Infantry in brigades and divisions.

The training of special Infantry scouts is now receiving the attention which it deserves. By scouts I do not mean smart skirmishers, but highly trained men who can be sent well away to gain information. These men should be mounted on cobs.

In the late war in Manchuria, the Russians had in every battalion of Infantry trained mounted scouts, and so essential were these found to be that the numbers were largely increased.

I cannot say whether these men were well trained, but the necessity for them was freely admitted.

An Infantry Brigade Commander at present has not even a mounted orderly, and no mounted signallers to accompany him when moving about in the field, no despatch riders, and no means of communicating if signalling and telephones fail.

It is essential that he should, if possible, personally reconnoitre the ground over which his brigade may have to advance, and for this purpose he must necessarily gain some point of vantage, dismount under cover, and search the ground with his telescope. Who is there to hold his horse or that of his staff officer? The answer is apparent—Mounted Infantry orderlies. This may appear to be a very small matter, but it is a very real one.

It is evident also that a Brigade Commander should be accompanied by at least two mounted signallers, so that wherever he may be he can pick up a message from the front or call up any battalion station. These signallers must be trained with the Mounted Infantry.

The formation of a section of a 'communication corps' in each Infantry brigade is a matter that requires early attention. Such

an organisation has long been wanted to supply signallers, telephone operators, specially trained despatch riders, scouts and orderlies for the headquarters of a brigade. This section should be attached to the brigade Mounted Infantry under a special officer, or under the brigade signalling officer in times of peace, while in war the section would form part of the headquarters of the brigade.

It is of no use to train a section of communication corps in a special school, for unless the officer and men work constantly in peace with the troops with which they are to operate in war, they will be out of touch with the Commander who will need their services, and who will have little or no opportunity of training himself to make the best use of them until the ordeal of war comes : it is then too late.

In conclusion, I urge that if, in addition to the services of security, information and communication, the Infantry Divisional or Brigade Commander always had at his disposal, whether in attack or defence, a mobile body of Mounted Infantry ready to seize important tactical positions, to quickly reinforce and support threatened points, to protect his flanks, or to envelop those of the enemy and deliver or repel a counter attack, or to bring enfilade fire to bear at a critical moment, he must be in a far more advantageous position than if unprovided with such an organisation, which I consider in modern war is an absolute necessity.

When the question of Cavalry and Mounted Infantry is discussed, the advocates of the one or the other often lose sight of the fact that each has its proper rôle. Let Cavalry perform the duties of Cavalry, if necessary, supplemented by Mounted Rifles. Let Mounted Infantry be organised and trained in peace, and used in war with the Infantry brigades and divisions to which they belong. Let the Infantry keep their own good men for their own good work, and I am confident that the results will be for the higher efficiency of our Army.

## ***SIGNALLING IN THE CAVALRY DURING THE LATE SOUTH AFRICAN WAR***

**By MAJOR S. L. BARRY, D.S.O., 10th *Hussars***

The Importance of Signalling for the Mounted Branches—Organisation and Equipment—Examples of Signalling in South Africa.

THERE is now no doubt that signalling in the Cavalry has at last been recognised as an extremely important and necessary detail of that arm.

The latter, the eyes and ears of the Army, having collected information in every conceivable way miles ahead of its main force, requires sooner or later to transmit this intelligence to the proper quarter in the quickest possible manner.

It will not always be feasible for advanced bodies of Cavalry to have a telegraph or telephone wire at their backs, and therefore a good system of signalling, thoroughly organised, and composed of highly trained men, is absolutely essential for this purpose.

Naturally a great deal depends on the formation of the country. Common sense must be used as to when it would be disadvantageous to adopt it; but, generally speaking, there are very few localities where it would be impossible to employ visual signalling in some shape or form as a rapid and sure means of transmitting information. In South Africa the whole theatre of operations lent itself to signalling to a marked degree, but unfortunately we had not there the necessary organisation. In the next war it remains to be seen whether the surrounding conditions will be so favourable, but we certainly now have a vastly improved system to work upon.

At the commencement of operations in 1899 the great

handicap of want of trained men and equipment was immediately felt—perhaps the latter most at first.

It will hardly be believed now that the equipment of a Cavalry regiment proceeding on active service was, according to the war establishments of that date, one heliograph. (On peace establishment two heliographs were authorised, but on mobilisation one of these had to be handed over to the Reserve Squadron !)

Previous to the war, signalling, especially in the Cavalry, had always been looked upon as a rather useless hobby, combined with waste of time ; but one ventures to think that after the success achieved in South Africa, its invaluable aid has been learnt by everyone. It is true that in India its worth has been recognised for many years, but certainly at home in the Cavalry its usefulness in saving time and horseflesh had not been properly grasped a few years ago.

In 1899 the establishment of signallers for a Cavalry regiment was twelve trained men and six supernumeraries. The difficulties experienced in getting even this small number of men to train properly can only be appreciated by those who have been regimental instructors.

As soon as the Division was formed in South Africa, divisional signallers (6), brigade signallers (not less than 4 per brigade), and men for the Mounted Signalling Company,<sup>1</sup> for duty with Army Headquarters, had to be provided. All these had to be taken from the small and inadequate number of trained men regimental signalling officers had at their disposal. They were new to their work, did not understand it or appreciate it, and therefore took some time to settle down. But by far the worst part of this system was that it upset the regimental organisation. Is it to be therefore wondered that signalling at the commencement of the war was not quite so successful as its followers had always claimed it would be ? As there are now

<sup>1</sup> No less than 29 N.C.O.s and men were taken from the Cavalry Division for this purpose.

## SIGNALLING IN THE SOUTH AFRICAN WAR 169

more trained men in each regiment this will not affect the latter so much in any future war ; but why not train our signallers in peace time to do the actual work they will have to do on active service ? How often in peace time do you see brigade signallers working as in brigade ?

This no doubt greatly depends on brigade signalling officers, and one would like to remind these that unless the brigade signallers are properly trained and organised in peace time, when it comes to actual work in the field, matters will not run so smoothly as might otherwise have been the case.

The following table will show the great changes for the better that have been made in signalling establishment and equipment during the last few years :

ESTABLISHMENT, &C. (PEACE)—CAVALRY REGIMENT

—	Officers	N.C.O.s	Signallers	Heliographs
1899	1	1	12 *	2
1906	3	4	24	8

\* Also 6 supernumeraries.

The squadron, not the regiment, as of old, has now been taken as the signalling unit. Each squadron has its signalling officer, N.C.O., eight trained men, and equipment. Instead, therefore, as at the commencement of the war, a brigade only having 36 men available, it will in future have twice that number—72. How one wishes this had been the establishment in 1899 !

Regarding equipment, the one important item still missing is a good lamp. The present Begbie lamp is useless for Cavalry—far too clumsy, heavy, and unportable. The School of Signalling has, however, been experimenting with an acetylene lamp, and have in prospect an ideal one for mounted work—light, portable, and capable of being read twenty miles. It is to be hoped that this will soon be sanctioned and issued ; when this is done, the equipment in the Cavalry will be such as it has never been before.



To give some idea of the rapid way trained men disappear on active service the following will be of interest :

*Signallers Available*

1st Cavalry Brigade (February 10) Modder River . 38

„ „ (June 11) Pretoria . . 11

Loss of two-thirds in four months.

4th Cavalry Brigade (April 6) Bloemfontein . . 36

„ „ (June 24) Pretoria . . 19

Loss of nearly one-half in less than three months.

It will be noticed that at Pretoria on June 11, the average number of signallers per squadron in the 1st Brigade was *one* !

Luckily the certainty of this dearth of trained men was early foreseen, and urgent requests for more men were sent to England ; but a trained signaller cannot be made at a day's notice, and it was not till late in July in 1900 that this vital deficiency was commencing to be remedied. On the 30th of that month the two Brigades named before had been reinforced respectively to twenty-three men and thirty-one men. After this date a gradual and limited supply was kept up, but there never were nearly enough men at any time to keep regiments up to their full establishments.

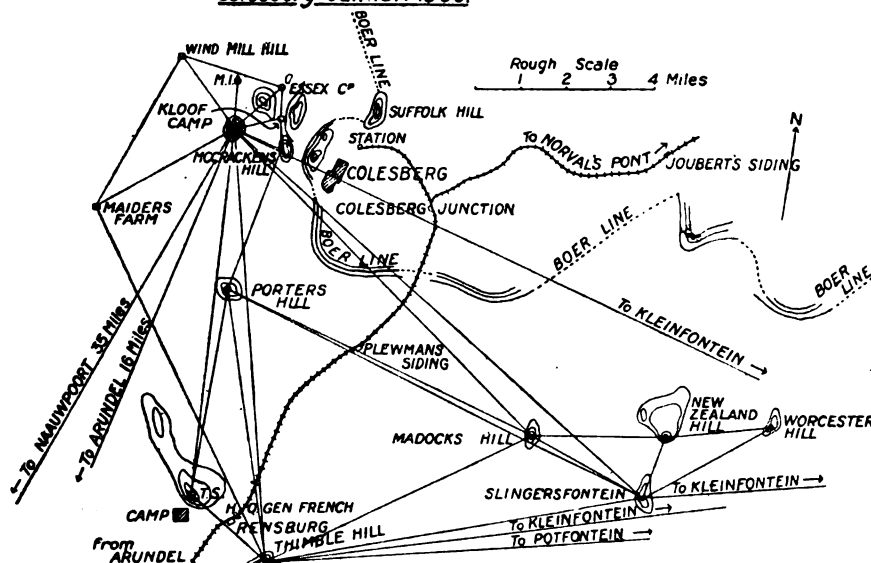
During the early operations around Colesberg signalling was most extensively used till replaced later by the telegraph. The country there was essentially one for visual communication. By using Coles Kop (a hill standing some 800 feet above the plain) as a central transmitting station, practically every post and camp was connected together. Map I. shows the communication in use on January 15, 1900, at Colesberg. No less than eighteen stations were in touch with each other, including Naauwpoort Junction, some thirty-five miles in rear of the fighting line. From the concentration of the Cavalry Division at Modder River to the arrival at Pretoria and onwards there was hardly a day

## SIGNALLING IN THE SOUTH AFRICAN WAR 171

that the signallers of the Division were idle. Whether for communicating from the Division to the telegraph line, to Army Headquarters, to flank columns, or whether used internally between brigades and regiments, or between outposts by day and night, one may safely say signalling to the Division was invaluable.

It is certain that the telephone and telegraph will even play a much greater part in the future than they have done in the past ;

*1. Rough Sketch Map of Signalling Communication at Colesberg Jan 15<sup>th</sup> 1900.*

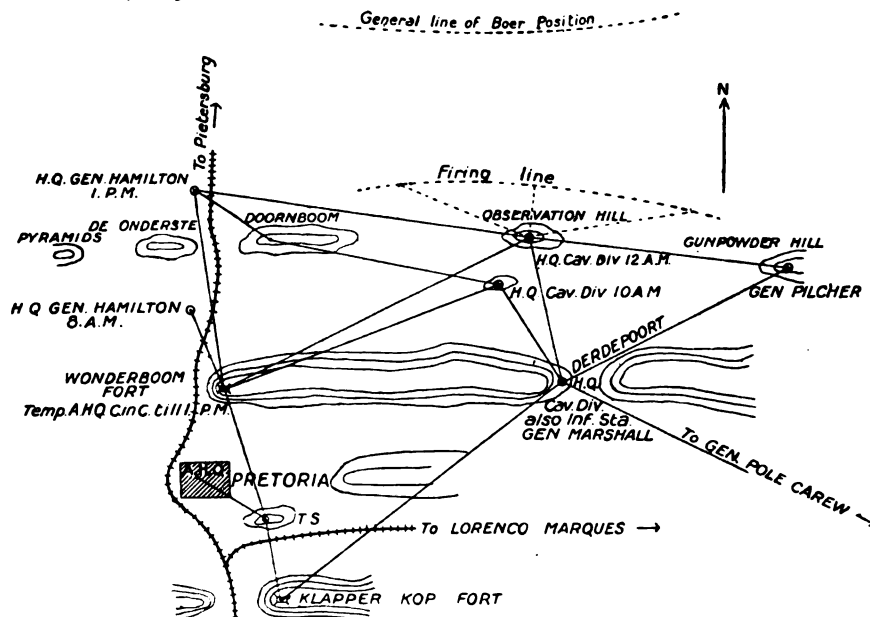


but as a handy, rapid, and portable means of communication for Cavalry, signalling, when properly organised and trained, still stands out by itself. But it *must* be properly trained, else it is worse than useless.

Briefly, the chief uses of signalling in the Cavalry are to enable troops, squadrons, regiments, and brigades to communicate with each other, or with their respective headquarters ; and for brigade or divisional headquarters (as the case may be) to communicate back to the main bodies of the forces to which they may belong.

To illustrate the actual working in war of some of the above examples, the following rough sketch maps are shown :

II. Rough Sketch Map showing Signalling Communication during action N of Pretoria July 16<sup>th</sup> 1900 (not to scale)



Map II. shows the lines working during a combined action north of Pretoria on July 16, 1900, under the personal direction, by signalling, of the Commander-in-Chief in Wonderboom Fort.

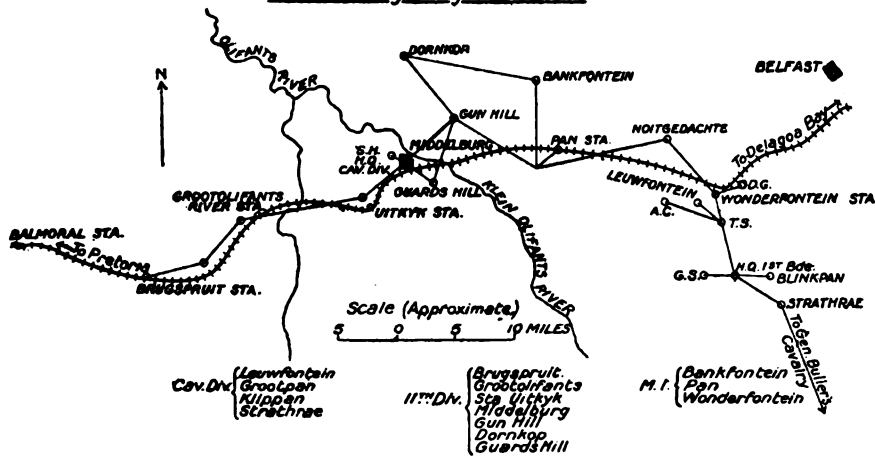
Map III. shows another system working at Middelburg on August 14, 1900. This is especially interesting as giving an idea of the distances the various posts were apart.

In conclusion it is impossible to help drawing attention to the fact that the signaller in Africa had a very hard time : he was practically on duty all day. When the rank and file were resting in the shade he was out in the sun working his hardest ; at sundown, when his comrades were preparing for the night's rest, off he had to start, sometimes a considerable way, and generally up a stiff climb, to get into communication with surrounding troops. Frequently he was left behind on a hill top, having to

## SIGNALLING IN THE SOUTH AFRICAN WAR 173

look after himself, do his work all day, and at night use his head and brains to get safely back to camp—perhaps miles away, to say nothing of being sniped at every other day. Consequently, he often arrived dead beat at his bivouac late at night, but directly the sun was up in the morning had to begin work again. No body of men served their country better, or were of more use to their fellow-comrades, than the Signallers of the Cavalry Division in South Africa.

*III Rough Sketch Map showing Signal Stations  
at Middelburg. August 12<sup>th</sup> 1900*



This short article, it is hoped, will show in a small way the immense value that signalling now has on active service, and will perhaps help to make clear the absolute necessity for the great amount of practice and hard work in peace time, without which it is impossible to reach that high state of perfection and excellence which must always be sought after and desired.

*TWO CAVALRY STAFF RIDES, INDIA, 1904-5*  
(continued)

By MAJOR H. HUDSON, C.I.E., 19th Lancers

The first part of this article gave a narrative of the two Staff Rides. The concluding part deals with deductions arrived at and strategical and other lessons gained.

THE strategical rôle of the Cavalry in the first of these two staff rides was to clear up the situation in a certain direction where the enemy's army was believed to be ; to hold a strong forward position in co-operation with the native allies until the arrival of the Infantry, and to open communication with another force moving in a parallel direction to the eastwards. In the second case, the object of the Cavalry division was to gain a position of readiness on the south-west of Delhi, with a view to preventing the enemy's escape. Thus, in both cases, strategical exploration formed part of the task of the independent Cavalry force. How should such exploration be carried out? The system of forming a dense screen in front of an army, which has been from time to time advocated in the past, seems unsound for many reasons. To commence with, such a line is weak everywhere, the advanced veil of scouts could be easily brushed aside by any compact body of mounted troops. It appears an ideal formation on paper, but in practice, even on the level plains of India, it is cumbersome, and has rarely met with much success, whilst in more enclosed country the task of maintaining that close touch which is essential for its success has proved to be most difficult. It aims at too much, it strives to make an impenetrable moving screen and, by this method, sacrifices its mobility and strength for penetration.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> The above remarks refer to the use of a Cavalry screen for purposes of strategical reconnaissance only.

‘On the contrary,’ it was pointed out, ‘the independent or strategic Cavalry must divide itself into as many groups as there may be objectives chosen by the General-in-Chief, and each of these groups will be well concentrated because he must expect that the opposing force of Cavalry will be charged with a similar but opposite mission ; then, strategic exploration must culminate in a tactical collision, and thus we conclude that Cavalry in this rôle will work in two elementary forms, a collection of isolated groups for scouting and a compact and concentrated mass for fighting.’

#### THE TRANSMISSION OF INTELLIGENCE

With reference to these reconnoitring forces, the same principles apply to all reconnoitring detachments, stress was laid on the importance of avoiding the prescription of any fixed itinerary, or the exploration of any particular zone of country. All that is necessary is to explain fully and clearly the precise nature of the information required, and leave the means of obtaining such information to the commander of the detachment, who will thus be given a free hand. The conduct of reconnoitring detachments consisting respectively of a squadron and a brigade was examined in detail with special reference to the transmission of intelligence. This is perhaps one of the most difficult duties Cavalry is called upon to perform, nor has science come much to our assistance to relieve the horse as a means of rapid communication. Wireless telegraphy would be ideal, but is useless in its present stage of development. Visual signalling is dependent to a great extent on meteorological conditions, to say nothing of its visibility to an enemy. The field telegraph requires plant of a more or less bulky nature ; the same remarks apply to the telephone when employed for long distances ; motor-cycles require good roads, carrier-pigeons may sometimes be usefully employed, but there are obvious disadvantages to their general utility. Though some or all of the above may be made use of under certain circumstances, the despatch rider remains

the most general means of conveying messages. Every attention, therefore, should be given to this branch of training, since without it the fruits gathered by our patrols will be wasted.

Passing next to closer contact with the enemy, we come to a new phase of reconnaissance, when the use of large bodies for this purpose must mean defeat in detail. How should such reconnaissances be carried out? Combat patrols will mark the exact position of the enemy and watch his movements, whilst ground scouts will warn squadrons of bad ground. But the commander of the Cavalry will wish to know more—he will desire to know what kind of ground intervenes between him and the enemy, so as to turn it to his advantage and prevent his own attack being ruined by unsuitable ground. The history of Cavalry presents only too many instances of disaster resulting from the neglect of such precautions. Combat patrols cannot perform this duty—their work is already cut out for them; ground scouts are too close to their squadrons. The course recommended was to detail officers selected specially for their topographical aptitude, to gallop, preferably in pairs, over the ground and well ahead of the force, to report on the country. It was suggested that these officers might take with them enlarged maps of the country, prepared beforehand, on which to jot down gun positions, possible pivots of manœuvre, obstacles to rapid movement, where and how they can be avoided, and places where Cavalry could mass concealed with a view to suddenly issuing and attacking over the country explored. During the staff rides several officers were detailed to make rapid sketches, on the above lines, with satisfactory results.

#### THE IMPORTANCE OF THE FEATURES OF THE GROUND FOR THE ATTACK

With regard to the actual attack on Cavalry, it was pointed out that the only facts on which the reconnoitring patrols can report with any certainty are the numbers of hostile men or guns, and the nature of the intervening ground; it is with regard

to the latter that all plans for attack should be made. 'The ground is the mould into which the plan of attack must make the troops fit.' It would appear to be best to fix on some feature as a pivot for one flank, and hold it with a detachment of men and guns. With one flank thus held it becomes clear which flank the enemy can threaten. Troops should be kept in hand in some convenient formation as long as possible, since, when once deployed, all freedom of manoeuvre disappears. To admit of rapid deployments being carried out it is essential that the troops should be thoroughly well trained. Pace is secondary to good order and cohesion for the delivery of an effective charge.

#### THE DUTIES OF CAVALRY

Space does not admit of an examination of the varied uses of cavalry during the several phases of a campaign, which were considered during these rides. The services which the arm can and should render are thus summed up by the Director: 'During the period of concentration it conceals and protects the strategic front of the armies; it threatens and disturbs the adversary's base and communication; it indicates to the Commander-in-Chief the point where he ought to strike, and points out to him the objective. During the march of approach towards the enemy, it surrounds the columns with a vigilant network; it clears their path, raises and tears away the veil spread before them. On the field of battle it surprises the hostile Artillery and reduces it to silence: it protects the head and flank of its own army, covers its deployment, disturbs or retards that of the enemy. A little later, it prepares the événement and takes part in the assault; in a few seconds it gathers the fruit of a long contest. Lastly, it completes the victory, or averts disaster; it undertakes the pursuit or covers retreat. In short, it intervenes in the prologue, in the principal act, in the dénouement. It is, at the same time, the introducer and consecrator of success. *But in all cases the combat with its proper rival is its inevitable prelude.*

As regards organisation the absence of a Mounted Engineer



detachment with Cavalry in the field must be regarded as a serious defect in our Indian organisation, a defect which it is believed will not long remain unremedied. The uses of such a corps with a pioneer, telegraph, and light pontoon detachments of skilled men cannot be over-estimated.

Supply arrangements for the division, including systematic requisitioning, transport and convoy arrangements, staff organisation, staff duties before and after an engagement, staff arrangements for crossing a river, the interrogation of prisoners, deserters and spies, were all points considered, as well as the more normal duties of staff and regimental officers. One remark of the Director with reference to the schemes and work handed in by officers calls for notice. He said, 'Too much dependence appears to be placed upon *memoria technica*, text-book data and list of headings. Such aids are valuable as a preliminary training course for young officers. Once an officer takes the field, he should depend upon his own grasp of the situation and his imagination to supply all that is required.' Take, for instance, the framing of orders. It is not many years since instruction in this most essential branch of military education was confined to the Staff College alone. Now a reaction has set in, and to meet the demand various publications have been issued, some by authority, giving specimens of orders framed to meet a variety of situations. It is in the abuse of such books that the evil lies. Is there not the danger that when called on to consider a tactical problem, the solver, instead of viewing it from the practical point of view and applying general principles when framing his orders, takes the problem and makes it fit in with one of the types of orders contained in his vade mecum? Has not some such expression as this frequently been heard: 'I can't quite make out whether "Advanced Guard" or "Outpost" or "March Orders" are required,' instead of framing orders to meet the requirements of the problem?

## **CROMWELL'S CAVALRY**

By BREVET-MAJOR W. H. GREENLY, D.S.O.,  
*12th Lancers*<sup>1</sup>

The Trained Bands of England—Their condition at the outbreak of the Civil War—The equipment of the Infantry, Artillery, and Cavalry—The drill of the latter.

### **No. 1**

At the outbreak of the Civil War in 1642 there was no regular standing Army in England: liability to serve in the Militia, however, was universal, though even in that exemptions were freely allowed.

The Militia, such as it was, went by the name of the Trained Bands: the name seems to have been given rather because they were called out for training than because they were actually trained.

The Trained Bands consisted of both horse and foot: they were supposed to be called out for training once a month, though in practice it seldom amounted to more than two or three times a year, and then only for one day. They knew very little of drill, and hardly any of them got so far in musketry as to let their muskets off at a target. Their arms were very inefficient and abominably kept, and discipline can hardly be said to have existed at all. According to Colonel Ward, a soldier of that time, the chief thing the Trained Bands learnt was to drink. He writes in 1639: 'As the trainings are now carried out we shall never make one good soldier; our custom is to cause our companies to meet

<sup>1</sup> The authorities consulted are: Baldock's *Cromwell as a Soldier*, Firth's *Cromwell's Army*, Maude's *Cavalry, Past and Future*, and some articles by Maguire.

on a certain day, and by that time the arms be all viewed and the muster master hath had his pay (which is the chiefest thing many times he looks after), it draws towards dinner-time; and indeed, officers love their bellies so well that they are loath to take much pains about disciplining their soldiers. Wherefore, after a little careless hurrying over their postures, they make them charge their muskets, and so prepare to give their captain a brave volley of shot at his entrance to his inn.'

A civilian writing on the same subject puts it more poetically: 'The god they worshipped in their trainings was not Mars but Bacchus.'

The Cavalry especially seems to have gone from bad to worse since the days of Elizabeth, and there are many complaints of the decrease of horsemen and the unpopularity of the Cavalry service in England.

Such was the state of things as regards military efficiency in England at the outbreak of the Civil War, and out of this chaos each side had to set to work to improvise an Army.

Both sides, however, were greatly assisted by having at their disposal a certain number of expert *officers* who had learnt their trade on the Continent, under Gustavus Adolphus and the Prince of Orange. On the Royalists' side especially, Prince Rupert, who commanded the King's Cavalry, and also Lord Goring, were both experienced Cavalry leaders, and there were several others of lesser note.

England at this time was almost free from military tradition; it was a century and a half since the Wars of the Roses, which ended in 1485, and which was the last occasion on which the bulk of the nation had had any experience of war. Military ideas were therefore taken to a great extent from what was practised on the Continent, where fighting had been going on for some twenty-five years between the Catholics and Protestants.

It is only necessary here to say that after the death of Gustavus Adolphus and the decline of his Cavalry, the belief in the invulnerability of the Infantry was beginning to revive, and

Cavalry everywhere were learning to place more reliance in their firearms than in the shock of closed squadrons. The proportion of Cavalry to Infantry was still, however, very large in all armies, one horseman to every two footmen being considered the right proportion.

To turn now to the dress and arms of the soldier of the day.

*The foot soldiers* were formed in companies, 200 strong, each company divided into four divisions, two divisions armed with pikes and two with muskets. The pikes were sixteen feet long, and the pikemen were supposed to have back and breast pieces over their buff coats, but they seldom wore them. They wore steel helmets, called pots. The muskets had rests and were chiefly matchlocks, though flintlocks were just coming into use. The musketeers sometimes carried short pointed stakes, known as Swedish Feathers, which they used to stick into the ground, leaning outwards, when threatened by a charge of Cavalry. Both musketeers and pikemen carried short swords. As regards the range and accuracy of the weapons, one writer says that the musket 'spoyles man and horse thirty score paces off, if the powder be anything good and the bearer of any judgment.' Another gives 400 yards as its effective range. However, it does not seem to have been the custom to shoot at longer ranges than from 80 to 100 yards, and Colonel Ward lays down in his book, 'Animadversions of War,' that 'when the enemy approaches within six or eight score paces or less, then the musketeers are to give fire.'

It was recognised that the safety of Infantry when attacked by Horse depended on the combined action of the musketeers and pikemen.

The Infantry were drawn up six deep, the two pike divisions in the centre, and the musketeers on the flanks.

*The Artillery* was cumbersome and inefficient, and did but little in the war; their range at what they termed 'utmost random' was said to be 2,000 yards. The guns were generally dispersed along the front in groups of two to six. In the fight

they very seldom moved from their first position, and were consequently soon masked by the advance of the other arms.

*The Horse* was divided into Cuirassiers, Arquebusiers, Carbineers, and Dragoons. The latter were simply Mounted Infantry: they carried a musket and short Infantry sword, and fought on foot; when dismounted one man held the horses of ten others. They were used in the advance for securing passes or bridges until the Infantry arrived, for covering retirements, and to co-operate as musketeers with the regular Cavalry. Although so much was expected of them, they were mounted at much less cost than the Cavalry proper, and any animal was considered good enough, as they expressed it, as a 'nag for a Dragoon.'

They carried no armour, and appear to have worn felt hats instead of helmets.

As regards the Cavalry proper, the typical Cuirassier wore complete armour, including thigh-pieces, and was armed with a long straight sword and a brace of pistols, carried in holsters: the tendency, however, was to discard armour, and Cromwell's own Cavalry either dispensed with it altogether or simply wore back and breast pieces.

The Arquebusiers and Carbineers were similarly armed, but they never wore armour below the thigh, and they carried, instead of the pistol, a carbine slung over the shoulder.

The Cavalryman, in addition to his buff coat, wore breeches and long boots, with tops usually turned down below the knee, leather gauntlets and heavy curved spurs.

The horses were for the most part cobs, between 14 and 14.2 hands; though rather underbred they were very strong, and did some extraordinary performances under the heavy weights (computed at from twenty-two to twenty-five stone) which they had to carry.

The saddles had high cantles and pommels, and the reins were lined with chains to prevent them being cut in battle.

The squadrons or troops—both terms seem to have been used indiscriminately for the same formation—were usually

sixty strong, and generally stood in six ranks, with an interval of six feet from knee to knee, and a distance of six feet from nose to croup.

From this formation, which somewhat resembled that which we obtain by the command *from the right of fours to the front file*, they could either close in on their centre and thus form a column on a front of ten and depth of six, or by turning to the right or left, get into column on a front of six and depth of ten, the latter being the usual marching formation.

Line was formed by the second, fourth, and sixth ranks moving up into the intervals in the first, third, and fifth, and then closing in, thus forming three ranks; this was the formation invariably used for the charge.

A regimental line was formed by each squadron being brought up into its place by its leader by the shortest and most direct route, much as we do to-day: the efficiency of the drill depending chiefly on the correct leading of the squadron leader. The movements were very slow. It was a recognised *principle* to try to attack the enemy's flank, but the troops were usually too ill-drilled and unwieldy to be able to get at it. In all countries, since the introduction of firearms, Cavalry had lost a great deal of their mobility and dash, and were very much afraid of the wretched muskets with which the Infantry were armed. Although the rates of movement aimed at, even in the charge, were very slow, the following quotation from 'The Souldiers' Accidence,' published in London in 1643, shows that the training of a troop of horse was considered a somewhat desperate undertaking:

'Infinite great (and not without much difficultie) are the considerations which dependeth on him that taketh upon him to Teach, Command, and Governe a Troope of Horse; For to instruct Man onely (who is a reasonable creature, can understand my Language and apprehend my directions) though he be never so ignorant and peevish, yet there is much ease in the progresse, and what favour cannot persuade, authoritie and punishment

may inforce. But to bring ignorant man and more ignorant horse, wilde man and mad horse, to those rules of Obedience, which may crown every Motion and Action with comely, orderly and profitable proceedings; "Hic Labor Hoc Opus."

'The comely, orderly, and profitable proceedings' which the training was intended to lead up to may be gathered from the following contemporary description of the methods of fighting of the Cuirassier: 'He is commonly to give the charge upon a trot and seldom gallopeth but in pursuit. Having spent both his pistols and having no opportunity to load again, he must then betake himself to his *last refuge*, the sword.'

The fallacy that the *arme blanche* is the Cavalryman's *last refuge* is thus no new one: at each period of history, and there have been more than one, where Cavalry have been taught too much reliance on fire tactics at the necessary expense of loss of confidence in themselves for mounted action, their decline in horsemanship and therefore utility has been certain and rapid.

In the Civil War, Rupert, already an experienced leader, relied from the first chiefly on shock, and Cromwell as he gradually gained experience adopted sounder methods than at first, and finally evolved for himself practically the same system of Cavalry tactics which were used with such brilliant results one hundred years later by the best Cavalry leaders of the Great Frederick.

(*To be continued.*)

## CAVALRY IN BATTLE

By CAPTAIN P. A. CHARRIER, *Royal Munster Fusiliers*

### I.—MARSTON MOOR

A short description of the different phases of the struggle, illustrating the value of opportunity, determination, and leadership.

THE battle was fought on July 2, 1644. It lasted about three hours. The ground was heavy-going clay soil: it had rained considerably during the day.

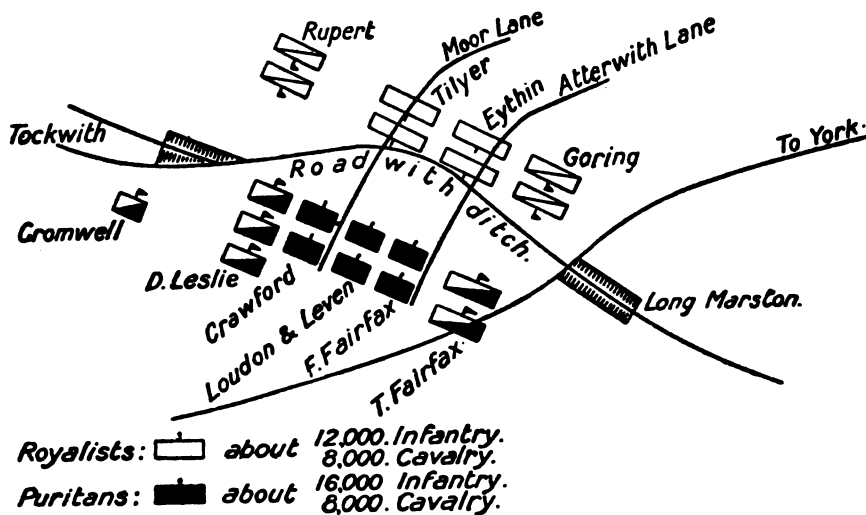


FIG. 1

The two armies were drawn up between 4 and 5 P.M. facing each other, separated by a deep vertical-sided ditch, which from all accounts was a serious obstacle. Neither army appeared to care to advance to the attack, for fear that the disorder caused



by advancing over this ditch would give the opponent an advantage. The two armies remained watching each other until about 7 P.M. The Royalists had now given up all idea of attacking that day, and had evidently started settling down for the night, lighting fires, cooking, &c. On the Puritan side, Cromwell, seeing an opportunity thus given him, determined not to lose it, and probably on his initiative impelled the Puritan leaders to accede to his wish to attack whilst this opportunity existed of taking the Royalists off their guard.

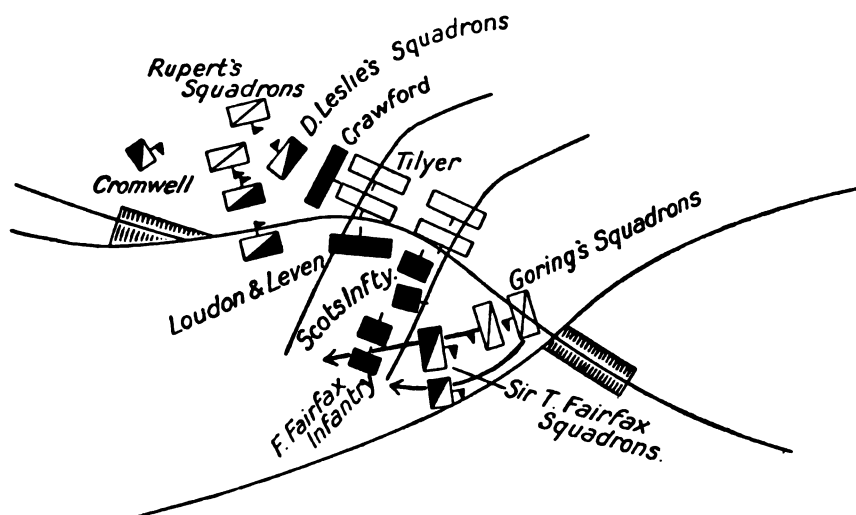


FIG. 2

The whole Puritan army advanced. On the left wing Cromwell, leading the attack in person, crossed the ditch and attacked the Royalist Cavalry led by Rupert. David Leslie's squadrons crossed the ditch further to the right and fell on Rupert's left flank. There was here a gap between Rupert's Cavalry and the remainder of the Royalist army, giving Leslie room to do so.

After some very severe fighting, Rupert's squadrons were defeated and fled from the field. They were pursued for three miles by a fraction of Cromwell's Cavalry.

Cromwell, though wounded in the fight, has his squadrons and also David Leslie's rallied and re-formed as quickly as possible, ready for the next job.

On the right wing, the Puritans were defeated by the Royalist Cavalry under Goring, whose squadrons threw the Puritan Cavalry in disorder on to their Infantry, and the whole mass then fled in confusion, pursued by Goring. Only a small fraction of the Royalist Cavalry under Lucas remained on the

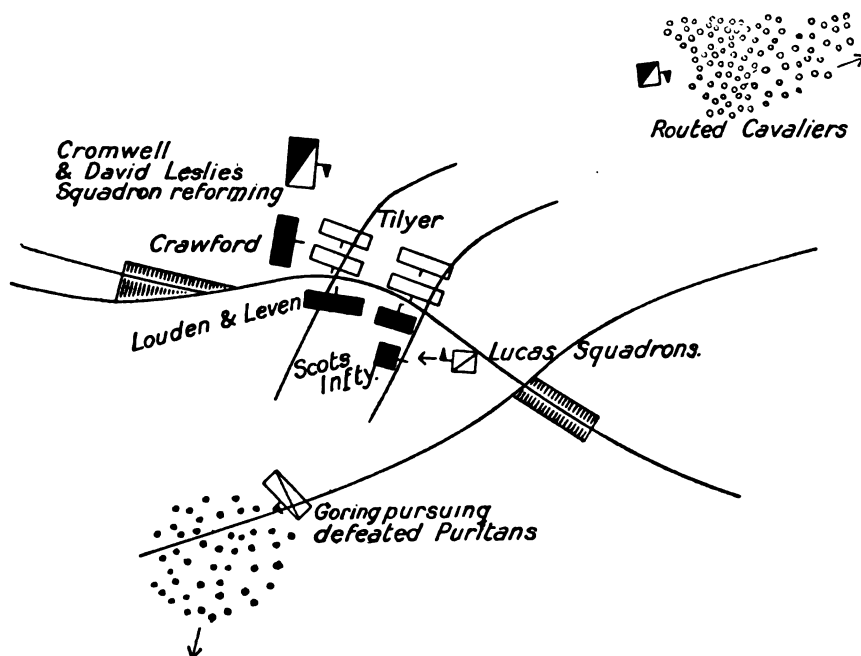


FIG. 8

field, and they attacked the Puritan Infantry still standing in the centre. Goring's squadrons went on pursuing this defeated wing, and set to plundering the baggage.

Cromwell had re-formed his squadrons. Crawford's Puritan Infantry had crossed the ditch and were attacking Tilyer's right flank, whilst Leven and Loudon's Infantry held Tilyer's front. Lucas's squadrons were attacking the Scottish Infantry, that still held its ground, and although Lucas came back to the

attack several times he was not strong enough to defeat the Scots, who here held out till the end of the day.

Sir Thomas Fairfax, who had commanded the Puritan Cavalry on the right wing, had managed to cut his way through Goring's victorious squadrons, and now with a few troopers joined Cromwell, informing him of the disaster to their right wing.

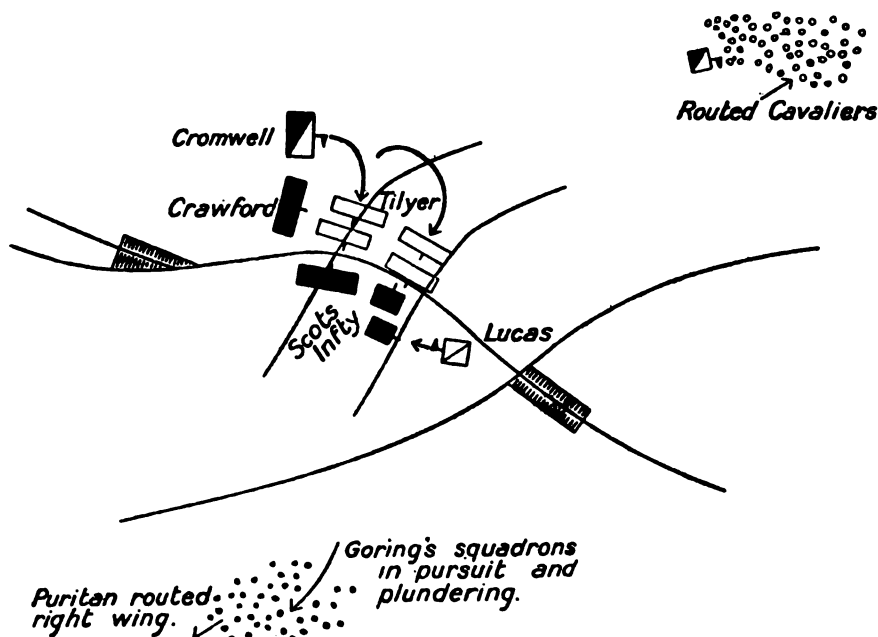


FIG. 4

Cromwell attacks the Royalist Infantry, and succeeds in destroying regiment after regiment, and throws them into utter confusion against the ditch.

The Royalist Infantry maintain a fight in a confused mass, and Cromwell, having re-formed on the ground originally occupied by Goring, is ready to meet Goring, who returns to the field with horses blown after a long pursuit, and with reduced numbers owing to the plundering, &c. Lucas's squadrons, exhausted by their repeated attacks on the Scots Infantry, now also joined Goring, but they are both defeated by Cromwell's disciplined squadrons.

By 10 P.M. the battle is over: the Puritans pursue up to within three miles of York, and were stayed by the darkness and the Royalist musketeers lining the hedgerows.

During the battle nearly all the higher leaders on both sides bolted from the field, yet we see the battle won on one side because one man at least, Cromwell, knew what he wanted and knew how to get it. He never for a moment let go his hold on the struggle, and won the victory by the strength of character he possessed, and the discipline he had obtained from his troopers.

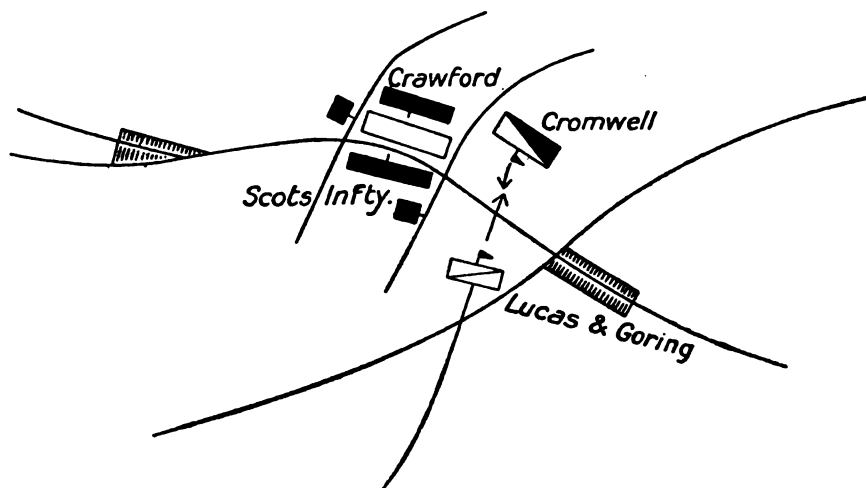


FIG. 5

The facts to be kept in mind are, first of all, Cromwell's determination not to lose an opportunity. For an opportunity was here visible—the Royalist army off their guard settling down for the night. Secondly, his determination to attack, notwithstanding the disadvantage of the ditch in front. But this ditch was the very thing that would allow him to surprise the foe, for the Royalists would believe themselves fairly secure on the other side of it, and this false security proved their ruin on that portion of the field.

When once over the ditch both sides were on equal terms, and the side that attacked with the greatest resolution, the closest order, and the greatest impetus, was bound to win.

After Rupert was defeated, Cromwell rallied immediately, sending in pursuit of Rupert's flying horsemen just sufficient squadrons to keep them on the run, and prevent them from re-forming or causing any further trouble on the battle-field. After each attack Cromwell rallied promptly, always ready for the next job at hand.

Cromwell thoroughly realised that the final decision in any battle was only to be fought out on the battle-field itself, and that nothing *was done* whilst something remained to be done in the battle.

We see on the Royalist side Goring defeating the Puritan right wing. But, instead of sending in pursuit the smallest fraction that would keep the runaways running, and prevent them from troubling any more, he set off in pursuit with the bulk of his squadrons, who also set to plundering, and got completely out of hand ; and he left only Lucas's few squadrons on the field. Lucas and his men did all that mortals could do, but were not in sufficient strength to ride down and overthrow their immediate enemy, the Scots Infantry.

And we have seen that the last act of this hard-fought battle was the overthrow of both Lucas's and Goring's squadrons by the rallied and disciplined squadrons of Cromwell.

And lastly, at this battle we see that Cavalry successfully attacked and defeated Infantry in close order, a much more difficult thing to do than nowadays, for the Infantry were drawn up some twelve to sixteen files deep alternately of pikemen and musketeers. The pikemen formed a most efficient obstacle with their pikes at rest, and the musketeers were able to deliver a weight of fire which, whilst it lasted, was far heavier than anything that could be done nowadays. And when one of the large-bore musket balls hit an arm or a leg it broke it, and brought down whatever it hit, man or horse.

The battle was won by the goodwill of those leaders who remained on the field to the end, and by the initiative, the energy, the will and the self-control possessed by Cromwell.

## REVIEWS

1. The German Official Account of the War in South Africa.
2. A Staff Officer's Scrap-Book.
3. Cavalry in Action in the Wars of the Future.

*The War in South Africa.* Prepared in the Historical Section of the Great General Staff, Berlin. Translated by Col. H. DU CANE, R.A., M.V.O. London : John Murray.

THOSE who wish to acquire a sound knowledge of the events and teachings of the War in South Africa can hardly do better than read the *Times* history for general accuracy and picturesqueness of description, while they should study the German official account of the war for expert criticism. If the remarks in the latter are not generally laudatory, it must be admitted that our methods were often open to question, while the results were frequently unsatisfying; but in this second volume there is apparent some appreciation of the difficulties by which our troops and leaders were beset, and on the whole the criticism, if unsparing, is by no means unfair. The German Great General Staff is especially severe upon 'the want of co-operation and harmony between the Infantry and the Artillery action,' as a result of which we are told that 'the supposed fire preparation of the attack existed only in the imagination of the British leaders, and the Infantry actually advanced to the attack of an absolutely unshaken enemy.' Our attempts at enveloping movements are also not approved, and we are reminded that 'no enveloping movement can be effective and decisive unless made in combination with an energetic frontal attack.'

On the other hand, praise is unstintingly given where it is due,

as in the action of the 6th Division at Driefontein, which is called 'a perfect model of the interdependent action of the two arms,' while the advance from Johannesburg to the Capital is spoken of as a 'performance which furnishes a striking and eloquent proof of the energy of the Chief Command and of the devotion and endurance of the Troops, and which must ever remain remarkable in the History of War.' There is also a remark hidden in the semi-obscurity of a footnote which is not without significance, although by some its value may appear somewhat belated, viz. that the reports circulated by the Boers 'and which were, as a rule, accepted absolutely unreservedly by the European press, should be received with caution.'

In the concluding chapter—'Tactical Retrospect'—much is repeated as to the defects of the Infantry and Artillery action, but there is little or no mention of Cavalry; earlier in the volume this arm has received its full share of blame, and it is stated that 'all experts are unanimous that the chief cause of the great loss of horses was due to the fact that neither officers nor men were properly acquainted with the management of horses.' It is to be regretted that the names of these experts are not given; one is unwilling to believe that they are the German officers who are repeatedly quoted in the book, and who, when fighting for the Boers, are generally represented as offering valuable but unsolicited and unacceptable advice to the Republican leaders; while the opinions of our own Cavalry experts may be read in the evidence of the War Commission and hardly bear out the sweeping statement quoted from the German official account of the war. The complete work will certainly be widely read and studied, and the justice of most of the conclusions arrived at will be appreciated to the full by the British Army, which will always welcome the best professional criticism.

Colonel Du Cane has effected an excellent translation; the maps are very good, but the photographs—like the majority of those representing South African battle-scenes—are disappointing.

*A Staff Officer's Scrap-Book.* By Lieut.-General Sir IAN HAMILTON, K.C.B. London: Edward Arnold.

To the soldier this is certainly one of the most interesting of the legion of books dealing with the Russo-Japanese War, and it is to be hoped that ere long Sir Ian Hamilton may see his way to fulfil his promise and tell us in another volume more about the operations he witnessed with the First Army under Marshal Kuroki. Other writers have narrated possibly more important operations and incidents of the great campaign, but no one but a soldier—and one, too, who has served with nearly all our fighting men, British, Colonial, and Native—could have told us so well—more perhaps by implication than by words—how the soldiery of Japan compares with the British Army ‘at its best.’

And yet it must be admitted that from a purely Cavalry point of view General Hamilton's book is something of a disappointment. Throughout the war the Cavalry on either side took no leading part in the operations, and one would have been glad could the author have offered any reasonable explanation of the supineness of the Russian and Japanese horsemen. It is not enough for Sir Ian Hamilton to remind his readers of the theories which he has put forward in regard to Cavalry, its uses and its weapons, while his remark that he could not ‘help feeling a malicious satisfaction at learning that the Cavalry had done nothing,’ cannot but detract in some measure from the value of the conclusions which he has drawn. None the less the reasons for the meagre results achieved by the Russian and Japanese Cavalry may be found in the pages of this book by those who seek them. Continental writers, such as General von Pelet Narbonne, have insisted that for the mounted branch the personality of the leader is the all-important factor, and certainly in the late war Cavalry leader on either side was there none; the Russians had one man who might have done something, and he was early wounded. For the rest it would seem that the Cavalry—at least on one side—was wholly inefficient, while the ground



over which the First Army worked was impossible. Of the Cossack—the original mounted rifleman—Sir Ian Hamilton quotes one having ‘an exceptional knowledge’ of the Russian troops and who states that ‘the Cossack is purely an historical personage. He has lost all his former Boer attributes, except that of horsemanship, and is now simply a yokel who is living on the Napoleonic legend ; sometimes he is brave, sometimes he is not brave, just like other yokels ; but he is never disciplined, and is almost invariably badly officered and led.’ In another place the author, speaking of the *terrain*, says ‘the country was so bad that mounted orderlies had to lead their horses.’

Surely the above quotations supply sufficient reason for the meagre results achieved by the Cavalry of either side, although it may be questioned whether they afford enough foundation for the theories advanced out of the experience of the exceptional conditions of the last two campaigns. Continental authorities have ascribed the want of completeness in the Japanese victories to the absence of a large and efficient body of Cavalry of the continental pattern ; while it is not uninteresting to try to appreciate what *might* have been accomplished, even by the degenerate Cossack, had success been steadily denied to the Japanese arms in the great struggle in Manchuria.

*Cavalry in Action in the Wars of the Future*, by ‘P. S.

Translated from the French by JOHN FORMBY, *Lieut-Colonel*, 3rd Vol. Batt. The King’s (Liverpool) Regiment.  
London : Hugh Rees.

The author of this very useful and instructive book would appear not only to be a Cavalryman *au bout des ongles*, but to be one who discovers in the conditions of modern war a wider scope, a greater sphere of usefulness for his arm, rather than the restrictions which some would seek to impose upon it. The aim of the teachings of this book may be found in the introduction, where the writer says that : ‘The use of dismounted fire-action is alone able to give to Cavalry that strength of resistance which

some people persist that it has not got, and which is necessary to it, for its offensive power does not lie entirely in the charge; the offensive is a part of its very nature, and it should resolutely use every means in its power of making it possible or more powerful. Now of these means fire is the best, and will in many cases be the only one which will enable Cavalry to pursue its forward movement. . . . Cavalry will succeed in its multifarious enterprises only on the condition that it knows how to make the best use of all its means, and does not confound *Cavalry spirit* with the unreasoning obstinacy of wishing only to fight mounted.' 'P. S.' very rightly insists strenuously on the especial qualities required of the Cavalry leader, small or great, and declares that not only must he be, more than any officer of the other arms, a tactician, but that he must possess a consummate knowledge of all details of the battle tactics of Artillery and Infantry.

The book is divided into two parts—the fighting of detachments and the action of larger units, and the former seems to be particularly deserving of the attention of Cavalry regimental officers and non-commissioned officers. Lieut.-Colonel Formby has done his part admirably, and the translation is throughout all that could be desired. Of the book itself the hypercritical may possibly contend that in some of the examples the Artillery appear to open fire at startlingly close range; and also that occasionally the speed at which mounted troops are timed to cover ground suggests rather the troop horse of the autumn manœuvres than the underfed, overworked mount of active service; these are, however, but small matters where the whole book is of such excellence, and so essentially *modern* in thought and teaching. However, as 'P. S.' himself says, 'on the subject of the employment of Cavalry in war the last word has not yet been spoken, and in this, as in many other respects, future campaigns have many surprises in store for us.'

## ***MY FIRST EXPERIENCES IN SEARCH OF REMOUNTS***

**BY CAPTAIN GODFREY GILLSON, R.A., *Commanding Artillery,  
Egyptian Army***

### **I.—AUSTRIA-HUNGARY**

From Egypt to Syria, viâ Trieste and Constantinople—A visit to the Lipizzo stud—The Imperial stables at Vienna—Racing at Buda-Pesth—A horse fair in Hungary—The 16th Hungarian Hussars at home.

ABOUT the middle of August, having spent a month in charge of troops in a cholera camp in the Abbassieh desert five miles out of Cairo, and the novelty of the situation together with its charm having completely worn off, I was not sorry when one morning the Sirdar ordered me to proceed at once to Syria and afterwards to Cyprus to purchase horses and mules as remounts for the Egyptian Army. I was to have as a colleague Lieut.-Colonel Griffiths, A.V.D., D.S.O., better known to all who have served in Egypt or the Sudan during the last quarter of the century as 'The Friendly.' On applying to Messrs. Thomas Cook & Son for a ticket to Beyrout, we were informed that the last boat from Alexandria on arrival in those waters had been peremptorily ordered to get out again at once, without disembarking mails, cargo or passengers; the reason being that the Sultan of Turkey stood in much dread of an epidemic, owing to an ancient prophecy by a fortune-teller that he should one day die of an infectious disease. The booking-clerk, however, held out hopes that the next boat would be allowed to land passengers after seventeen days' quarantine. Not thinking that this alternative looked very healthy, we cast about us for some other route and a

more profitable means of spending seventeen days than being sea-sick off Beyrout Harbour, with indifferent accommodation and a climate far from pleasant. We eventually elected to take the Austrian Lloyd to Trieste, where there were no quarantine restrictions, and to train from there through Austria and Hungary on to Constantinople, catching a Messageries boat thence to Beyrout. By this means we should have an opportunity of seeing something of the possibilities of obtaining remounts from Hungary or Austria should they be required in the future. Moreover, the strong disinclination of the Turkish authorities during the last two years to grant permits for horses to leave the country had led the Egyptian War Office to believe that this course might at some time be necessary.

Before starting, I fortunately obtained two or three letters of introduction to make use of in the countries to which I was going. On arrival at Trieste in the early morning, we took a cab and drove out to Lipizzo, to see the Imperial stud-farm, where I presented my letter for the manager, who promptly appeared from his brown-tiled, rose-covered house. He could not have been kinder or more courteous in his endeavours to show us everything of interest. Not having the German tongue, I was much relieved to find that he had somewhat of the French, and after a short preliminary canter I judged we were fairly well matched in the French language at even weights. The object of the stud seems to be to supply grey carriage horses (coloured horses being drafted and sold) for the Imperial stables at Vienna, where several hundreds are kept of various classes suited to draw either the Imperial coaches or carriages. This object is apparently attained by crossing imported Spanish stallions with the brood mares of the establishment. The former were big horses, very heavy bodied, with legs and feet to match, and doubtless with plenty of knee action, who carried their heads and tails and bent their necks right proudly.

The brood mares were a vastly different class of animal, chiefly a mixture of Arab and Italian blood with a cross of

Spanish. They showed a fair amount of Arab quality, noticeably in their limbs and feet and colouring, many of them being flea-bitten greys; I gathered the Arab strain was obtained in most cases through the dam or grand-dam rather than the sire. On an average they ran to about fifteen hands and appeared to be distinctly light-weight animals, long and low, but undoubtedly light.

They were grazing in an ideal pasturage, plenty of good grass, shady trees, and clear, cool water, a perfect haven of rest for an old and faithful servant.

The mares were herded together in troops of about twenty or thirty, with a couple of attendants to keep them from straying from their own troops. There was a good show of nice healthy foals, and with all the care and advantages of their nursery they could hardly fail to look well and happy. The yearlings and two-year-olds we had not time to inspect, as they were out on the hillsides, but we saw several of the senior pupils being broken to harness and driven quietly and carefully about in pairs; I must admit that they were handsome, compact, powerful little horses, with good sharp action. Doubtless the two years they spend on the hillside, climbing the steep slopes in search of their living, give them every chance to develop in the right direction. The soil of the district, moreover, is limestone, and on one point I think all are agreed, that horses and beer are both alike in this respect—the best can only be produced on a limestone soil.

Let me advise anyone who happens to be travelling *viâ* Trieste to do as I did. The visit to this picturesque and perfectly managed stud, added to an interesting drive, will more than repay the cab fare and time spent.

On the return drive I could not help reflecting that although the soldier officer is not unfrequently generous in the bestowal of his best energies and brains on the art of riding, and in the all-important duty of keeping the horse fit, yet how few are there who have ever turned their minds to the science of breeding him, surely quite as important a study, and one hardly less

interesting. For here was I confronted with a draught horse from which I would not withhold admiration, and yet I cared little for his dam and less for his sire, whose breed I had met some years before when a young officer at Gibraltar ; nor can I recollect any instance of a 'Spaniard' gaining glory either on the racecourse, the polo ground, or even with the Calpe hounds. In fact, in our youthful intolerance we were wont to call him many hard names and describe him as a pig-eyed, lop-eared, cow-hocked caricature of a horse. Yet I can call to mind one or two quite nice ponies bred by an Algerian barb out of a Spanish mare, so perhaps the breed has much merit for purposes of crossing with higher-bred animals.

But let us hark back to Trieste and continue our travels to Vienna. When we arrived in the morning we put up at the Hôtel Imperial, an establishment which quite lives up to its high-sounding title. We called at the Embassy and got our passports viséd for travelling in Turkey and Syria, and obtained a pass to go over the Imperial stables that afternoon. The stables I was told were not so full as they would have been in the season, yet we saw a vast quantity of horses, among them a great number of matched pairs of greys from the Lipizzo stud, and nearly as many pairs of very large English carriage horses, all of which were bright bays. We also saw the state coach horses, half of which were grey and the others black ; the former I believe are used in Austria and the latter in Hungary : of their kind I think these certainly were magnificent animals. We were also shown a few riding horses, one of which was a rare stamp of old-fashioned hunter, a horse that did one good to look at. One could not help feeling gratified on being told that he came from Dublin. Alas ! that so many of his well-favoured female relations should have steadily passed the same way for so many years. I fancy actual statistics on this point would startle most people in England. The state coaches and harness were well worth seeing, but what struck me most of all was the class of people who were being shown round the establishment. I dare

say there were a couple of hundred while I was there, and entirely composed of the domestic servant class, chiefly women-folk. Surely the Austrians must be a horse-loving people, for the same class in England would not go far to see a horse, unless he was attached to a circus and its concomitant attractions. I must not omit to add that we also saw the Imperial Riding School, which was almost long enough to train a Cesarewitch winner in.

Next morning we went on to Buda-Pesth, and noticing something strangely familiar in the aspect of one or two of my neighbours at lunch in the hotel there, I was not surprised to learn from the waiter that their autumn race meeting was in full swing, and I could at once imagine the familiar cry in my ears of 'Ere comes the riders.' So having unpacked my field-glasses and left my money with the hotel manager, we hailed a cab and followed on. By the way, the Hungarian cab is not to be beaten, nor is the Hungarian 'jarvie' to be passed. I will acquit him as an excellent coachman in traffic, who understands the use of the brake and the art of slipping past other vehicles without taking his horses out of their collar, at a speed that reminded me favourably of some of our best known regimental whips on a June morning when the coach horses had been warned for Epsom. The course appeared to me small, the stand accommodation simple but convenient, very like a provincial meeting in England. But the paddock was infinitely superior to the cattle market-like enclosure one often meets at home. Here there was a long green lawn and plenty of it, with shady trees conveniently planted about. The fields were large and the racing distinctly good. Trainers and jockeys, English of course, were there, while the ubiquitous American light-weight boy with his knees in his mouth was well to the fore, and appeared to be causing no little sensation by his success. Some of the horses were English importations, but apparently there were plenty of home-bred ones as well. The noise of the ring was entirely absent, though the crowd got very keen over the

close finishes and cheered lustily. I took a stroll among the multitude on the other side of the course and came away much impressed by their manners. They seemed to have no equivalent for the familiar figure at home with the blue birdseye handkerchief round his neck, who with a more than dubious lobster in his hand may be seen and heard discussing the incidents of the last or next race with his colleagues at the extreme range of his voice and vocabulary. However, they can well spare him; so could we.

Next morning we caught an early train to Stuhlvoissenburg, where one of their big annual horse fairs was being held. It proved a most animated and picturesque scene, as the fair was not confined to horses only. The hucksters displayed wares of every kind, and pandered to all human wants from a hay-rake to a fur-lined overcoat. The clean little town was quite *en fête*, and the bright dresses of the peasant women in their short gay-coloured crinolined skirts, with still brighter bodices and head gear, set off by a dark coloured velvet apron, the clean-limbed, sunburnt farmers in their smart black jack-boots, all bespoke a holiday combined with business. We saw a great number of horses, all very much of one class, light, active animals, with nice clean action and plenty of quality, mostly three- and four-year-olds, being driven about in pairs in their useful, workmanlike basket-work phaetons. There was an almost total absence of heavy horses or anything suitable for cart work. I saw nothing in the fair showing a strain of carthorse blood, and I understood that there was none in the district. The horses we saw were round about fifteen hands, all of them grass fed. They seemed to me to lack substance and weight even for their height and quality, but so much allowance must be made for condition and consequent thickening that perhaps I misjudged them, and it was the last day of the fair, so one may safely estimate that the best were not left to the last. We saw five horses afterwards on their way to the station, bought by a German dealer and off to Berlin. One of these was undeniably what I call a really nice



horse, about 15·3, a blood horse with a beautiful set of limbs. He had, I believe, cost about £30, which was roughly a third more than the average price of those we picked out in the fair to enquire about.

Horse-thieving would appear to be very prevalent at these gatherings, and no horse can be booked at the railway without a magistrate's certificate of ownership.

In spite of our natural endeavours not to obtrude our nationality among our surroundings—we had even bought two little green cloth hats, one with a curly cock's feather and the other with a rabbit's paw sticking up at the back, though I must admit we never could find the requisite courage to appear in them outside our bedrooms, though each daily assured the other that *he* ought to wear it, as it just suited *him*, and in fact did not look at all out of the ordinary—nevertheless it must have been speedily put about the fair that there were two more British officers on the ground looking at horses, for the delight of the dealers on recognising the fact was almost more than they could support and far more than they could conceal ; one indeed clung to us like a plaister for about three hours until his friend had time to return with an ex-London waiter to act as interpreter. I assured him there was no chance of our buying any horses this year, at any rate, but I expect he will meet the train next year on the outside chance of being first on the ground. The dealers were a keen-looking set of birds with a strong proportion of the Hebrew element amongst them, so one missed the steel-saw coloured blue eye which usually betokens their caste at home. We had lunch among them all at a nice old-fashioned inn, digestion being assisted by fiddlers.

I heard very little gossip about the horses purchased in the country for South Africa, and that little emanated chiefly from what I thought were interested or disappointed sources ; nor do I believe one could travel through any district where large numbers of horses had been purchased for a Government and against time without hearing a good deal of idle talk on the

subject. I certainly encountered much taller stories with reference to another Government in a different country.

We had only one more day in Pesth, and were fortunate enough to get permission to look round the horses of the regiment quartered there, the 16th Hungarian Hussars. Their Colonel was more than kind to us, showing us everything himself, including all the troop stables, the depôt of young horses of another corps that was away on manœuvres, his own remounts in training, and a selection of fifteen or twenty of his favourite horses. The latter classes we saw outside, ridden in all their paces and jumped for our benefit. I never was more interested or surprised in my life, and being out of reach of my brother officers and their outraged feelings, will boldly assert that we could produce nothing in the British Army to show against it; and in saying this I am comparing it with Horse Artillery and Cavalry in India and at home, including Household Cavalry. Of course I am only judging from outward appearances, but I think most of my friends would agree with me were they to see it for themselves. On entering the first troop stable one felt that this must be some carefully managed hunting establishment rather than a military one: wide stalls, big windows with sun-blinds, the horses bedded up to their hocks in clean white straw, trimmed with the heaviest of straw plaits. Every horse with his name-board, the name beginning with the same initial as his sire, the dates he was foaled and joined on; moreover, if you wished for any further information about him it was always at hand in the subaltern's note-book. Gentle reader, when you go to stables to-morrow morning enquire where No. — was bred and what were the breeding and performances of his parents.

I repeat that I can only speak of these horses from their looks.

But their condition, polish, and the style in which they were done and turned out was beyond criticism. They struck one as being so extremely level, not only in size and power, but in quality; to estimate the latter always look from the knee

downwards, by far the truest index, or at least so I was taught by an eminent steeplechase trainer, and have never yet seen any reason to doubt him. On all sides the eye met the clean, flat, parallel formation of leg which can only betoken the well-bred horse. Those we saw ridden were very active-looking horses with true action all round. I am sorry that I did not ask to ride any of them myself or I could speak more confidently. They pay £31 apiece for them and are allowed to purchase about 30 per cent. of three-year-olds. This is, of course, a very good price in Hungary; I should fancy equivalent to £60 or £70 at home, as horses go. Their corn ration I made out to be 2 lbs. less than ours, but their hay rather larger. Their bridle is neater than ours, shorter in the cheek, and the bridoon has its own head-piece like a hunting bridle, and is independent of the head collar.

For the rest there seemed an absence of stereotyped routine for the treatment of the young horses, all of which were treated according to their various temperaments. They all did their school work in Newmarket boots, and the Riding School was eschewed for the open *manège*, on which point the Colonel was very particular.

We finished the morning in his private stables and saw his own chargers and hunters, two of which were English thoroughbred horses; one of them had run but did not like the job. His favourite hunter was a Hungarian liver-chestnut mare, and I think her facsimile might be found in many stables at home bearing the same character, 'My favourite.'

Far be it from me to assert any opinion on the much-vexed question of the merits of these horses, but if they are really as good as they look, I would gladly have picked one to ride upon myself, either on parade or to go a-hunting.

(To be continued.)

## THOROUGHBRED HORSES

By COLONEL T. DEANE, C.B., *Agent in England for  
the Exportation of Government Stallions*

The test of good stallions—Horse-breeding system in India—The importation of thoroughbred blood from England—Measurements and performances—The class of horse selected.

As a considerable proportion of the horses in India used for military purposes are sired by thoroughbreds imported from England, it may be of interest to the readers of the CAVALRY JOURNAL to be informed of the measures taken to provide our Indian Empire with promising stock-getting horses.

The word promising is advisedly used, because the surest proof of a stallion's excellence is the stock he gets, and many of our best thoroughbreds have not shown their value at the stud until late in life. Many cases in support of this argument might be quoted. For instance, the Godolphin Arab, to whom some of the best horses of the English turf can be traced, was imported into France from Barbary, as a present by the Emperor of Morocco to Louis XIV. For a considerable period he drew a cart in the streets of Paris, until rescued from this employment by a Mr. Coke, who gave him to Mr. Williams, of the St. James's Coffee House, who gave him to the Earl of Godolphin. The horse was thought only good enough for a 'Teazer,' but he accidentally got 'Lath' out of 'Roxana,' who proved one of the most celebrated horses of his day. Thus, one good sire is answerable for much in future generations, for when it is borne in mind that a stallion can beget fifty foals in a year, or even considerably more, in ten years' service his produce, good

or bad, amounts to many hundreds. Judgment in the selection of mares has of course much to do with success, and Mr. Somerville Tattersall has, in his very interesting article in the 'Badminton Magazine,' on 'Recollections of Racehorses,' shown how the late Duke of Westminster, in the space of twenty-three years, bred five such animals as 'Bend Or,' 'Ormonde,' 'Orme,' 'Flying Fox,' and 'Sceptre,' all traced back to one horse, 'Doncaster.'

A recent Indian Stud Commission has recorded its opinion that the true and only tests of the well-bred horse are his performances on the racecourse and in the hunting-field. Formerly, the Royal Commission on Horse-breeding, in making their awards for premium stallions, did not take into account the racing careers of the horses exhibited, but now it is considered that if a horse has been through a course of training and remained sound, and shown merit in his performances, either in racing or in steeple-chasing, these facts should be made known to the judges. This arrangement was reported on at the show of 1905 as follows :

'The judges desire particularly to express their gratification that the Royal Commissioners have allowed the turf careers of the competing stallions to be somewhat taken into account when awarding the premiums. By this means, horses that probably from some natural defect of limb or temper, which effectually prevented their appearance on a racecourse, have been in some instances passed over in favour of others which have been able to bear the test of training. The judges did not consider it necessary that the horses competing should have actually won a race, but considered it much in their favour if they have been able to run respectably for a certain period.'

Before referring to the measures now being taken to fulfil these conditions in obtaining thoroughbred sires for India, it is perhaps desirable to very briefly describe the methods of the horse-breeding system in that country. There are about 300 'Imperial' stallions maintained, of which, approximately, 150

are Arabs, 90 to 100 English thoroughbreds, and the remainder Australians. There are also about 100 'Provincial' district pony stallions (mostly Arabs), and all these are utilised in the various circles, or districts, throughout the country. The number of mares served annually is between 11,000 and 12,000 for Imperial stallions, and about half that number for Provincial stallions. These mares being registered and branded as fit for the service of Government stallions, can obtain such service by their owners practically free. Their produce are purchased by the Remount Department between nine and eighteen months of age, and reared on the liberty system, in the several young stock depôts until of an age to be drafted into the Service, the best going to the British Cavalry, the next best to the Madras Cavalry (which is horsed by the State), and the remainder either sent to the Sillidar Cavalry or sold. The British mounted branches, Artillery and Cavalry, are mostly horsed with Australian, but some corps have the best of the country-bred remounts, and others Arabs, of which latter class the supply is small. The Sillidar Cavalry are mostly mounted on country-bred horses, bred under the system described, and these are purchased regimentally in the open market. Such is, briefly, the system which has been established with a view to making India self-supporting, *vice* the Government studs abolished on the penny wise pound foolish plan shortly after the Mutiny. The probability of its success or otherwise is another story, but at present it will perhaps suffice to describe the measures adopted for the importation of good thoroughbred blood from England, in place of large numbers of Norfolk trotter and hackney stallions, which for more than twenty-six years did 'incalculable harm.' The cross of this type of horse with the country-bred mares produced 'markedly inferior, ill-balanced and coarse stock,' with all the bad points of their sires in an intensified form, 'soft enlarged joints, straight and heavy shoulders, and generally coarse appearance.'

The natives in many parts of India display the greatest

enthusiasm in and love for horse-breeding, and the mares, when not too much stained by hackney blood, have been reported as excellent, and to compare in size and shape favourably with good show mares in England. Some of the pure native breeds are also very good, and endeavour is now being made to cherish and maintain them.

For a vast empire such as India, where mares exist of every kind and size, it would have appeared reasonable to obtain thoroughbred sires of various types, but the fact has been emphasised that a small horse of 15 to 15·2 hands is the only sort required. Horses of 15·3 and over have been described as 'altogether too large, however well bred,' and the animal wanted is required to have a girth of 72 inches, with 8 to 8½ inches shank. No doubt such a horse would prove a valuable sire, particularly for military purposes, anywhere, but he is more easily described than obtained, and, like the Dodo, must be almost extinct. The English thoroughbred is usually 15·3 and over, and even of this size it is quite exceptional to find one with 8 inches of bone measured according to Indian requirements, with the tape drawn tight 2 inches below the knee, off fore held up, and the weight thrown on the measured leg. Measurements are not much in vogue for the thoroughbred in England. Performances are rightly regarded as the true test of excellence, and few owners or trainers either care, or can tell, the *exact* measurements of their horses. Even for the stud, measurements are to a great extent delusive. A small horse may beget a large one and *vice versa*. The good shank measurement of one horse may be as nothing in comparison with the inferior measurement of another, who may have, however, bone and sinews like steel, which no amount of work will ever impair.

It is both interesting and instructive to watch our neighbours from across the Channel purchasing thoroughbred stock at Newmarket and elsewhere. The catalogue is, as a rule, their guide: pedigree and performances have more apparent weight than the appearance of the animal, and measurements I have

never seen resorted to. It is almost needless to say they make few mistakes and carry off our best. For their studs they pay their tens of thousands, in comparison with our few hundreds, with the result that their armies are well horsed, and they have adequate reserves for peace and war, instead of the hand to mouth system of supply for our comparatively small mounted forces. Even this system is likely to be seriously affected by the growth of mechanical transport, and at a recent influential meeting in London on the question of the national horse supply and the establishment of the Brood Mare Society, that growth was referred to as causing 'grave apprehension' to those responsible for the registration of horses for military purposes from amongst the great omnibus and road car societies.

The thoroughbred sires annually required for India are obtained wherever they are forthcoming of the description required, but as a rule some of the best are found in the northern counties and in Ireland. The yearly show of King's premium stallions at the Agricultural Hall, the Dublin show, and the sales of blood stock at Newmarket and Doncaster, produce many fine horses, though of course the best are far beyond the price allowed for India, which in no case exceeds the single service fees of our best English sires. Very much better horses could of course be obtained at a higher price, but it is doubtful whether it is worth while to waste very valuable stallion power on the miscellaneous district mares in India. Possibly, with the hoped-for re-establishment of the stud system at some of the remount depôts, as recommended by the late Indian Horse-breeding Commission, a more expensive and better class of sire may be advisable. For the present, however, sufficiently promising horses of the type described are, though with great difficulty, obtained. Delightful descriptions of 'just the horse for India' are abundantly forthcoming, but the promised 15.2 is generally found well over 15.3, and the 8-inch bone in nineteen cases out of twenty is found to be  $7\frac{1}{2}$  or less. As a matter of fact, the latter measurement is about the usual



one, even for some of our most celebrated horses on the turf, and a good leg of this size is much better than an inferior one which will rarely tape better.

There are two classes of horses from amongst which the thoroughbred sire has to be selected, viz. the young untried horse, and the one which has in some measure been distinguished on the turf, though possibly broken down in that career. On the whole the latter is the best, the horse being of course passed as free from all hereditary defects. In making selections, endeavour has been made to follow as much as possible the system in this respect adopted by General Sir John Watson, G.C.B., V.C., who for many years sent out many admirable thoroughbred stallions to India—some 220 in all. Amongst those exported during the last three years, not a few have had distinguished turf careers. Such winners as ‘Mambrino,’ ‘Kentish Glory,’ ‘Ashanti Gold,’ ‘Woodstock,’ ‘De Lacy,’ ‘Jennico,’ ‘Refractor’ (winner of the Royal Hunt Cup at Ascot), ‘Devil’s Dance,’ ‘King Bird,’ ‘Barrett Goddard,’ ‘Pellison’ (winner of two Liverpool Cups), ‘Selkirk,’ and ‘Cairn Hill,’ are noteworthy. Others meet the requirements of the Royal Commission referred to, some being reserve King’s premium stallions, or have been able ‘to run respectably for a certain period.’ Others again are distinguished through their sires, and, on the principle of ‘blood will tell,’ should do well for the breeds in India. A few of these sires are ‘Gallinule,’ ‘St. Frusquin,’ ‘St. Simon,’ ‘St. Serf,’ ‘Blairfinde,’ ‘Kendal,’ ‘Bend Or,’ ‘Chittabob,’ ‘Ladas,’ ‘Melton,’ ‘Merman,’ ‘Prisoner,’ ‘Pioneer,’ ‘Royal Meath,’ ‘Grey Leg,’ &c., mostly well up amongst the winning stallions of the day, and much in demand for breeding purposes. Their service fees are from 500 guineas downwards, and they may be said to be amongst the best horses in the world. The principle of obtaining good blood has been followed also with regard to Arabs, a few of which have been selected from Mr. Wilfrid Blunt’s stud in Sussex.

The horses are usually sent to India in October and January,

so as to arrive in the cold weather. From date of purchase to that of exportation they are regularly ridden, and usually embark in excellent condition. Casualties at sea are comparatively few, though pneumonia during heavy cold weather is always to be feared. It is to be hoped that the provision of these thoroughbred horses may in future years effect an improvement in the Indian horse-breeding system, and secure for our mounted branches good remounts.

That system is, like all others, capable of improvement. The real difficulty is to steer clear of the conflict of opinions which always surround the subject, and having found the true course to keep to it. For many years past voluminous reports have been written, and Commissions have assembled to map out plans for the future. In the consideration of these recommendations the hands of the clock have been put back five-and-twenty years, and very little that is new or better has been forthcoming than the suggestions made from time to time by the greatest living authority on this subject and many others—Lord Roberts.

### *THE USE OF SUGAR AS A FOOD FOR ANIMALS*

The following extracts from an article by Colonel Nunn, D.S.O., which appeared in the 'Veterinary Journal,' show the value of sugar as a sustaining food for horses. Its possibilities for long-distance work are indicated in the reports of its use in the Continental long-distance 'rides.'

IN Great Britain the use of sugar products for feeding animals is in its infancy, although there is no doubt that it is increasing in favour with stock and horse owners; but on the Continent it is a recognised article, and is widely employed not only for cattle and cart-horses, but for animals doing quick work.

There are several by-products from the manufacture of sugar, both cane and beetroot, but the one that is used for the feeding of animals is molasses, the composition of each sort varying slightly, according to the process of manufacture.

\* \* \* \* \*

In Southern Russia and other parts of the world they dissolve the raw molasses in warm water, in the proportion of one to two or three parts, and sprinkle over the food.

In order to avoid the necessity of having to boil water, the West Indian plan has been advocated by Professor Holbrung, of putting a bag full of molasses into a tub of water overnight and then damping the food with the mixture in the morning.

In the Department of the Pas de Calais and other parts of the North of France, molasses dissolved in water is given to animals to drink, which in most cases they will do readily, but some refuse it at first and have to be taught to take it; in any case, it is necessary to give a diluted solution at first and gradually to increase the strength.

All these methods of feeding molasses, however, are inconvenient, and could only be employed in the immediate vicinity of the factory where it was produced. As the difficulty of handling and properly apportioning it practically prohibited its use amongst large studs of horses, a matrix was sought for that would absorb it and allow of its being transported and handled. Different materials have been tried as absorbents, for example, brewers' grain, bran, palmkernel meal, sawdust, bagasse (pith of the sugar cane), but notwithstanding their own feeding value, the mixtures have all the disadvantages of molasses, as the noxious properties of the potash salts have not been counteracted.

A suitable absorbent has been discovered in a special kind of peat moss, consisting of sphagnum moss in its first state of humification. The material shows distinctly the structure of the living moss, and contains amongst other substances a large proportion of humic acid, which, although by itself of no value as a feeding material, has in combination with molasses specially valuable properties, both dietetic and therapeutic.

\* \* \* \* \*

A number of most careful observations have been made on the Continent as to the value of molasses as a food for animals, and as they are very complete and have been conducted by experts, they are of extreme value. These experiments have been made on every class of horse, as, contrary to the accepted view in England, not only is sugar of use for cart-horses moving at a slow pace with heavy loads, but for light ones doing severe and prolonged work, and from which great exertions are required. One of the most important observations was made in 1902 by M. Lavalard, Veterinary Surgeon to the Paris General Omnibus Company, who have a stud of 15,000 horses, and the results of which are so conclusive that they had better be given in his own words:

'In May and June, 1901, on account of the dearness of all sorts of grain, a number of trials of different sorts of molasses foods were made, but on account of the then high price and the

uncertainty of the results the project turned out a failure. At this juncture the success with which a compound of molasses and sphagnum peat moss, termed "Molassine Meal," had been used in the German, Austrian, and Russian armies was brought to our notice by Dr. Schwartz, and it was decided to give it a trial. It contains thirty-seven to forty per cent. of sugar, and is composed of eighty to eighty-six per cent. of molasses, with fourteen to twenty per cent. of peat moss.

'On July 7, 1901, the trial commenced with twenty-four horses that were given half a kilogramme, replacing an equal quantity of grain; it was afterwards increased to one kilogramme and subsequently to one and a half. The horses at once ate it and liked it, and on this account the quantity was increased.

'Gradually the whole of the company's horses, 15,000 in number, were getting 2 to 4 lbs. There has been a surprising decrease in the number of cases of colic, and since its use there has not been a single one of diarrhoea. The way in which a kilogramme of molassine meal replaced an equal quantity of mixed grain, "oats, maize, and beans," was most remarkable, and it was most striking the way in which the whole of the food was picked up, the mangers being quite cleared out, which under the former system seldom happened.'

It has been affirmed that sugar in any form provokes thirst, and horses fed on it drink excessively. In some experiments published in the *Temps* of July 12, 1901, on feeding with sugar, by M. Grandeau, he particularly notices this, and says: 'The quantity of water consumed daily was roughly about three litres per kilogramme of dry food in the ration, which is, if anything, less than the quantity drunk by horses that are getting ordinary food without sugar, and, contrary to the accepted opinion, even a considerable quantity does not provoke thirst in the horse.'

\* \* \* \* \*

Some information on the value of sugar can be gathered from the published accounts of the long-distance military rides that are held in Continental armies.

*Brussels to Ostend.*—This ride, which took place on August 27, 1904, was organised by the Belgian military authorities, the distance being 182 kilometres. There were 141 entries, thirty-seven being thoroughbred horses. Sugar had been given to some while training, but in such small quantities that its effects were *nil*. An exception must be made as regards Lieut. Deremetz, of the 8th French Hussars, who was second, and who during the ride not only gave sugar to his horse but took it himself, but unfortunately the amount was not recorded. During training, however, the horse had 1 kilogramme of molasses daily.

*Sedan to Brussels and back.*—In this ride Lieut. Bausil, of the 28th French Dragoons, and a non-commissioned officer of his regiment, on two of his horses, covered 400 kilometres in forty hours forty-five minutes, and forty-seven hours forty minutes respectively, over rough, bad ground. While training, both horses had daily a kilogramme of molasses, representing 450 grammes of sugar. At each halt the horses had a bucket full of warm water and sugar (1 litre of water to 1 kilogramme of sugar) and a small quantity of oats and hay; but as the whole was not taken it is calculated that only 300 to 400 grammes of sugar were taken at each stopping-place, of which there were six. In spite of the long distance and hard roads, both horses returned as fresh as they started.

*Paris to Deauville.*—This is the most interesting ride that has been yet accomplished, as M. Grandeau has published a detailed scientific account. For this competition there were forty-four entries and thirty-two starters. The distance was divided into two stages. The first from Paris to Rouen, 180 kilometres, the second Rouen to Deauville, 80 kilometres; the object of the ride being to prove if the horses that covered the first at a pace of about 10 kilometres an hour could, after a rest of fifteen to twenty hours, complete the journey at a gallop. The shortest time that the first stage was completed in was thirteen hours, the longest fifteen hours. One of the competitors was Lieut. Bausil, who has published a pamphlet on the subject

(‘Paris, Rouen, and Deauville.’ Sylva & Leclere, Paris), and gives his experiences. For the last eight days before the ride his horse, in addition to his ration, which consisted of oats 9 to 10 kilogrammes, hay 2 to  $2\frac{1}{2}$  kilogrammes, had 3 kilogrammes of pure crystallised sugar. Part of this was given in the drinking water and part mixed in with the food.

On the day of the ride at mid-day he had  $2\frac{1}{2}$  kilogrammes of sugar, and at five o’clock, two hours before starting, half a kilogramme dissolved in 5 litres of water. At Mantes, 57 kilometres from Paris, he had 200 grammes of sugar in 2 litres of water, and 37 kilometres further on, in addition to 3 or 4 litres of oats, half a kilogramme of sugar in 5 litres of water, making 700 grammes altogether since starting. At Rouen he took 300 grammes in 3 litres of water at once, ate a little hay, and then had a similar drink. He was examined by the official veterinary surgeon, and found to be in perfect health and condition. The rest at Rouen was  $10\frac{1}{2}$  hours, and at 4.30 A.M., in addition to his ordinary food, he had 2 kilogrammes 100 grammes of sugar in his drinking water.

In the galloping part of the course from Rouen to Deauville, two hours before starting the horse had 300 grammes of sugar in 3 litres of water. The first stop was 22 kilometres from Rouen—time, one hour eighteen minutes; he then had 100 grammes in 1 litre of water.

The second halt was 53 kilometres from Rouen—time, two hours five minutes; he had 300 grammes in 3 litres water. Third halt, 63 kilometres from Rouen—time, three and a half hours; 400 grammes sugar in 4 litres water.

On arrival at Deauville he had, as at Rouen, 600 grammes of sugar in 6 litres of water, divided into two portions, and during the day 2 kilogrammes 400 grammes in his feed.

According to this, during the two days the ride lasted, Lieut. Bausil’s horse each day had 2 kilogrammes of sugar, 300 grammes before starting and 600 after arriving, and on the road, in addition to the daily ration of 3 kilogrammes, 700 grammes the

first and 800 grammes the second day, or, in all,  $13\frac{1}{2}$  kilogrammes in sixty hours.

Lieut. Bausil came in first from Rouen to Deauville in four hours fourteen minutes forty-five seconds, and the third competitor, who also had given his horse sugar, in four hours eighteen minutes two seconds. The winner attributes much of his success to the use of the sugar, and furthermore mentions that it diminished instead of provoking thirst. It is, however, necessary to teach horses to drink sugar and water; some will refuse it for a long time, although they will readily take it when mixed with the food or in lumps out of the hand, and when undergoing violent exertion it is best to give it dissolved in water, as it is more quickly absorbed into the system.

These experiences are very interesting and valuable. Especially Lieut. Bausil's opinion has to be appreciated, as he gives a minute report of his two rides covering 400 kilometres in forty hours forty-five minutes, and 80 kilometres in four hours fourteen minutes forty-five seconds.

Sugar has been proved here to be a first-class means to make horses fit for hard work, but great care has to be taken, and Lieut. Bausil states that the salts of potash contained in molasses act as purgatives and diuretics, and from this cause some years ago he had an accident with one of his own thoroughbred mares.

\* \* \* \* \*

Some very valuable reports have been given as to the use of molassine meal with Service horses in our Army. But in the English Mounted Service, 'sugar' of any sort is only looked upon as a fattener.

On the Continent, however, a different system exists, and in the German Army molassine meal has been regularly used as a ration for a long time past.



## THE ROYAL NAVAL AND MILITARY TOURNAMENT

Alteration of Place for holding Tournament—Revision of Rules and Regulations—Mounted Combats—Sword v. Sword—Sword v. Lance—Explanation of Rules—Hints to Judges and Competitors—Heads and Posts—Plan of Course.

THIS is the twenty-seventh year of the above Tournament, and a change of venue has been decided on, from the Royal Agricultural Hall, Islington, to Olympia, which is in a more accessible situation. We sincerely trust that the forthcoming Tournament, which is to be held from Thursday, May 17, to Saturday, June 2, will prove a brilliant success, not only from a popular spectacular point of view, but financially, in order that the Naval and Military charities selected may be substantially benefited thereby.

The Rules and Regulations have been revised, and we think it may be of interest to the Mounted Forces of the Empire to give a résumé of the more important alterations affecting them.

### MOUNTED COMBATS

#### SWORD v. SWORD AND SWORD v. LANCE

*Practice Sabres will be used instead of Single Sticks in these Combats*

1. COMMENCEMENT OF BOUT.—Mounted combatants, on entering the arena, will take post facing each other, each with his horse's croup against the opposite barrier. They will receive the word '*Attack.*' No further word will be given, and the bout will then commence and will continue until a hit is made, or until stopped by a Judge. (It must cease when a combatant is hit, whether the hit is valid or not.)

2. After a hit, whether valid to count or not, the combatants will come to the 'Carry' and remain where they are. When the Judges have given their decision the combatants will, if necessary, be told to 'Separate' or 'Rein back,' and when out of distance will re-commence fighting on the word '*Attack.*'

## THE NAVAL AND MILITARY TOURNAMENT 219

3. **TARGET.**—All parts of the head, arms, and body above the hips are included in the 'Target,' with the exception of the hands below the wrists.

4. **SCORING AND TIME LIMIT.**—When a combatant receives a hit on the target, marks are scored *against him*. Each bout shall last 3 minutes (ordinary stoppages included), or until 12 marks have been scored against one of the competitors. The time will be taken from the first order to 'Attack,' and the three minutes' limit must not be exceeded.

5. In the event of an equality of marks at the end of the time limit of the bout, the Judges shall award the bout in favour of one or other of the combatants, deciding in favour of the one who forces the fighting, attacks most frequently, and makes the best use of his horse and the point of his weapon.

6. **HITS AND MARKS.** Hits in *Sword v. Sword*.—*Thrusts* with the point of the sword anywhere on the target count 4 marks. *Cuts* on either arm from shoulder to wrist count 2 marks. *Cuts* on any part of the target other than the arms count 1 mark.

7. Hits in *Sword v. Lance*.—*Thrusts* and *Cuts* with the sword count as in Rule 6. *Thrusts* with the point of the lance anywhere on the target count 4 marks. *Thrusts* with the *butt* of the lance anywhere on the target count 1 mark.

An original attack with the lance *must* be made with the *point* and not with the *butt*, or the resulting hit will not be scored.

8. **DOUBLE HITS** will be judged in accordance with General Rule VI., and should invariably be scored in favour of the combatant who makes the attack, or, in the event of the original attack being parried, in favour of the combatant who (having parried the attack) hits his opponent with a 'return' (riposte).

9. **CHOICE OF WEAPONS.**—In *Sword v. Lance* each competitor will fight half the number of his bouts with the *Sword* and half the number with the *Lance*. The method of arranging this is shown below.

10. 'ACKNOWLEDGMENT,' &c.—Hits should be 'acknowledged' in accordance with the General Rule VI. by the one who is hit immediately ceasing fighting, 'Carrying' his weapon, and at the same time calling out loudly, '*Hit on head*,' '*Hit on arm*,' '*Hit low*,' &c., &c.

(N.B.—The proper enforcement of this rule is in the hands of the Judges, who should insist on all hits being properly acknowledged in this manner and in the spirit in which it is intended.)

Should a combatant fail to 'acknowledge,' the Judges shall stop the fight and give their decision, and the offender may be 'cautioned,' or dealt with under Rule 20 below.

11. **PENALTIES, &c.**—A competitor *deliberately* hitting his opponent twice in succession without stopping the fighting *may* have 4 marks scored against him or be disqualified, at the discretion of the Judges.

12. If a competitor is unhorsed, 4 marks *shall* be scored against him, but his adversary must not wilfully strike him while unhorsed, under penalty of disqualification; if, however, the fall is obviously due to bad riding, the Judges *may* award the bout against him.

13. A competitor shouting (except when acknowledging a hit), striking, or touching with his weapon (accidentally or otherwise) his own or opponent's

horse, or striking his opponent below the waist, *may* have 4 marks scored against him or *may be disqualified*.

14. The pace of mounted combatants need not be limited; on the contrary, a good fast pace should be encouraged, but charging to upset, or in a dangerous manner, is not allowed.

15. The Referee has full power of disqualification, with or without 'caution, for dangerous practices, or failure to comply with the letter or spirit of the rules or with his instructions.

16. There is no objection to a competitor waving his weapon in front of a horse's face, but should he in so doing touch his opponent's horse he *shall* have 4 marks scored against him.

17. A competitor who goes out of bounds *may* have 4 marks scored against him.

18. A competitor who loses his weapon *shall* have 4 marks scored against him, but if a weapon becomes entangled in a horse's reins it may be dropped, to avoid accident, without penalty.

19. A competitor *deliberately* delaying or avoiding the fighting may have the bout given against him, even though he may have scored the most points against his adversary.

20. A combatant who fails to 'acknowledge' when he is hit *may* have 4 marks scored against him, or *may* be disqualified for a second offence should the Judges be of opinion that he has *wilfully* refrained from acknowledging.

21. The use of chalk on lances is most misleading, and is therefore not allowed.

22. In addition to the above, the rules laid down in General Rule VI. also apply to mounted combats.

#### EXPLANATION OF RULES FOR MOUNTED COMBATS AND HINTS TO JUDGES AND COMPETITORS

The rules for mounted combats have been drawn up with the object of encouraging men to fight on horseback in a practical manner, that is to say, in a manner suited to the conditions under which a mounted swordsman or lancer armed with a sharp weapon is likely to obtain the best results in warfare.

The following objects have therefore been kept in view, and will, it is hoped, be obtained if the rules are strictly enforced.

(i) To encourage the use of the *point* of both sword and lance, particularly in making the initial attack.

(ii) To encourage a man to *attack*, and to attack quickly, and with vigour and determination.

(iii) To prevent a man from 'countering,' or rather trying to 'time' his adversary, without attempting to parry the moment he (the adversary) attacks; which practice would, when real weapons are used, result in both combatants being wounded.

(iv) To stop the practice, which has been common in former years, of both combatants striking wildly at each other several times in rapid succession without any attempt at parrying or skill in swordsmanship. This

practice would be quite impossible with real weapons, and, if allowed to continue, gives a very false idea of swordsmanship.

(v) To impress upon the combatants that next in importance to *attacking* is the *parry* followed by a rapid 'return.'

(vi) To encourage good horsemanship and the skilful use of the horse.

The rule as to a combatant 'acknowledging' when he is hit has not been made merely with the object of assisting the Judges (the Judges must keep their attention so fixed on the combat that they are also able to see the hits for themselves, and judge as to their validity, &c.); but the 'acknowledgment' is intended to take the place of the actual *wound* which would be received by a sharp weapon, and which would probably incapacitate the receiver from continuing the fight, at any rate for the time being. It is therefore unreasonable to allow a man who receives a hit, which represents a wound, to ignore it altogether and continue the fight as if nothing had happened. Such a thing can only be done when singlesticks or practice sabres are used, but would be quite impossible with sharp weapons. All hits, however slight, and wherever received, should therefore be 'acknowledged,' and the Judges should decide if they are to count or not.

In arranging the pools for Sword *v.* Lance the first pair only should toss for choice of weapons, and the Score Sheet should be marked S. and L. alternately against each man's name, and the combatants must use the weapons indicated by the letters S. and L. in the various fights.

## MOUNTED COMPETITIONS

### TENT-PEGGING

1. Turf will be used for holding the pegs. The dimensions of the peg will be: Length, 12 inches (subject to nature of ground); width, 3 inches; length above ground, 6 inches.

2. The horse must be at full speed when the peg is struck or taken. The horse is not to be struck with lance to increase the speed.

3. The lance must be of the regulation length and pattern.

4. The peg must be carried a distance of 20 yards, or a 'take' cannot be claimed.

5. If a competitor breaks his lance, leaving the head in the peg, he may be allowed another run at the discretion of the Judges.

6. Marks as follows: Strike, 2; move, 4; take, 6; style, 4. Judges may cancel a score or deduct points, at their discretion, if pace is insufficient.

7. Marks for style will only be awarded if a peg is 'taken' and if the pace is considered sufficient.

8. Two runs.

9. After two or more competitors have each taken 4 pegs, and the award of style marks does not suffice to separate them, half pegs (width  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches, thickness 2 inches) will be used. Care must be taken that the *width* (viz. the  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inch side) is presented to the lance; the thickness of the half peg is made as much as 2 inches so as to ensure a *take* and not a *split* when the peg is properly struck.

NOTE.—The following memoranda for conducting Tent-pegging are printed here for the information of competitors. These rules were originally intended

for Bengal Cavalry, as a substitute, for the most part, for any regular system of equitation, to give the men confidence, a **FIRM SEAT**, and correct hand and eye. One great essential in this performance is **STYLE** :—

‘The seat from the hips downwards should be immovable, the body from the hips upwards bent well down to the right, rather than forward, its sway being well supported by the left leg, the handling of the lance easy and free from stiffness, the right arm slightly bent, the hand just in front of the instep, the back of the hand inclined downwards, and the thumb along the lance, the lance to be kept close to the ground. Any jobbing at the peg, striking it with the lance sloping from above downwards, or lengthening of the lance beyond the balance must be avoided. A firm seat is indispensable for good tent-pegging. Riding at the peg in an upright posture is not tent-pegging.’

#### LEMON CUTTING

1. The lemons will be placed on the running track on gallows, each lemon the height of 7 feet. The gallows to be 15 yards apart. For the first lemon, a forward cut to the right must be used; for the second, a backward cut to the right; the sword must be carried at the ‘right engage’ (arm straight and sword pointing in direction of the lemon) up to a point 15 yards short of the first lemon. The horse is not to be struck with the sword.

2. The regimental pattern sword to be used by each competitor.

3. The horse must be at full speed when the cuts are made.

4. Marks: each lemon, 3; style, 4.

5. Judges may cancel a score or deduct points, at their discretion, if pace is insufficient.

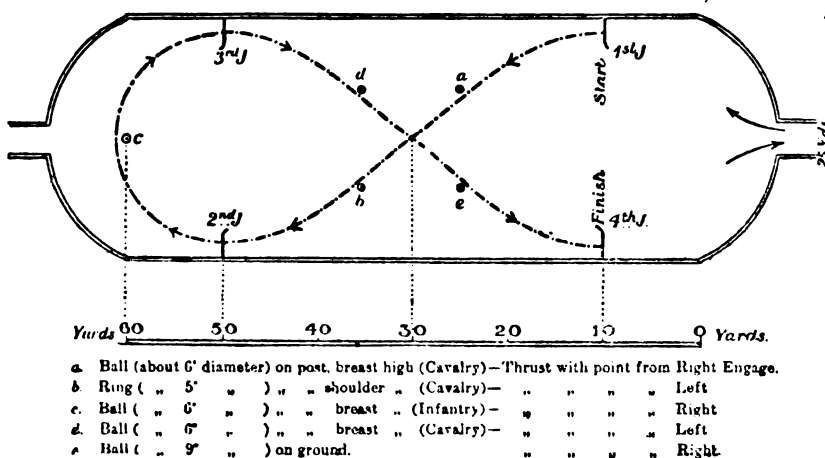
6. Marks for style will only be awarded if both lemons are cut and if the pace is considered sufficient.

7. Two runs.

#### HEADS AND POSTS

##### PLAN OF COURSE.

The points a, b, d, and e, are at the four corners of a square of which the sides are 10 yards long.



## THE NAVAL AND MILITARY TOURNAMENT 223

1. Swords to be sloped over the jumps. After each JUMP or THRUST the sword will be brought to the 'Right (or Left) Engage' (arm straight and sword pointing in direction of the object) ready for the next THRUST.

2. The pace to be at a fair speed. Not more than 25 seconds. One mark will be deducted for every second over time.

3. The time will be taken from the moment the horse TAKES OFF for the first jump to the moment he LANDS after the last jump.

4. The ring must be taken on the sword and then dropped, NOT FLUNG OFF.

5. Marks : 1 mark for each THRUST or JUMP ; style, 4.

6. Marks for style will only be awarded when the course has been completed within the time limit ; but to obtain style marks it is not necessary that full marks should have been obtained for JUMPS and THRUSTS. In awarding style marks practical horsemanship, correct bending, and the practical handling of the sword will be considered and NOT fancy display.

7. Two runs.

N.B.—Pending the introduction of new regulations on the subject, the following method of delivering the THRUST is recommended : Keeping the forearm and sword in one straight line, draw back the sword a few inches by bending the elbow, and immediately, and *without pausing with the arm bent*, straighten the arm with great rapidity to its full extent, inclining the body well forward from the waist in doing so and keeping the seat firm.

### *THE THORNEYCROFT RIFLE*

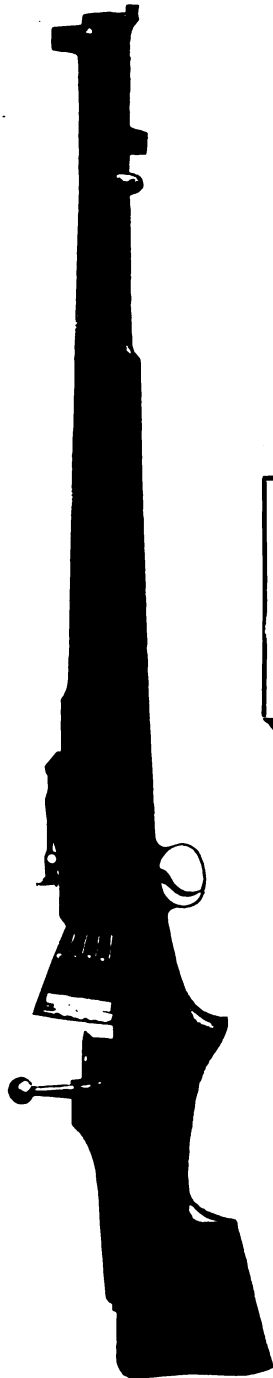
This weapon is not shortened by cutting off from the barrel—It has a good sight radius, with aperture back sight—Is strong and handy.

THE Thorneycroft Rifle has been designed for the purpose of providing Mounted Troops with a magazine rifle short enough and light enough to be carried conveniently on horseback, without sacrificing the efficiency of the weapon by shortening the barrel and reducing the sight radius.

This has been accomplished by placing the trigger in front of the magazine, which is contained in the stock, and providing a front locking rotatable bolt head carried on a flat slide. Thus  $5\frac{1}{2}$  inches of the length occupied by the magazine and bolt of a Lee-Enfield Rifle is saved, a sight radius of  $29\frac{1}{2}$  inches (against 23 inches of the long Lee-Enfield) is obtained, and the rear end of the barrel is brought sufficiently near the eye to enable an aperture back-sight to be used instead of the open V.

The barrel is the service L.-E. barrel taking the .303 service cartridge.

The body and magazine are in one, and are screwed on to the barrel. There is no round bolt guide as in the L.-E., and the body, which is cut away down to the top of the magazine just below the level of the bore of the barrel, is provided with a groove or slot on each side, in which the bolt slides backwards and forwards. The bolt is composed of a flat slide and a rotatable bolt head which carries three locking lugs. These lugs fit into corresponding recesses provided in the body and situated immediately in rear of the barrel. The striker pin is carried in the slide and passes through the rotatable bolt head. It is struck



Breech open with Charger in position  
for loading.

The  
Thornewcroft  
Rifle.



Breech closed.



Digitized by Google

by a hammer actuated by a simple spring, as in a shot gun. The hammer spring and sear are attached to the body in rear of the magazine. The trigger is in front of the magazine and is connected with the sear by a rod.

The magazine holds five cartridges, and is loaded by means of a charger which differs very slightly from the service pattern in use with the short L.-E. There is no separate charger guide, and the charger falls away as soon as the cartridges have been pressed into the magazine.

The barrel is completely sheathed in wood as in the short L.-E.

The principal advantages claimed for the Thorneycroft over the short L.-E. are :

1. When fitted with a full-length (30-inch) L.-E. barrel, the Thorneycroft is  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch shorter than the short L.-E. With the short L.-E. barrel the Thorneycroft is  $5\frac{1}{2}$  inches shorter than the short L.-E. rifle.

2. The locking lugs are on the front end of the bolt, immediately behind the cartridge.

3. Greater sight radius.

4. It is lighter, better balanced, and has a longer bayonet reach.

5. It can be loaded more rapidly.

	Thorneycroft		Short L.-E. Service
Length of barrel . . .	$30\frac{1}{2}$ inches	25 inches	25 inches
Weight of rifle . . .	8 lbs. 2 ozs.	7 lbs. 8 ozs.	8 lbs 2 ozs.
Length of rifle . . .	44 inches	39 inches	$44\frac{1}{2}$ inches
Distance between sights . .	$29\frac{1}{2}$ inches	$24\frac{1}{2}$ inches	$19\frac{1}{2}$ inches

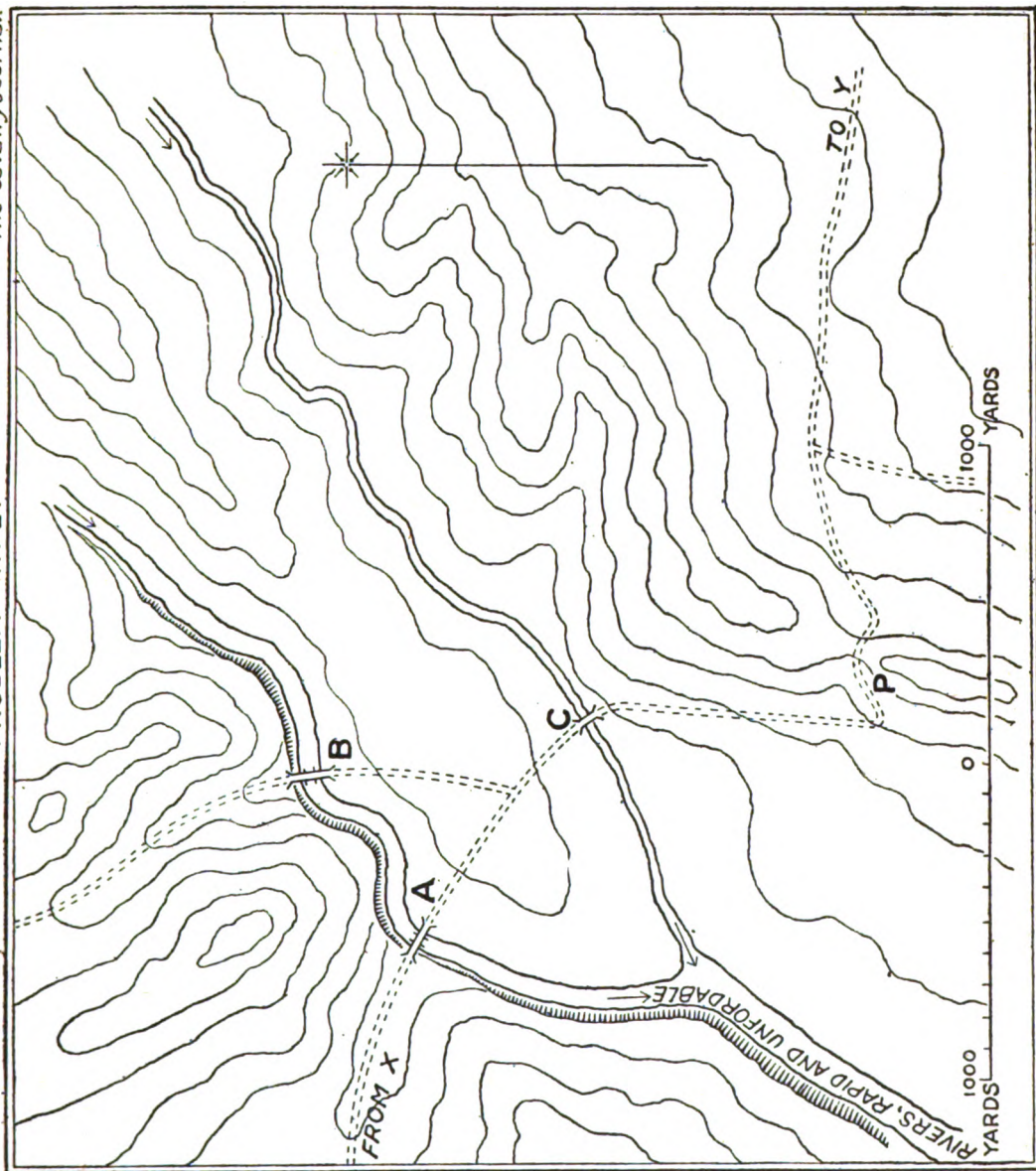
## PROBLEM NO. 2

(By the Author of 'Bonnie Bertie, or the Blue-eyed Bombardier')



WITH the usual military precision Lieutenant Sherlock Crichton clicked his heels together and saluted. As he strode away from his Commanding Officer over the rocky ground there was a dogged look on his clear-cut young face, not quite a 'do or die' expression, but rather a 'do and don't die' air, for Sherlock knew a thing or two, or, as his friend the French Military Attaché had but recently put it, after fondly kissing him adieu on both cheeks, *il n'y avait pas de mouches sur lui*.

Twenty minutes earlier he had been an insouciant youngster full of the *joie de vivre*—the life of the small circle of cornets round the fire, 'Sherlie' to this one, 'Holmes' to that, 'Pussie' to a third. Now, as he strode along (he never walked) with a lilting step and that easy swing from the hips which, as we know so well, betokens immense physical strength, he was another man. Not much 'Pussie' about him now, but very



much Lieut. Crichton of the Royal Slashers—at your service, for his Colonel had selected him for a special job.

It did not take many strides for the clean-limbed youngster to reach his faithful men. A few short-sharp words given in a tone of command that made the welkin ring, and after as many minutes, a little party of twenty mounted men might have been seen leaving the halting-place and wending their way northwards, our *beau sabreur* leading.

Whilst they are receding in the distance, let us see what the job was.

Crichton's regiment formed part of a force of Cavalry making a raid to cut the enemy's communications. This was being done on a definite scheme, in order to hamper the enemy's probable reply to a move of the main British force, which was just about to be executed. The raiders had come fast and far and had already done much damage, for their dash had been so rapid and in so unexpected a quarter as to have been an entire surprise to the enemy. They had now made a short halt preparatory to returning by another road. Parties had been detached, who were still out, to cut the enemy's communications in different directions, with orders to rejoin the main body of raiders on their homeward journey. Scarce had the tired force halted, and Sherlock been for one brief hour the life of the other cornets at the camp fire, when he had been taken aside by his Commanding Officer.

'Look here, my boy,' said the grizzled veteran, 'I see there is a road or track leadin' west and east from X to Y which must cross the river about fifteen miles north of this.' Crichton, who had whipped out his map, nodded. 'I don't know whether the crossin' is by a bridge or a ford, the map's too small to show, but this road may be useful to the enemy in their probable move. All the other crossin's have been fixed up, and we cannot afford to risk leavin' one open here. Jones's party is out on the north-west, and the mounted Sappers are all out on the State railway chawin' that up. That leaves only the Pioneers of two

squadrons. You must take these with all their explosives, and a few men, find the crossin' and spoil it as well as you can, at least enough to delay the passage of guns and mounted men for two or three days. Do not stop to fight, your force is much too small, but as soon as you have destroyed the bridge, follow us south-east to Z. If you get into a mess you must get out of it as best you can; I cannot stop to help you. Any way, the destruction of that crossin' is worth more to the Army than all your skins. See your way on the map?' Crichton again nodded. 'You follow this track which enters the hilly country some twelve miles north of this, and leads you to the place.' 'Very good, sir. I'll take the Pioneers and ten men, and start at once; that bridge shall be cut!'

'Yes, you must get there before dark.'

Deserted, rugged country; a mountain road; two rivers meeting in the valley below, spanned by *three* bridges; not a soul in sight.

As the afternoon shadows are creeping slowly across the valley, a few mounted men appear toiling up the hills on the east of the river, a man here and there wherever the rough ground allows of advance. One horseman, who has advanced on the road itself, halts just over the neck of the hill as he first catches a glimpse of the lovely panorama spread at his feet; halts suddenly as if struck by a blow (see point P). It is easy to tell that he is the leader of our little band by the way he sits his horse and by his language, which no one but the senior of a party would have dared to use. Shading his eyes, he gazes down into the valley below, then raises his field glasses for a long stare. He is certainly much perplexed, for his young face is puckered into a frown as he gnaws at his blonde moustache.

'It must be a mirage; there cannot be *three* bridges!' But it is no mirage, as he evidently decides very shortly, for the gloom in his face deepens. Suddenly the tense look is relaxed

(much to the relief of the men within sight of him), and his features are illumined by a smile, a smile of marvellous sweetness. He has a clue ! He sees at a glance that he has about an hour's daylight, and there are no enemy in sight at present. He decides upon a line of action ; he will (after closer inspection) do his best !

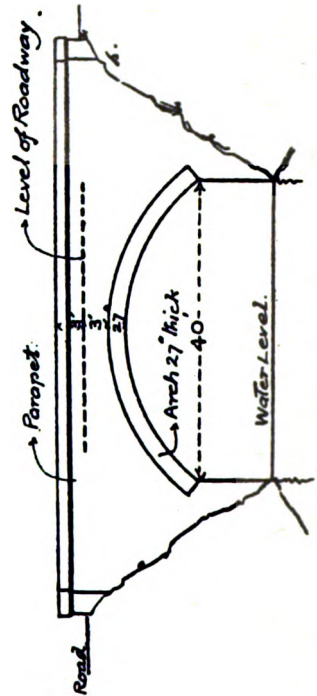
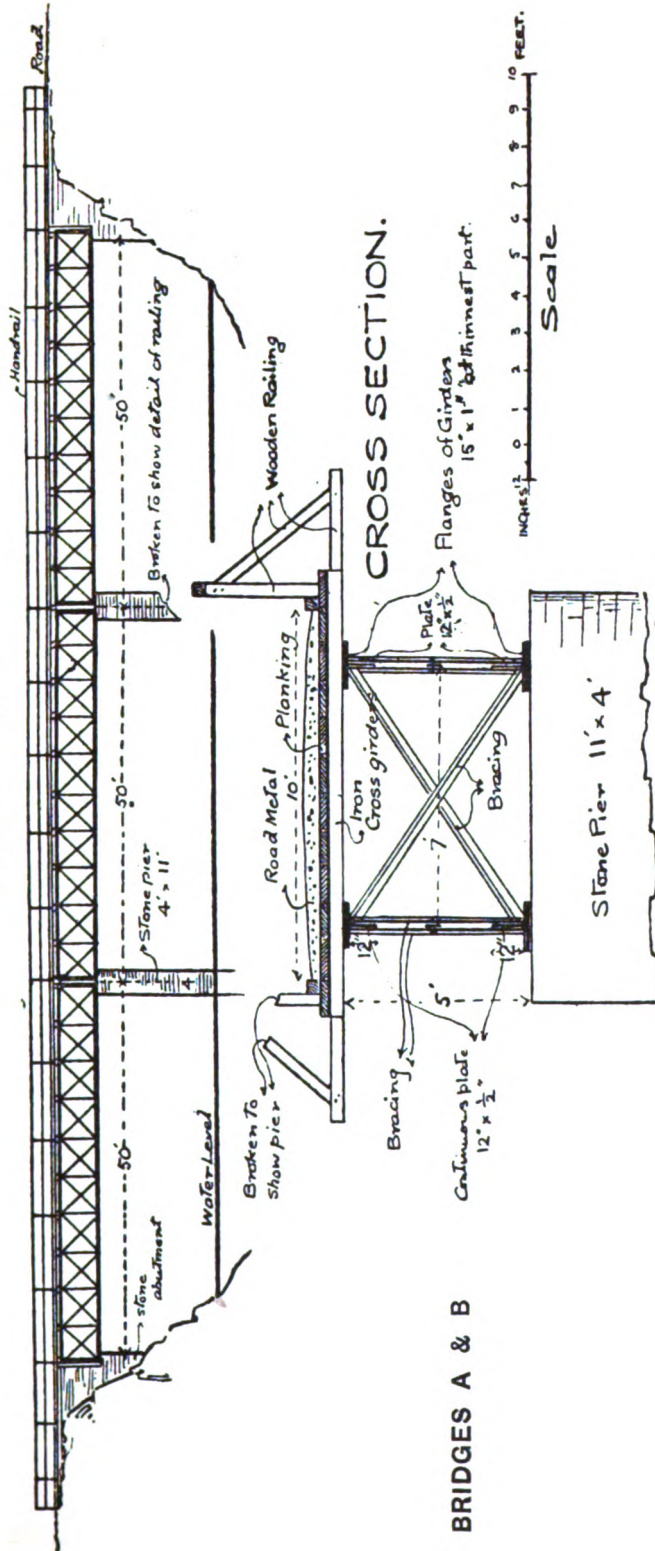
(The results of the inspection are shown in the sketches.)  
He does his best (a good best).

What did Crichton do ?

P.S.—I have omitted to mention that Sherlock was 'well-groomed,' which will materially assist in the solution of the problem, also, that the total amount of explosives he found available with *each* squadron besides the tools with the Pioneer equipment was :—12 lbs. of wet guncotton, 18 2-oz. dry primers, and 16 detonators with safety fuze attached.



## PROBLEM No. 2





PROBLEM NO. 2

OPEN to subaltern officers of the Mounted Forces of the British Empire (as published in CAVALRY JOURNAL, January 1906).

All solutions (which should be as concise as possible) must be attached to this page, with name, rank, and address of sender, and must reach

The EDITOR,

CAVALRY JOURNAL,

Royal United Service Institution,

Whitehall, London, S.W.

not later than August 15, 1906.

A prize of a hunting saddle will be given to the officer whose solution is considered the best.

The Editor's decision will be final.

*From*

*Name* .....

*Rank* ..... *Regt.* .....

*Address* .....

*Countersigned by* .....

*Date* .....

2008



1. General Tamura.
2. Chinese Cavalry Ponies in the Yamen Compound.
- 3 and 4. A Japanese Trooper.
5. A Chinese Mounted Orderly.
6. Colonel Koyke.



## NOTES

### PHOTOGRAPHS

THE six illustrations facing this page have kindly been 'communicated' by the General Staff, and should prove of considerable interest to our readers.

No. I. might almost pass for Sir John French, but is General Tamura, who commands a Japanese Cavalry brigade.

Nos. III. and IV. show a Japanese trooper in marching order ; on the off side, wallet, saddle-bag, canvas bucket, and shoe-case are carried ; on the near side, wallet, sword and saddle-bag. Picketing gear is carried in the saddle-bags. Cloak and saddle-cover on cantle of saddle.

No. V. a Chinese mounted orderly at the Ho-chien Fu manoeuvres, 1905.

No. VI. Colonel Koyke, a Cavalry commander, on an imported Austrian racehorse. Reputed to be the finest rider in the Japanese Army, was trained at Hanover, and lately commandant of the Cavalry school in Japan.

---

STATISTICS OF THE VETERINARY DEPARTMENT OF THE PRUSSIAN ARMY FOR THE YEAR 1904, BY COLONEL J. A. NUNN, C.I.E., D.S.O., F.R.C.V.S., F.R.S.E., PRINCIPAL VETERINARY OFFICER, SOUTH AFRICA.

The statistics are compiled from the official report published by Mittler & Sons, Berlin.

In the Prussian army, which comprises the 13th Wurtemberg corps, there were during the year under consideration 86,785

horses, out of which there were 32,918 cases of illness or 38 per cent. of the effective. The most unhealthy garrisons were Lübben, Rosenberg, Gleiwitz, Bischweiler, Morchingen, Demmin, and Dantzig.

The losses were 1,865, or 6 per cent. of the sick, and 2 per cent. of the total effective, viz. deaths 1,153, destroyed 358, cast out of the service 326. There were 23 cases of glanders and 3 of anthrax. Contagious pleuro-pneumonia was prevalent at Potsdam, Berlin, Metz, and Schmedt, 1,675 cases and 74 deaths.

Influenza furnished 1,367 cases with 13 deaths, 1 per cent. Under this heading is included a peculiar outbreak of paralysis that took place at Langfuhr-Dantzig—there were 486 cases and 7 deaths. The disease commenced with virulent inflammation of the upper air passages and all the usual symptoms of influenza, 'pink eye,' and ended by the hindquarters becoming partly paralysed.

Strangles 210 cases, 6 deaths; tetanus 63 cases, 45 deaths; colic 4,449 cases (13 per cent. of sick, 5 per cent. of effective) and 532 deaths (12 per cent.); wounds 4,339 cases; diseases of the feet 3,100 cases, of these 433 were laminitis, fever in the feet, 30 canker in the feet, and 4 quitter, a point that speaks volumes for the shoeing.

Fractures 613, of which 32 per cent. were cured. They were fractured pastern 106 cases, thigh 91, pelvis 58, back 57, skull 48.

Sprains of joints 2,314 cases, viz. 1,315 of the fetlock, 694 of the pastern, 103 of the shoulder, and 41 of the hip. Sprained tendons 2,904, spavins 279, tumours 54.

---

#### THE CANADIAN CAVALRY AT TRAINING

Our Sub-Editor from Canada writes as follows:—The training of the Canadian Cavalry for the year 1905 was the most satisfactory and complete that has taken place for many years. The percentage of trained men at the camps was much larger, no doubt owing to the new efficiency pay, which is a great

inducement for the men to continue their service. The officers and N.C.O.'s were better up in their work, and the men keen.

The 'Memorandum' for all camps of instruction was issued early in the year, and contained much valuable information. It was evidently studied by the officers very thoroughly before the training took place.

Although the actual training in the camps is limited to twelve days, good work was done by all ranks. Each regiment had received the elementary drill at local headquarters previous to going to camp.

According to the 'Syllabus' issued, a very great deal of work had to be crowded into the twelve days' training. It is, of course, a well-known fact that a Cavalryman cannot be made in a day. Then again the horse must be considered. In all probability the animal has never had the experience of being on the lines. In most cases the horse does not take kindly to the heel rope and shackle. Before the training is over both man and horse are well trained, especially so if a previous camp has been attended. It is hoped that the period of training at the camps of instruction will be extended to fifteen if not eighteen days, when far better results will, of course, be obtained.

The tactical work of the Cavalry at all the camps in 1905 was good throughout. The practice of the attack and defence of positions was carefully taught. The advance, rear and flank guard formations were frequently practised with good results. Outpost work was carried out both by day and night, reconnaissance and scouting practised, and this most important duty well performed.

Lectures were given by staff officers on the following subjects:—Orders, field messages, reports and sketching, information and reconnaissance, marches and protection. These lectures were attended by all officers with excellent results.

In the tactical field days, the Cavalry played a most conspicuous part and did good work, being employed on all duties

relating to the Cavalry branch of the service. In the 'Dismounted' service, the men took advantage of all available cover and the led horses were well placed. The rapid work of the Cavalry, exceptionally well led by their officers, in most cases decided the fortunes of the day.

The new system of having 'Field forges' attached to each regiment was an unqualified success.

The majority of horses taken to the camps in 1905 were very well fitted for the work required of them, and much above the average.

---

### THE JAPANESE CAVALRY

#### *Cavalry Brigades*

*Organisation.*—Organised in peace and war in two brigades of two regiments each ; each regiment consists of five squadrons in peace, in war the fifth squadron forms a depôt for training recruits and remounts.

The squadron system is thoroughly carried out in theory and practice.

#### *Divisional Cavalry*

In addition to the Cavalry brigades each division has one regiment of three squadrons as divisional Cavalry.

*Personnel.*—Officers and men are selected from the cadets and conscripts of the year, of the greatest intelligence and most suitable physique.

Service in the ranks is for three years. Officers as a whole are young, colonels of regiments being still active men in the prime of life. Private means are no more necessary in the Cavalry than in other arms, all necessary extra expenses being paid by the Government.

*Horses.*—The Cavalry were mounted in the war chiefly on ponies, ill-shaped but very enduring. Much is now being done to improve the Japanese horse.

*Arms.*—Sword, slightly curved, thirty-six inches in length. Carbine, carried slung across the back, which was found unsatisfactory in the war, as it unduly tired the men. The Cavalryman carries 150 rounds of ammunition into action.

Lances are not used except by the Guard divisional Cavalry for ceremonial purposes.

*Saddles.*—The saddle is rather heavy, but of excellent material, detachable stuffed panels, no burrs in front, and short fantails. String girths, and as a rule no crupper or breastplate.

The kit is carried in roomy wallets and easily detachable saddle-bags.

Two blankets under the saddle, one for the man and one for the horse.

Cloak rolled and strapped behind the saddle.

---

#### IMPERIAL YEOMANRY

The 'Imperial Yeomanry (in Great Britain and Ireland) Training Return, 1905,' shows that the enrolled strength last year was 25,341 of all ranks on an establishment of 27,638, leaving 2,297 wanting to complete. There were present at the training (date of inspection) 23,036 of all ranks, 1,948 were absent with leave, and 357 without leave. There were 21,781 horses, of which 10,754 belonged to the yeomen or their relatives and 550 to the Government, and 10,427 were hired. The strongest corps in the force is Lovat's Scouts, with an enrolled strength of 1,071, 104 over the establishment, while the Scottish Horse comes next with 935, or 82 under the establishment. The establishment of one of the Irish corps is complete, and the other needs only 20 of all ranks.

---

#### APPOINTMENT OF PERMANENT STAFF

The power of appointing non-commissioned officers to the permanent staff of Imperial Yeomanry is now vested in the



officers in charge of Cavalry records, subject to the instructions laid down in King's Regulations.

For the purpose of obtaining their permanent staff, the Imperial Yeomanry is divided between the Dragoons and Lancers and Hussars respectively, as shown in the annexed table. Non-commissioned officers of the 1st Life Guards and Royal Horse Guards are placed on the same roll as Dragoons and Lancers, and those of the 2nd Life Guards on the same roll as Hussars. The officers commanding regiments of Household Cavalry register the names of their non-commissioned officers with the officer in charge of records concerned.

Imperial Yeomanry Regiments affiliated to Cavalry Records, Canterbury (Dragoons and Lancers)	Imperial Yeomanry Regiments affiliated to Cavalry Records, York (Hussars)
Royal Wiltshire. Warwickshire. Ayrshire. Yorkshire Dragoons. North Somerset. Lanarkshire. Pembroke. Royal East Kent. Hampshire. Dorset. Hertfordshire. Berkshire. Royal 1st Devon. West Kent West Somerset. Lothians and Berwickshire. Lanarkshire (Glasgow). Surrey. Fifeshire and Forfarshire. Norfolk. Sussex. Glamorganshire. City of London. 2nd County of London. King's Colonials. Bedfordshire. Essex. North of Ireland. South of Ireland. Northamptonshire. Lovat's Scouts. Scottish Horse.	Yorkshire Hussars. Nottinghamshire (Sherwood Rangers) Staffordshire. Shropshire. Cheshire. Leicestershire. Duke of Lancaster's Own. Northumberland. Nottinghamshire (South Nottingham- shire Hussars). Denbighshire. Westmoreland and Cumberland. Buckinghamshire Derbyshire. Gloucestershire. Middlesex. Suffolk. Royal North Devon. Worcestershire. Oxfordshire. Montgomeryshire. Lancashire Hussars. Lincolnshire. 3rd County of London. East Riding of Yorkshire.

## THE IMPERIAL YEOMANRY—ANNUAL TRAINING, 1906

Regiment	Place of Training	Dates
Ayrshire . . . . .	Ayr . . . . .	June 6 to June 21
Bedfordshire . . . . .	Shorncliffe . . . . .	May 21 to June 7
Berks . . . . .	Churn . . . . .	May 23 to June 9
Buckinghamshire . . . . .	Daw's Hill Park, High Wycombe . . . . .	May 8 to May 25
Cheshire . . . . .	Delamere . . . . .	May 25 to June 9
Denbighshire . . . . .	Llangammarch Wells, near Builth . . . . .	May 15 to June 1
Derbyshire . . . . .	Sudbury Park . . . . .	June 6 to June 21
Devon, Royal 1st . . . . .	Bridestowe . . . . .	May 15 to June 1
Devon, Royal North . . . . .	Ashwick, near Dulverton . . . . .	May 22 to June 8
Dorset . . . . .	Preston, Weymouth . . . . .	May 14 to May 31
Essex . . . . .	Clacton-on-Sea . . . . .	May 17 to June 1
Fifeshire and Forfarshire . . . . .	Annsmuir, Ladybank . . . . .	June 16 to July 1
Glamorganshire . . . . .	Llangammarch Wells, near Builth . . . . .	May 15 to June 1
Gloucestershire . . . . .	Cirencester . . . . .	May 14 to May 31
Hampshire . . . . .	Churn . . . . .	May 23 to June 9
Herts . . . . .	Berkhampstead . . . . .	May 10 to May 27
Ireland, North of . . . . .	Ballykinlar Camp, co. Down . . . . .	June 22 to July 9
Ireland, South of . . . . .	Curragh . . . . .	June 5 to June 23
Kent, Royal East . . . . .	Dover . . . . .	May 12 to May 27
Kent, West . . . . .	Tunbridge Wells . . . . .	May 18 to June 2
King's Colonials . . . . .	Stowe Park, Bucks . . . . .	Aug. 4 to Aug. 19
Lanarkshire . . . . .	Douglas, N.B. . . . .	June 7 to June 22
Lanarkshire (Queen's Own Royal Glasgow) . . . . .	Hamilton Park . . . . .	June 13 to June 28
Duke of Lancaster's Own . . . . .	Brackenber Moore . . . . .	May 16 to June 2
Lancashire Hussars . . . . .	Plovers Moss, Delamere . . . . .	June 12 to June 29
Leicestershire . . . . .	Burghley Park, Stamford . . . . .	May 31 to June 15
Lincolnshire . . . . .	Riseholme Park, Lincolnshire . . . . .	May 31 to June 15
London, City of . . . . .	Shorncliffe . . . . .	July 27 to Aug. 11
London, 2nd County of . . . . .	Churn . . . . .	July 22 to Aug. 6
London, 3rd County of . . . . .	Brighton . . . . .	July 28 to Aug. 12
Lothians and Berwickshire . . . . .	Hedderwick Hill, Dunbar . . . . .	July 13 to July 28
Lovat's Scouts . . . . .	Cothill Farm, near Brodie . . . . .	June 15 to June 29
Middlesex . . . . .	Eastbourne . . . . .	July 27 to Aug. 11
Montgomeryshire . . . . .	Tyn-y-coed, near Garth . . . . .	May 15 to June 1
Norfolk . . . . .	Hunstanton Park . . . . .	May 30 to June 14
Northamptonshire . . . . .	Milton Park, Peterborough . . . . .	May 25 to June 9
Northumberland . . . . .	Walwick Grange . . . . .	June 1 to June 16
Nottinghamshire (Sherwood Rangers) . . . . .	Mansfield . . . . .	May 29 to June 15
Nottinghamshire (South Nottinghamshire Hussars) . . . . .	Clifton Pastures . . . . .	May 15 to June 1
Oxfordshire . . . . .	Blenheim Park, Woodstock . . . . .	May 28 to June 14
Pembroke . . . . .	Tyn-y-coed, near Garth . . . . .	May 15 to June 1
Scottish Horse . . . . .	Dunkeld and Blair Atholl . . . . .	June 13 to June 28
Shropshire . . . . .	Oswestry . . . . .	May 15 to June 1
Somerset, North . . . . .	Dorchester . . . . .	May 14 to May 31
Somerset, West . . . . .	Torweston, near Williton . . . . .	May 14 to May 31
Staffordshire . . . . .	Himley, Stafford . . . . .	May 15 to May 30
Suffolk . . . . .	In the neighbourhood of Thetford . . . . .	May 7 to May 24
Surrey . . . . .	Seaford, Sussex . . . . .	July 28 to Aug. 12
Sussex . . . . .	Worthing . . . . .	May 25 to June 9
Warwickshire . . . . .	Warwick Park, Warwick . . . . .	May 24 to June 8
Westmoreland and Cumberland . . . . .	Lowther Park, Penrith . . . . .	May 2 to May 19
Wiltshire, Royal . . . . .	Uffington . . . . .	May 22 to June 8
Worcestershire . . . . .	Strensham Court, Worcester . . . . .	June 1 to June 16
Yorkshire Hussars . . . . .	Scarborough . . . . .	May 24 to June 9
Yorkshire Dragoons . . . . .	Haltwhistle . . . . .	June 3 to June 18
Yorkshire, East Riding of . . . . .	Haltwhistle . . . . .	June 1 to June 16

## SOUTH OF IRELAND IMPERIAL YEOMANRY

This recently formed Regiment is to be congratulated on having successfully inaugurated a journal, entitled 'The South of Ireland Imperial Yeomanry Club Gazette.' Judging by the first number, which is well got up and profusely illustrated, it should have a very prosperous career.

## SERVICE PERIODICALS

'The Royal Engineers' Journal' for January contains an article on 'Communications' by Captain J. E. Craster, R.E., and the 'Journal of the Royal Artillery' for January has an article by Major J. F. Cadell, R.A., on 'The Telephone in the Field.'

Both the above articles emphasise the importance of the burden and the responsibility which the military commander has to face, as a result of modern developments, of the maintenance of touch with the whole of the forces under his orders, the connection between the brain and the body of an army. Officers of the mounted branches probably have many opportunities of realising the difficulties of this question, which is one deserving of much attention.

'The Royal Engineers' Journal' for February contains an article by Captain C. de W. Crookshank, R.E., on the 'Organisation of Royal Engineer Units for Employment with Cavalry.' The writer suggests that 'The present Field Troops should be reconstructed as 3 Squadrons, R.E. (lettered A, B, C), each consisting of a Headquarters and 2 Troops (A and B); one Troop to be the normal R.E. Unit for a Cavalry Brigade. This will give the requisite War Units for 4 Brigades at Home and for the Force in South Africa; and will furnish Peace Units of better proportions than the existing ones (1) for command and training, (2) for employment on "Works."'

Few Cavalry officers will find fault with his contention 'that for the Cavalry arm it is necessary to have a few Sappers with

high qualifications ; my reason being that, as Cavalry will more than ever have an independent rôle in warfare, working either in screen or in detached masses, and will consequently operate principally at considerable distances from the main Army, the Engineers with it must perforce be entirely self-supporting, and must be capable of carrying out any jobs in Telegraphs, Railways, and General Engineering that may present themselves.'

An illustration of a useful-looking but light tool wagon for field troops is given with the article.

---

#### CANADA'S NEW MILITARY PAPER

The Canadian Army are setting on foot a military paper which promises to work immense good to the force.

Many of our readers know personally, or by reputation, Lieut.-Colonel Turner of Quebec, who won both the V.C. and D.S.O. in South Africa ; Lieut.-Colonel Fiset of the A.M.C. and Major Morrison of the 23rd Field Battery, both of whom got the D.S.O. in the same field ; and Lieut.-Colonel Sir Henry Pellatt and Lieut.-Colonel Thompson, ex. M.P., the last two respectively first and second in command of Canada's Coronation contingent—all these gentlemen are prime movers in the new *Canadian Military Gazette*, and have associated with them a score of prominent officers residing at points all over the country, so its success should be pretty well assured.

As it is the only military publication in the country, which now has an active force of nearly 50,000, with thrice that number recently passed through the ranks, to say nothing of 200 Cadet Corps, and 30,000 men enrolled in the rifle clubs, the *Gazette* should have a sufficient support for the proper up-keep of such a journal.

(For the benefit of any who wish to keep in touch with that very important growing element in Imperial Defence, the Canadian Army, we may say that 10s. sent to *The Canadian Military Gazette*, The Trust Buildings, Ottawa, with the address

of the sender, will procure the paper for one year from the date of receipt.)

---

### REGIMENTAL JOURNAL

Comparatively few Cavalry regiments run to a Regimental periodical, we therefore heartily congratulate the editor and all concerned on the reappearance of the 'Black Horse Gazette,' the Journal of the 7th Dragoon Guards (Princess Royal's) after a lapse of six years.

---

### REGIMENTAL HISTORIES

Lieut.-Colonel E. A. Herbert, commanding the Inniskilling Dragoons, asks for assistance in procuring materials for compiling a history of the regiment. The regimental manuscript records extend back for little more than a hundred years, and are very incomplete. He therefore earnestly begs any one in possession of private letters or other documents bearing on the subject to communicate with him to Ballincollig, co. Cork, where the regiment is at present stationed. Any manuscript, printed matter, or pictures lent will receive the utmost care, and be returned in the shortest time possible.

---

Mr. Edward Almack, F.S.A., c/o Messrs. Moring, Ltd., 32 George Street, Hanover Square, W., would be very grateful for any tidings of records, manuscripts, uniforms, &c., connected with the Royal Scots Greys (formerly the Royal North British Dragoons), whose history he is compiling. It is felt that there may be interesting treasures in some old Scottish homes relating to this corps, the first troops of which were raised in 1678.

---

### CAVALRY AND MOUNTED INFANTRY

Lieut.-General Sir John French presided on February 22 at the Royal United Service Institution, when Brigadier-General E. C. Bethune read a paper on 'The Uses of Cavalry and

Mounted Infantry in Modern Warfare' to a large audience, comprising many well-known Cavalry and Mounted Infantry authorities. As this lecture and the discussion which followed will shortly be published in full by the Journal of the Royal United Service Institution, we do not reproduce it here, but we commend it to the notice of all interested in the vexed question of the respective rôles of Cavalry and Mounted Infantry.

---

#### ROYAL UNITED SERVICE INSTITUTION

At the Annual General Meeting of the above institution held last month, the following officers connected with the mounted branches of the service were elected to serve on the Council: Colonel Hon. O. Lumley, late 11th Hussars, Colonel R. B. Colvin, C.B., Commanding Essex I.Y.

---

#### THE ARMY RIFLE ASSOCIATION

The Annual Meeting of the Army Rifle Association was held in January at the Royal United Service Institution, Colonel C. C. Monro presiding. Nearly every regiment of Cavalry subscribe to the association.

The winners of the Inter-squadron Match at home were A Squadron, 11th Hussars, and in the Young Soldiers Team Competition this regiment was placed sixth in the whole Army.

C Squadron, 15th Hussars, won the Inter-squadron Match abroad.

---

#### SUCCESS OF THE FIRST ISSUE

It is, indeed, gratifying to be able to announce that the result of the first issue has been most successful. The sale has not merely been confined to subscribers from the mounted branches throughout the Empire, but extensive support has been received from other branches of the Service, and from the public generally. It will be of interest to readers to learn that his Majesty the King has graciously become a subscriber.

The Press both at home and in the colonies, especially the Service Journals, are to be heartily thanked both for their very valuable assistance in making the Journal known, and for the kindly way in which they have received it.

There has been some criticism in connection with the perforated pages, but on the whole it has been favourable. The small illustration on this page has been forwarded by a 'captious



BRITISH SUBALTERN (*log.*): 'Really very thoughtful of the *C.J.* to have had these pages perforated!'

critic,' but it is needless to say that its adaptability in the direction indicated was not the primary intention.

---

#### IMPORTANT.

*The Staff of the Journal is very limited, and it is therefore necessary for all officers who obtain their Journals direct from the Managing Editor to report any alteration of rank or address immediately, as it is quite impossible to follow up the stations of individual officers: every effort will however be made to trace the moves of regiments.*

---

*N.C.O.'s are reminded that the date by which solutions to Problem No. 1 must be received is May 15, 1906.*

O. LUMLEY, Col., *Editor.*

## *SPORTING NOTES*

### THE GRAND MILITARY RACE MEETING

DESPITE the dull raw weather, the Gold Cup day proved a huge success. The great majority of the runners were ridden by their owners, and falls were neither frequent nor serious. As nothing, for a wonder, stood out to dwarf the others in the Gold Cup, a numerous field ran. Captain Stacpoole, last year's winner, rode Kirkby, who was evidently the best of Captain Dewhurst's pair, but not quite the stamp of horse for a staying chaser, and a difficult mount for any amateur. Kiora did most of the work, and was always in the race, which Kirkby promised to win as he went up—too prematurely—along the far side in the last circuit. At the last fence Royal Blaze had apparently won it by three lengths, but in a desperate finish only squeezed home—through jockeyship and his own camel-like neck—by a head from Prince Talleyrand, with Prizeman a head away—a truly remarkable verdict for a three-mile steeplechase. The majority thought Prince Talleyrand had won, and there is no question but that Royal Blaze ought to have been only third—his victory was solely due to Captain Leon Denny's better experience. He thus upheld the credit of the King's Dragoon Guards for jockeyship, and won the race when he slipped the others round the bottom bend; it is usually during running, and not alone in front of the stands, that races are gained. As last year, when Rear Admiral Lambton won with Ruy Lopez, the Navy beat the Army, its only other representative being third, and both were trained by Mr. Withington. Prizeman was the unlucky horse of the race, coming literally from nowhere, and he had won it in the next



stride. It is rare indeed that a naval officer figures in the saddle, and Captain Cradock's sporting efforts deserved a fuller measure of success, and unquestionable meed of praise. He is not by any means the elderly gentleman generally described, being a little over forty, and an especially active man.

Captain Collis, who has just been elected Master of the United Hunt in Cork, rode Shoot to victory, and General Bruce Hamilton wound up a good day's racing by winning the Maiden Steeplechase with Olive, Captain Stacpoole riding. Had the glorious weather of Saturday favoured the previous afternoon, the concourse would have probably been a record one. Anyhow, in entries, sport, and fashion, 1906 will stand out as a conspicuously prominent year.

Two of the half-dozen events were open races, the Hurdle Handicap attracting the field of the meeting, and providing a tremendous struggle between good class horses.

The Tally-Ho Steeplechase, as its title suggests, was confined to cocktail hunters, four of the five being owner-ridden, the exception being The Tyke, upon whom, I think, Lord Hugh Grosvenor would have scored but for his fall a mile from home. This left the two outsiders to fight it out, Mr. C. Noel Newton, of the 2nd Life Guards, son of the well-known Mr. C. S. Newton, gaining his first important victory. His horse, Downpatrick, had been bought in Ireland, and has been ridden with the Oxford Drag and the Cottesmore.

In the Grand Military Handicap Steeplechase, after Bay Duchess and then Olive had apparently won the race, Ticket o' Leave, improving vastly upon his previous day's performance, scored easily, ridden by Mr. A. Fitzgerald.

For the United Service Steeplechase the stable companions, Mr. Bewicke's pair, Glamore and John Shark, finished first and second, exactly in their market order, but it would have been a good race had not the four-year-old been badly interfered with so as to lose 100 yards when H. T. fell at the water.

## THE HOUSEHOLD BRIGADE MEETING

This meeting was held at Hawthorn Hill on April 2 and 3. There was a large attendance, and the weather was all that could be desired.

The 2nd Life Guards' Regimental Challenge Cup was easily won by Mr. C. Newton's Lady Nicotine (owner). Mr. Howard Vyse's Crick, ridden by Lord Innes Kerr, won the Royal Horse Guards' Regimental Race, and Captain E. Brassey on his own horse Battledore II. accounted for the 1st Life Guards' Challenge Cup.

The Household Brigade Cup was won by Mr. R. C. de Crespigny's Prince Talleyrand, ridden by Captain de Crespigny.

On the second day the fields were larger, and there was some capital racing. Captain de Crespigny and Mr. C. Newton again had winning mounts, and Mr. R. C. de Crespigny on his own horse Kozak won the Household Brigade Hunters Cup from nineteen others. Captain Rasbotham rode the winners of two open races.

## POINT TO POINT RACES

The Irish Army Point to Point Meeting was held at Drumlargan, co. Meath, on March 21.

For the Light-weight Race, Mr. Curtis's (19th Hussars) Night Watch (owner) won by a length from Captain Gibson's (6th Dragoons) Tiddley Winks (owner), with Captain Horne's (Cameron Highlanders) Wiry Jane (owner) third. There were twenty-three starters.

The Welter-weight Race was won by Captain Horne's (Cameron Highlanders) Tollcross (Mr. Dudgeon), Colonel Forestier Walker's (R.F.A.) Barmecide (owner) second, and Mr. F. Sworder's (Gordon Highlanders) Missing Link (Mr. Brooks) third. There were eleven starters.

In the South v. North of Ireland Imperial Yeomanry Race, the North won by sixteen points—Colonel Earl of Shaftesbury's (North) Orion (Lord Cole) first, Mr. Cooke's (North) Kildare

(owner) second, Major Burns-Lindow's (South) Afterthought (owner) third.

---

The King's Dragoon Guards and 8th Hussars held a joint meeting near Liss in the H. H. country.

The Hussars' Heavy-weight Cup was easily won by Captain Sir C. B. Lowther's Miss Tites (owner) from Captain F. M. Jennings's Clohane (owner) and six others.

Mr. L. Cheape, on his own horse, The Briton, won the Dragoons' Cup by two lengths from Mr. D. C. Brown's Jolly Farmer (owner) and eight others.

The Hussars' Light-weight Cup was won by Mr. E. B. Houston's Scandal (owner) from twelve others.

---

The 19th Hussars' Point to Point Meeting was held at Caragh near Naas over a fine big course. The Light and Heavy-weight races were run together, Mr. T. H. Curtis's ch. m. Redskin (owner) winning the former, Mr. H. E. Platt's b. g. Buceful (owner) being first of the heavy-weights. Mr. T. H. Curtis also won the 19th Hussars' Subalterns' Race on Night Watch, repeating his victory at the Army Point to Point in Meath.

---

The Mounted Infantry Point to Point Steeplechases were held near Chawton in the H. H. country, Major McNeill's (Seaforth Highlanders) Stargazer (owner) winning the Light-weight race in a canter from eight others, while Mr. D. Watts's (The King's) Donegal (owner) easily accounted for the Heavy-weight race. In the open race Mr. Brown's (King's Dragoon Guards) Jolly Farmer (owner) beat Mr. Lush Wilson's (Royal Field Artillery) Major IV. (owner) by two lengths. There was a good field of nineteen starters for this race.

---

The 20th Hussars held their meeting at Ditchling in the South Down country. Major G. Edwards's Decima (owner) won the Hussars' Cup in a canter, while Mr. A. Little's Ginger (Mr. F. Hurndall) easily won the Chargers' Hunt Cup.

The Grand Military Point to Point Meeting was held at Burton Dassett in Warwickshire. Mr. G. N. Reynolds (21st Lancers) on Apollo won the Light-weight race, and Captain C. Van der Byl (16th Lancers) on Red Prince won the Heavy-weight race.

---

The Sixth Division Meeting was held near Colchester, Captain R. Anderson (11th Hussars) on Moortown winning the Heavy-weight race, and Mr. G. Brooke (16th Lancers) on Lady Mac II. appropriating the Light-weight cup.

---

The East Riding Yeomanry held their meeting near Market Weighton. The Officers' race was won by Lieut.-Colonel Stacey-Clitherow's Victory (Mr. D. White), and Corporal J. Thompson's Pigeon won the Yeomanry race from a good field of eleven starters.

---

The Herts Hunt and Imperial Yeomanry held a meeting at Annables. Major G. Sheppard on his own horse Long Tom II. won the Officers' Cup, after a good race, by a length, while in the Yeomanry race Mr. Slyfield's Brickett (owner) was first of the heavy-weights, and Mr. Pusey's Venture (owner) the winner of the light-weights.

---

The 18th Hussars held their meeting near Stillingfleet. Captain Clarke's Grilse (Mr. Fielden) beat Lieut.-Colonel Pollok-Morris's Huree Babu (Captain Cape) and eighteen others in the Hussars' race.

---

The 11th Hussars held their meeting at Ladytown near Naas, Mr. Cayzer on Shrimp winning the Regimental Cup for the third year in succession on the same horse. Mr. S. Richardson was first of the heavy-weights on Tipperary. For the Subalterns' Cup Mr. Lakin on The Badger won easily from Mr. Sutton on Kathleen.

1. Lieut. Crasher of His Majesty's Dashers is kept late on parade on a hunting morning, but by galloping back to barracks—



2.—and exchanging charger for hack, and cap & belt for hat & hunting crop—



3.—is enabled to start for the meet well up to time.



The new—as compared with the old—style of Cavalry Uniform has advantages (probably not contemplated by the Authorities when introducing it) for the hard-worked but sporting Subaltern.

## POLO.—HURLINGHAM CLUB

We are informed that the only alteration in the Hurlingham Club Polo Rules for the season 1906 consists in the expunging of the last eight lines of rule 25, which now reads as follows :

‘25.—No player shall crook an adversary’s stick, unless he is on the same side of an adversary’s pony as the ball, or in a direct line behind, and his stick is neither over nor under the body, nor across the legs of an adversary’s pony. The stick may not be crooked unless an adversary is in the act of striking at the ball.’

We are also informed that the following is the Recent Form List for 1906 : Major G. K. Ansell, Messrs. W. S. Buckmaster, F. M. Freake, and F. A. Gill, Major Niel Haig, Mr. A. Hastings, Captain L. C. D. Jenner, Mr. W. Jones, Captain H. Lloyd, Captain E. D. Miller, Messrs. G. A. Miller, C. D. Miller, P. Nickalls, C. Nickalls, M. Nickalls, C. K. O’Hara, P. O’Reilly, and A. Rawlinson, Lieut.-Colonel W. G. Renton, Mr. H. Rich, Mr. A. Rotheram, the Duke of Roxburghe, Mr. H. Scott-Robson, Mr. U. O. Thynne, Mr. S. A. Watt, and Captain H. Wilson.

One of the most interesting matches will be that held at Hurlingham on Saturday, June 16, when the Irish Team who won the International Challenge Cup in Dublin last season will defend their title to it against England.

## THE INTER-REGIMENTAL TOURNAMENT

Regiments intending to enter for this event should bear in mind that one of the rules governing the tournament is that the ponies which are played must be the *bona fide* property of officers of the competing regiment, and on May 20 in each year an unlimited list of such ponies stating the name, colour, sex, and owner is sent to the hon. secretary of the committee, Major Stanley Barry, D.S.O., 10th Hussars. Eighteen of these ponies

are then nominated one day before the first tie of the tournament is played, and although all these ponies can be played in the preliminary ties, only fifteen of them are allowed to be used in the semi-final and final ties in London. The competition has attained greater popularity than ever, seventeen regiments competing in 1903, eighteen in 1904, and sixteen in 1905, the Queen visiting Hurlingham on the occasion of the final tie last year, and handing over the cup to the captain of the winning team, the 6th Inniskilling Dragoons. Only the semi-final and final tie are now played at headquarters, the travelling expenses of the teams left in being paid by the Hurlingham Club, while the expenses connected with the preliminary ties have been lessened by the passing of a rule allowing those matches to be played in the districts where the regiments are quartered. Major G. F. Milner, D.S.O., 1st Life Guards, Major G. K. Ansell, D.S.O., 6th Inniskilling Dragoons, and Captain H. R. Lee, 20th Hussars, form the present committee of the Inter-regimental Tournament.

The semi-finals are fixed for Wednesday, July 4, and the final on the following Saturday, July 7.

### POLO IN INDIA

The Bengal open Tournament was concluded the beginning of the year. It was the greatest success; some of the finest and most exciting play ever seen in Calcutta being witnessed by the Prince and Princess of Wales, the Viceroy, and Lady Minto, Lord Kitchener, the Lieut.-Governor, and Lady Fraser, and a crowd of notabilities.

The first tie was between the Viceregal Staff and the Calcutta Polo Club 'B' team, which the former won by two goals.

The second tie was between the Calcutta 'A' team and the Imperial Cadet Corps, won by the former after a fine game. During the match the Maharajah of Cooch Behar had a bad fall through his pony coming down. He luckily escaped serious injury, but was unable to take any further part in the tournament.

In the third tie the splendid team of Golcondas beat the 9th Lancers, the scores being five goals two subs. to two goals and four subs.

The 15th Hussars, the champion regimental team in India, then easily defeated the Central India Horse.

The 4th Bengal Cavalry made a large score against the Imperial Service Lancers, the latter being led by the head of the Mysore Army, Colonel Desaraj Urs, a prominent owner of race-horses.

The Calcutta 'A' team proved too good for the Viceregal Staff.

A grand match followed between the Golcondas and the Royal Dragoons, the former winning by four goals three subs. to four goals two subs. With only four and a half minutes to play the Royals were leading by a goal and attacking. The Golcondas, however, repulsed the attack, and going the whole length of the field scored an equalising goal, and in the last half minute the winning subsidiary.

In the semi-finals the 15th Hussars defeated the 4th Cavalry, and the Golcondas defeated the Calcutta 'A' team.

The final tie resulted in a fine game between the Golconda team of native officers in the Nizam's Army and the 15th Hussars. The teams were, Golcondas—Hamid Yar Tung, Mr. Shah Murza Beg, Captain Osman Yah-ud-Dowlah, and Mr. Kadir Beg; 15th Hussars—Captain A. Courage, Captain the Hon. I. Bingham, Captain F. Barrett, and Captain L. Learmonth. The umpires were Colonel de Lisle and Captain Ashbournier. The Hussars were favourites, and not until the last chukker did the Golcondas gain supremacy, and on the final bell going they had won by three goals two subs. to two goals two subs.

The semi-final and final ties of the Championship Tournament at Lucknow were played off on February 6. In the former game the Maharajah of Cooch Behar's native team, the Pilgrims, defeated the 12th (Prince of Wales's Royal) Lancers, made up of



Captain Hobson, Major E. Crawley, Major F. Wormald, and Mr. R. Wood (back), by twelve goals to two, while in the deciding game the above-named quartette scored over the 15th Hussars, composed of Mr. Charrington, Mr. Y. Bingham, Captains Barrett and Learmonth (back), by eight goals to two.

The Punjab Frontier Force Tournament at Peshawar resulted in a victory for the Guides (Cavalry), who defeated the 23rd Cavalry in the final by four goals to two.

The Native Cavalry corps fought out their tournament at Umballa, when the 14th Lancers beat the 18th Lancers by four goals to three, the 11th Lancers beat the 15th Lancers by six goals to two, the Guides beat the 14th Lancers by eight goals to two, the 11th Lancers beat the 18th Lancers by seven goals to one, the 2nd Lancers beat the 9th Hodson's Horse by three goals to one, and the 8th Cavalry beat the 19th Lancers by a subsidiary. For the semi-final ties the Guides beat the 11th Lancers by six goals to three, and the 8th Cavalry beat the 2nd Lancers by three goals to two. The Guides won the final by five goals to two.

#### THE INDIAN INTER-REGIMENTAL TOURNAMENT

This annual event took place at Meerut. In the preliminary ties the 9th Lancers beat the 17th Lancers by four goals to two; the Carabiniers beat the 3rd Hussars by six goals to two; the 10th Hussars beat the Royal Dragoons by four goals to two; and the 15th Hussars beat the 12th Lancers by nine goals to four.

In the semi-finals the Carabiniers were defeated by the 9th Lancers by five goals to two; and the 10th Hussars by the 15th Hussars by four goals to two.

In the final the 9th Lancers (Lieuts. Edwards, Wood, Grenfell, and Captain Sadleir-Jackson) broke the victorious sequence of the 15th Hussars (Lieuts. Charrington and Bingham, and Captains Barrett and Learmonth), winning by eight goals

to two. The latter regiment this year missed the services of Captain Courage.

The 9th Lancers have previously won this tournament in 1877, 1878, 1883, 1884, 1885, while the 15th Hussars have been successful the last four years.

#### POLO IN GERMANY

For some time young German sportsmen have tried to awaken in the Fatherland an interest in Polo, and during the last few years the game has been played pretty regularly in Hamburg and Frankfort. English teams have gone over to play the German clubs, and Polo has now become quite one of the recognised sports.

This spring a start has been made in Berlin, a club having recently been formed, and play takes place on the Karlshorster Racecourse—a good many English ponies have been imported.

#### SPORTS IN CANADA

The Polo season of 1905 was a satisfactory and interesting one. Of the regimental teams in Canada, that of the Royal Canadian Dragoons stationed at Toronto was the most successful. This team, composed of Captains van Straubenzee and Elmsley, and Messrs. Douglas, Young, and McMillan, won in all three championships. Some of the matches played were against the best teams in Canada and the United States. This speaks well for the standard of polo played.

With the increased establishments of Western Canadian regiments, many more regimental teams are promised. There are at present many now playing with civilian teams who are going to accept commissions in these new regiments and form polo clubs in connection therewith.

It is understood that there will be two Military Polo Tournaments this year, one in the west, the other in the east. The winners to play off for the championship at some central point, probably at Winnipeg, Manitoba.

There are many excellent Ice Hockey teams at the different military stations in Canada. The Royal Canadian Mounted Rifles, Winnipeg, Manitoba, and the team from the Royal Canadian Horse Artillery, Kingston, Ontario, are the most successful. The ice in the east has been very much against good Hockey being played this year, the winter being exceptionally mild and ice scarce.

### RACQUETS

#### THE MILITARY CHAMPIONSHIP

##### *Doubles*

The matches in the Doubles began on Monday, March 5, at Prince's Racquet Club, the only representatives of the mounted branches being the 1st Life Guards, and the Royal Horse Artillery, Woolwich. The following were the results :—

##### FIRST ROUND

4th Battalion King's Royal Rifles (Major S. F. Mott and Lieutenant G. T. Lee) beat 3rd Battalion Rifle Brigade (Captain C. Shawe and Lieutenant Darrell-Ovey), 15-10 ; 15-5 ; 15-8 ; 15-3.

Royal Horse Artillery, Woolwich (Lieutenant A. N. W. Dudley and Lieutenant F. C. L. Grieve) ; 1st Life Guards (Captain Hon. F. E. Guest and Lieutenant J. J. Astor) ; and 2nd Battalion Coldstream Guards (Lieutenant F. Hardy and Lieutenant H. M. Pryce-Jones) had byes.

##### SECOND ROUND

1st Life Guards (Guest and Astor) beat Royal Horse Artillery, Woolwich (Dudley and Grieve), 4-15 ; 17-14 ; 15-12 ; 7-15 ; 15-10 ; 15-6.

4th Battalion King's Royal Rifles (Mott and Lee) beat 2nd Battalion Coldstream Guards (Hardy and Pryce-Jones), 15-12 ; 15-11 ; 15-4 ; 15-8.

## FINAL ROUND

4th Battalion King's Royal Rifles (Mott and Lee) beat 1st Life Guards (Guest and Astor), 7-15 ; 15-12 ; 15-1 ; 15-11 ; 8-15 ; 15-9.

## CHAMPIONSHIP ROUND

2nd Battalion Highland Light Infantry (Lieutenants H. Balfour-Bryant and P. Bramwell-Davis, holders) beat the 4th Battalion King's Royal Rifles (Mott and Lee), 15-9 ; 15-8 ; 7-15 ; 15-5 ; 15-11.

Sir Neville Lyttelton, the chief of the army staff, and an old Etonian, who represented his school at racquets, kindly acted as referee.

Mott, Lee, Dudley, Guest, and Astor (who was one of the victorious Eton pair in the Public Schools Championship last year) all played well. The arrangements for the championships were admirably carried out by Mr. Saunders, the secretary of the club.

In the final for the Military Singles Championship Major S. H. Sheppard, R.E., the winner in 1903, defeated Mr. H. Balfour Bryant, H.L.I., who has held the championship for two years, by three games to two.

## FOOTBALL

For the Cavalry Football Cup, the semi-final ties resulted in the 16th Lancers defeating the 21st Lancers by one goal to nil, and the 3rd Dragoon Guards (holders) proving victorious over the 18th Hussars at Bristol, by the comfortable margin of seven goals to nil. In the final the 3rd Dragoon Guards defeated the 16th Lancers by five goals to three, after a good match.

## BOXING

On January 25, the 11th Hussars gave another of their popular Boxing Tournaments in the Riding School at the Curragh, when some excellent fighting was witnessed.

General Rimington and nearly all the officers of the Garrison were present, besides a number of N.C.O.s and men, about 1,150 being accommodated in all.

In the final for the open Novice Competition, Private Hennessey, 19th Hussars, beat Private Reilly, 11th Hussars, after a spirited contest in which both men showed considerable science for novices. Corporal Dolfe, 19th Hussars, beat Private Crilley, 6th Dragoons (Light-weight Champion of Ireland).

Gunner Brown, R.F.A., who is a coming man in army boxing, beat Private Gaynour, Royal Warwickshire Regiment, the fight between Private Carr, 19th Hussars, and Private Moore, 11th Hussars, being declared a draw.

The fight of the evening was between Private Berry, 11th Hussars (Champion Feather-weight, Army and Navy, 1905), and Private Gilliard, Royal Warwickshire Regiment (Champion of Mediterranean), when the former won on points after a fine display.

Captain Webb, late Royal Dragoons, kindly acted as referee.

On February 21, the 18th Hussars provided an excellent programme of boxing before a crowded audience in the riding school at York. For the Army Middle-weight Championship, Private Salter (21st Lancers) beat Gunner Lacey (R.F.A.). The *pièce de résistance* was the contest between Jim Calpin and Private Daly (Light-weight champion of the 18th Hussars), in which the former defended his title of Light-weight champion of York, but was well beaten after six rounds. There was also some excellent recruits' boxing.

J. W. YARDLEY, *Lieut.-Col., Sporting Editor.*



# UNION CANTONIA



AN ENGLISH "GALLOPER." After a Drawing by G. VERNET.

# THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

---

JULY 1906.

---

## *THE BALANCE OF THE HORSE*

BY THE INSPECTOR OF CAVALRY

Treats of the Advantages of a Properly Balanced Mount—Mechanical Balance—Tests of Balance—How to obtain Balance—Balance of the Rider—Methods of Training.

### BALANCE AND ITS OBJECT

THERE is an old French saying to the effect that 'Any fool can learn to ride a horse, but it takes an accomplished man to be a horseman,' and there is a good deal of truth in it.

One of the several points that go to make a horseman is a complete appreciation of the value of 'balance' in the horse, and how to obtain it. Although we English are apt to consider ourselves a nation of horsemen, it is wonderful how little regard is paid by a large number of us to this essential point, while abroad a special study is made of it.

Whether for handiness, for long-distance endurance, for galloping, for quick safe jumping, for fast or slow driving, &c., balance is essential to success, and this is borne out not only by theory, but by all practice and experience—proved where necessary by instantaneous photography.



Balance is briefly the 'collecting' and placing the limbs and head of the horse in such a position as will best distribute his weight to enable the rider to command his powers for whichever kind of work may be on hand.

Thus for racing the greatest freedom has to be given to the propelling power of the hind quarters, hence the American 'monkey' seat where the man's weight only comes near the withers and the horse's head is lowered to act as a counterpoise. For polo or pig-sticking, where great handiness, coupled with quickness and speed, is required, much freedom has also to be given to the forehand, therefore the man sits further back on the animal, and keeps its head fairly raised. For driving, the weight is wanted in the collar, so the head and neck is therefore somewhat lowered, while the hind legs push the body forward in addition to supporting it.

And not only is this 'fore-and-aft' balance necessary, but also the side balance to enable the horse to keep its balance in quick turning by using the limbs on the inward or lean-to side to support it while the outward limbs do the propelling.

The value of utilising the weight of the head comes in here, as also in starting at a quick pace (when the head should be raised up to give the fore hand freedom), or in halting (when the head should be lowered).

And then in jumping, the act of 'taking off' from one hind leg and landing on the diagonally opposite fore leg, is much the same in effect as the method adopted by the human hurdle-jumpers in getting over their fences—but how few of us pay attention to this important fact when training our hunters. In this connection instantaneous photography has shown how many 'pecks' and falls result from landing on the wrong leg as regards balance.

#### MECHANICAL BALANCE

You gauge the balance of a gun, sword, or lance by laying it across your finger and sliding it along till you obtain the point

where it balances itself. On a similar principle the horse may be balanced theoretically by sliding a support along under its belly till the point of balance is found. This point is termed the centre of gravity. For purposes of demonstration a wooden model horse with a hinged neck and head may with advantage be employed, with a sliding support below it.

+ shows centre of gravity

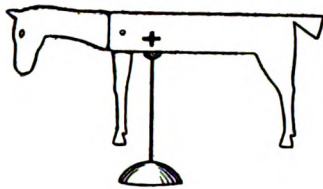


FIG. 1



FIG. 2

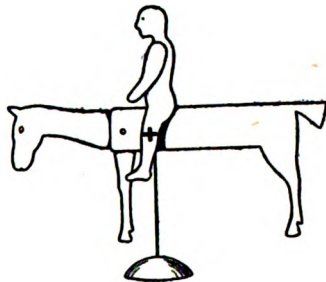


FIG. 3



FIG. 4

For hunting, polo, and drilling or combat much the same kind of balance is required—that is, lightness in the fore hand to give handiness, and ability to land over a jump and get sufficient lightness behind to give propelling power and for galloping and sufficient spring for jumping and activity in turning. Therefore the balance should come as nearly as possible midway between the forehead and hind quarters.

The model can show to a certain extent how much this can be assisted by raising the head (Fig. 2).

And if a model rider be added the value of his weight in adjusting the balance can well be appreciated.

With the real horse this balance is further influenced by the position of the legs. Thus a good shoulder, and hind legs well underneath the body, help largely towards putting the centre of gravity in the centre of the body.

### TESTS OF BALANCE

Experiments were carried out in France two years ago (see 'Revue de Cavalerie' for December 1904) in which a number of horses were weighed, with the following results :—

The average horse unmounted weighed :

Fore Hand	Hind Quarters	Difference
202 kilos.	182 kilos.	20 kilos.

Mounted, with rider forward :

Fore Hand	Hind Quarters	Difference
251 kilos.	197 kilos.	54 kilos.

Mounted, with rider sitting back :

Fore Hand	Hind Quarters	Difference
233 kilos.	215 kilos.	18 kilos.

And the length of neck and position of head and consequent leverage of weight of the head were found to have considerable effect on the balance, thus (A represents the average of eleven horses with long necks, B that of eleven horses with short necks) :—

*Weight in kilos*

—	Head at 45°			Head raised			Head lowered		
	Fore Hand	Hind Quarters	Difference	Fore Hand	Hind Quarters	Difference	Fore Hand	Hind Quarters	Difference
A	260	195	65	250	205	45	267	188	79
B	246	200	46	240	206	34	250	196	54

The head weighs between 15 and 16 kilos.

## HOW TO OBTAIN BALANCE

From these facts it will be readily understood that to balance our horse for general usefulness as a war horse a great deal depends on the carriage of his head and neck.

Col. Bogle-Smith, C.B., in his instructions to the K.D.G.'s 1905, writes : 'The attitude of the head and neck is determined by the following considerations :—

- '1. For the horse to be able to see in the required direction.
- '2. To permit of the free movement of the fore limbs.
- '3. To regulate the position of the centre of gravity.
- '4. To enable the mouthpiece of the bit to act efficiently on the "bars" of the mouth.'

With regard to 1, if the head is raised too much the horse cannot see the ground in front of him, so the face should be at about an angle of  $60^{\circ}$  to the ground.

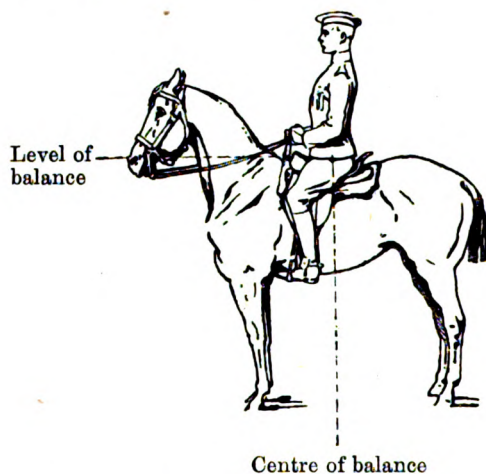
2. A fairly high carriage of the head gives the horse lightness and free action of his shoulders. The more the fore legs are lifted by the play of the shoulders and not by the mere raising of the knees (which one sees so much in London carriage horses), the safer, more brilliant, and less fatiguing and faster will be the action.

Paragraph 3 is explained by the weights given above, which show that a high carriage of the head considerably reduces the weight on the fore hand.

But to appreciate the use of the weight of the head in obtaining balance for the horse a great deal can be learnt by turning a horse loose in a riding school or paddock and watching what he does with his head. Thus it will be noticed that when he starts forward to gallop he holds his head up to give his shoulders play in getting started, then he lowers his head to gallop full speed, but when he starts to trot up goes his head to give full liberty to his shoulders and fore legs, and when he wants to stop he lowers his head ; or supposing he merely wants to turn, he pivots on his haunches, brings his fore hand round followed by his head.

which swings upward and starts him on his new gallop: if he is turning with a view to pulling up he first turns his head, then his fore hand, swings his haunches round and stops.

Similarly when kicking he drops his head down as he raises his heels, and gets his balance on his fore legs. When in harness dragging a heavy cart he stretches his neck and lowers his head to put all the weight he can into the collar.



#### POSITION OF RIDER, HORSE AND SADDLERY

*Rider*: Alert; ready balanced for fighting or for directing horse with hand and leg; bridle-hand lower than elbow; ball of foot directly below the knee.

*Horse*: Alert and properly balanced; *i.e.*, head raised [so that nostril is on a level with withers] to give lightness and freedom to fore hand; face at an angle of about  $60^\circ$  to the ground so that the horse can see well to the front; lower jaw perpendicular to the ground; legs collected under the body.

*Saddle*: On centre of back, over the centre of gravity; so much behind the withers that the front burrs do not tie in the horse's shoulder blades, that the saddle is not cocked-up on the withers, and that the girth is so far behind the elbow that it cannot cause a gall.

*Bit*: Mouth-piece resting evenly on the 'bars' of the mouth and held there by the curb-chain.

Or if he wants to rein back he throws his head and neck back to bring more weight on to the hind quarters.

Colonel Bogle Smith's last paragraph, 4, is an all-important consideration regarding the position of the horse's head, namely to enable the bit to act properly on the mouth.

As Colonel Maude puts it in his book 'Cavalry, its Past and Future': 'If once the young horse can be coaxed into bending

the head from the pole and yielding the lower jaw to a light feeling of the hands, the neck—carried as nature meant it to be—transmits the pressure direct to the body, and thus controls the centre of gravity of both horse and man. . . . If once the young horse is trained to yield the lower jaw, practically all else follows.'

The pressure of the bit on the lower jaw, *when that jaw is carried perpendicularly to the ground*, governs the balance and controls the horse completely.

Proper balance is not entirely a question of natural conformation and shape of the horse, although these of course are of first importance; but where nature has not been quite kind, art and education can do a good deal to repair the defect.

#### SAUCE FOR THE RECRUIT IS SAUCE FOR THE REMOUNT

There is a great similarity between a remount and a recruit, but our training of the recruit is at present in advance of that of the remount. With regard to recruits we should of course like to get nothing but fine well-set-up young fellows for our army: but we cannot do that, so we take what we get and put each man through a steady course of gymnastics, carefully devised to develop the muscles and organs most needed for his work as a soldier, such as the chest and lungs for endurance, the leg and foot for marching or riding, the arm and shoulder muscles for wielding weapons and so on, till the man has them all developed and working under control—that is, till he is 'set up' and 'balanced.'

But years of merely marching a recruit up and down the barrack square as one of a squad of men could not do this for him. If you were to put an unbalanced recruit into the ranks he would wobble in marching and make confusion in the ranks, would plod along on his heels, lose his breath, and would very soon give out on a field day.

It is much the same with the horse.

We should like to get ready-made, compact, well-shaped horses as remounts, but this is impossible, so we take what we get, and we ought then to put them through a course of such training as would develop the necessary muscles and balance for military work.

At present we are, as a rule, too content to consider a horse trained as soon as he will trot or canter at the will of the rider, turn to the right or left when pulled that way by the reins, or passage to one side by the rider's leg. But for complete ability to do his work he requires much more than this.

He needs to be 'collected,' that is, to have his various parts and members brought as nearly as possible into the position they occupy with regard to one another in a well-shaped, well-balanced horse—i.e. his head and neck raised and bent to the desired angle, legs and haunches well under him, and so on. And when he has been thus 'collected' he must by continual practice in this position have the necessary muscles developed for maintaining permanently this 'balance' of his powers and weight.

I have heard fellows say: 'It seems odd that the French and Germans take eighteen months to train their horses while we can turn a remount into the ranks in three months or less.' It is odd, if in that time we can get our horse not only to hold himself in the correct position at the different paces and movements, but can also *develop the necessary muscles for keeping him permanently so placed or balanced.*

That is the point.

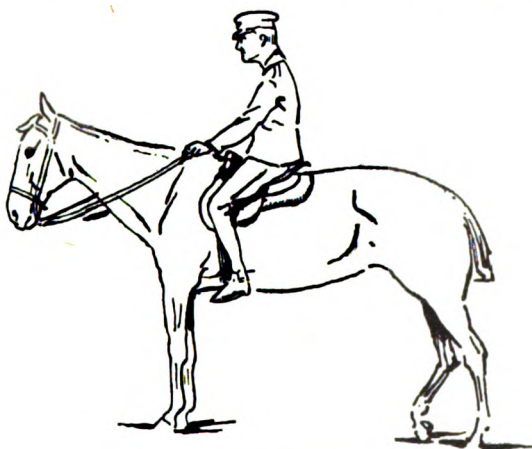
How often does one see a horse balanced temporarily, that is practically held together by his rider's hands and legs; but so soon as both tire a little he sinks away into slackness and becomes the more rapidly fatigued and unsound.

It is a common trick for an officer inspecting Cavalry to order a few parade movements at the end of a field-day. He does this because he can then tell at a glance whether the horses have been properly balanced and are in good condition: if they are bumping against each other, yawing, or pulling, &c.,



and the ranks become ragged and without cohesion, he knows that, however well the horses may have stood on parade at the commencement of the parade, they have not had their muscles formed to maintain that balance permanently, and have slacked off under the fatigue of the field-day.

You may see the same thing any day where trained soldiers and volunteers are working together: as they go out to the field-day there is little to choose between them, the volunteer 'throwing a chest' quite as well as his professional brother; but on the return what a difference—his temporary muscular



NO BALANCE ANYWHERE

effort has given way under fatigue, while the professional with his body systematically built up for the work, retains its proper attitude and balance.

The value of balance for the long-distance work that so often falls to the Cavalry horse is demonstrated in the long-distance rides on the Continent.

Lieut. Allut, 28th (French) Dragoons, who won the competition two years ago, said that in selecting the horse from his squadron he went not so much by the history of the horse as by its balance; when he found a well-built horse which was light in the fore hand he knew he had one that would not easily tire and go lame from carrying all the weight on its fore legs.



## BALANCE OF THE RIDER

As a necessary complement to the balance of the horse when mounted, the balance of the rider comes in as an important item.

In addition to the suppleness of body and application of muscle to the needs of equitation, the rider must apply his balance—as described recently by a French writer—much in the same way as a cyclist employs his. To gain speed he leans forward, to slow down he leans back, to turn to right or left he inclines the body in that direction. As the bicycle seems to obey the thought of an accomplished rider so does the horse, and in a greater degree. If you want to ride him into a corner, go there in imagination yourself, and the horse goes there; if you want him to jump a fence, jump it yourself, not ahead of your horse as the writer interpolates, but in intention; if you mean going over, your decision imparts itself to the horse and he jumps.

## METHODS OF TRAINING

It is impossible in a short article to go into the methods of balancing the horse—one can only indicate generally the lines which the trainer should study for himself.

The point is that the art requires much more general attention among horse-trainers in England.

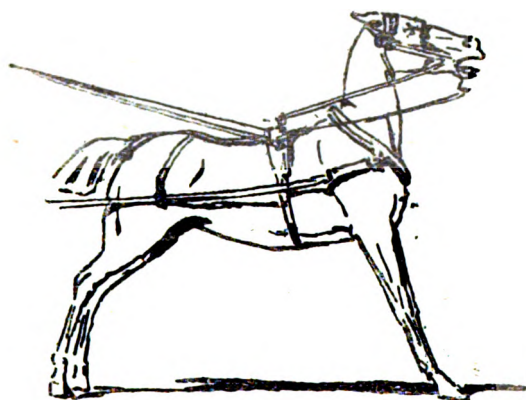
(You may notice that I avoid the more usual term ‘horse-breaker’ or ‘rough-rider,’ since it seems to me to imply methods of subjugation of the noble animal by brute force instead of by instruction.)

Civilian trainers in England are more behind the times than those in the army.

How seldom one finds a really well-trained horse to ride in England—very many of us scarcely know what it is to ride a really well-trained horse like those of, say, Col. Brocklehurst or poor ‘Jabber’ Chisholme, or Captain ‘Ted’ Miller’s polo ponies.

So also in driving.

It is a great reproach to us as a nation of horsemen and horse-lovers that, while our London cabmen are perhaps the best drivers in the world, our society coachmen are palpably the very worst. One has only to stand for a few minutes in Hyde Park any summer afternoon to recognise this by watching the 'mutton fists' of the self-satisfied coachmen, acting on the suffering horses whose heads are gagged up to the extreme tension of strap and steel in unnatural and unpractical positions. It is apparently an attempt on the part of men ignorant of horsemanship to



Unnatural attitude attained by use of the gag bearing-rein and much approved of by the London coachman. The horse can neither see the ground in front of him, nor get a proper bearing on his feet, nor put his weight into the collar for pulling, nor get any relief from pain.

make up by mechanical means for want of proper training or balance.

If bearing reins are, as your London coachman will tell you, indispensable in crowded traffic, why do not cab and omnibus drivers use them?

For those who care to study the theory and practice of balance in the horse, there are numerous good books in the Cavalry Club Library.

One of the most recent is that entitled 'Du Cheval bien mù et bien mis,' by Captain Caubert, 6th Hussars (France), which goes exhaustively into the question.

De Mauleon's pamphlet 'Méthode de Dressage,' published by Privat, is an excellent guide to training the horse to saddle or harness, with practical instructions on driving. His system does not differ in principle from any other, but by its progressive method it greatly simplifies the ordinary training, so much so that he has been able to break in four horses in one day, to obey all the aids and to go into harness.

Two useful little points he inculcates.

If the horse in training resists the method you are using, you should think of and apply some other to gain the same end, instead of persisting in one which only puts you on bad terms with each other.

In using your hands always remember the value of the weight of the horse's head. Thus in order to make a horse trot from the walk or halt, you must raise the head to lighten the fore hand; and similarly when you want to slow down or halt, lower the hands and so the head.

See Captain Horace Hayes' book 'Breaking and Riding,' or Fillis' book, 'Equitation Moderne,' and Von Rosenberg's 'Pferde Gymnastik.'

All these show that much can be done in training the horse to get his balance *at the halt*, and this method helps to impress the importance of it on the soldier who is training the horse.

In Germany weak-loined horses are put through a regular gymnastic course, tied between two posts and taught to 'mark time' with their hind feet till they develop the required muscle.

The hints to be derived from these books and many others should be of great value to officers training their own polo ponies or hunters—but they all centre round the important item of balance as a key to success.

#### CONCLUSION

Not only ought every officer, but also every man who rides a horse, to understand balance, and to apply the knowledge both when training a young horse and when riding a trained one.

And also every driver of waggons and guns, or, in civil life, of carriages and vans, ought generally to understand balance in order to get the best work out of his animals at the least expenditure of their strength.

---

The following letter from Colonel J. F. Brocklehurst, C.V.O., C.B., refers to the above article :

Balance is the alpha and omega of riding and driving, and the ignorance of this fact amongst amateur riders and drivers in England is remarkable. Any riding horse worthy of the name can be taught to balance itself, and you do not get his value until he is so taught.

The best-looking animal nearly always wins the Derby and the Oaks, because the Derby Course at Epsom is the severest test of 'balance' of any in the world. True make means 'balance'—horses not truly made generally lack 'balance' and have to be taught to 'get back on their hocks.' A horse to be at its best must instinctively balance itself, as, though a fine horseman may balance an unbalanced horse when it is fresh, he cannot do so when it is tired.

Horsemen who have to do long journeys, Boers, cowboys, &c., all adopt the same pace, namely, a slow canter with a loose rein—'at the loup,' as they call it in America. When a horse can canter without any help from the bridle, it goes without saying that both the horse and the rider are 'balanced.' I am convinced that all Cavalry, Mounted Infantry, &c., should be taught to 'loup,' and as far as possible that all work should be done at that pace. A 'louping' horse without a bridle could teach a recruit more in a day than an instructor could in a month.

*THE GRAND INTERNATIONAL*

By THE INSPECTOR OF CAVALRY

The International Long-distance Competition for Cavalry horses is no longer an exhibition of cruelty.

Handiness, jumping, and endurance are the tests, with marks for condition of the animal at each stage.

French officers took the first three prizes this year.

THE annual international competition in long-distance riding took place at Brussels in May, and I was fortunate in being able to attend it.

The contest was started a few years back on the Continent to encourage the development of the horse for rapid long-distance work in war.

It is remarkable that, though we British have taken little part in it, the idea was originally derived from the long-distance scouting by the British in the Peninsula (which is referred to in another part of this number of the CAVALRY JOURNAL).

It started in the form of long-distance races, which, although they opened our eyes to the almost incredible distances that a well-prepared horse could cover, at the same time brought about most unfortunate results on horses not properly fit or properly ridden; to a horse-lover the results were in many cases deplorable. All this is now changed. Experience brought knowledge. The competition is no longer a race but a test of each animal in all the attributes of a good Cavalry horse—that is to say, he is tried in handiness, jumping, and endurance over a fair distance at a fast pace, and then over a long distance at a moderate pace: it is now purely a test of conformation and training, and is safeguarded

against cruelty in any form, marks being awarded for the condition of the horse at each stage.

### OBJECT

The competition is designed to promote the practical training of the war-horse for long-distance and cross-country work, and in thorough schooling in hardiness, and, incidentally, to arrive at the best type of horse and the best way of conditioning and riding him.

### TESTS

The tests take place on three different days at two days' interval, the horse carrying 12 stone.

*1st day.*—To ride 32 kilometres (26 miles) in  $1\frac{1}{2}$  hours (*i.e.* nearly 13 miles an hour), including negotiation of nine jumps in the middle of the course and nine at the end. The pace over the jumps will be 400 yards a minute (15 miles an hour).

Any pace more rapid than the above will not receive attention from the judges; marks will be deducted for slower pace.

The school training of the horse will be tested previous to starting.

*2nd day.*—To ride 50 kilometres (31 miles) in 4 hours (*i.e.*  $7\frac{1}{2}$  miles an hour). After a rest of two hours at the end to go over a steeplechase course of 4,000 metres (over two miles) at a pace not less than 550 metres per minute.

*3rd day.*—Jumping, with tests to show the handiness of the horse.

### CONDITIONS

Competitors must ride in undress uniform, and may ride in plain saddles and bridles.

The horse must belong to the State or to an officer, and in the latter case must be his charger.

The competitor may only ride one horse, and must ride it in each of the three tests. He must be an officer on the active list, not necessarily the owner of the horse.

The tests are conducted by an international jury of superior officers.

Marks awardable are :

1st day . . . . .	25 per cent.
2nd day . . . . .	30 „
3rd day . . . . .	30 „
Handiness . . . . .	15 „

Horses of foreign officers are put up and fed free, and are carried at 50 per cent. reduced fares on most of the railways.

### PRIZES

*1st prize.*—A trophy, value £200. Also a gold medal presented by H.M. the King of the Belgians.

*2nd prize.*—A trophy, value £120.

Five further prizes from £100 down to £30.

Ten further prizes of £10 cash.

### PREVIOUS COMPETITIONS

The following particulars are mainly taken from Capt. Caubert's book, 'Du Cheval bien mû et bien mis.'

In 1902 the international race was run from Brussels to Ostend, a distance of 132 kilometres (about 82 miles).

It was won by the French Lieut. Madamet, riding a thoroughbred horse by 'Border Minstrel,' completing the distance in 7 hours.

But of the sixty-one horses that started, seventeen died and only seventeen got further than 100 kilometres (62 miles).

In 1903 the race was run from Paris to Deauville. In this race the pace was limited in order to prevent horses being galloped to death. The first stage, Paris to Rouen, 81 miles, was to be run at an average pace of  $6\frac{1}{2}$  miles an hour; the second stage, Rouen to Deauville, 53 miles, on the following day, at any pace preferred. There were thirty-two starters. Lieut. Bausil (French) won, having completed the second stage in

4 $\frac{1}{4}$  hours. Lieut. Allut was third, riding the thoroughbred 'Poet,' in 4 hours 18 minutes.

Two months previously, Lieut. Bausil had ridden his horse 'Midas' 400 kilometres (250 miles) in 50 hours, the average pace being about 6 $\frac{1}{2}$  miles an hour, and finished with his horse in good condition.

In this same year a match between patrols took place in France, over distances varying between 100 miles and 150 miles; minimum time to be 30 hours, maximum 36 hours.

In China a long-distance race was ridden from Tientsin to Peking, a distance of 79 miles, in 7 hours 33 minutes, by a German named Sommer, an Englishman named Morling being second 1 $\frac{1}{2}$  minutes later.

In 1904 the race was run from Lyons to Vichy in four stages, the first three (36, 20, and 27 miles respectively) at an average rate of 8 miles an hour; in the fourth (39 miles) the pace was optional, and reached 14 miles an hour. Twenty-five horses started, and three were ruled out for want of condition during the contest.

It was won by Lieut. Allut, 28th Dragoons, on the half-bred horse 'Orleans.'

In 1904 also was run the long-distance competition from Milan to Turin, followed by a ride of 2 miles over jumps. This again was won by a French officer, Lieut. Privas, 8th Chasseurs, on a thoroughbred, 'Port Wine.'

Another ride also took place from Lyons to Aix-les-Bains in three steps, each representing a phase of reconnaissance.

1st stage, 35 miles in 4 hours 18 minutes.

2nd stage, 35 miles in 4 hours 30 minutes.

3rd stage, 23 miles in 2 hours 18 minutes.

This was followed by a run over hurdles.

It was won by Capt. de Champtavin, 28th Dragoons, out of 47 starters; but only 24 horses came in at the end, of which 15 were in good condition. A good number were withdrawn in anticipation of their getting done up.



In 1905 the international military championship was run at Brussels, and consisted of three tests each in two parts.

*1st Test.*—10 miles to judge paces, handiness and balance of the horse. Steeplechase course of 3,500 yards at 550 yards a minute.

*2nd Test.*—16 miles in 1 hour 15 minutes. Jumping in the arena at 400 yards a minute.

*3rd Test.*—School-riding. Jumping.

There were 37 starters. Won by Capt. Bausil, 5th (French) Dragoons ; third, Lieut. Allut, 28th Dragoons.

One successful competitor lays down as the best regulation of pace for long-distance riding :

20 to 25 minutes' gallop ;

5 minutes' walk, or better at a trot with the rider running, dismounted ;

2 to 5 minutes' rest every hour.

#### THE COMPETITION

In the present competition there were fifty-two starters, chiefly French and Belgian officers, also three Spaniards, two Dutch and one Norwegian.

No British or German officers entered. Kind friends of course insinuated of the latter that they feared to be beaten, which would imply that they were half-beaten already ; but the more likely reason is that, like ourselves, they associate in their minds a good deal of cruelty with this competition, and scarcely realise yet that by carefully revised conditions all that has been done away with.

*On the first day* the horses were shown individually in the great hall of the Cinquantenary Buildings in riding school details, such as changing the leg at the gallop and obeying the 'aids,' &c. Then followed what proved to be the most exacting test of all. The fifty-two competitors, after riding ten miles at a fast pace of nearly thirteen miles per hour, entered the hall and

went over the jumps there, continued their ride, and ended it by a second negotiation of the jumps in the hall. The order of starting was determined by lot, and each competitor rode alone, starting at a few minutes' interval. Ten horses were counted out, as not in sufficiently good condition to go on to the next test.

*The second test* took place three days later: a thirty-mile line of country being marked out from Brussels viâ Quatre Bras, Lasne, Waterloo, and ending on Boitsfort racecourse. On this route were five control stations where a competitor might stop to water, or feed, or renew shoes, &c., a farrier being on duty at each, and a veterinary surgeon at the half-way one. The pace was about seven and a half miles an hour. Most of the riders did a good deal of walking or running on foot to ease their horses on hills. The horses as a rule came in in good going condition. Two were cast as slightly lame.

After two hours' interval for lunch, the jumping test was carried out three times round the steeplechase course of ordinary small jumps, before a large gathering of rank and fashion from Brussels.

Each competitor had his programme number on his arm, but as this in many cases crumpled or slipped round it is not satisfactory.

*The third test*, namely, that of jumping ability and handiness, was carried out two days later in the great hall of the Cinquantenary Buildings—a place nearly twice as large as our Olympia in London. Not only was there an immense crowd present, but the King of the Belgians made a state entry into the ring. His escort was formed by the 2nd Regiment of Guides (Hussars), all mounted on Irish horses. The royal carriages were well-turned out and horsed with Anglo-Norman bays.

The arena was laid out in numerous flower-beds of all shapes and sizes, with ordinary test jumps in every direction. The competitors had to ride singly a given course which necessitated twisting and turning between these flower-beds to arrive at their jumps—as a test of handiness and cleverness in 'taking off.'

The jumping and riding all through were of a high order, but there was no doubt, even early in the competition, of the superiority of the French riders, and of the condition of their horses.

The horses were, almost without exception well bred, many thoroughbred, a large proportion of them British or half-British. They were generally well balanced, and rather on the small side.

The methods of conditioning and feeding them varied considerably, but all the officers with whom I spoke agreed that condensed foods are necessary for sustaining them during long work, and that sugar in their water does them much good. Also that good balance of the horse is of highest importance; and that the best pace for both horse and rider on a long-distance patrol is the easy canter or 'loup,' as the Americans call it.

Lieut. Virmont, 35th (French) Artillery, was adjudged the winner, riding the half-bred horse 'Larve' by 'Assuérus.'

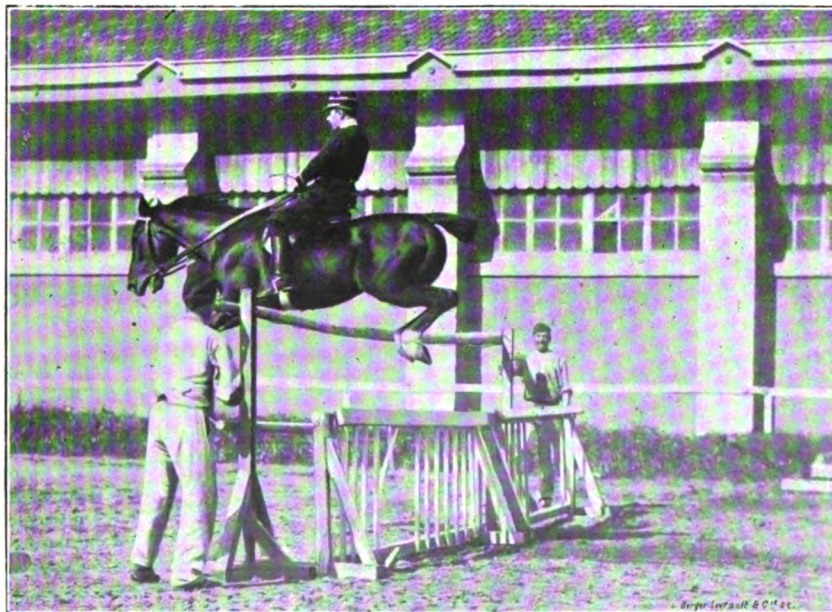
Capt. Godchau and Lieut. de M. d'Ableiges, both French Cavalry officers, were equal for second prize.

And again the 28th Dragoons had, as usual, an officer among the placed competitors, Capt. Bausil, 5th Dragoons, also being once more a prize-winner.

Colonel Hély d'Oissel, the well-known head of the Cavalry Technical Committee at the French War Ministry, was one of the principal officers concerned in judging the competitions.

The King of the Belgians showed the greatest interest in the competition, and on the evening of the final day he gave a banquet at the palace to which the winners and other foreign officers were invited.

At this dinner his Majesty told me that his great desire was to see British officers competing for the trophy another year, and that if they came to Brussels they would be assured of a warm welcome; of this latter I have personally no doubt, judging from the kind reception accorded to me by the officers of the Guides (Household Cavalry).





LIEUT. VIRMONT,  
35th Regiment of Artillery,  
Riding LARVE, the winner of the Grand International  
Championship at Brussels, 1906.

We are able, through the courtesy of the winner, Lieut. G. Virmont, 35th Regiment of Artillery, to give below some notes on the competition :

'My mare "Larve" was born in 1894, bought by the Remount Depôt of Saint-Lô in 1898, and sent in 1899 to the 35th Regiment of Artillery at Vannes, as an officer's remount. She was allotted to me in January 1900, and during the six years that I have ridden her I have never got to the bottom of her, nor, except for a slight accident, has she ever been sick. The mare was at first difficult to train, having a very light mouth, but time and plenty of patience worked wonders, and she is now a perfect lady's hack. About February 1 this year I began to prepare her for the championship of France, which took place about the end of March. Two months seemed to me long enough to get her fit. The object I kept in view was to produce a horse full of muscle, in good wind, and perfectly trained to jump, at the same time well in hand. It was with a horse well above itself that I began the training, for which I had five weeks. For the first three weeks the work was done in the following manner :

'Monday.—2 trots of  $\frac{1}{4}$  of an hour each (220 m. to the minute), 2 hours' walking.

'Tuesday.—2,500 m. at a gallop (500 m. to the minute), 1 hour's walking.

'Wednesday.—1 hour in the manège, and free jumping over six fences.

'Thursday.—Same as Monday.

'Friday.—Same as Tuesday, but with two jumps added.

'Saturday.—1 hour in the manège, 1 hour's walking.

'Sunday.—Rest.

'The third week the length of time of the trot was 45 minutes, and the pace of the gallop was increased over the same distance to 650 m. a minute.

'The fourth week the same programme, only the work at a trot was replaced by two long-distance rides, the first

of 50 kilometres ; the second of 60 kilometres, at 13 kilometres an hour, as follows :—

‘ 10 minutes’ walking (at 110 m. a minute).

‘ 15 minutes’ trotting (at 230 m. a minute).

‘ 10 minutes’ walking.

‘ 15 minutes’ trotting.

‘ 10 minutes’ galloping.

‘ The last week I covered the 60-kilometre course at the rate of 16 kilometres an hour, replacing the second ten minutes’ walking by ten minutes’ galloping.

‘ For the championship at Brussels the preparation had to be rather more severe, the conditions being decidedly harder. I had three weeks before starting for Brussels in which to prepare, and I adopted the following routine :

‘ For the first week I did the same work as I did during the last week of the previous training programme. For the following week I substituted for one of the rides an hour’s work at gallop and trot at 20 kilometres an hour, as follows :

‘ 4 minutes’ trot (at 220 m. to the minute)

10 minutes’ gallop (at 400 m. to the minute)

each repeated three times, then  $2\frac{1}{2}$  minutes’ trot and  $1\frac{1}{2}$  minutes’ rest.

‘ The following week 1 hour and 40 minutes’ work at the same pace.

‘ This work was carried out with same saddle and kit as laid down for the competition.

‘ The free jumping was replaced by riding her over fences covered with flags according to the programme. I also accustomed her to jumping when led by the hand.

‘ By steadily increasing her ration she reached the following amount by the end of the third week :

‘ 14 litres oats, 4 litres bran, 1 litre barley meal, 3 litres sucreine, 4 kilos of hay, 4 kilos of straw, divided into the following portions :

‘ At nine in the morning : 6 litres oats mixed with 1 litre sucreine ;  $1\frac{1}{2}$  kilos hay,  $1\frac{1}{2}$  kilos straw.

‘ On returning from work about 5 o'clock, a mash containing 4 litres bran and 1 litre barley meal ;  $2\frac{1}{2}$  kilos hay,  $2\frac{1}{2}$  kilos straw.

‘ At 6 o'clock : 8 litres oats with 2 litres sucreine.

‘ On returning to the stable the mare drank 2 to 3 litres of chilled water, containing 200 or 300 grs. of brown sugar.

‘ In the evening, rubbing the body with camphorated oil, and washing the limbs with warm vinegar ; and, as I chanced to be near salt water, sea baths of  $\frac{1}{2}$  an hour.

‘ My mare arrived at Brussels after two days' journey, without inconvenience, except diminished appetite, but having left a little above herself, she seemed very fit. As there were two days before the Competition commenced, I took advantage of the time to look round the course.

‘ In addition to the training of the horse, there is also the training of the rider, who should know exactly the paces which tire the horse least, and should keep himself so fit that he is under all conditions able to give assistance to his horse. Moreover, he must not neglect the smallest detail, he should examine his equipment and carefully study the programme.’



*THE SQUADRON CUP FINALS, 1920*

By M. LUCKE CHALLIS

A dream of development in horsemanship and horsemastership in the Cavalry, encouraged by prize competition on a large scale.

WHEN it came to his turn on the roster for foreign service, Tom Craven had gone abroad ostensibly for the usual seven years; but they had lengthened to fifteen, thanks to special service before he came home again.

He left England at twenty-five, somewhat boyish, untamed, unthinking, ready for anything that turned up, with the root of the matter in him, but the plant itself as yet ungrown.

He returned with his own opinions very solidly concrete, his information as to things English somewhat vague, thanks to his lack of newspapers and the demands of Central African problems, and a gradually increasing desire to impart to the military world at large the ideas that his practical experiences had generated.

All the way up to town from Southampton one half his brain, always largely given to forethought, was arranging his future line of action, while the other half mechanically picked out a parallel line of hunting country as the express flashed past fields or heather. As his people lived in the North of England, and he must put in a week or ten days in town before he could get leave, he turned into his old club after a Turkish bath, and ran straight upon an old friend.

Craven, 'burnt to a brick,' lean, hard-bitten, and slightly grizzled, faced the man whose fifteen years had been spent in

Staff appointments at home, and the two in the shadows of the hall peered at each other with the gaze of men who, belonging to the same 'jāt,' feel that they must know each other.

Bill Burnley was still groping for Craven's name and identity when Tom recognised his well-preserved contemporary.

They each eyed the other with the rapid gaze that takes in the essential points of man and horse, and their verdicts were amusingly alike in the faint qualifying tinge of their mutual approval.

'Fit as a chaser, but a touch wanting in Park condition,' was Burnley's summing up.

'Just the same, only more so ; smart as paint, a damned good fellow, but a bit soft—too much grass,' ran the other man's, who had hardened his mental and physical fibre in fifteen years of strenuous warfare and diplomacy, both equally rough and ready.

Then ensued the usual greetings.

'Craven, by George ! Where have you turned up from ?'

'Ends of the earth, and I'm hungry as a pack of hounds.'

'Come on, then, and have lunch ; we've just an hour for it,' Burnley said hospitably, leading the way down the corridor to the coffee-room.

Craven followed, studying the faces of the men coming and going. As he passed them none of them knew him, though he recognised several of them. Then he realised that fifteen years shows a man that not all his whilom friends and acquaintances possess the memories of a club hall-porter.

It chilled him a very little, but as he caught sight of Burnley's imperative signal to join him at an empty table he became aware of crowds of men such as gather together for the Derby Week.

As it wasn't the time of year for that event, he was puzzled to account for them in such numbers.

'What's the hurry, Burnley ? Everyone's cramming himself for a wager apparently.'

He leant across the table to make himself heard above the clatter of china and the babel of tongues.

‘Cup Finals—aren’t you coming to them?’ the other man said, drumming impatient fingers on the white cloth.

‘No, I don’t think so. I’m too frankly ravenous for a good lunch to bolt my food, and I never was keen on football.’

Burnley, who was studying the *menu* with a perturbed frown, looked up, jerking out his single eyeglass with a muscular twitch. He stared at Craven with a grin.

‘Football, you old ghoul! Football’s as extinct as the dodo. The Squadron Cup Finals I mean.’

‘What the deuce are those?’ the returned wanderer retorted, a trifle nettled by Burnley’s evident derision.

‘We didn’t import newspapers in any quantities where I’ve been, and, anyway, I didn’t care about my boys filling their heads with Press opinions. Gave ‘em wrong ideas,’ he said, grinning in his turn, for he was a wholesome-natured creature and capable of seeing the absurd side of even his own personality as it struck a contemporary.

‘I worked ‘em a bit too hard to give ‘em much time for reading; wanted to eat and sleep when I’d done with ‘em; and I never found that ideas manufactured in England helped me much with problems evolved on the spot, and dealt with according,’ he finished, preparing to attack the plover’s eggs set down before them with a distinct sense of gusto.

‘My dear chap, where have you been? Now I come to think of it, it is some time since I last saw you.’

‘Fifteen years,’ Craven interpolated drily.

‘Is it, by Gad! But where on earth *have* you been not to know that the great coping-stone of Cavalry Reform was hoisted into place some ten years ago?’

‘Central Africa,’ the other man said, realising that newspapers might have their advantages after all, and you could perhaps carry a fad to extremes. ‘No, I didn’t know; I’ve only a vague idea that someone did lick things a bit more into shape somewhere. Fact is I’ve had no time, old chap, to keep myself up to date; but I’m not above learning, so if you’ll coach me I’ll listen.’

Burnley leant across the table with an air of extreme satisfaction. There was nothing he liked better than holding forth on his pet subject, and he knew Craven was a good man worth instructing; also he'd an idea, now he came to think of it, that Tom had done something rather decent out in the Wilds, so his words of wisdom wouldn't fall on unfruitful soil.

'Do you remember Lascelles, who used to belong here? Mad about Cavalry.'

Craven nodded assent.

'Always saw him with some other enthusiast as cracked as himself, working out Prussian squadron movements with matches,' he said.

'That's the man. Well, he was the one fellow who never despaired of the British Army during the South African war. I remember him the night of Colenso. As he was the only chap who didn't seem to have lost his head, I went and sat down next him at dinner and asked him what he made of the whole ghastly business.

"That we'll never lick the Boers until we've re-learned what horsemanship and horsemastership means, and can gallop round and round 'em."

'Re-learned?' Craven asked, looking up.

'Yes! Lascelles, who was up in military and general history, always insisted that when riding was the only means men had of getting about the country they were horsemasters, and got every ounce out of their horses and kept 'em fit, also they could ride, two things that were pretty well forgotten after steam and electricity came in, until we paid for those luxuries by losing horses broadcast and nearly getting jolly well licked by men who were practically still living in the Middle Ages as far as transport went.'

'And he was right,' Craven said emphatically. 'Well?'

'Well,' Burnley went on, with deep enjoyment. 'He disappeared for a time, and was working out schemes for cutting down the weights carried by the horses. Then he struck oil,

made his fortune, and the first thing he did was to start Cavalry scholarships, free kit and £200 a year for three years, to the five best cadets, sons of officers, chosen by company commanders at Sandhurst ; lads likely to make good squadron leaders. He said £200 was ample for men out in India. If they weren't keen enough to go there and learn their work, they weren't the kind of men the Cavalry needed. He started this idea in 1907, and for five years we heard nothing of him except an occasional pamphlet on Cavalry, always hammering away at the same set of notions : horsemanship, horsemastership at your fingers' ends, and the rest follows, for whether on horse or foot the essence of the game is choice of position, and the first man on the ground gets that, and *he* won't do it without pace ; pace and always pace, and horses you haven't got to the bottom of when you get there. Follow ?' Burnley asked, in his element.

'I do,' the other man said succinctly.

'I had to try to arrive at something of the same kind myself. Go on.'

Burnley glanced at the clock ; there was yet time, and he wasn't as hungry as Craven, who could eat while he (Burnley) talked.

'The idea caught on by degrees, after a good deal of opposition from the usual rotten set of duffers, and fellows began to go abroad to study equitation. The CAVALRY JOURNAL began giving prizes for essays which showed that the writers had a thoroughly practical, not only a theoretical, knowledge of the subject.'

'Good,' Craven said approvingly. 'Then they found out also that knowledge paid ?' he added.

'They did,' Burnley answered.

'It didn't when I left England, that's why I wouldn't let my boys read the piffle that passed muster in the old country if I could help it. I taught 'em common-sense, and let 'em apply it, after I learned those same two things myself. But how about the old trouble of expense in the service at home ?' he asked.

‘Same old thing as ever. Men, Cavalry especially, had to hunt to get their training, and you know horses will go wrong in young hands.’

Craven shook his head feelingly.

‘I do know it, my son. Man buys his experience on credit, and pays for it in cash. It’s generally the best who go under first at that game. Did Lascelles see his way to clearing up that muddle?’

Burnley beamed at him through his monocle.

‘He did so. He offered a cup, with £5,000 added money, triennial competition for Hussars, Lancers, and Dragoons, one each year, and he reasoned it like this. He said from his own experience every man worth his salt in the Cavalry was invariably stoney broke by the time he got his squadron. He had to live, so he started to make money by racing. The rascal element made it pretty nearly impossible for a chap running straight to make it pay, and by thirty he was dead sick of everything but his men. They were his only consolation, if he was a keen soldier, and Lascelles had no use for any other kind of sweep.’

‘He was quite right,’ interpolated Craven.

‘So he said, “Give a chap a chance to pay his debts by giving his whole attention to his work, and you’ll turn the stream of energy that ran to waste on the racecourse into a profitable channel.” He believed in rousing a spirit of emulation, you see.’

‘First-rate idea too; but how did he squash the cavillers? Wasn’t there any amount of rubbish about bribery *versus* duty?’ Craven asked.

‘There was; they talked of insulting officers by such bribery,’ Burnley answered, delighted to see his man so keenly interested. ‘All he said was that he should have liked some of the same kind of insult himself when he was younger; and he asked how about Bishops, Lord Chancellors, Barristers, &c.—were they insulted by fat livings and big fees, eh?’

‘Not much,’ Craven said derisively. ‘Human nature’s the same everywhere; if you want good work you must pay for it;

but at the same time you ought to know how to get the *best* work without chucking too much money about.'

'That's so,' Burnley assented. 'Well, then, some idiots wrote to the papers and said Lascelles' scheme would only "give premiums to plutocrats." I'll bet the chap who conned that phrase just loved it, and loved himself for inventing its beastly alliteration. He also said, and others joined in like a chorus of cats, that the plutocrats would hand over the cash to their juniors and get 'em to do the slavery part of the business. Lascelles let 'em howl a bit, and then he pointed out that that objection could be got over by arrangements between the officers.'

'He might have added that the asses who reasoned in that way knew nothing of British soldiers or of Cavalry work,' Craven remarked.

'He did, and he pointed out that the winner of the Squadron Cup must necessarily be a good man or he couldn't win it, and that he would be on honour to apply his £5,000 with a decent discretion. Say he paid his four subs. £500 a piece, and each of his troopers £10, that wouldn't be a bad haul for them. Mind you, he'd trained 'em. They had absorbed his teaching, so they were entitled to their share in proportion, but he'd sweated at training, and so his £2,000 share was no more than he ought to have.'

'Yes, that's about a fair proportion, for the men would be cute enough to twig him if he tried to buy their respect, he'd jolly soon pay for any such folly, and if he gave 'em nothing and took to slave-driving, they could always sell him on the passing line,' Craven said, stirring sugar into his steaming coffee.

'They could so, old chap—you've just hit it; in fact, that was the gist of the whole matter. Lascelles wanted to get men with a born "Art of Command." He wanted 'em with a strict sense of justice, temper, and fearless riding, and the tact that gets their squadron to work loyally for 'em, and I tell you only such men survive the test he got started and applied. Come on, by Jove, it's late,' Burnley said hurriedly.

Gulping down their coffee, which Craven decided had not kept pace with Cavalry Reform, the two scrambled into their coats and Burnley's motor, and made a record run to Wormwood Scrubbs.

The crowds converging from all directions kept Burnley too fully occupied to talk, so Craven chewed the cud of their brief conversation, and speculated much on what he was going to see. Also he was interested by his first sight of all-white crowds for fifteen years. He had been soldiering where white men in handfuls had managed to dominate hordes of black tribes, and he wondered if the psychology of the two crowds differed much in their essentials.

Then his thoughts swung back to the Cavalry problems Lascelles had tried to solve so strenuously. Horses, he saw, were rarer as means of locomotion than they had been when he left England; motors of every kind and description, public and private, raised Saharas of dust and smelt to heaven when they were not steamers.

As they neared the ground where the Cup Tie was to be decided, Craven saw looming through the rising and falling fog of dust the buildings and stands of the New Cavalry Club that bordered its 1,500 yards square of manœuvring space. Burnley hurried his man through the handsome courtyard and rooms, and Craven had no more than time to recognise the portrait of its founder over the mess-room mantelpiece and to decide that the well-worn adjective 'palatial' described the whole turn-out.

As they entered the packed stand and found good seats, the competing squadrons were ranking past at the trot, and forming up for the beginning of the competitions. Craven settled down to use eyes and ears to their utmost extent.

The men and horses facing him were the pink of condition and grooming. They glittered and shone with it. Squadron leaders and subs. looked to their front with the gaze of men bent on the performance of one object with but one will; the young faces were set into firm lines, the young eyes glinted like steel



in the sunlight. They were not playing at this game, they were feeling the curious thrill of the concentration of the art of leadership—the officers each tense with his share of responsibility, the men alive and alert with their effort of swift and exact obedience.

Having completed the 'rank past,' the squadrons now moved round the ground and deployed into line facing the grand stand.

Advancing from the halt at the gallop, the line wheeled half-left by troops into half column. Continuing the movement about 300 yards, they completed the wheel which brought them into column of troops. Then they changed direction to the left, and Craven almost sighed with pleasure at the perfection of the manoeuvre. He watched them sweeping on for another 500 yards, the sunlight flashing on the horses' glossy quarters, and rippling like a stream on the burnished accoutrements of the men. The 500 yards limit reached, they changed direction again to the left, and, the last troop having passed the wheeling point, the whole four squadrons wheeled into line again, sounded the charge, and swept down at full speed towards the stand.

They came on, not an inch of difference in the dressing of the line; it was moving as one man and horse might, and it may have seemed to the uninitiated that the men couldn't let their horses go in that fashion and yet pull up in time. But the crowd roared with delight as the squadrons after 500 yards slowed down, wheeled about, were brought up to full extended speed and again steadied, as they neared the dense crowds cheering them, as they used to cheer their favourites at the Crystal Palace Football Cup Ties.

As the squadrons, reversing their front, again advanced in double columns of squadrons from the centre at a trot, changed direction half right, formed line to the front, charged, broke up into the *mêlée*, and rallying half right to the rear charged afresh to what had been right rear, and swept again across the front of the grand stand, halted and dismounted as they reached the further barrier, Craven held his breath.

Burnley, amid the yells of the populace, who were screeching the names of their favourite leaders, as once they shouted those of their pet half-backs and forwards, turned to look at him. But he was absorbed in the perfection of execution, and had eyes for nothing else. He knew that with rare exceptions he had never seen such clean-cut edges as the squadrons thundering past had just presented. There was an entire absence of the old rushing and jostling that had disfigured Cavalry movements. In column at a distance the squadrons manœuvred with the oneness of a chess-board square. With the hard ground ringing to the thunder of horses extended at their fullest speed, he could see the troopers had them so well in hand that their leaders could play with them as a child plays with the old child's game of soldiers set on a lazy tongs framework.

The absurd comparison struck Craven with a whimsical suddenness. He wanted a simile to explain and illustrate the beauty of the perfection of drill and leadership he had just seen, and he couldn't find one sufficiently good. He only sighed outright with delight this time, and said out loud, though he might have been whispering in the tumult acclaiming the winner of the Cup Tie :

'O good men, good men ; I knew they had it in 'em, and they have.'

He had seen as level a lot as anyone could wish to see. Each horse had gone well up to his bit without boring, heads well carried and with the bend at the pole of the neck, and quarters sufficiently under them to ensure instantaneous obedience to the pressure of their rider's leg. There had been nothing showy, only an extraordinary and exquisite precision of execution. But most amazing of all to Craven was the enthusiasm of the crowd.

They had not only cheered wildly, but they had cheered at the right times, appreciating those points that are vital to the true Cavalry eye, which were unknown to civilians; indeed to nine-tenths of the Army, twenty years ago.

‘ Well, old chap, that wasn’t so bad, was it ? ’ Burnley asked, as they made their way out of the stand.

‘ It’s great,’ Craven said. ‘ I can’t believe it even now. But it’s the attitude and discrimination of the crowd that astounds me. Where’d they learn it ? ’

‘ Wait a bit, till we get away from this pandemonium. Let’s go and see the stables first, and then I’ll “bukh” as much as you like.’

By the time Craven, recognised and greeted by sundry old friends, could get away from them on plea of an engagement, they had reached the stables. The squadrons were back there, and the horses were being rubbed down.

Craven, used to nursing his mounts in difficult country and getting the last ounce out of them, walked about in an absorbed concentration of interest.

He satisfied himself that, in spite of the long and strenuous work the competition just decided had involved, the scouting, the long-distance rides in open country, as well as drill, steady and unremitting, men and horses were in first-rate condition. Every ounce of superfluous flesh sweated off them, they were firm and hard as nails, and the eager interested faces of the men’s civilian friends pressed against barrack gates and railings, and their shrewd comments, showed that not only his trained observation was aware of the fact.

After he had glutted eyes and ears, and had asked as many questions as he could without being a nuisance, he let Burnley take him away to the club library.

They went through a fine suite of lofty rooms, hung with good prints of the most celebrated incidents in the history of the Mounted Arm.

Then Craven subsided into an easy chair, roomy and deep, and looked round on an ideal library. It held the most complete collection of Cavalry literature in the world.

‘ Is your man Lascelles a millionaire ? You said this was his gift, didn’t you ? ’ he asked, as they drank huge cups of tea and smoked.

‘No, very far from it, I believe ; but he’d a shrewd idea that he had the luck to be able to carry out. What do you say to gate money?’ Burnley queried.

Craven’s eyes lit up with renewed interest.

‘Gate money! Yes, I had thought of it, but didn’t see how it could be worked. We did make money in the old Agricultural Hall days, but not enough to allow of such expenditure as this’—he waved his hand towards the splendid room.

‘Well, Lascelles saw his way to making use of it. You know he’s a bit of a psychologist, has a scientific kink, and he always maintained that these competitions and clubs could pay for themselves, and he arrived at his idea in a queerly ingenious way.’

‘What was it?’ Craven asked, as Burnley paused.

‘Well, wireless telegraphy started him off. He wrote it down for me one night, and I’ve got it here.’

Burnley took out a pocket-book and handed Craven a sheet of bank-note paper. It was closely written.

‘Read it out,’ he said ; ‘I’ve shouted myself hoarse, and swallowed pounds of dust.’

Craven frowned over the sheet and read.

‘Thought is undoubtedly due to combustion of tissue, and combustion gives rise to manifestation of energy, which again imparts an impulse to the ether which is transmitted in waves precisely like the electricity in Marconi telegraphy.’

Craven nodded. ‘Yes, so far there’s a distinct analogy between the two ; wonder how he’ll follow it out.’

Then he read on :

‘With this object I studied the “psychology of crowds,” and the empiric methods by which soldiers all over the world had endeavoured with success to control the mind-impulses of crowds, and to direct their full force in a required direction. I designed a battery of several heavy guns to be worked and directed by wireless telegraphy from a distance, and found there was no difficulty about it. After some experiments each gun

was to be supplied with a Marconi receiver, which, on receiving an impulse from the controlling station, released a shutter which brought into circuit a relay battery, that in turn started the loading, training, and firing gear.

‘Each starter was tuned to a special wave-length only.

‘This completed my case.

‘I determined if thought is force, as it undoubtedly is, that this was the secret of the old drill-ground methods.

‘Anyone thinking on these lines can see that, however little demand they made on a man’s reason, they did ensure the execution of unreasonable tasks, for all heroism is fundamentally unreasonable.

‘Now, all military history shows that in the intense excitement of the battlefield the delicate machinery of the human brain becomes deranged. It was never designed to work under the pressure of blood transmitted by hearts pumping at 150 beats to the minute.’

‘Ah!’ Craven said eagerly, looking up at Burnley, ‘and it’s then that primitive instinct asserts itself. The fighting instinct undoubtedly comes first. It’s only in the second place that a man thinks of running away.’

‘Yes,’ Burnley remarked. ‘You’ll see he says almost the same thing.’

‘I see he does,’ Craven said.

‘But it’s so good to find one’s been thinking on the same lines as an expert; bucks one up, y’ know.’

‘Yes,’ he goes on, ‘a man will think of fighting before he will think of flight, and the fighting instinct will be the stronger the greater and the more imposing the numbers gathered together.

‘Our ancestors, who were always at war, knew by experience the truth of this conception, and deliberately tuned their men’s minds to receive the fighting impulse transmitted to them from the will-power of the bravest and ablest leader among them.

‘They made a man stand to attention and concentrate all his force and alertness, not because the position was a pretty

one, but because it ensured instinctive and simultaneous obedience to word of command.'

'By Jove, yes,' Craven broke out again irrepressibly. 'One knows every mind in itself is a focus of thought, and the more simultaneous the response to any command the greater the resultant will-power of the mass. Don't I know jolly well by experience as a trained soldier, old man, that one's forbears and Lascelles were right? so do you too.'

He glanced down and picked up the thread of Lascelles' argument, which exactly followed what he himself had just said.

'The idea struck me that a crowd might be managed on similar principles, if their minds could be tuned, *i.e.* made susceptible to the desired impulse, provided always that the impulse was strong enough. To collect a crowd isn't difficult: it can be done by advertising, and that, if skilful, can prepare the minds of the spectators for the impression they are to receive.

'Practically all theatrical managers work on the same lines, but unless they catch a real genius to interpret their plays—an actor or actress who can evolve and direct an overpowering thought-wave—they lack the numbers necessary to hypnotise their audiences with certainty. Now by the mere numerical strength of the collective squadrons, together with the thousands of soldiers and ex-soldiers such a spectacle as my Cup Finals would collect together, this same force would of necessity be generated.

'If it was not so in the old Agricultural Hall days, that was due to the fact that in the pageants the instinct of emulation—one of the strongest in human nature—was not awakened, and in the competitions themselves the numbers engaged, though their emulation was keen, were too few to exercise the hypnotic force in question.

'I have based all my results on the fact that since the most thoroughly drilled, *i.e.* the best disciplined squadron, would win the competition, the resultant will-power of the four finest ones in the whole of the Cavalry must have an overpowering effect

on the crowd assembled to watch their contest for the Cup, and you will see that I am right, and that the masses looking on will applaud the right thing, not because their reason recognises it to be right, but because they will be hypnotised into accepting it as right by the concentrated thought of those on the ground who have been trained to the game themselves.

‘It was this that swayed crowds in the old football days. Nine-tenths of them couldn’t follow the fine points of the game: they knew nothing of them, but their minds being fluid could be immediately and strongly dominated by the concentrated thought-power evolved by the comparatively few who did know.’

Craven looked up as he finished reading.

‘By Gad, yes!’ he added thoughtfully. ‘That does explain the extraordinary species of mental intoxication at such times of women as well as men. Haven’t I often seen girls at a football match, who couldn’t know anything of the excitement of playing as we all know it as boys and men, lose all control and yell with the loudest at some fine bit of play they certainly couldn’t understand?’

‘That’s so,’ Burnley said. ‘And anyone could see just now that they are still more susceptible to military pomp and skill. Lascelles once told me that it was by dint of studying the women and girls at the big reviews and field days at Aldershot in the old days, and noting the amazing intuition they showed in praising the right thing, or what the majority had been taught to consider the right thing, that put him on the right track.’

‘Well, it’s certain that he’s hit it off, and has done more to make the Army and the nation one by so doing than anyone else; and Heaven knows we wanted that badly enough at one time,’ Craven said, as they rose to return to town.

## ***THE TREASURE HUNT SCHEME***

We give below some extracts from the Report on the Treasure Hunt Scheme carried out by the scouts and despatch riders of the Third Cavalry Brigade in Ireland in 1905.

THE exercise took about eleven days, and except for one Sunday, operations were continuous.

*Red*, under Captain Weir, 3rd Dragoon Guards, with Lieut. Williams, 19th Hussars, consisting of two officers and eighteen N.C.O.s and men mounted, and twenty-five N.C.O.s and men on bicycles, also one driver, one treasure cart and horse, and one spare horse, had to escort the treasure from the east coast of Loch Derg through to either one of Counties Monaghan, Armagh, or Down, where it would be in safety.

*Blue*, under Captain Halliday, 11th Hussars, consisting of three officers and seventy-eight N.C.O.s and men mounted, and one officer and thirty-eight N.C.O.s and men on bicycles, had either to capture the treasure cart or drive it into one of the Blue garrisons.

The treasure made four consecutive night marches, hiding by day, to Toberdaly on the Grand Canal. Here a halt was made over Sunday, which by the scheme was a *dies non*. So far, actual contact with the enemy had been avoided, but O.C. Red hearing of the presence all round him of various Blue patrols, &c., decided to try an unexpected move. He chartered a barge on the Grand Canal, and on Monday morning embarked his treasure cart, horses and escort of eight armed men, and moved some thirty miles to the N.E. by the canal. The whole party were hidden under a tarpaulin, and although the barge moved past hostile scouts, the ruse was never discovered.



In the meantime a dummy cart and the remainder of the Red force was sent off, with instructions to simulate the real cart and draw the enemy away. This party now discarded a good deal of the secrecy that had been adopted with the real cart and succeeded, after many adventures, in taking the dummy cart into safety in County Monaghan, hotly pursued by a portion of the enemy.

The real treasure cart also succeeded in crossing into safety.

O.C. Blue, who undoubtedly had the harder task of the two, commenced by placing a line of small posts and patrols right across the country from the Shannon to the coast of Wicklow, keeping a reserve under himself in rear of the centre.

He received constant reports of the most conflicting nature, circulated by the inhabitants and by Red scouts, as to the whereabouts of the treasure cart; and being very concerned as to the possibility of its slipping through his line, he withdrew it to a second position before the treasure had got up to his first.

The same thing happened again, and the second line was withdrawn to a third position before the treasure had reached it.

Finally the dummy cart slipped through this third position whilst the real treasure cart got round its left flank, both into safety.

#### *From Captain Weir's Report*

Although the Officers of the Red Force had the easier task, yet I think that it was more difficult for the men of the Red Force to get their despatches through, as the party with whom they had to communicate was always moving, and that with the greatest secrecy, while the Blue, presumably, had fixed stations to which they could report.

I was very pleased with the way the men worked; they succeeded in finding their way both by night and day, and displayed a good deal of common sense and cunning at times.

I learnt two points about leaving posts to receive messages. First, that when giving patrols orders where to report to, two or

more places should be given, as if only one post is selected, it may be held by the enemy before you get there.

Secondly, that it is not enough to give a village or demesne, as sometimes both messenger and post were at the same place or close to one another in hiding, and did not find each other. It is better to have your posts at cross roads, outside a village or town, so that there can be no mistake.

The distance marched by the treasure cart came to 194 miles in 11 days, with one day's rest.

Although the work was hard, and the weather sometimes bad, and no one had very much sleep, there were no casualties among the men, and the great majority of them would have been quite ready to go on for another week.

The horses started in very good condition, but began to show signs of work towards the end.

The shoes lasted well, but the nails were bad, and a good many broke in the foot. We had no tools with us, which I consider a mistake, and had to do the best we could with a borrowed hammer and no pincers when a shoe came off and there was no forge near.

The bicycles were too light for the work ; there were several complete breakdowns and a great many punctures.

Each man carried a blanket and a waterproof sheet and a cape on his machine, also a haversack, no mess-tin or waterbottle. We had a frying pan and a 'billy' on the cart. The Cavalry capes are too short for cycling, and the men get their knees very wet.

Felt hats seem to be a much more suitable headgear than forage caps. They kept off rain and sun.

*From Lieut. Williams's Report*

*Messages.*—It is not the actual obtaining of information which is so difficult, but the transmission of that information in time to be of real value—especially when the collating station is continually on the move.

Nevertheless, this was, without doubt, one of the chief features of the exercise. Messages, sometimes of the greatest importance, were brought back long distances from the front, often right through the enemy's lines, in a very short space of time.

Time after time messengers had to leave their groups with important information without having the slightest idea as to the exact whereabouts of the main body, or more strictly speaking, of the collating point. Very seldom, however, did a message fail to arrive. Important news, owing to risk of being captured, was usually transmitted by word of mouth.

This, when carried, as it was, by an intelligent man, was far and away more useful than the written report. Five minutes' conversation with a man who had been on the spot and could express himself clearly was worth pages and pages of written matter.

What I mentioned as to changing of the collating station, which was often necessary, brings up the subject as to the best way of acquainting messengers of that change. Of course a man could be left at the old spot, though this, besides being expensive if it had to be done often, might in many cases be impossible, owing to the enemy having occupied that place.

We used to practise leaving messages in some easily discovered hole on a bridge, if there happened to be one in the vicinity, or under a stone at the foot of a telegraph pole—such as 'the first after leaving the town to the North'—and different devices of this sort which were arranged beforehand. These, however, were by no means certain, and not very successful.

The Tomahawk axe, however, with which before long I hope the scouts will be armed, should be a means of overcoming the difficulty. Blazing trees is simple to do and easy to notice. Different marks would of course signify different movements. If, however, there were no trees, sods cut from the sides of the road and placed in different shapes would answer the purpose just as well.

*Tracking.*—Being in the position of the hunted, actual tracking was not practised so much as the ability to cover one's tracks, though in two or three cases when the enemy were retiring close in front, the former came in very useful, especially after heavy rain, when the roads were like sheets of sand. As to the latter, however, the men became exceptionally skilful.

On arriving at a turn in the road when riding a bicycle, they would invariably pass it for some distance, incline to the side of the road, dismount, carry their machine back to the turning, walk up it some way and then remount. If on horseback, grass on the side of the road was always used, or, if this was not possible, they moved along exactly in the centre, so there was a chance of their tracks being mistaken for those of a cart-horse. On reaching a turning or gateway, they took care not to turn close to the gate-post or corner, for this would at once give them away as being mounted men. (For carts have naturally to keep in the centre because of the wheels.)

There were many other little points, such as backing a horse through a gateway, &c., &c., which towards the end of the operations the men got into the habit of doing.

*Shoeing.*—I regret to say that this was by no means good, though without doubt the continual road-work was rather a severe test. Nevertheless, considering that all the horses were newly shod just before starting, there should be no excuse for horses casting their shoes during the first few days of the exercise, which is what happened. Perhaps it was not altogether the shoeing that was at fault—though one horse was sent out with an extra pair of shoes that were three sizes too large for him—as the quality of the nails.

Farriers and shoeing smiths have complained of this before, and this exercise has certainly gone to prove their complaint to be correct.

At present I cannot trust my scouts to do their own shoeing, but hope that by next year they will be independent of the blacksmith.

Of course there is the difficulty of carrying the tools, but this should be overcome in some way or the other.

*Whistles.*—I should like to draw attention to the whistles with which the men were supplied. They were exceedingly useful. Being of the same note, one could easily recognise them from long distances off. They were the greatest help during night marches, when men were met in the dark or when parties lost touch with one another at night. Again, if the men happened to be spread over a village obtaining food, they could be called up in a very short space of time.

As it happened, this, in one instance, did occur. Owing to a false alarm it was necessary to call the men up at once. The note of the whistle was picked up and carried on to different parts of the town, and within three or four minutes all the men were doubling up to the rallying point.

*Electric flashlights.*—Owing to the great deal of night work that was done, it was often necessary to refer to the map. This meant lighting matches, which was often very inconvenient when there was heavy rain.

It would seem sound, therefore, to supply the men with small electric flashlight lamps (these may be had for a few shillings). Besides being useful for reading maps they are a great help in examining tracks at night. Again, if a person is suddenly met with in the dark, the lamp being flashed in his face, not only half blinds him, but also reveals what he is.

*Field glasses.*—With regard to the glasses carried by the men, it is not too strong to say that they are, owing to their inferior quality, practically useless. It would be well worth the authorities' while to issue a better quality, when one considers that in real war the fate of a larger body than a few regimental scouts may depend on a scout's power of seeing.

*Miscellaneous notes.*—If it has a good range of view, always send a couple of scouts to the highest point in the vicinity. However tedious the climb, it will be worth it.

If you want to evade an enemy always march at night and

lie up in the day time. Not only is it better for the horses, but the inhabitants are in bed.

If your map is accurate, go over it carefully before starting and make a list something like the following :—

First right on reaching main road.

First left.

Pass right.

Left at cross roads

and so on.

Thus it is easy to check your movements, and as the map has not to be referred to, the pace, necessarily, can be much faster.

If you use an advance scout, send him on a bicycle, at least a mile ahead, with a list the same as yours. On no account have a mounted man a few hundred yards in front of you. It is worse than useless. Not only does he start all the dogs in the neighbourhood barking sooner than they otherwise would, but he can do no good even if he meets the enemy. It is far better to be all together if the enemy do happen to be met with.

On the other hand, if the enemy has set a trap for you he would not likely be so foolish as to scare off the leading man.

Besides having scouts miles ahead, it is usually safer to have nearer protection.

To do this, have a man in front in such a way as to be always at the next corner in advance of the one the main body has arrived at. If there is a long stretch of road before the next turning, halt just in rear of the bend already reached, and wait until he has gained the next. (If the road twists very much, use two men in the same manner.)

If you think that there are a few of the enemy in a village, send on two men to crawl up until a view of the main street can be had. One then remains to watch while the other goes through as fast as possible on his bicycle. If there is anyone in the houses they will be sure to pop out and have a look at him after he has

passed, once they are sure there is no one following. The scout on watch returns and reports which house they came out of. Then, in spite of the landlord swearing he has never seen a soldier for the last two years, the very bedrooms of the house, if necessary, can be searched.

If you think they are friendly to the enemy, never say, 'Have any soldiers been here?' but ask whether the soldiers who passed through before had left any message for you, or something to that effect. Above all never tell the truth on any subject whatever.

Talk with them and let them talk to you, however, as much as possible, for you are sure to hear something that may be of value.

In the summer, don't tie up your horses under trees after rain. The gnats worry them frightfully.

Never go anywhere without your glasses and revolver.

*From Report by Lieut. Clowes, 19th Hussars, Unpire with  
Blue Force*

According to the scheme, the civilian population were in sympathy with BLUE; but of course they really gave information to either side as required. It was impossible for O.C. Blue to hide his movements and whereabouts from the civilians, as he had to keep a large party under his own hand as a reserve.

This giving away of all movements by civilians must always be a curse to any mimic hostilities; it can never be remedied, whereas in real warfare, one side could be sure of the assistance and secrecy of the population and the other side would know they were against them.

The police must, of course, be looked on in the same light.

If such a thing were possible, it would be a great help to the reality of things if the police could be ordered to assist one side, or else not to give information to either side.

Undoubtedly the bicycle is a very great deal more useful than the horse in any extended scheme of this kind; cyclists

can easily do 50 to 60 miles in the day, and can when really necessary move again at once; horses of course cannot do this; and horses cannot pound along the roads with despatches, however good the relay system is. Forage has to be secured, water, &c. One hundred cyclists could scour the whole of Ireland and keep in communication with each other.

There was a terrific amount of puncturing with the cyclists—I personally had a great quantity; by night it is a great business finding the puncture.

Before military cyclists can be absolutely counted on to get the messages through without delay, there must be some non-puncturing tyre. I would even suggest the cushion tyre, in spite of its extra weight, and they must be good bicycles—not cheap ones. Every man must have a pump and a repairing outfit, and there should be a certain number of spare new tyre covers always taken.

The despatch riders worked very hard and well; and except for cases of continued puncturing, all messages and orders got through in good time.

*Comments by G.O.C. 3rd Cavalry Brigade*

The small use made of signalling by BLUE is disappointing. The main object of denying the telegraph was to develop this. At any rate, some lamp work at night should have been attempted. Certainly our signalling lamps are not at present as satisfactory as they should be; but I hope that, in a scouting scheme of this sort which we shall arrange during the coming summer, this matter will receive more attention.

Our experience in this and other schemes has shown that notwithstanding the innumerable breakdowns and other drawbacks to bicycles, their use is of great assistance. It is regretted that stronger machines could not be obtained. The most satisfactory are those owned by individuals; and secondly, those owned by regimental cycle clubs. Those hired from civilian firms are almost useless for the work.



One of the principal items of expenditure in this scheme has been the hire price paid for the bicycles ; but this is unavoidable considering the damage done to them, and I consider the money so spent well laid out.

I am not convinced yet that bicycles will be of much use after the first few days of a campaign, unless they can be constantly renewed from the country ; but for instructional purposes, in the matter of opening men's minds by showing them fresh country, and, consequently, for teaching reconnaissance, map reading, ability to find their way about in a strange country, &c., they are far preferable to horses. At the same time we must not lose sight of the fact that we are Cavalrymen, and the horse is what we shall have to depend on in war. We should, therefore, not look on the bicycle as more than an auxiliary, and an excellent means of instruction.

Even if the bicycle, in such a scheme as this, is found of more use than the horse, the largest portion of the men should be mounted on horseback, as in addition to the reconnaissance work, the art of horsemanship in the matter of long-distance riding, and keeping of horses fit under difficult conditions, must never be lost sight of.

I am of opinion that cypher work should be encouraged amongst junior officers and men. The Special Ideas in this scheme were issued 24 hours before the officers taking part were given the key word to the cypher—in which the most important parts of them were written.

The cypher used was purposely an easy one, yet only one officer (Captain Weir) appeared to have mastered the scheme without waiting for the key word.

As regards maps. Lieut. Clowes, in his report, states that the scale of the training map is too small, *i.e.*, four miles to one inch. This small scale was purposely chosen, as although it is not so easy to read as the one inch, it is certainly quite as good as any we shall be likely to get in war.

## THE DEVELOPMENT OF THE SWORD

By B. E. SARGEAUNT, *Assistant Curator, Royal United Service Museum*

THE exact origin of the sword is unknown, but one thing is certain, the weapon has no connection whatever with the spearhead or dagger or other weapons of similar description, and those who attribute the sword's existence to gradual improvements wrought on primitive stabbing arms are deceived ; it is more likely the outcome of an early weapon corresponding in shape to the Meri \* of New Zealand, for it was primarily a weapon of offence or attack, and this by means of cutting and not by thrusting. The employment of the sword as a thrusting weapon is attributable to the advance of civilisation and the consequent growth and progress of the art of war ; and this may be illustrated by the Roman swordsmanship in the second Punic War, a war which taught them that a weapon for thrusting was more profitable and serviceable than one for cutting.

The sword has always been an arm for both Cavalry and Infantry from earliest times. In the year 710 B.C. the Assyrian horseman, riding without either saddle or spurs, always carried a lance and a sword. For dress he wore a casque with cheek-straps but without a crest ; he (unlike the Infantry soldier) rarely carried a buckler, but wore a cuirass, or coat of mail, with a curtain hanging from the back corresponding to the 'garde reins' in plate armour of the middle ages.

\* The Meri is a war-club, with somewhat sharp edges, which was used by the natives of New Zealand. It is seldom less than a foot or more than 18 inches in length, and is made of wood, bone, basaltic stone, or green jade. Some excellent specimens are to be seen in the Royal United Service Museum.

The Greek soldier possessed, as weapons of offence, a sword, at first short and broad, double-edged and sharp-pointed, with a rectangular sheath always worn on the right side ; a ' parazonium ' (a short, broad dagger corresponding to the ' langue de bœuf ' of the middle ages) worn on the left ; a lance from eleven to fifteen feet in length, the blade broad, long, and sharp, rounded towards the socket and with a cross-piece in the centre ; and lastly the javelin. The Greeks possessed no Cavalry during their early history, but it is recorded that they commenced to enrol horsemen in the year 400 B.C.

The Roman Cavalryman was equipped like the Greek, but later, to render him better able to meet the attacks of barbarians, he was protected by a new cuirass termed according to the method of construction, either ' squamata ' or ' hamata.' In the year 202 B.C. the Romans recognised the superiority of iron weapons over bronze, and commenced to equip their army accordingly. The iron thrusting sword of the Romans was seen to great advantage against the ' scramasaxe ' or cutting sword of the Franks, and again against the clumsy pointless swords of the Britons. It must be borne in mind that the use of the sword as a weapon of combined offence and defence is quite modern.

The sword in use in Europe from the Roman invasion of England until the end of the fourteenth century underwent but slight constructional changes ; it suffered alterations at various dates in the breadth and length of the blade. Swords of the fifteenth century are distinguishable by a raised ridge running along the centre ; they were chiefly two-edged thrusting swords with straight cross-pieces—the stamp of guard which had existed from the year 700. A good illustration of a sword of this description is that of Charlemagne in the Louvre ; it is 3 feet in length, with a very wide blade and blunted end. It was customary to kiss the cross-piece in lieu of a crucifix, and consequently the portion of the blade near it was not infrequently decorated with the engravings of saints. In Italy the manufacture of swords was conducted on so large a scale that the armourers of the single

town of Milan were able, after the battle of Macalo (1427), to supply in a few days arms for 4,000 Cavalry and 2,000 Infantry soldiers. Towards the close of the fifteenth century the cross-piece began to curve inwards towards the blade, although during the twelfth, thirteenth, and fourteenth centuries this form of hilt had been sometimes adopted.

The two-handed sword, which probably came into use at the close of the reign of Henry V., was at the height of esteem at the commencement of the sixteenth century—a good specimen of the fifteenth century is to be seen at the British Museum; it is 5 feet 8 inches in length, and was the state sword of Edward V. At the arsenal of Berne there is a Swiss fifteenth-century sword, 4 feet in length, with a serrated edge; a similar one, but of the sixteenth century, is to be seen in the Royal United Service Museum. With the termination of the sixteenth century the two-handed sword entirely disappeared. Pietro Monti, in 1509, speaks highly of the value of these weapons, and Giacomo de Grassi of Modena, in his ‘True Art of Defence,’ translated by an English gentleman and edited by Churchyard in 1594, says, ‘Because one may with it, as a galleon among many gallies, resist many swordes or other weapons; therefore in the warres it is used to be placed neere unto the Enseigne or Auncient for the defence thereof, because being of itselfe liable to contend with manie, it may the better safeguard the same. And because its waight and bignes requires great strength, therefore those onlie are allotted to the handling thereof, which are mightie and bigge to behould, great and stronge in bodie, and of stout and valiant courage.’

In the sixteenth century the single-handed sword, still two-edged, became more narrow and pointed, and was employed almost entirely for thrusting. The Roman preference of the point was rediscovered under new conditions, and fencing became an art. Early in the eighteenth century, the use of the edge having been finally abandoned in rapier-play, the two-edged blade was supplanted by the bayonet-shaped French duelling sword. Though it had been known in the fifteenth century, the

'pas d'âne' became almost universal with the sixteenth; it was a species of guard which came partly over the edge of the blade, and probably originated from the fact that at this period swords were frequently made with handles\* so short that it was impossible to grip them with the whole hand, consequently the thumb and forefinger were exposed along the blade.

The Cavalry sword of the sixteenth century was the 'estoc,' a thrusting weapon, carried rather as an auxiliary lance than as a sword. The rapiers of the 'estoc' shape were not in use before the reign of Charles V. of France, in whose time the modern art of fencing originated. The blades of the 'estoc' rapiers were made at Toledo, Seville and Solingen, and are very celebrated.† The 'estoc' was in some cases worn in place of the dagger at the right side, in others attached to the saddle, while the sword of arms was attached to the belt or armoured skirt of the knight. The rapier has a basket hilt, either solid or perforated, and a long straight handle. In the reign of Elizabeth the rapier became so popular that the term 'sword' was almost forgotten. Giacomo Grassi calls the rapier 'single-sword,' and gives instruction for cutting as well as thrusting with it. He also gives instructions for cutting with two swords at the same time, and in referring to this performance he talks of employing 'a case of rapiers.'

The Albanian horsemen of the sixteenth century (Stratiotai), owing to their desultory mode of fighting, were valuable auxiliaries to an army, and Charles VIII. of France, and Maximilian I. of Germany availed themselves of their services. The Government of Venice, in the middle of the sixteenth century, retained a large number of these horsemen.

Notwithstanding the introduction of the rapier and its popularity in the middle of the sixteenth century, the sword was

\* The hilts of Eastern swords are invariably made very small, allowing no play whatever to the wrist; this is due to the fact that the Oriental swordsman uses his sword chiefly from the shoulder, bringing into action all the strong muscles of the forearm and of the back. The European swordsman cuts mainly from the elbow.

† Amongst other places famous for their blades are Madrid, Cordova, Catugel, Badajoz, Valencia, Orgoz, Valladolid, Saragossa, and Bilbao.

still continued for war. 'The Earl of Essex,' Silver relates, 'to his unspeakable honour, and to our inestimable benefit, has begun to reduce the wearing of swords with hilts over the hands.' Silver asserts that a man armed with a sword and dagger is more than a match for one armed with a rapier and poignard.

The real Scotch claymore had a plain cross-guard, without the basket hilt which protected the entire hand: swords and sabres with these hilts are often wrongly called claymores, but they were used only by the Venetians, and were called 'schiafone,' being the weapon used by the Doge's guards in the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries; in Scotland they were not known till the eighteenth century.

There existed in the Meyrick collection at Goodrich Court a sword described as 'a Scotch basket-hilted sword,' the blade was stamped with the name Andrea di Ferrara, the hilt was apparently of the time of James II. Arthur Wilson, in his account of that monarch's reign, says that Lodowick Stuart, Earl of Richmond, paid court to Frances Howard, Countess of Hertford, during the lifetime of her husband, who died in 1621, 'sometimes in a blue coat with a basket-hilt sword'; but it is possible that the Spanish shell-guard was intended by this expression.

The handle of the sword of the seventeenth century was even more complicated than that of the sixteenth. Many of the handles have quite a profusion of guards, counter-guards and 'pas d'âne' guards. Their shape indicates a decline in taste; towards the latter part of the seventeenth century the quality of the blades deteriorated considerably.

Double-edged swords were prevalent in Europe down to the seventeenth century. The single-edge blade, or back-sword, as it is called in England, is well illustrated by the Scotch weapons. A good example of an early back-sword is that of Oliver Cromwell, in the Royal United Service Museum. Antonio Piccinino and Andrea di Ferrara were the most famous of Italian makers of sword-blades in the seventeenth century.

The origin of the Asiatic scimitar is, like that of the sword,

untraceable; it was the 'acinaces' of the Romans, and undoubtedly gave rise to the sabre. It was used only by Oriental nations in ancient times, and afterwards by the Moors, by Saracens, and by the Turks. The handle of the scimitar has no guard, the blade is single-edged, short and curved; it is slightly wider towards the end. The places especially connected with its manufacture are Damascus and Khorasan. The sabre is a weapon very like the scimitar; it was unknown to the Greeks and also for some time to the Romans, but was probably known to the Persians and the inhabitants of Iberia at an early date. The advantage gained by the scimitar and sabre over other forms of sword is in the fact that they possess a maximum of cutting power. The action of the curved edge in delivering a blow is to present an oblique and therefore highly acute angle section of the blade to the object struck. The disadvantages appertaining to sabres and scimitars are, firstly, the points are rendered almost useless for thrusting purposes; and, secondly, their capacities as defensive weapons, owing to their shapes, are much diminished. These two drawbacks have caused the scimitar type, after being in fashion for European Light Cavalry in the Napoleonic wars and up to the middle of the nineteenth century, to be discarded. Different forms of Oriental hatchet-sabres comprise the ataghan,\* khandjar, flissa, konkri and kampak; they are all very much alike and require no description; they were used entirely for slashing.

As already mentioned, the Light Cavalry sword of the earlier part of the nineteenth century was of the scimitar pattern; the Heavy Cavalry arm was, however, straight and of considerable weight. Towards 1820 a new pattern was adopted, slightly lighter, but with the same straight blade and a large hilt.

Until the introduction of the machine proof, swords were proved by striking each side flat on a table, and then back and

\* Many curious weapons were taken during the last war in the Soudan of the ataghan class; they were used by the Tonarik tribes, some being scythed while others were of the hatchet type.

edge on a block of wood : after this the blade was bent each way until the curvature amounted to a shortening in the whole length of from four to five inches according to the pattern. This old method was naturally not so reliable as the machine test, for the simple reason that no two men would strike with the same amount of force, nor would any one man be striking with equal force throughout an entire day.

The essentials for a good sword are sharpness, balance, combination of strength with lightness, and elasticity with firmness. It is an accepted truth that a thrust \* is always more efficient than a cut, and therefore a sword which is too elastic vibrates in the hand and is of little use. A point of importance connected with a sword and one very little studied is the centre of percussion ; it is that part of the sword in which its whole force is concentrated and on which there is no vibration. The portion of the sword from the centre of percussion to the point is termed the 'faible,' or portion to be employed for cutting ; the lower part from the centre of percussion to the hilt is called the 'fort' and is intended for guarding.

\* Statistics have shown that a puncture in the chest or abdomen from a sword-point is more likely to prove fatal than the deepest cut on other parts of the body.



## NOTES ON ILLUSTRATIONS

1. Claymore used by an officer at the siege of Quebec in 1759.—Royal United Service Museum.

(As already remarked, swords with this description of hilt are often wrongly termed 'claymores'; but it must be borne in mind that the Scotch claymore, up to the year 1700, possessed a plain cross-guard with no basket hilt.)

2. English backsword used by Oliver Cromwell at the siege of Drogheda in 1649, where he himself led the storming party at the final assault.—Royal United Service Museum.

3. Two-handed sword, being the State Sword of Edward V. (1475-1483). It is five feet eight inches in length. The sheath and handle are enriched with polychrome enamels.—British Museum.

4. Sabre of the sixteenth century with bone handle and curious guard. It was brought from Candia.—Royal United Service Museum.

5. Turkish yataghan; the handle and sheath are plated with silver, embossed and engraved.—Royal United Service Museum

6. Sword of the fifteenth century, two-edged, with point and ridged blade. It possesses curved quillons and a large pommel, three inches in diameter. The sword was discovered in the Thames in 1739 when excavating for Westminster Bridge. The two metal lockets and the point of the scabbard are seen on the blade, the intervening portions of the scabbard having been worn away.—Royal United Service Museum.

7. Cut and thrust sword of Bilbao manufacture; the blade is three feet in length.—Royal United Service Museum.

8. Sword of the tenth century.—Musée d'Artillerie, Paris.

9. German or Swiss sword of the first half of the sixteenth century.—Musée d'Artillerie, Paris.

10. Italian sword of about 1560, attributed to Benvenuto Cellini.—Musée d'Artillerie, Paris.

11. Sword of the twelfth century.—Musée d'Artillerie, Paris.

12. Cut and thrust sword of the middle of the fifteenth century.—Musée d'Artillerie, Paris.

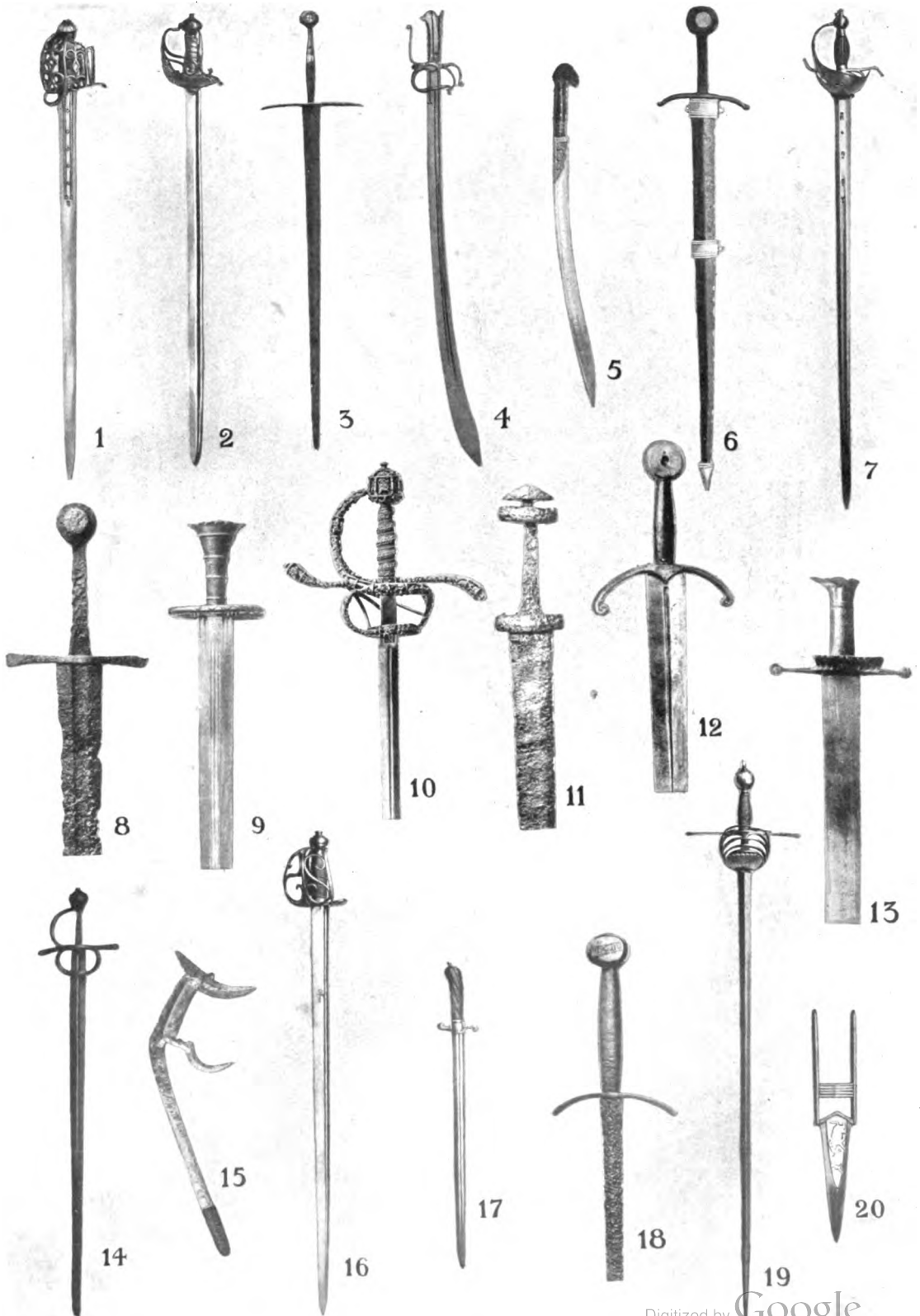
13. Sword of a foot-soldier of the sixteenth century.—Musée d'Artillerie, Paris.

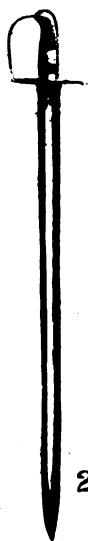
14. Straight, two-edged sword of the sixteenth century with straight quillons and pas d'âne.—Royal United Service Museum.

15. Scythed yataghan of Tonarik manufacture. The same tribes also used a form of hatchet yataghan—Royal United Service Museum.

16. Backsword of the seventeenth century with brass basket hilt.—Royal United Service Museum.

17. Short sword, or hanger, worn by Major-General James Wolfe when he fell in the hour of victory at Quebec on September 13, 1759. It was given by his mother to his schoolfellow and friend, General Hon. George Warde, Colonel of





21



22



23



24



25



26



27



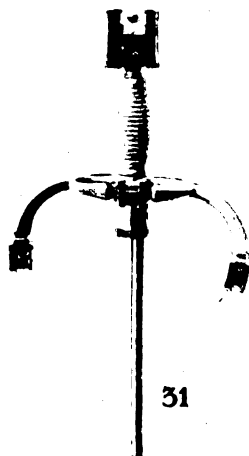
28



29



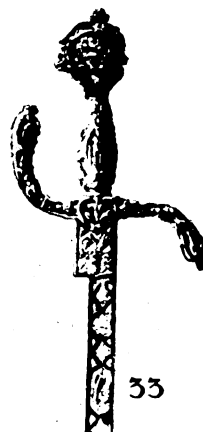
30



31



32



33



34



35



36



37



38



39



40

the 4th Dragoon Guards. It bears the inscription: 'Heinrich Koll me fecit, Heinrich Koll clingen.'—Royal United Service Museum.

18. Sword of the latter part of the fourteenth century.—Musée d'Artillerie, Paris.

19. Italian rapier of the seventeenth century. The blade is four feet in length.—Royal United Service Museum.

20. Hindoo khouttar with 'langue de bœuf' blade; this description of blade existed in the parazonium of the ancient Greeks and Romans, and in the Italian anelace of the fifteenth century.—Royal United Service Museum.

21. Heavy Cavalry sword, 1820.—Royal United Service Museum.

22. Trooper's sword, 1885.—Royal United Service Museum.

23. Persian sabre with Damascus blade.—Royal United Service Museum.

24. Light Cavalry officer's sword, 1815.—Royal United Service Museum.

25. Staff pattern sword, 1815.—Royal United Service Museum.

26. Light Cavalry trooper's sword, 1815.—Royal United Service Museum.

27. Officer's sword, Madras Light Cavalry, 1840.—Royal United Service Museum.

28. Yeomanry cavalry sword, 1870.—Royal United Service Museum.

29. Sword (French) of the commencement of the seventeenth century. It possesses straight quillons and a pas d'âne.—Musée d'Artillerie, Paris.

30. Sword of King Francis I. (1515).—Musée d'Artillerie, Paris.

31. Rapier of King Henry II. of France (1547).—Musée d'Artillerie, Paris.

32. Sword of King Charles IX. of France (1560).—Musée d'Artillerie, Paris.

33. Italian sword; middle of the sixteenth century.—Musée d'Artillerie, Paris.

34. Heavy Cavalry sword, 1815.—Royal United Service Museum.

35. Persian scimitar with wavy blade.—Royal United Service Museum.

36. Kabyle flissa with ornamented handle. The khandjar and yataghan much resemble this weapon. None of them possesses a guard.—Royal United Service Museum.

37. Turkish scimitar, with ivory handle and gold mountings.—Royal United Service Museum.

38. Cavalry officer's sword, 1880.—Royal United Service Museum.

39. Sikh tulwar, a form of scimitar, carried in a wooden sheath.—Royal United Service Museum.

40. Officer's Heavy Cavalry sword, 1860.—Royal United Service Museum.

***THE RUSSIAN CAVALRY IN THE WAR  
WITH THE JAPANESE***

By STAFF-COLONEL ZALESSKIJ IN THE *Ruskii Invalid*

Translated from the *Internationale Revue über die gesamten Armeen und Flotten*.

THE intelligence hitherto published on the operations of the Cavalry of the two belligerents during the Russo-Japanese War is most incomplete; the raids of the Russian Generals Rennenkamp and Mistchenko only are occasionally mentioned. The Russian Colonel Zaleskij has recently expressed himself on this subject, and what he says may be of sufficient interest to be reproduced here.

It is difficult to form any idea of under what difficult conditions the Russian Cavalry was obliged to act. The theatre of operations was absolutely unknown and unexplored; the country mountainous and heavily wooded. The population was in part hostile and in part intimidated by the inflexible severity of the Japanese; their customs, differing entirely from those of Europeans, and their absolutely incomprehensible language prevented all intercourse with them. To this must be added the dearth of reliable maps of the country, the rapidly changing condition of the roads (to-day passable, to-morrow bottomless), and the unfortunate effects of the foreign climate and of unaccustomed food on both men and horses.

All these conditions will, without doubt, never coincide in a European war. Our Cavalry must, however, take them into account and learn to master them.

Other branches of the service, too, found circumstances to

which they were unaccustomed and learnt to adapt themselves to them. The Cavalry should follow this example. In a similar case one cannot rely on the enemy ; that would be a most grave fault, for no one can foresee when the war will end, and if the desperate contest may not recommence at the very moment when one thought it had ended.

Let us ask what our Cavalry did, and how it fulfilled the duty confided to it.

We had an enormous numerical superiority of Cavalry, but a great portion of that Cavalry, especially of the Cossacks, was employed as orderlies, in conducting convoys, as escorts to columns, and to officers, &c., in an altogether exaggerated and unjustifiable degree ; this contributed to paralyze our Cavalry and to take all its dash from it.

From the commencement of the war all our scouting was done by small, and sometimes, alas ! by very large Cavalry detachments on foot. Mounted work clashed with the difficulties of the terrain, which were frequently further increased by the enemy's action. The latter was never visible, but made his fire constantly felt, frequently at very long ranges. The only thing that remained to be done was to dismount, and attempt to get close to the enemy under cover, by crawling, or under favour of the dark. Under these conditions, therefore, the Cavalry most frequently failed to carry out its mission.

The above method of scouting requires that a Cavalryman not only knows how to move both when mounted and on foot, but that he has, in addition, initiative, confidence in himself, a certain independence, and a highly developed bump of locality. It does not suffice to train a few men as scouts ; nowadays every man must know those duties, the most important that Cavalry have to perform, and must be thoroughly exercised in them. As one cannot imagine a good Cavalry soldier who cannot ride well, so should he also be thoroughly acquainted with all the duties of a scout.

With this object, however, we have trained merely a few

intelligent men in each squadron, and in addition these are for the most part employed as clerks, orderlies, and frequently even as officers' servants and grooms. Thus, when they are most required in the squadrons, none are forthcoming.

I will pass on to the raids whose object was to annoy the enemy at every point, to force him to detach troops and to organise a—frequently most laborious—service of surveillance, and finally to damage him by destroying his provisions, surprising his convoys, &c. These were the objects of Mistchenko's raids on Yinkow in 1904, and on Takoumin and Schifondzi in 1905, as well as of other small detachments, as that under Colonel Hillenschmidt. But they always only partially succeeded, and sometimes even they completely failed; celerity, that primary condition for all Cavalry success, was lacking.

In 1904, Mistchenko's detachment only covered 80 kilometres (about 19 miles) a day. The Japanese had time to take counter-measures, and the appearance of so considerable a force on the badly protected lines of communication, and in rear of the enemy, was rendered futile.

Mistchenko's last raid succeeded far better, and proved that, even in that country, good Cavalry, well led, can accomplish a great deal. It was carried out with astonishing rapidity, at about 50 kilometres (about  $31\frac{1}{2}$  miles) a day, and we there see bold attacks combined with the rational employment of fire by dismounted horsemen and by Artillery. In this instance the Cavalry knew how to utilize to the best effect and simultaneously the horse, the *arme blanche* and the rifle, in order to obtain the desired result. But here too, nevertheless, we find an exaggerated and useless practice of dismounted action on the part of the Cavalry.

Strategic reconnaissance was carried out in the same method, that is to say, by the preferential employment of fire action. On the front of the army and on both its flanks, and later on during the retreat, the action almost always consisted in dismounted firing, and this became even more pronounced when the Cavalry was used in conjunction with the other arms in the great battles.

What were the numerous Cavalry divisions and brigades doing during the battles of Liao-yang, on the Sha-ho, and before Mukden? Why did not they attack the Japanese battalions, which were completely exhausted after four and six days' fighting? The very appearance of a mass of Cavalry charging at speed would have sufficed to decide the fate of the decimated and completely shaken enemy! The few attacks, however, delivered by utterly insufficient forces (of from two to three sotnias) could not achieve that result; they were merely insignificant episodes, incapable of changing the progress of the action.

Why did not the Russian Cavalry attack the hostile batteries, which frequently found themselves isolated and were decimated by our fire, but which, nevertheless, continued their fire with half their guns and inflicted enormous losses on us, by using up their last man and their last cartridge? It might be concluded from all these circumstances that this war should fundamentally change opinion on the object and the employment of Cavalry. I, however, am not of this opinion; the object and the great importance of Cavalry in the fight remain absolutely the same. It must, on the other hand, be recognised that this war has exposed much, even too much, of defects in the organisation, in the training, and in the employment of the Russian Cavalry; this is a severe lesson for the future development of that arm.

The cry most generally heard, on account of the disasters in the Far East, is to the effect that 'what is unnecessary for war is useless and bad in peace.' This war has, in addition, given birth to an entirely new method.

Infantry is heavily entrenched, Artillery is kept in the rear concealed behind heights, the fire of both has reached an efficacy hitherto unknown at long ranges; firing lines extend in width without becoming weaker, thanks to the increased power of weapons; the flanks are protected by fortified works resting on natural obstacles. Whilst the enemy is still invisible heavy losses are frequently sustained. One wishes to diverge to the sides, and one knocks up against fortifications and lines



of obstacles. What should the Cavalry do? Can it manœuvre in mass, by entire brigades or by divisions?

It is certain that the hostile fire renders such operations impossible at the present day. For fighting, Cavalry must adopt other formations, without intervals and distances fixed beforehand; alone the sole object to be attained should permeate it and lead it to success.

The charge in closed ranks, which has hitherto been considered in Russia as the most important, if not the only, method of Cavalry action, should be relegated to the same value as the Infantry bayonet attack; it will probably be used more frequently than the latter, but it will most often be delivered in extended order. Thus the Cavalry should in future be always ready to attack, but it must not therefore fear fire action, for which it should be trained far more thoroughly than has been done hitherto. It should not merely neglect the final step of its training, but should, on the contrary, endeavour to make every man an accomplished horseman, and at the same time a good shot. The adoption of machine guns by the Cavalry, perhaps even attaching them to each squadron, cannot be too quickly carried out. This weapon is indispensable for Cavalry.

In consequence of the increased extent of front of a battle, of the efficacious range of weapons, and in general of the looser formations of the various portions of a Cavalry corps, methods of connection and communication assume a great importance, and it is thus absolutely necessary to provide Cavalry with modern means of communication, such as telephone, telegraph, and optical signalling apparatus, and to thoroughly exercise them in their use.

It might be deduced from the above that Cavalry should copy Infantry. This is only true as regards preparation for the battle, which lasts until a favourable moment presents itself for the attack of Cavalry in mass (the Infantry assault). That is the moment that the Cavalry commander should persistently

watch for, and of which he should profit with his whole strength. At such a moment the Cavalry should have the courage to risk the whole for the whole ; it is only thus that it can succeed and make the enemy feel its entire force.

If the Cavalry is ready to fight at all moments, it will engross the enemy's attention even during the preparation for battle ; every error on the part of the latter will be profited by for the decisive action, the success of which entirely depends on rapidity of action. This rapidity of movement, the possibility of causing the distant units to act in conjunction, and the combination of fire with mounted action, have become an inevitable necessity for Cavalry, as much in scouting as in the actual battle. What do these requirements necessitate in regard to the Russian Cavalry ? Above all, the officer should understand his duty better ; the commanders must acquire the necessary ability to weigh the tactical exigencies of a modern battle at a glance. The knowledge of regulations and parade movements is utterly insufficient. The Cavalry officer should be thoroughly conversant with the whole domain of tactics, be a good horseman and a good shot, be both intelligent and energetic, and should possess all the qualities necessary to make him a pattern to his men.

Cavalry should know how to act in close formation ; but it is still more important that it should be able to cover long distances (even hundreds of versts) with rapidity and without leaving stragglers behind, that it should fear no obstacle (marshes, rivers, &c.), that it should be able to open a well-directed fire both on foot and mounted, and that above all it should know how to act on its own initiative and with energy.

In all this, however, we were but little trained in Russia, and in certain matters we were not even exercised at all. Our chief work is drill in compact formation and some parade movements. It is according to them that the fitness of Cavalry officers and the value of their troops are judged. We have still normal formations for attacks by regiments, &c., even by Cavalry corps, which are useless for war. This was convenient,

but it was unfortunate ; and, as is known, certain things are not easily unlearnt.

The Russo-Japanese War and its evil results will bring us back into the right track, and we will draw up new rules for the organisation and training of our Cavalry. These new points of view may be thus formulated :—

1. The Cavalryman must be thoroughly instructed in riding, in shooting (both on foot and mounted), and to fight, and must be accustomed to exercise his initiative and intelligence.

2. The Cavalry must be given machine guns (at least two per regiment).

3. The Cavalry must be accustomed to rapid and long journeys, covering much ground, without too greatly considering the good appearance of the horses.

4. The equipment of both men and horses must be lightened, as its cumbersomeness appeared to be the cause, in a great measure, of lack of mobility on the part of our Cavalry.

5. Troops must be thoroughly trained in getting over obstacles of ground, and especially in crossing rivers.

6. Many parade exercises must be abolished and replaced by manœuvres on the ground, which will prove, at the same time, the capacity both of the troops and of the officers ; scouting must be thoroughly studied and practised.

7. Men must be relieved of all drills which are useless for war.

8. Officers (especially young ones and cadets) must be thoroughly instructed in the duty of Cavalry, and, as much as possible, practically.

9. The Cavalry must be freed from those numerous detachments of men told off for the most varied garrison duties, for escorts, &c. ; these are only prejudicial to military education.

## **CROMWELL'S CAVALRY**

By BREVET-MAJOR W. H. GREENLY, D.S.O.,  
*12th Lancers*

No. 2

Cromwell's pursuits—Inferiority of Parliamentary Cavalry in early stages of the fighting—The habits of the period responsible for good raw material—Cromwell's early engagements.

IN a previous article we have seen the deplorable condition to which the military forces in England had declined at the commencement of the Civil War, and have noticed the general tendency of contemporary military thought, especially with regard to the training and use of Cavalry.

Let us now turn for a moment to the man who, in but a few years, and those years of war, was to create, amid such unpromising surroundings, not only a Cavalry force of the highest efficiency, but an army which compares favourably with any in history. In 'Cavalry: Its Past and Future,' from which much of this article has been drawn, Captain Maude has described Cromwell's Cavalry as at its best the equal and more than the equal of the best that Europe has ever seen.

Cromwell was forty-three years old when the war broke out: he had married at twenty-one, and settled down to the life of a country gentleman, his chief amusements being hawking and hunting; as far as is known he had had no military training or experience of any kind. He was a man of boundless energy and perseverance, of passionate temper and great personal courage, and he was intensely religious. Being quite unhampered by tradition, he brought sound common-sense to bear upon the

problems which faced him, and by closely studying the faults of his enemy he saw how best to beat him.

At first the Royalist horse far outnumbered that of the Parliament, and Cromwell soon saw that where the Parliament failed most was in Cavalry, not only in quantity, but in quality.

After one of the earliest engagements of the war, in which the Parliamentary Cavalry had been badly beaten by an inferior force of Royalists, he said to Hampden : ‘ Your troopers are most of them old, decayed serving-men and tapsters, and such kind of fellows. Do you think that the spirits of such base and mean fellows will ever be able to encounter *gentlemen* that have honour and courage and resolution in them ? You must get men of spirit that are likely to go on as far as gentlemen will go, or else you will be beaten still.’

He was equally careful in his selection of officers. ‘ I beseech you be careful what captains of horse you choose, what men be mounted : a few honest men are better than numbers. If you choose godly, honest men to be captains of horse, honest men will follow them. I had rather have a plain, russet-coated captain that knows what he fights for, and loves what he knows, than that which you call a gentleman and is nothing else. I honour a gentleman that is so indeed.’

There is no doubt that at first the best men in the nation did not come forward, but when, later on, they did come, they were very good ; they were men of great earnestness of purpose, and ready to risk all they had in the cause which they took up. The devotion of the Puritans to the cause of the Parliament was not less remarkable than the whole-hearted loyalty with which the Cavaliers ruined themselves and their families in the service of the King.

The raw material from another point of view was the best possible for Cavalry ; in the roadless state of the country as it then was, it was no uncommon thing to ride fifty miles or more in one day on the same horse, and thus the recruits not only could all ride, but also, and equally important, all had

some knowledge of horsemastership. The same causes, too, had led to a very useful stamp of horse for military purposes. It was these initial advantages that made it possible for Cromwell to train his Cavalry to the degree of excellence which they attained in the extremely short time at his disposal. Similar advantages were enjoyed by the Confederate Cavalry at the beginning of the American War of Secession in 1861, and resulted in making them so greatly superior to the Federals.

Cromwell first began recruiting for his Cavalry in January 1642. He set to work in his own county, where he knew the men, and accepted none who were not of the stamp which he felt to be necessary if he were to quickly convert them into Cavalry capable of defeating the horsemen of the King. Thirty or forty, all volunteers, joined him at once; nearly all were of the yeoman class, stern, fanatic Puritans, who carried their bibles in the same holsters as their pistols. Cromwell's discipline, too, was very severe: 'No man swears but he pays his 12 pence; if he be drunk, he is set in the stocks or worse.' Most of his recruits brought their horses with them, and Cromwell armed and equipped them by wholesale commandeering of the property of all known to be of loyalist sympathies; it is only fair, however, to add that he himself spent £300 on the same object, and that his own uncle was among those whose houses he raided.

In September he was made a captain, and by March 1643, with the rank of colonel, he was at the head of five troops. With these he made a raid from Cambridge to Lowestoft, doing in all 250 miles in nine days, an average of 28 miles a day. By the middle of April he had raised fourteen troops, some 800 to 900 men all told. The difficulty of finding time for drill must have been very great, as the troops were mostly split up into small detachments, and were constantly engaged in skirmishes against the enemy. Drill, however, there had to be, and a great deal of it, for Cromwell was thoroughly convinced of its necessity, and the careful individual instruction of every man and horse was the principle on which he based his work.

On May 15, 1648, at Grantham, Cromwell had his first successful encounter with the Royalist Cavalry.

It is not possible to discuss in any detail the numerous fights in which Cromwell took part, but it is very interesting to trace through some of them the gradual development of his battle tactics.

Here at Grantham we find the two forces halting opposite each other for half an hour or more, standing 'a little above musket shot,' while the dragoons fired at each other; then, as Cromwell says, 'the enemy not advancing, *we agreed* to charge them: the pace was a pretty round trot.' The Royalists, it is true, were not led by Rupert or Goring, and we never hear later of either side waiting to receive a charge at the halt. Cromwell on this occasion certainly gave the enemy time to take the initiative, but it is the last time on which we read of him hesitating, and afterwards *he* is invariably the first to charge.

It would appear that Cromwell only attempted the charge at full gallop later on, when his men and horses were sufficiently trained to keep in close order at full speed. Rupert, on the other hand, invariably charged at the gallop, and nearly always with loose files, owing to the insufficient training of his horses. This was certainly one of the principal reasons why the better drilled Ironsides under Cromwell invariably beat him.

It may be interesting to mention here that the term Ironsides was not used at the period at all for Cromwell's soldiers. After Marston Moor, one of the Parliamentary newspapers refers to Cromwell himself as 'the Ironside,' for that name, it says, 'was given him by Rupert after his defeat near York.'

Cromwell defeated Rupert and every other Cavalry leader he engaged, and yet Rupert defeated in turn nearly all the other Parliamentary Cavalry leaders.

In July of the same year, 1648, came the fight to relieve Gainsborough. On the two days preceding the battle, Cromwell with his Cavalry had marched 25 miles and 29 miles, and on the day itself started at two o'clock in the morning and did

10 miles before meeting the enemy. Then, after some preliminary skirmishing, they came to the bottom of a steep hill, a rabbit warren which could only be ascended by certain tracks, and on all of these the enemy opposed them. They finally succeeded in getting up the hill, but unfortunately no details are to be found of how they actually fought their way to the top.

Cromwell was in command of nineteen or twenty troops of horse and three or four of dragoons, some 1,300 to 1,400 men in all. When they got to the top of the hill, they saw a great force of the enemy's horse facing them at about musket shot, and a good reserve of a full regiment of horse behind them. Cromwell at once tried to get his men into as good order as he could, but while he was doing so the enemy saw their advantage and advanced to the attack. This time Cromwell never hesitated a moment, but 'in such order as we were, we charged their great body.' They met horse to horse, and after a sharp fight with swords and pistols the Royalists began to give a little, when Cromwell, pressing in upon them, routed the whole body. The bulk of the Parliamentary Cavalry followed in pursuit for 5 or 6 miles.

Later in the day, on another part of the field, Cromwell was ordered to cover the retirement of some Infantry. For about half a mile his troops retired in considerable disorder, and Cromwell himself says that they came off with some trouble, 'being wearied with the long fight and the horses tired.' However, he soon got them in hand again, and, facing the now very superior enemy with four squadrons of his own and four of Lincolneers, gradually fell back by alternate squadrons, and finally brought off his troops 'without the loss of two men.'

Both these fights show Cromwell's genius as a Cavalry leader: in the first, with troops much disordered by their climb, he attacked and routed an enemy ready to receive him, and with every advantage of ground in their favour; in the second, his retirement and successful covering of the Infantry without losing a man, in the face of a fresh and very superior enemy, was a



great performance, especially when we remember how tired his horses must have been after their long day's marching and fighting. They probably covered at least 80 miles on the day of the fight, after doing 54 on the two previous days.

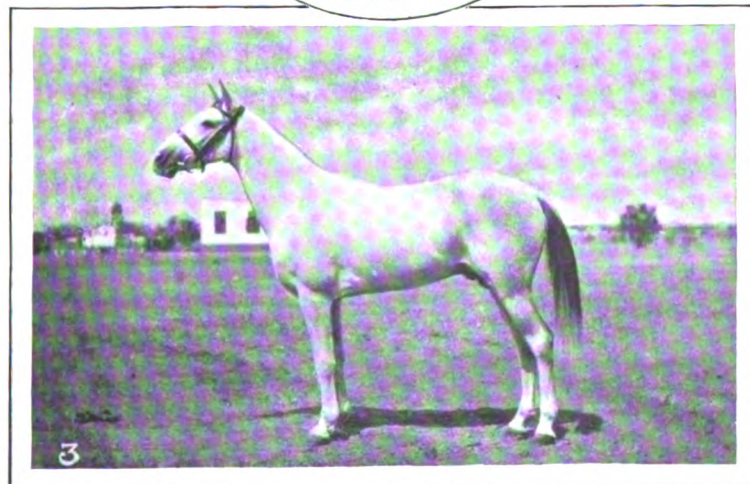
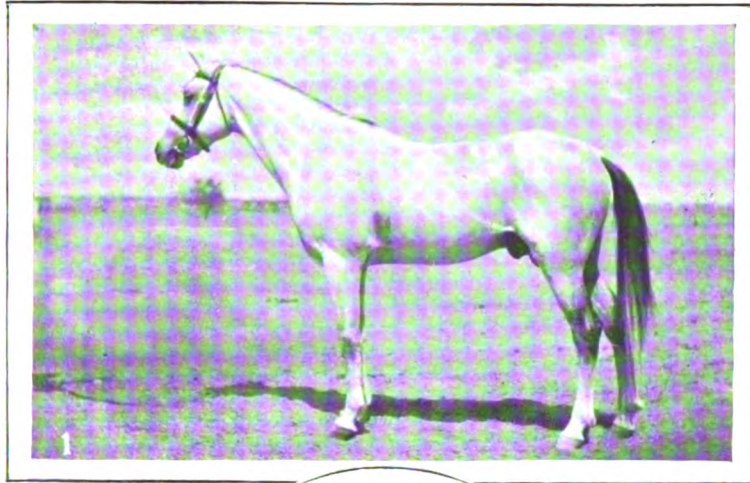
In July, 1644, came Marston Moor, and the battle shows the high state of efficiency to which Cromwell's Cavalry had by then attained. The armies were not formed up till three or four in the afternoon, and after a useless cannonade, which ceased at about five, they were both resting at 7 P.M. Rupert and Cromwell directly faced each other, and both were watching for an opportunity; but a broad ditch which separated the armies deterred either Cavalry from advancing.

Rupert's Cavalry were about 300 yards beyond the ditch and apparently dismounted, when suddenly Cromwell swept down the hill, over the ditch, and crashed into their ranks almost before Rupert had time to get them mounted and advance to meet the attack. There was a fierce hand-to-hand fight, in which Cromwell was at last victorious, after charging and rallying three separate times.

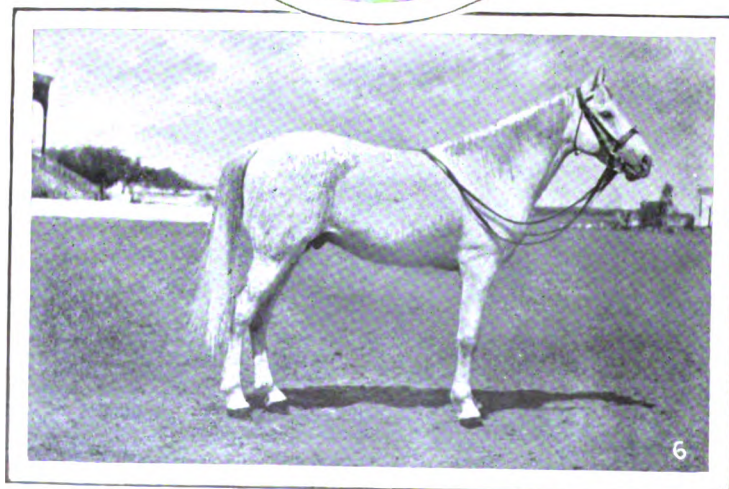
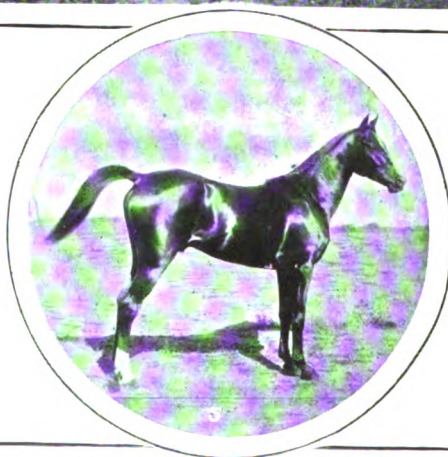
How great an obstacle the ditch really was it is impossible to be certain at this distance of time, but contemporary accounts make it out to have been a very considerable one. To have advanced across it to the attack, with such an enemy as Rupert only 300 yards beyond it, shows the complete confidence which Cromwell had in the riding of his men, and the way in which they crossed it, with apparently no disorder, though charging knee to knee, proves that his confidence was amply justified.

On several occasions, notably at Naseby, we have specific accounts of Cromwell's careful and personal reconnoissance of ground. In this instance, therefore, we can safely assume that, though the Parliamentary Cavalry had been resting, the ditch had been carefully reconnoitred. Cromwell rested and nursed his Cavalry whenever possible, but he also taught them that good Cavalry is never *idle*, and that resting and idling are very different things.

*(To be continued.)*



- No. 1. A high class Syrian Arab. A beautiful charger and hack, a winner of races.  
No. 2. Type of Remount for Egyptian Army.  
No. 3. Arab Racing Pony.



No. 4. Type of Remount for Egyptian Army.

No. 5. 'Charlie,' an Indian Racing Pony.

No. 6. A good type of serviceable Troop Horse, Egyptian Army.

## **MY FIRST EXPERIENCES IN SEARCH OF REMOUNTS**

By CAPTAIN GODFREY GILLSON, R.A., *Commanding Artillery,  
Egyptian Army*

### **II.—SYRIA**

The writer deals in this article with horses in Syria—The various classes of Arab horses described—A plea for Arab strain for our troop-horses.

WE were very sorry to bid farewell to Pesth, brightest and cheeriest of cities, where everyone seems glad to be alive, but we had to catch the Oriental express for Constantinople that evening, though had there been time enough at our disposal we should have preferred travelling thither by boat on the Danube.

Three days from Constantinople brought us to Beyrout on the day that the poor imprisoned passengers were let out of quarantine; we felt no reason to regret the route we had preferred.

On landing we were met by one of the agents who had contracted to supply us with horses at a fixed price, and up to a specified standard. He was a charming old Syrian hotel-keeper, speaking English and French fluently, who had taken up the horse contract many years ago without, I think, any strong natural turn for the business. His horses varied very much, nor did their condition and surroundings in any way help them to appear to advantage. There were among them representatives of nearly all the classes to be found in the country, yet I fancy their owner knew little about them beyond their original price.

There are several distinct classes to be seen in Syria, which may be roughly classified as follows :

1. The Lebanon horse, a fine-looking, upstanding animal, full-quartered and big-boned, who makes a better carriage-horse than anything else in the country. Reaching as much as fifteen hands, he is inclined to be straight on his fetlocks and with rough work soon knuckles over. Deficient in girth and consequently in stamina, he should be avoided as a remount.

2. The Gazowi or Gaza District horse, also a big, powerful animal; but soft and inclined to be slow; unsuitable for remount purposes through lack of quality.

3. The Druse horse, bred by this tribe, a people of wild ways and a queer mystic religion, who have ere now made the Turks suffer severely in their efforts to subdue them. He stands about 14.2, a strong, thick-set horse on very short legs, of good blood, which, combined with a placid temperament, makes him a long-wearing and useful troop-horse.

4. The horse from the Homms or Homa district and Aleppo, a good sturdy horse with a fair amount of breeding; not a bad remount.

5. The horse called an 'Arab' by the natives of Damascus and Beyrout, from which class come the majority of the Egyptian Cavalry and Horse Artillery remounts; comprising horses from the Roala and Orfa tribes, migratory people who move about the country in accordance with the grazing at the time of year; and among them must be included the Nejed breed. These horses show the most quality, and though lighter in size and bone than those previously described, their pure desert blood and consequent stoutness more than counteract this disadvantage, as they will struggle on through any privations, never knowing when they are beat.

In this class I include the Bedouin, as the natives absolutely refuse to differentiate between them, using the term Arab and Bedouin alternately to describe the same horse, though to the European eye there is room for two classes under this heading. The Bedouin is taller than the Arab, inclined to be goose-rumped and distinctly cow-hocked, none of which failings are common to

the Arab, but a horse which takes the eye owing to his length of rein, fine riding shoulders, elastic action, wiry varmint appearance, and whose well-set-on head ensures his being easy to ride and train.

A certain number of horses of good class find their way into the Damascus market down the Euphrates.

There is also the pack-horse or Kedeesh (underbred), a vulgar horse preferred by the natives for breeding mules.

We left Beyrout accompanied by the other agent, and were glad to get out of the nasty sticky climate whose nights were more unpleasant than the days. Passing over the Lebanon, we crawled along by rail into much pleasanter weather, and enjoyed quite a cool night at a large and pretentious hotel on the summit. In the morning we hurried on to Damascus, passing through mulberry gardens where the profitable silkworm was being encouraged to busy himself. As we neared the ancient city the line ran alongside the rapid little river that supplies every household with a fountain, and enables its valley to grow the very best of fruits: peaches, nectarines, and grapes, all of the best, were luckily in season at the time. The agent we had now to do with was a man of an entirely different stamp, a horse-dealer who knew his business as well as any man need do, turning his horses out in the pink of glossy condition; his men, too, had little to learn in the art of showing them off. I fancy many a horse has left his yard without much room for the improvement in appearance which the sanguine purchaser is apt to allow for. He had an endless experience of the various tribes and their horses extending almost to Arabia, being a Kurd himself by descent, and on this theme his conversation was well worth listening to. A real hard-bitten fellow he was, ready to go any distance at any time either for sport or business. His account of a ride to overtake a defaulting creditor who was about to take boat from Beyrout spoke highly for the powers of the Bedouin pony; the distance and time, oddly enough, were nearly identical with the recent Brussels-Ostend race, the difference being that



he rode his horse quietly homeward next day, surely a more desirable termination than the other. I tried hard to get his opinion on the comparative merits of the Arab to be found in Bombay and the best of the breed that find their way through Damascus to the Cairo racecourse; so many people are ever ready to assert that the Bombay Arab is infinitely superior to the other, yet I always believe that, taking only the exceptional flyers from both places that have individually won the biggest races, you will find him to be one and the same horse, the times being slightly in favour of Cairo; but possibly that course is rather faster, having two gentle slopes in the mile and a quarter up and down, which is probably less tiring than the dead levels of the Indian 'maidans.'

The native Bedouin himself invariably rides a mare, which generally takes the eye, not only as possessing greater beauty than the horse, but also as being a bigger and more powerful animal; perhaps, being the more valuable, mares are better done in their youth than their brothers. One seldom sees them ridden in anything more than a light halter with hemp reins and a chain noseband, which considerably alters the carriage of the head from the tucked-in position caused by a severe bit to a horizontal one instead, and a native will detect a pure-bred desert pony from the other breeds by the carriage of his head alone.

The real Bedouin has unbounded faith in pedigree and pedigree alone. I was assured that if a pedigree mare dropped twin foals one of which was as well-favoured as the other was ill, the Bedouin would not allow there was a piastre's-worth difference in value between them. They carry this creed into their private lives, never choosing a bride for her personal beauty, caring not if she be halt or blind, provided that she comes of a family of 'Ghuddahs,' which being interpreted means 'good-plucked ones.' Some tribes lay claim to pedigrees for their breed of horses for three or four centuries, and are in possession of a piece of wood on which the family tree is recorded. Animals of this class seem almost impossible to obtain there nowadays,

partly owing to inter-tribal feuds and partly owing to less trouble being generally taken in horse-breeding—why I cannot say, as the motor has not yet made its way into fashion among them.

The Egyptian Government have always found it necessary to employ agents to collect horses for them from the Bedouins, the latter having such a tedious and elaborate horse-coping etiquette, that many days must elapse and cigarettes be smoked before a price can be named even in a low whisper. Of course the price suggested is four or five times the amount the seller is willing to accept or that you contemplate giving, and the process of dividing it by four or five is too lengthy to admit of officers who draw daily pay being employed in the delicate operation. The Bedouin is again frequently misled as to the possibilities of the deal owing to various commissions for continental armies that have travelled the district to obtain Arab stallions for stud farms and the very high prices they have given for any particular animal they have fancied. I heard that as much as £600 has been given by the French for a suitable horse ; thus when on the look-out for a £25 remount, this misapprehension may form an unfortunate basis to begin the deal on. Naturally enough if a horse is suspected of being able to race, or is of the same strain as a successful horse in Egypt, he commands a high price, but judging by the many that are yearly called to the Cairo turf, and the very few that are chosen, it is a difficult task to tell if a horse will race or not until he has been trained and formally asked the question. My friend the dealer some years ago apparently selected three with extreme sagacity or good luck, and made a descent on Cairo at the beginning of the season, with the result that he taught them racing to such a tune that the members of the club rose like one man and voted with absolute unanimity, perhaps for the first time on record, that no horse-dealer should be allowed to enter horses. This he thought very inconsistent : ‘ For,’ said he, ‘ does not Mr. — sell Arab horses ? ’ mentioning a well-known Arab enthusiast, ‘ and yet you call him a gentleman.’ The problem was too subtle for me to solve ; but I told him that perhaps



the solution lay in the difference of success in their respective efforts to sell.

Before saying good-bye to the horse of the desert, let me say a word for this sound, enduring, courageous, and gentle-tempered little aristocrat. Has not the time again arrived when we could afford some more of his useful strain among our troop-horses at any rate, especially now that recent experiences have turned the tide of popular feeling in favour of smaller horses for war purposes?

I am not aware of any single instance where an officer with experience of the Arab as a troop-horse in the Soudan campaigns has failed to appreciate this hardy, honest little beast. Moreover, in those experiences the Arab has been put to very severe trials, through which he has struggled with peculiarly small percentage of losses from ordinary exhaustion, and has afterwards demonstrated his very valuable powers of recuperation, perhaps one of his most desirable qualities on service. I would not imply for a moment that there is even the faintest possibility of obtaining horses of the required stamp from this district for the annual English or Indian demands. Indeed, it has already become difficult to obtain the necessary numbers for the demands of Egypt alone, which in all do not amount to more than a few hundred each year. However, there would be no difficulty in obtaining those desired for stud purposes, though in my opinion the best place to search for this class of animal would be the various racing-stables round Cairo, where animals of the requisite size and desired conformation could be procured with the great advantage of a genuine guarantee in the shape of past performances on a racecourse, where, granting the distances and weights are big enough, the highest test examination for a horse is still to be found. Here it is not uncommon to find horses sound enough to stand the severest training for several years, and tough enough to run two really punishing races in one day without injury to themselves or their tempers.

## ***THE SCOUTMASTER-GENERAL***

By MAJOR H. G. PURDON, *late Loyal North Lancashire Regiment*

Treats of an old appointment which might with advantage be revived—A summary of his duties.

SCOUTING has at all periods been a necessary and most important duty in war, and one often difficult to carry out satisfactorily. In modern warfare, what with long-range weapons, smokeless powder, and perhaps a well-trained and vigilant enemy to deal with, this service has become more difficult and dangerous than ever. It certainly requires thorough training, teaching, and practice, in order to ensure its being performed in an efficient manner, so that the desired information may be obtained. In former days this service received due attention, and the estimation it was held in during the sixteenth and most of the seventeenth centuries may be judged from the fact that an army in the field had a highly paid officer appointed, called the Scoutmaster or Scoutmaster-General, whose duty it was to superintend the scouting and outpost duty. The earliest mention of this officer in England appears to be in the year 1518 (five years after the battle of Flodden), as stated in an old MS. in the Harleian Library and given in Grose's 'Military Antiquities.' It describes in quaint language the duties of the Scoutmaster in the field and in camp, of which the following is a summary.

### **DUTIES OF THE SCOUTMASTER IN THE FIELD AND CAMP**

'Firstly, he had to attend the High Marshall to view the ground where the camp was to be pitched, so as to know how to

place the outposts of which he had charge, and was furnished with horsemen for the purpose, which he gets from the Cavalry commander, for the scout by night, and for the scurraige by day.

‘In the field it was his duty to appoint the scowrage (scouting parties), some of which were appointed to the high hills that were thereabouts, to view and see if they could discover anything. Also the said Scoutmaster must appoint one other company of scurragers to search and view every valley thereabout, that there be no enemies laid privilie, and if they discover any they are to report to the Scoutmaster, who must at once acquaint the High Marshall with speed.

‘The Scoutmaster must be continually in the field by day and night, or appoint some discrete honest man to act in his absence, to see that both the scouts in the night season and scurriers in the day may do their duties that appertain to their charge, for there beith a great charge of it, as much as the life of the Scoutmaster is worth, if anything happen amiss, and the said Scoutmaster must continually bring advertisement of all things that the scowriers hear or see.’

In a list given in Grose’s ‘Military Antiquities’ of Queen Mary’s army which served at the capture of St. Quintin in 1557, the Master of the Scouts is shown as receiving 6s. per day. In another list of the army that was destined to defend the country in 1588 against the Spanish Armada, he appears as receiving 6s. 8d. per day. In an MS. showing the establishment of the forces in England and Wales on February 2, 1659, the Scoutmaster-General there appears in receipt of £1 per day, the same as a lieutenant-general received; a large sum at that period. In a work entitled ‘Gustavus Adolphus,’ by Lieut-Colonel Dodge, of the United States Army, it says that the chief of scouts in the Swedish army of Gustavus Adolphus received 500 rix-dollars a month, which seems very high pay, as the Colonel-General of Artillery only received 600 and a Field-Marshal 1,000. The old rix-dollar was worth 2s. 3d. Military history seems to say little about this personage, or when the

office became obsolete, but as late as 1660 Sir Theophilus Jones was Scoutmaster-General to the Army in Ireland. Sir Thomas Fairfax's (the Parliamentary general) Scoutmaster was a Major Watson. This officer seems to have performed a good service on the eve of the battle of Naseby (1645), for he brought in an intercepted letter from Goring to the King, begging the latter to postpone the battle till he was able to join him. On the other hand, the King's Scoutmaster, Ruce, seems to have taken things easy, for on the morning of the battle Rupert sent him out to discover the position of the enemy; 'Ruce lazily returning with a tale that Fairfax was nowhere to be found.' But Rupert, taking a party of horse and musketeers with him, rode forward and soon found the enemy.

When the committee appointed by the Protector's Council wished to abolish certain of the officials named, for the sake of economy, General Monck in 1657 drew up a statement showing reasons for the continuance of several of them in their appointments. Amongst others was 'A Deputy to the Scout Master General,' for he says: 'Itt is humbly desired that hee may be continued. I must confes that there has bin as much good service done for the publique by the intelligence I have gotten by the helpe of a Deputy Scout Master Generall, then hath bin done by the forces in preventing of rising of parties, soe that I thinke his Highnes' affaires in these parts cannot well be carried on without the helpe of such a man.' If such an office was revived, the duties of the holder would be rather different from those of the old Scoutmaster-General, and would take the form, say, of an Inspector of Scouting or Reconnaissance. Of course, officers are supposed to be acquainted with these duties, but to ensure thorough efficiency and training in them, and the instruction of scouts, an Inspector-General would add to their proficiency in many respects. A knowledge of scouting in the various countries where the conditions are so different and the inhabitants so unlike, in which the British soldier may be called upon to serve, will not easily be attained.

### SCOUTING TIPS

By SERGEANT WESTON, *Royal Dragoons*

General instructions—Scouting by night—Reconnoitring a position—Advanced parties—Captured by the enemy—Questioning a prisoner—To mend or foul a ground telegraph—Spooring—Mode of carrying a despatch.

#### SCOUTING BY NIGHT

No smoking or talking on any account.

Inspect your horse's feet before leaving camp, as a loose shoe at night is most undesirable.

Carry a feed for your horse and self.

Always dismount and water your horse when opportunity occurs.

A match being struck can be seen 900 yards, a lighted cigarette 300 yards.

Never ride on a road unless specially ordered to do so ; 20 yards on either side is much safer and quieter.

By riding in the shadow of a hill or wood on a moonlight night you are practically invisible.

By using your glasses at night, objects which are undiscernible to the naked eye become quite distinct.

By placing the hilt of your sword scabbard on the ground and listening at the other end, a mounted patrol on either side can be heard at a distance of 200 to 300 yards.

Never ride with your men in a bunch together ; ride in half sections with an interval of about 10 yards.

If possible, never retire by the same route that you used on the out-going journey.

Never ride a horse that whinnies.

Never cross the sky-line if a small *détour* will avoid it.

Never open fire unless absolutely obliged, as it discloses your whereabouts.

An occasional glance behind you must be a habitual precaution both night and day.

It is never necessary to expose the whole of your body, either mounted or dismounted, when making observations ; or, in other words, it is far better to lie down beside a stone or ant-heap than stand on the top of it. When making observations do not walk about in a brisk and soldier-like manner, but lie down and keep still ; by doing so you will avoid all chance of being seen by the enemy, even if he is within 20 yards.

Your horse will generally give you warning of anything unusual in your immediate vicinity in the following manner : (1) By becoming restive and passaging away to one flank or the other ; (2) snorting is another indication. These do not always indicate that danger is ahead, perhaps it is only a dead animal or a broken-down cart that has alarmed the horse. Birds or game breaking cover to your front, flank, or rear, is one thing you want to watch and take more notice of.

When black scouts are employed, and they work with white scouts, absolute obedience on their part is to be insisted on.

Always be firm with natives and never break your word with them, and always remember your position towards a black man is that of master, not chum. The black man's senses of hearing, seeing, and smell are twenty times sharper than the average white man's.

Never allow your natives, who are in front of your patrol, to fall to the rear on any pretence ; some of them, if they are close to an awkward place to pass, or do not quite like the idea of crossing a drift, will tell you that they wish to dismount. You think then that you will go on by yourself until the boys catch you up. Take my advice and do nothing of the sort. Wait for your boys and send them out into their former positions and then

resume your journey. The reason I mention this manœuvre at some length is because I had an experience which acted as a good lesson to me concerning boys falling out and getting behind you. This is what occurred. I was ordered to reconnoitre an important drift 16 miles from camp. I arrived within 100 yards of the river; my two boys in front dismounted on the pretence of wanting to do something; I walked on, dismounted, giving my horse to the boys, when about 50 yards ahead a picquet of another column opened fire on us. Directly I advanced the boys bolted and left me to take pot luck at the drift. Nothing happened, but I then stalked the picquet on my hands and knees, getting within 20 yards of them, and, hearing them speaking English, I called to the sentry and explained who I was. It afterwards proved that the boys had heard or seen something that they did not wish to approach, so let me go on without giving warning of anything unusual.

To ascertain whether friend or foe has arrived at the base of a hill, during the night of your occupation of the summit, procure a stone weighing about 10 lbs. and start it rolling down towards the spot where you imagine something is moving. If the enemy is there you will know him by his language, and if soldiers are there you will know by the same, especially if your missile arrives in close proximity to them. Trees waved by the action of the wind, or cattle moving about, are often taken for men in the night.

In returning from a position which you have occupied during the night, do so at a rapid pace for about 800 yards, and take all precautions for the safety of your patrol by means of flankers and advanced points.

If you can avoid passing a dwelling on your outward journey, by all means do so—firstly, for your safety; secondly, to avoid being seen and reported.

Dogs who are still staying in unoccupied houses should be destroyed by some means or other, as they invariably give mouth on the approach of anyone at night. If you must really pass

close to a house during the night and a dog barks at you, come a little way out of your way on return and stick him. Do not shoot him on the outgoing journey, as you will alarm everything within three miles—and perhaps miss the dog.

On your return to camp make your report in an intelligent manner to your officer, and then go and look after your horse. Sponge eyes, nose, and dock, and give him a feed and rug him up. If he wishes to roll, by all means let him do so, as this refreshes a horse more than any amount of grooming would at that particular time. Then go and get some food for self, returning afterwards to finish your horse, and if you have been travelling all night, go to sleep if possible, as scouting at night is one of the most trying duties.

#### TO ASCERTAIN WHETHER A POSITION IS OCCUPIED BY THE ENEMY

If you are ordered as a patrol leader to ascertain if a hill or position is occupied by the enemy, the following method may often enable you to report clear or otherwise with very little risk regarding your patrol.

Throw out advance scouts 200 yards, also flankers; tell one advanced point to gallop back to you when he has arrived within 400 yards of the position to be reconnoitred.

The patrol will halt and appear to be searching position with their glasses, some of the men pointing towards and to both flanks of position. Have a good look at the place yourself, and at a prearranged signal from you the patrol will turn about and gallop about 400 yards. If no firing takes place you can with a certain amount of caution approach the position in safety. This manoeuvre is almost certain to draw fire from a position where the enemy are thought to be but cannot be seen. Our opponents in the late war could never resist this bait.



## ADVANCED PARTIES

One of the greatest mistakes an advanced party who have laid up during the night can make is to open fire on a few of the enemy coming towards it in the early hours of the morning. Remember, if the enemy moves at night something is specially on, and your business is to find out what that speciality is. The party you see advancing may be the covering party either of a convoy or a large number of the enemy shifting ground, so as to get on the flank of your own column, 12 or 15 miles away perhaps for all you know. So do not let your patrol open fire until you see what is behind these few advanced parties. In lying up in position always have at least two ways to clear from it in case of surprises. If your party is about twenty-four strong, they need not all go to the same position so as to enable them to cover your retreat if necessary.

## CAPTURED BY THE ENEMY

Circumstances may occur on service whereby one or two advanced scouts get captured by the enemy. Remember, if this does occur they have a lot to do as far as getting information about the enemy. If it is a matter of a long chase and a man finds he is being ridden down, he should throw away the following articles: Bolt of rifle, ammunition, field-glasses, maps, wire-cutters, written correspondence—if it is of importance to the enemy—he should put in his mouth and chew up. On being actually captured the less said by you the better; keep your eyes and ears open and take notice of the following: (1) Strength of the enemy; (2) the name of the commander or the one who appears to be in authority; (3) the name of the place the party came from; (4) the direction and name of the place he was going to; (5) condition of his horses; (6) condition of the men's clothing; (7) abundance of ammunition; (8) any artillery and of what description, also what small arms are being used; (9) notice, if possible, the kind and state of food used by the enemy; (10)

notice kind of transport ; (11) tell the best yarn you can, but by all means stick to it ; (12) all this information will be most useful for our own or any other commander on the British side.

#### CAPTURE OF ONE OF THE ENEMY

Ask him the same questions as above, but first of all give him some food if he wants any—at least offer him something to eat. Do not talk to him when he is eating, let him finish up first. Remember that a man has time to think out his answers, lies or otherwise, whilst eating, and that a man talks much more when his inner man has been made comfortable. If there should be two prisoners, keep them apart, so far apart that the one cannot hear what the other is talking about.

#### TO MEND A GROUND TELEGRAPH

The first thing to do is to find where the wire has been cut ; this can be ascertained by picking up the wire and riding in the same direction as the wire. A glove only is necessary to protect the hand from friction. When you have arrived at the break, leave one man in charge of it, and search for the other end, which will be found by inclining to your right or left for about 600 yards. When found, and if a portion of the line has been carried off by the enemy, repair the line in the following manner : Unroll your spare cable, scrape away all the gutta-percha covering both ends, intermix the strands of wire (about 3 inches will do), bind this up tightly with a piece of non-conducting wire as used in infirmary stables for sewing up large wounds. Over this bind two or three india-rubber bands, finishing off by a piece of string. Treat the break at the other end in the same manner, tying a loop knot with the mended part in the centre ; this will take off all tension from the repaired parts of the line, and still communication is obtained. Implements required : One pair of wire-clippers, 40 yards of telegraph-wire, one piece of wire for binding 10 inches long, three india-rubber bands, and one piece of string 12 inches long.

## TO FOUL THE LINE OF THE ENEMY

Simply scrape away all the gutta-percha covering for about 6 inches, place the wire on the ground and place a stone on top of the wire ; this arrangement will cause a general leakage, and no message can be sent until the covering has been renewed. If you wish to break the wire, simply put one large stone under it, and hit it until it breaks with another stone—that is, of course, if you have no wire-clippers.

## SPOORING

Spooring is one of the essential qualifications of a scout either by night or day at home or abroad, and when once thoroughly understood is most useful, but constant practice is needful, also a large amount of patience. The knowledge of spooring enables a man who has seen nothing of the enemy to ascertain the following :

The approximate number of the enemy, the direction and pace he was going, where he was resting, and where he rested his horse, if he had led or driven horses, carts, or wagons, mules or bullocks as transport animals. The most effectual way to learn spooring is as follows :

The horse's droppings along the road give one a very good idea of how long they have been there. Also tins which have contained potted meats, &c., by simply looking into one of the latter and noticing if the remains of food is dried up or not, and then comparing them with the knowledge you have of how your own food generally looks after being opened for one or two days. This will give you an idea of how long ago the enemy passed that way, by the spoor, the pace he was travelling, and what transport he had with him, &c. An unshod horse's spoor is nearly the same as one that is shod ; the difference is that by having no shoes he points his feet, which knocks up a little mound in front of his foot, and does not leave so clear an impression of the frog. By examining the dirt thrown up around the impression you can

easily discern whether it is new or old spoor, by taking notice of the following points : If the dirt is in segments and not broken into fine dust, the spoor is quite new. Always remember that because you have lost a spoor for a little distance it can again be discovered by the use of a little common-sense. Look in the direction the spoor was going, and see if wire or fences in the near vicinity have either been cut or broken down ; if such is the case ride your horse towards the opening and examine the ground carefully for your supposed lost spoor ; if spoor is not found in either place, return to your original position and search the ground in all directions for the lost spoor, being careful not to mistake your own spoor for that of the enemy.

#### MODE OF CARRYING A DESPATCH

Despatches or important messages on service are generally of very small dimensions, mostly written in cipher. If possible, the scout detailed to carry same should know something of its contents ; and, remember, it is a point of honour in a scout to observe absolute secrecy appertaining to anything told him by his Intelligence Officer.

I found the best place to carry a message was in a spare pipe that I was not using. Fold the despatch as small as possible and place it at the bottom of the pipe, and putting some tobacco on the top of it, knocking some tobacco ashes from the pipe you use for smoking on the top of all. Just light the pipe containing the despatch to see if it will draw, *and be sure it does draw*, because if you are held up suddenly by the enemy it is a ten-to-one chance they will relieve you of all smoking materials, especially in a protracted campaign. If you see one of the enemy smoking your despatch pipe and apparently enjoying it, you will have the satisfaction of knowing that your despatch is absolutely obliterated.

### *HOW TO CARRY OUT ORDERS*

A true story of how a despatch was taken from President McKinley to Garcia in the Cuban War; the American comments on it convey a lesson to all.

PRESIDENT McKinley wanted to send an important despatch to Garcia in Cuba, through country held by half-savage enemies.

In casting round for a means of sending it, a 'young fellow named Rowan' was spoken of as likely to get through with it if anyone could.

Rowan was sent for, and was told of the task which was proposed for him. He took up the letter and walked out of the room without saying anything. He did not appear for some weeks.

At length he returned and briefly reported that Garcia had received the despatch. It then appeared that he had, on leaving the President, got a boat and sailed for some days in her; had landed on the Cuban coast; had disappeared into the jungle; and in three weeks time he reappeared on the other side of the island, having traversed a hostile country and given his despatch to Garcia.

The act is thus commented upon in a pamphlet published in New York by Mr. E. Hubbard :—

‘Supposing you ask one of your clerks to go and look up the ‘cyclopædia and make a short résumé of the life of Correggio, will that clerk quietly say “Yes, sir,” and go and do it?’

‘On your life he will not.

‘He will look at you out of a fishy eye, and will ask you one—or more—of the following questions :

“Who was Correggio?”

“Which encyclopædia?”

“Where is the encyclopædia?”

“Was I hired for that?”

“Do you mean Bismarck?”

“What’s the matter with Charlie doing it—why me?”

“Is he dead?”

“Shall I bring you the book so that you can look it up yourself?”

“What do you want to know for?”

‘And I will lay you 10 to 1 that after you have answered the questions and explained how to find the information, and why you want it, the clerk will go off and try to get one of the others to help him try “to find Garcia”—and then come back and tell you there is no such man.

‘Of course I may lose my bet, but according to the Law of Average I will not.

‘Now if you are wise you will not bother to explain to your “assistant” that Correggio is indexed under the C’s, not under the K’s, but you will smile sweetly and say, “Never mind” and go and look it up yourself.

‘We have heard a lot of maudlin sympathy of late for the down-trodden denizen of the sweat-shop; “the homeless wanderer searching for honest employment,” and with it all often go many hard words for the men in power. Nothing is said about the employer who grows old before his time in a vain attempt to get frowsy ne’er-do-wells to work: his long patient striving with a “help” that does nothing but loaf when his back is turned.

‘My heart goes out to the man who does his work when the boss is away just as well as when he is there.

‘The man who when given the “letter for Garcia” quietly takes it to him without asking idiotic questions or trying to shirk it, is the man who never gets laid off or has to strike for higher wages.

‘He is the man we want to find and to keep. No employer can afford to let him go—he is so rare.’

And so it is in the army.

*HORSE-SHOES FOR MILITARY PURPOSES*

By MAJOR C. B. LEVITA, M.V.O., R.F.A.

This article, written at the request of the Inspector of Cavalry, reviews the present system of shoeing—The durability of shoes—The pattern and material of shoes—Describes the shoes of various armies.

‘ For want of a nail, a shoe was lost ; for want of a shoe, a horse was lost ; for want of a horse, a man was lost.’

So runs an old Spanish proverb. Now, although it is in England deemed lucky to find a horse-shoe, to lose one is unlucky, even if, as in the proverb, it does not lead to disaster. It is said, with euphonious illustration, that an army moves on its belly ; with greater terminological exactitude, to vary an ex-hussar’s phraseology, it may be stated that a mounted force moves on its horses’ feet. Moreover, unless those feet be adequately protected, motion resolves itself into rest. In other words, the chief asset of mounted troops, viz.—mobility— may be seriously diminished if the shoeing of the horses is not satisfactory. Now I am of opinion that the shoeing of horses in our army is not satisfactory. I object to our army shoes for many and various reasons which will be apparent to those of my readers who have the patience to follow me through this necessarily rather technical essay. Nor am I alone in this opinion, for it is within my knowledge that responsible officers of all mounted services have for some years past continually found fault with, and reported unfavourably on, Government horse-shoes. Indeed, in 1904 Sir John French assembled a committee, of which I had the honour to be president, to investigate the

whole subject of horse-shoes for military purposes. As it is to be hoped that this action will result in a reformed horse-shoe, it may be of interest to the mounted services generally to discuss army shoeing as it is to-day.

Of course, the moment one discusses horse-shoes, one bumps against cranks, faddists, patentees, and vested interests. But in my remarks I desire to steer clear of all these by confining myself, firstly, to the consideration of a shoe which is essentially suitable for war purposes; and secondly, by avoiding an alteration in the present system of shoeing in peace time. These two points should be borne in mind.

War is considered as necessitating cold shoeing. War, therefore, requires an accurately finished ready-made shoe of good wearing properties, whereas in peace a less finished article can be used, and adjusted by heat. On active service it is not considered feasible to enter upon the operation of shoe-making, nor in many cases can a shoe even be heated prior to application. So, in common with most other armies, we avail ourselves of a machine-made shoe, and keep large supplies on hand. The peace system, which at present obtains in our Army, is that 50 per cent. of the shoes required are supplied machine-made to units. The remaining half are hand-made from old shoes. Some bar iron is issued to compensate for the deficiency of metal of the worn shoes: less than half a ton per hundred horses per year should suffice. This system uses up old shoes and ensures a supply of trained men. Nail-making, despite regulations, is but little practised, and machine-made nails are almost entirely made use of, mostly Scandinavian. As the quantity of machine-made nails issued is not based on this custom, it follows that farriers must purchase nails locally, probably better and cheaper than they could make them. Again, as it is easier to make shoes from bar iron than from old shoes, beware of the sale of the latter to recompense for the cost of the nails and a consequent excessive use of bar iron. Regulations rightly order



that a certain proportion of the machine-made shoes are to be fitted cold, the object in view being to maintain the practice of shoeing exactly as it would have to be performed in the field. This order is, I fancy, honoured in its breach, although cold shoeing requires great care and some experience. At the best it is but fairly satisfactory, and then only when applied to good feet. It is a fact that a certain, but decreasing, amount of hostility to machine-made shoes exists amongst blacksmiths, civilian and military. In France and Italy I believe that these are strong enough in their opposition to prevent the use of machine-made shoes in their respective armies.

Undoubtedly good hand-made shoes are preferable to machine-made shoes, and are supposed to be made similar in all respects to the Government machine-made shoe. The pattern of horse-shoe adopted by the British Service is termed 'concave fullered.' It is a fact, however, that it is rare to find this pattern strictly adhered to in the hand-made shoes. Regimental shoeing smiths prefer 'flat plain' shoes to 'concave fullered.' Moreover, if a hand-made shoe is fullered, then the fullering is broad and shallow, and not of the service—narrow and deep—type. To effect this it is common for artificers to either blunt the crease (the tool issued for the purpose of making the approved—narrow and deep—fuller), or, to use special tools of their own make. It results that the practical workmen, on whom the onus of shoeing falls, so strongly disapprove of the army pattern that as much as possible they avoid making it. I do not think that this dislike can be entirely attributed to the desire of saving trouble in making the shoes, but rather to the desire of avoiding a faulty pattern which too speedily entails reshoeing. The chief demerit of the army shoe is its want of wear.

The wear of horse-shoes is largely dependent on weather, and on the surface of the country. Shoes that appear of insufficient durability on wet gravelly roads (which act on the principle of the grindstone) around Aldershot, would wear indefinitely in

India, South Africa, or Egypt. During the Boer War shoes were lost, but were rarely worn out. To arrive at a shoe suitable for all parts of the world is of necessity difficult, as a shoe that is excessive in weight in one part of the world will prove too light for wear in another; but there is no doubt that the present army machine-made shoe is not sufficiently durable for European war. I have ascertained that the average wear, under normal peace conditions at Aldershot, for *all* mounted troops, is  $21\frac{1}{3}$  days; at manœuvres (1903) was  $9\frac{1}{3}$  days—for Cavalry *only* was  $5\frac{1}{3}$  days. (I admit that an estimation of durability by days seems rather vague, but opinions never agree as to distances. I place the average life of the smaller size shoe at about 160 miles.) Under the stress of war, the work would be far heavier, and it is obvious that, neither will horses' feet permit of reshoeing almost weekly, nor could a sufficient quantity of shoes be conveyed to admit of so doing. This is a serious matter that calls for remedy, and justifies the complaints of officers of mounted corps.

The want of durability of our machine-made shoes could evidently be overcome by considerably increasing their thickness, and consequent weight. This would be independent of any consideration of material or of pattern. But weight, especially at the end of a long lever such as the leg practically is, seriously affects the mobility of a horse. A minimum of weight and a maximum of durability are the desiderata for horse-shoes. The growth of the feet renders it necessary that horse-shoes should be refitted at the end of a month, and both theory and practice combine to teach that a horse-shoe should be as light as is compatible with a normal month's wear. The term—a month's wear—must include a safe margin, allowing a few days for peculiarities of action and for varying surfaces of the ground, &c. But however averse we may all be to increase of weight, there is no doubt that there is insufficient metal in the smaller sizes of shoes, viz. 3 to 6 (inclusive), and the weights of these should be increased. These

sizes mostly affect Cavalry and Mounted Infantry. Now practical trials seem to prove that pattern does not affect wear as much as does the actual weight of metal in the shoe. But by proper pattern we can apply and regulate to the best advantage the unavoidable weight. Experiment also teaches that, where weights are equal, width or 'web' appears to affect wear more directly than does thickness of the shoe. On reference to the Appendix it can be seen that the British Army shoes are generally lighter than those used in foreign armies, and the latter are generally broader in the web than the former.

Machine-made shoes are frequently condemned in the service, in general terms, as being 'too soft' in material, and want of durability is usually ascribed to poor material. However, I have satisfied myself at various factories, and elsewhere, that the material is generally as good as can be obtained. It is made of the best scrap iron blended with iron of a harder class, and combines as much hardness, toughness and ductility as are compatible with each other. Note that the metal must combine two conflicting qualities, viz., ductility and hardness—ductility to enable the shoe to be fitted cold, and hardness to ensure good wear. Hardness can only be obtained at an increase of brittleness, and already the margin of safety for cold shoeing seems to have been reached. Indeed, I have known of cases of fracture when striking the cold shoe for fitting without heat. Space will not permit of describing the thorough and severe tests applied to the metal by the authorities at Woolwich Arsenal. It suffices to state that the metal made for the civilian trade, such as the omnibus and railway companies, is identical, and, until the iron is in a finished state ready for fashioning into shoes, it may be equally applied to civilian or to military purposes. Such being the case, it may be noted that the London omnibus companies, who are supplied with machine-made shoes by the same contractors as is the Government, have no fault to find with the durability of their shoes. But their shoes are not of the army

pattern (concave fullered). It is right to add, for what it is worth, that the greater part of their work does not occur on country roads, and that the weights of their shoes are greater than ours.

There are possibilities about mild steel as a material for machine-made shoes for war purposes. But, so far as ordinary peace conditions exist, the increase in the wear of steel shoes will not compensate for the cost and difficulties of remaking. Hand-made shoes are, however, occasionally 'steeled' for special work, and give good results.

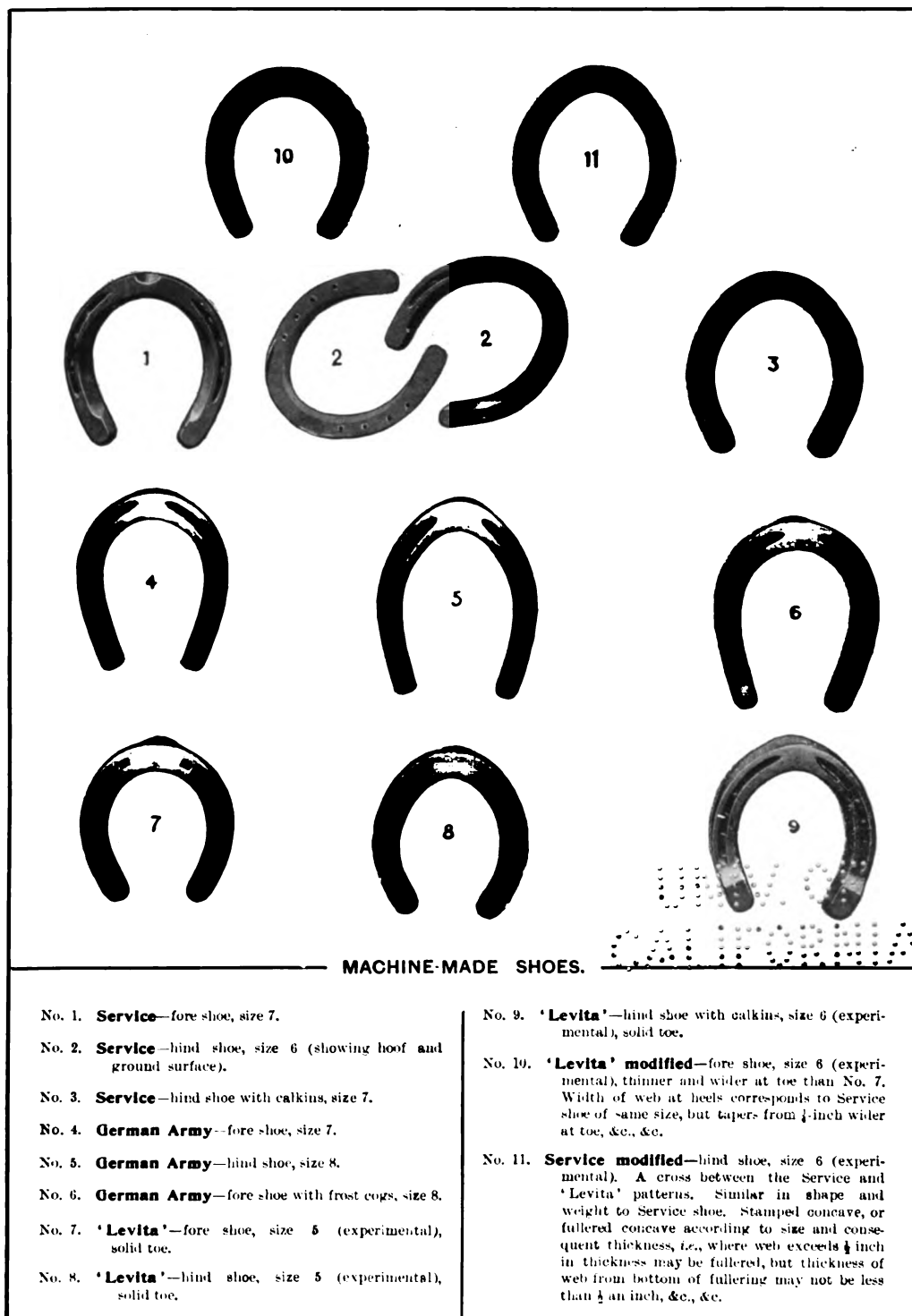
In a study of pattern, before proceeding to details, it must be realised that the pattern adopted for the army machine-made shoe differs from all ordinary British trade patterns. It is noteworthy that no large employers of horses in civilian life (excluding hunters) will make use of army pattern shoes; for these are condemned in unequivocal terms by such practical men as possessing no durability. But the conditions under which army horse-shoes are used, or are liable to be used, are possibly extraordinary. If army horses require to be shod primarily with the view of cross-country work, then evidently this special pattern of shoe is necessary. If, however, road work may be considered as paramount, then a special pattern is not essential. A shoe suitable for road work will sufficiently serve for military cross-country work, but the converse is not true. As in all things military, simplicity is desirable, is it not useless to shoe all army horses with an expensive complicated shoe, especially designed for cross-country work, if in the inevitable preliminary marching to get into position the shoe gets destroyed? Yet, at present such is the case. Moreover, a large proportion so shod would never have occasion for cross-country work. And so, having expressed my disapproval of the concave fullered shoe as an army pattern on broad principles, apart from my previous remarks on hand-made shoes—let us examine some details of this shoe.

The principal details of pattern are dealt with in the following succession : (1) Concavity, (2) Seating, (3) Fullering, (4) Nail-holes, (5) Clips.

(1) *Concavity* or bevel inside the shoes.

Theoretically it is correct to preserve the concave form in which nature has moulded the sole of the foot. The bevelling of the ground surface prevents the shoe from so easily picking up stones, &c., and, in the case of hind shoes, lessens the liability of injury from over-reach. A concave shoe is also probably less apt to be lost in heavy ground. It is evidently lighter than a plain shoe of corresponding dimensions. But the practical fact that, while the hoof surface is wide, the part of the shoe actually in contact with the ground is narrow (*i.e.* that where the wear occurs is least metal to be found), outweighs, for a military shoe, all the advantages enumerated. Other things being equal, a concave shoe cannot wear so long as a flat shoe. A *reductio ad absurdum* may be considered in which an exaggerated concavity would lead eventually to a razor edge being on the ground. Evidently such an edge would immediately commence to wear away, whereas, when the edge diminishes, that is to say, as the web increases, the wear decreases. The chief fault of shoes of the army pattern, having due regard to the exigencies of their daily use, lies in their concavity, whereas the chief merit of trade shoes is to be found in their flatness. It is quite possible to remove the sharp inside edge of a flat shoe without creating the disability of a concave shoe.

(2) *Seating* is a relic of the barbaric times when ignorance and the farrier combined to pare away the unfortunate horse's sole until it yielded to the pressure of the thumb. The foot naturally being then unable to bear pressure, the *hoof* surface of the shoe, instead of being flat, had to be bevelled. Nowadays seating, except in special cases of flat or tender footed horses, or when extra broad shoes are used, is, with us, so slight as to be



# MACHINE-MADE SHOES.

- No. 1. **Service**—fore shoe, size 7.
- No. 2. **Service**—hind shoe, size 6 (showing hoof and ground surface).
- No. 3. **Service**—hind shoe with calkins, size 7.
- No. 4. **German Army**—fore shoe, size 7.
- No. 5. **German Army**—hind shoe, size 8.
- No. 6. **German Army**—fore shoe with frost cogs, size 8.
- No. 7. **'Levita'**—fore shoe, size 5 (experimental), solid toe.
- No. 8. **'Levita'**—hind shoe, size 5 (experimental), solid toe.

- No. 9. **'Levita'**—hind shoe with calkins, size 6 (experimental), solid toe.
- No. 10. **'Levita' modified**—fore shoe, size 6 (experimental), thinner and wider at toe than No. 7. Width of web at heels corresponds to Service shoe of same size, but tapers from  $\frac{1}{4}$ -inch wider at toe, &c., &c.
- No. 11. **Service modified**—hind shoe, size 6 (experimental). A cross between the Service and 'Levita' patterns. Similar in shape and weight to Service shoe. Stamped concave, or fullered concave according to size and consequent thickness, i.e., where web exceeds  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch in thickness may be fullered, but thickness of web from bottom of fullering may not be less than  $\frac{1}{4}$  an inch, &c., &c.

TO VIRI  
ALPHILLAO

practically non-existent. I refer to it, however, as mention is made of it in the Appendix.

(3) *Fullering* is a groove extending round the web. Army fullering is deep and narrow, and does not extend more than one inch beyond the heel and toe nail-holes. This type of groove has the defect of not being sufficiently wide to permit use of a full countersunk nail in all sizes of shoes. The advantages claimed are, less liability of slipping, preservation and support of nails, facility of punching nail-holes and of removing nails. None of these reasons are of much practical value. Fullering wears away, and evidently at the best it cannot endure much more than half the wear of the shoe. The groove does not protect nail-heads as much as stamped nail-holes; regulations state that the nail-head when driven home should slightly project from the fullering. The deep groove weakens the shoe and lessens its wear. Moreover, when fitting, hot or cold, the groove is apt to be closed by blows on the edge of the shoe. This entails the re-opening of the groove, to permit of a proper fit of the nails, which, if neglected, means loss of the shoe. Only the shoes of heavy wheelers *must* be fullered: as holes cannot be stamped through more than  $\frac{5}{8}$  of an inch.

(4) The number and position of *nail-holes* are details of the highest importance. At present all our shoes larger than size 5 possess four nail-holes on each side, total eight. The smaller sizes have three nail-holes on each branch. There is unanimous complaint that the nail-holes are insufficient in number and wrongly placed. An increased number of holes gives great advantage to the smith by reason of the choice afforded. The fewer nails used the better, but the benefit of selection, especially for cold shoeing and when the hoof is not good, is very great. The German Army shoe has from fourteen to twenty-two nail-holes. I advocate that nail-holes should at least total eight for size 3, ten for sizes 4 and 5, twelve for size 6 and upwards. At



present nail-holes are not coarse enough, being situated too near to the edge of the shoe, termed 'too fine.' They are also not close enough up to the toe. They ought to be stamped accurately to take a standard size of nail, and there should only be three sizes of nails in the service instead of about a dozen. Shoes might advantageously be issued with a hole for frost nails. Most foreign armies are so issued.

(5) *Clips* are of insufficient strength. All fore shoes and hind shoes with calkins have but one clip each. All hind shoes without calkins (except No. 1) have two clips. A considerable hollow under the clip is very frequently found. This is caused by faulty drawing of the clip, and occurs where, to ensure durability, the greatest amount of metal should be. The present method of forming the clip is bad. It is obvious, even to the layman, that to *draw* the clip from the body of the shoe is to rob the toe of much needed metal. Hind shoes have the two clips too near the toe, which causes the hoof to be damaged in shoeing. I am in favour of only one clip for all shoes like the German, Swiss, Italian, and French Army shoes. The fear of greater damage from over-reach is not practical, for our R.H. and R.F. Artillery wheelers work well with only one clip. The U.S.A. Army shoes have no clips. Two clips are expensive, being hand-drawn; they take up space which might be used for nail-holes, and cause hoofs to be unduly cut away.

Having thus, as briefly as possible, pointed out some of the faults of our military shoes, and indicated the direction in which improvements lie, I would add, as a further reason for reform, that our machine-made shoes cost nearly four times as much as those used by the omnibus and railway companies.

I may state, in conclusion, that 3,000 shoes of the Levita pattern, as the makers term them, and as outlined in this article, were tried at Aldershot in 1905, and most favourably reported

## HORSE-SHOES FOR MILITARY PURPOSES 355

on. In October last a further consignment of 9,000 was delivered to the authorities for trial, together with 9,000 of each of two other patterns equally based on the report of the Alder-shot Committee (*vide* illustrations).

### APPENDIX

Approximate table of weights of shoes of a similar size in use as under :—

	Weight in ounces	
	Fore shoe	Hind shoe
British Cavalry shoe No. 5 (medium Cavalry size)	17½	19½
German           "           "           "	21	21
Italian           "           "           "	23 to 25	23 to 24
French           "           "           "	22	21
Swiss           "           "           "	20	21
Austrian (issued unfinished probably lose 2 oz.)	22	24
British No. 8	29	34½
		(with calkins)
German No. 8	33	35½
		(without calkins)

### *Description of Army Shoes*

*British*.—Concave fullered plain at heels. Nail-holes six to eight. Very slight seating. Wheelers' hind shoes have single clip, other hind shoes two clips. Hand frost shoeing by chisel-headed nails at heels added by troops.

*German*.—Plain fullered. Broad web in large sizes. Nail-holes fourteen to twenty-two. Seated. Single toe clips all shoes. Frost shoeing machine prepared by both square and chisel-headed screw cogs at heels and toes.

*Italian*.—Plain. Web broad and thin. Seven stamped nail-holes. Fore shoes have two holes at toe under clip. Seated. Single toe clip all shoes.

*French*.—Plain. Moderate Web. Eight stamped nail-holes (two very forward at toe). Seated at toe and quarter. Single toe clip all shoes. Machine prepared frost shoeing by square-headed screw cogs at heels and toes.

*Swiss*.—Concave fullered but less concave than British. Extra thick web. Nail-holes eight. No seating. Single toe clip all shoes. Hind shoe toes rather square at clip. Machine prepared frost shoeing by smooth necked studs with special head.

*Austrian*.—There are two patterns. (1) Plain fullered. (2) Partial concave fullered with toe left plain—very slight seating. Broad web. Shoes issued unfinished without nail-holes or clips and uncut at heels. Draught shoes have toe pieces in addition to usual calkins. Frost shoeing by square and pointed cogs.

### REVIEWS

As part of the scheme of general progress that has marked the recent training of the 3rd Cavalry Brigade in Ireland, a series of lectures on preventive medicine were delivered to the officers and non-commissioned officers of the brigade by Surg.-Lieut. F. MacCabe, South of Ireland Imperial Yeomanry. These lectures, which discuss bacteriology, enteric, tubercular diseases, pneumonia, smallpox, venereal, tropical diseases, and personal and camp hygiene, have been reprinted in pamphlet form to encourage similar study in other commands.

*War with Disease.* By Fred F. MacCabe, M.B. Dublin : Dollard, Ltd. 1906.

DEATHS among our soldiers in the field, from diseases which are nowadays classed as preventible, are still far more numerous than they should be, and that this is unfortunately still the case is due in the first place to ignorance of the preventive measures which should be adopted, and further to a far too prevalent idea that one cannot get soldiers to take precautions, however great the necessity for them may be. From statistics given in Mumsen's 'Military Hygiene,' it would appear that the Anglo-Saxon race in general, and we British in particular, have been especially unfortunate in the high proportion which deaths from disease have borne to deaths from casualties in the different wars in which we have been engaged; in the Walcheren Expedition, thirty-one men died from disease for every one who died from wounds or was killed in action; during the first six months in the Crimea the comparative losses were as twenty-five to one. In our armies in Spain and in South Africa, and with the Confederates in the War of Secession, the comparative losses were as three to one. It has remained for an Eastern nation to bring the figures down to what they should be and to prove that preventible diseases may, indeed, be prevented. In Manchuria,

the medical officer, freed from the care of sickness, was as sanitary officer, ever in advance, inspecting the local food and water supply and generally instructing all ranks in the principles of sanitation. Dr. MacCabe has been doing something on the same lines for the 3rd Cavalry Brigade, and has now published the four admirable lectures which he gave in Ireland. No officer can read them without advantage and without feeling that he too has it in his power to do something to teach those under him how disease may pass them by. The principles of sanitation are not new; it is in their application that we have been faulty or neglectful. With our small army all ranks should do what in them lies to prevent the terrible waste which begins as soon as and whenever we take the field, and Dr. MacCabe points out very clearly how preventible disease may be combated by measures which are simple and guided by common sense.

*Hints on Horses.*

‘How to judge them, buy them, ride them, drive them and depict them’ are all shown in a very few words and a number of clever sketches by Captain C. M. Gonne, R.A., in his book called ‘Hints on Horses.’

It is perhaps in the art of depicting the animal that the author especially shines, and we reproduce here some of his clever sketches. It will be noticed that he does not use a line more than necessary in their delineation, and a good example of his talent is in the sketch (No. 1) of the Arab feeding, where the face of the horse and its hind legs are largely left to imagination and yet are perfectly clear to the meanest comprehension.

The wording of his book is equally brief and to the point, as well as original and practical.

The following are his descriptions of the pictures here produced:

It has been said that Arabs are quick to notice the manner in which a horse stands when grazing on level ground. The pure bred can feed with his fore legs perfectly upright; the horse

that has some slight flaw in his pedigree shows it by slightly bending one of his fore legs whilst feeding off the ground ; and the curly-maned, curly-tailed underbred has to kneel to get his food. This observation shows that the Arabs appreciated the beauty of a long rein and a short back.

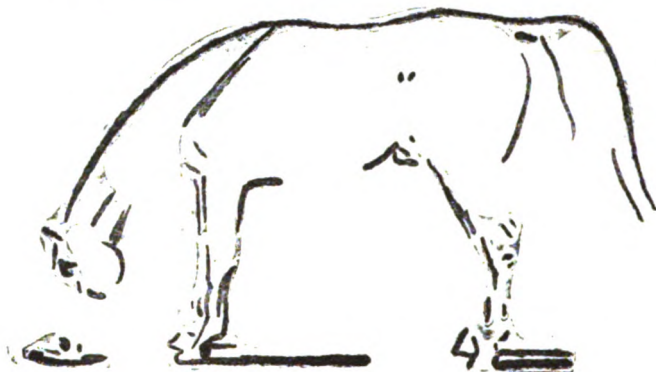


FIG. 1

The position of the rider varies from the old-fashioned straight leg military seat (No. 3) to the crouched-up position introduced into Europe by the American flat-race jockey.



FIG. 2

A good rider does not ride more than his own weight. He sits down close to the saddle, and his thighs practically become part of the horse. He sways his body from the groins, conforming to the movements of the horse, so as to keep the centre of gravity of man and horse combined in the most suitable place.

*E.g.*, in rising at a fence he leans slightly forward. The extra weight forward gives momentum. The relief of weight behind gives full opportunity to the propelling force of the hind-quarters. Whereas in descending to the ground he leans his body back, thereby allowing the forehand to alight without impediment.

The author's instructions for making a child's saddle and teaching the child to ride might often be adopted with advantage in training recruits :



FIG. 8

Place a piece of numnah on the pony's back. Seat the child thereon. Place the child's leg in the correct position, and with a piece of chalk draw on the numnah a line showing where the upper outline of the child's thigh will be. Then roll up a piece of blanket, cover it with soft leather or basil, and sew it in the numnah above and exactly following the chalk line. The child will derive great benefit from this 'knee roll.' When the pony stops, instead of sliding on to the pony's withers, his thighs will be checked and kept in their proper place, and he will soon learn to grip with his legs correctly placed.

*Active Service Pocket Book.* By BERTRAND STEWART.  
Published by Gale & Polden, Ltd.

The whole book applies to Cavalry, Yeomanry, and Mounted Troops, and deals with their various duties. It is well up to date, and full of useful information, such as Finding Bearings from either the Sun, Moon or Stars, with practical accuracy in any degree of latitude from 60° N. to 40° S., thus comprising the area within which any serious campaign would be fought; Despatch riding between Stationary forces, Stationary and Moving forces, and two Moving forces; Judging Distance at Night. In addition to this the method of carrying out all kinds of Demolitions and Field Engineering work, when the assistance of the R.E. is not available, is clearly explained.

The photographs of tracks of men and horses are also quite a new feature in military illustrations.

*The Hanover Riding School.* Ernstes und Heiteres vom Königlichen Militär-Reitinstitut zu Hannover. By FREIHERR V. DINCKLAGE. Hannover: M. and H. Schaper. 1906.

This would appear to be an amplification or continuation of a previous work by the same author entitled 'Auf Reit-schule,' and is a pleasantly written, chatty account of the work and play carried on in the great military riding establishment at Hanover. Already in the old days—long before Langensalza—when every little German principality had its riding-school, that at Hanover had acquired some fame under Major Schweppe (later equerry to the blind king), who in his day was considered one of the ablest of the continental exponents of the art. Freiherr von Dincklage, who was apparently himself a Rittmeister-Instructor at Hanover, traces the history of the Riding-School from the days when it was first started in Berlin in 1817, through its removal to Schwedt in 1849, to its final transfer to Hanover after the war of 1866. The school—for officers and also for non-commissioned officers—soon outgrew its accommodation, and the new buildings which were completed in

1876 have now room for 128 students and a very large instructional staff, exclusive of the eighty-seven non-commissioned officers also under instruction. Those who remember how large an amount of work the German officer gets through, will be surprised to notice what a very considerable portion of this book is devoted to descriptions of the sport indulged in at Hanover by the officers attending the school. They have a gun-club and they play polo; but the author describes in special detail the joys of the hunt, which appears to be kept up at Government expense. The hounds are imported from England, and would seem to be of a somewhat accommodating breed. Foxes being scarce in the neighbourhood of Hanover, they hunt indiscriminately a drag or a carted stag, and fields of 160 are not unusual.

*Polo.* By T. B. DRYBROUGH. Published by Longmans, Green & Co., Paternoster Row, London: 1906.

A revised and enlarged edition of this elaborate work on Polo, with about one hundred and fifty illustrations, including many excellent portraits, has just been brought out.

It should prove of interest to general readers as well as players. Of three new chapters added to this edition, the most important deals with polo in America. It is full of practical information on the working of polo clubs, laying out polo grounds, buying and handling polo ponies of various nationalities, and observations on play in different parts of the world. It contains also an excellent chapter on the 'Analysis of the Rules of Polo' with the opinions of experts on their interpretation, and on the deductions to be drawn from traditions and usage.

*Illustrated Treatise on the Art of Shooting.* By CHARLES LANCASTER.

A seventh and revised edition of the above useful and well-known book has recently been published.

It is well got up, profusely illustrated, and full of practical hints on shooting.



*PROBLEM No. 1*

WE are glad to be able to announce that this Problem, which appeared in our first number in January last, attracted considerable competition. The following are the names of three, whose solutions are considered the best in order of merit :

Squadron Sergeant-Major Albert Price, 10th (P.W.O.) Royal Hussars, Mhow, India.

Squadron Sergeant-Major A. Gilman, 8th Hussars, Aldershot.

Corporal Henry R. Hore, Cape Mounted Riflemen, King Williams Town, South Africa.

A prize of a 'Cavalry' watch has been forwarded to each of the above-mentioned non-commissioned officers.

The following also sent in very creditable solutions :

Sergeant W. Akhurst, 7th Hussars, Weedon.

Squadron Quartermaster-Sergeant J. Barnett, Queen's Bays, South Africa.

Sergeant A. Bachelor, 13th Hussars, India.

Sergeant J. Bidgood, Ceylon Mounted Infantry, Ceylon.

Sergeant H. Butler, R.H.A., Manchester.

Sergeant J. Cary, Queen's Bays, South Africa.

Sergeant F. Dyer, Sussex Imperial Yeomanry, Lewes.

Squadron Sergeant-Major D. Coutts, Scots Greys, Edinburgh.

Squadron Sergeant-Major R. Cox, 10th Hussars, India.

Sergeant A. Fielder, 16th Lancers, Colchester.

Sergeant C. Ford, Wiltshire Imperial Yeomanry, Salisbury.

Corporal W. Frisby, 10th Hussars, India.

Sergeant F. Hill, 10th Hussars, India.

Squadron Sergeant-Major G. Hudgell, 16th Lancers, Colchester.

Sergeant W. Langford, 5th Dragoon Guards, South Africa.

Corporal H. Latham, King's Dragoon Guards, Bulford.

Corporal J. McCurdy, 5th Lancers, Aldershot.

Squadron Corporal-Major W. Potter, Royal Horse Guards, London.

Sergeant-Major J. Ralston, Lancashire Imperial Yeomanry, Bolton.

Sergeant J. Simpson, 8th Hussars, Aldershot.

Sergeant A. Thomas, 21st Lancers, Hounslow.

Corporal Vivian, 5th Dragoon Guards, South Africa.

Regimental Sergeant-Major A. Waghorn, Lincolnshire Imperial Yeomanry.

Sergeant A. Webb, 7th Hussars, Norwich.

Sergeant A. Wilbraham, 7th Hussars, Norwich.

The principal points noted, after reading through all the solutions, are :

- (1) Contours, except in a few cases, not properly read.
- (2) Rate of moving estimated too quick for night work.
- (3) Many of the solvers consider it safe to move by day near farms and kraals.

(4) The significance of the British turning movement forty miles away to the west, has in many cases been wrongly appreciated. It is not likely to affect the right flank of the Boer force on the Klip Ridge more than their left flank. It is evidently directed against the Boer forces as a whole, and not those under the immediate consideration of this problem.

We give below the solution sent in by Squadron Sergeant-Major A. Price, 10th Royal Hussars. It should be read in conjunction with the sketch map which was given in our first number with the problem :

*Strength.*—I shall take 1 corporal and 5 men with 2 days' rations and nosebags full.

Taking horses that I know will not make a noise at night.

Also one heliograph.

*Orders.*—I shall march to-night to within about  $1\frac{1}{2}$  miles of the KLEINDORP ROAD, arriving there before daybreak.

Should I have got out of my way at all, I should be able to get under the shelter of the hill before it got light enough to be seen by the enemy's outposts.

Staying here all day if possible, I shall march at sunset along the west bank of the SEAKOW RIVER, leaving it for a short time at PARS FARM so as not to be heard. Once past PARS FARM, which I should see by the moon, I should have a straight road along the banks of the river to where it joins the FLOOD RIVER, arriving there about 4 A.M. Crossing the river at daybreak, I conceal my party in the trees at foot of hill 210, doing the observation myself.

On obtaining information I shall helio in at once to point H<sup>1</sup> on sketch, sending in also 2 orderlies with 2 messages each, one false, one true. What I want you to do is to send a party out there to-morrow night so as to arrive just before daylight with an helio at point H. I should like to have the loyal Dutchman as guide for the first night.

*Reasons.*—My reason for taking this route is that on once striking the SEAKOW I have a sure landmark, with no possible chance of losing my way.

Should I get cut off on returning, which is most probable, I could retire west towards my own people.

<sup>1</sup> Point H is in S.W. corner of map, on ridge S. of Kleindorp Road.

# Prize Competition



A Prize of 5 Guineas will be given for the best suggestion, written by an Officer, N.C. Officer or Private of the Regular Cavalry, on the following point:

**'What steps could best be taken in a Cavalry Regiment to prepare men for a successful career in Civil life on leaving the Army (such as methods of saving up their pay, learning trades, &c.), without expense to the country?'**

The prize will be awarded to the best practical solution of this question, not to the longest or best-written essay.

No essay should exceed 1,000 words.

It should be signed by a nick-name or motto, and should be accompanied by a sealed envelope containing this nick-name and the real name of the writer, to be opened after the essays have been marked by the judges. Also by this page of the Journal.

All essays must reach

THE EDITOR,

'Cavalry Journal,'

Royal United Service Institution,

Whitehall,

London, S.W.,

not later than Monday, October 1, 1906.



## NOTES

### AN ENGLISH 'GALLOPER'

OUR frontispiece is from an old French drawing, kindly lent by Lieut.-Colonel Nicholson, C.B., C.M.G., late 7th Hussars, and represents an aide-de-camp carrying a message on the field. The intention to caricature is obvious, yet there is little fault to be found with the rider's seat and the horse's action.

Baron Marbot writes in his *Memoirs*: 'During our stay at Sobral, I saw another artifice employed by the English, and one of sufficient importance to be worth noting. It is often said that thoroughbred horses are of no use in war, because their price is so high and they require so much care, that it would be almost impossible to provide a squadron, much more a regiment of them. Nor indeed do the English use them in a campaign; but they have a habit of sending single officers, mounted on fast thoroughbreds, to watch the movements of a hostile army. These officers get within the enemy's cantonments, cross his line of march, keep for days on the flanks of his columns, always just out of range, till they can form a clear idea of his numbers, and the direction of his march. After our entry into Portugal, we frequently saw observers of this kind flitting round us. It was useless to give them chase, even with the best-mounted horsemen. The moment the English officer saw any such approach, he would set spurs to his steed, and nimbly clearing ditches, hedges, even brooks, he would make off at such speed that our men soon lost sight of him, and perhaps saw him soon after a league further on, notebook in hand, at the top of some hillock, continuing his observations. This practice, which I never saw anyone employ like the

English, and which I tried to imitate during the Russian campaign, might perhaps have saved Napoleon at Waterloo, by affording him a warning of the arrival of the Prussians. Anyhow, these English "runners," who were the despair of the French General from the moment we left Spain, increased in boldness and cunning as soon as we were in front of Sobral. One could see them come out of the lines, and race with the speed of stags through vines and over the rocks to inspect the position occupied by our troops.'

---

#### USE OF CAVALRY BY STAFF OFFICERS

Extract from a recent lecture on Cavalry :—

'Cavalry may be well commanded, well officered, well horsed, and numerous, and yet it may achieve nothing, entirely owing to ignorant orders from the staff at headquarters.

'It is most necessary, therefore, for all officers who aspire ever to command armies (or even mixed forces) in the field to thoroughly understand the methods, the limitations, and the temperament of Cavalry. It is the most delicate tool in the military workshop, and like all delicate tools it demands from the men who use it a thorough and expert knowledge.

'Another important matter demanding the most careful consideration of the chiefs of armies and their headquarters staff, and therefore in an indirect way of officers of all arms who may any day find themselves on the headquarters staff, is the *economical* employment of Cavalry. No arm goes to pieces so quickly if the horses are exposed to great hardships, or is so hard to reform.'

---

#### FORAGE

The introduction of a 'Forage running account,' as a result of the Report of the Committee on the simplification of supply accounting, has undoubtedly given much encouragement to those

commanding officers and squadron and troop leaders who take a genuine interest in the welfare of the horses under their charge, and enables them to arrange the ration according to the season and the amount of work that the horses are doing.

Every latitude is afforded for regulating and varying the recognised forage ration. The recorded fact that one Cavalry regiment on leaving Aldershot for Colchester some years ago, had of its own initiative, before the introduction of this system, accumulated a balance 'credit' at the former station of no less than 28,000 lbs. of oats, testifies to the possibilities which by good and careful management the running forage account introduces.

---

### LEGION OF FRONTIERSMEN

The scheme and object of the Legion is the organisation of a civilian, self-governing and self-supporting body of British Frontiersmen throughout the Empire, associated for the promotion of Imperial interests in time of peace, and whose services shall be available, if called upon, for Imperial defence in time of war.

The term 'Frontiersmen' includes men trained and qualified by previous completed military service, or by working, hunting or fighting in wild countries, or at sea, who, for various reasons, do not or cannot serve in the existing military forces of the Empire, and who are not prepared, by reason of temperament or vocation, to submit themselves to the ordinary routine of military discipline, except in time of war.

The Executive Council are satisfied that there is a wide and hitherto untouched field of enrolment open for the Legion, without in any way interfering with recruiting for the Regular, Auxiliary and Colonial Forces of the Crown; such as, for example, among (1) Frontiersmen on the fringe of civilisation, where Auxiliary Forces do not exist; (2) Frontiersmen whose vocation fits them for military pursuits, but whom no military



pay or career will induce to give up the free life and prospects of the frontier in time of peace ; and (3) Men debarred by age or physical disqualification from arduous military service, but nevertheless fitted by previous experience and training to act as advisers or guides.

It is calculated that the number of men available is about 620,000, of whom it is hoped that 30,000 will join the Legion. Some 6,000 have already promised to do so.

The Central Headquarters of the Legion will be in London, the present office being at 6 Adam St., Strand, London, where all information can be obtained from the Secretary.

---

#### ST. GEORGE

The Royal Society of St. George was founded with the main object of promoting the spirit of patriotism among all classes of Englishmen irrespective of breed or party in all parts of the world.

It held its annual banquet in London on St. George's Day (April 23), under the presidency of the Duke of Norfolk.

The toast of 'The Army' was responded to by the Inspector of Cavalry, who, in alluding to the fact that St. George was the patron saint of that branch of the service in all countries, remarked that St. George is a saint who appeals more than any other to Cavalry, not only because he was the only horseman and sportsman among the saints, but also because he was not content like some of them to leave it to chance or a miracle to pull him through a difficulty, but he worked for success and pushed on till he got it.

He is the most inspiring saint in the calendar. He trained himself as a rider and as a man-at-arms, and he trained his horse to face danger, and when thus prepared at every point he did not hesitate to attack the dragon of overwhelming odds—and with complete success.

'It is an example to us whether we be Cavalry or Infantry,

sailor or civilian, to prepare ourselves for any difficulty that could arise, whether national or personal, and then to tackle it with a stout heart and strong arm, and—with every intention of winning—to fight for the right as God gives us to see the right.’

---

#### IMPERIAL YEOMANRY

From all accounts the training of the Imperial Yeomanry this season is being carried out in a most interesting and practical manner. In most cases two or more regiments have been encamped together, or within striking distance of one another, and in several instances some branches of the regular forces have co-operated in the field work.

---

Three of the Imperial Yeomanry regiments in the Northern Command have recently concluded a most instructive training. The area chosen for the operation was between Haltwhistle and Hexham, which by the kindness of the landowners in the vicinity was placed at the disposal of the G.O.C. Northern Command for manœuvre purposes. The Yeomanry regiments taking part were the Northumberland Hussars, the Yorkshire Dragoons, and the East Riding of Yorks I. Y. To make the operations more instructive and complete, Sir Leslie Rundle detailed two squadrons of the 18th Hussars and two batteries of R.F.A. to operate with the Yeomanry. The result was most successful. Schemes were carried out testing the efficiency of the regiments in taking up and holding a line of outposts, in convoy and escort duties, and assimilating them to the rôle which would be required from them if on active service. The unselfish spirit of the landowners alone made it possible for the manœuvres to be as successful and instructive as they proved. Tenants also, in many cases, refused to receive any compensation for damage, and the country people came long distances to see the novelty of troops training over the Northumberland hills, which appear to afford almost unlimited facilities for extended operations.

## ROYAL NAVAL AND MILITARY TOURNAMENT

The success of the Royal Naval and Military Tournament was assured from the commencement, when few who attended the opening performance at Olympia could have imagined that there had been any move at all, so admirably had all the details been thought out. In no previous year has a more attractive programme been offered, containing several old friends, and one or two new faces. In the former category mention must be made of the ever popular musical ride, excellently performed by the 2nd Life Guards, as was the musical drive by Y Battery, Royal Horse Artillery. The riding display by the 14th Hussars exemplified the new Cavalry training, in which 'circus tricks' have been encouraged to make the training more practical and interesting for the men, as explained in the last number of this journal.

Most of the competitions were very closely contested. In the mounted championships—Sword *v.* Sword, Major B. R. Dietz, 7th Dragoon Guards, was first. Major R. M. Poore, D.S.O., 7th Hussars, gave a fine display, winning Sword *v.* Lance, Lemon Cutting, and Heads and Posts. Major W. A. Tilney, 17th Lancers, also carried off several prizes, and Sergeant Vesey, King's Dragoon Guards, won the Tent Pegging after an exciting contest.

---

THE CONCOURS HIPPIQUE AT PARIS

A correspondent gives the following account of a recent visit to the Concours Hippique in Paris :

'There was a military show on, and I gathered that one troop of Cuirassiers was competing against another (they came on separately) in the matter of drill—a competition which might prove an attraction at our Military Tournament, if there was sufficient space available. The drill was wonderfully steady, the trot very slow—I should think about  $6\frac{1}{2}$  miles an hour. The accuracy with which distance was kept in sections, and the

inclines made, was a revelation. Then the troop split up into two, one half facing the other at opposite ends of the long arena, opening out to rather more than a horse's length interval, and advanced at a gallop, still very slow, passing through one another's intervals, &c., &c. I think there is a good deal to be said in favour of the French Cavalry seat—we should call it craning over the withers, but there is much less interference with the horse's mouth than with us, and the man appears to be in a better position for hand-to-hand fighting than when sitting bolt upright. Their horses seem to be steadier than ours.'

---

#### THE EFFECT OF MOTORS AND MECHANICAL TRACTION ON HORSE BREEDING

Colonel J. A. Nunn, C.I.E., D.S.O., the principal veterinary officer in South Africa, writes :

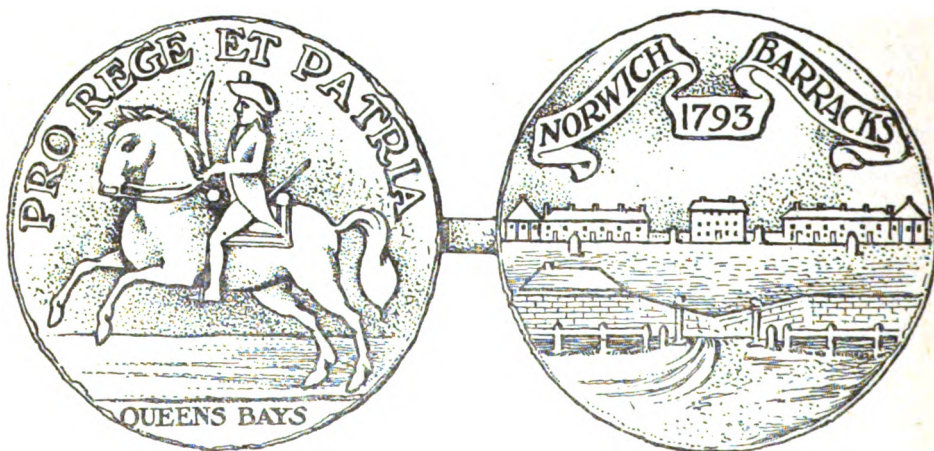
'There are many persons who are of opinion that, owing to motors and mechanical traction, horse breeding will become a defunct industry, and that horses, except for hunting, racing, polo, and as a luxury, will become as extinct as the Dodo. The question of the future supply of army remounts is one that has excited some attention, and has, I believe, been the subject of some discussion in the House of Commons.

'The question being a somewhat important national one, the remarks by M. Lavalard, a director of the "Compagnie des Omnibus" of Paris, in an article recently published in "Le Répertoire de Police Sanitaire," on the subject may be of interest, as it shows that in France such primitive views as to the future of the horse are not held. M. Lavalard says: "The development of mechanical locomotion simply means that there are a greater number of travellers. The number of horses bred and reared in France continues to increase, and their price is higher. In Paris, horses are worth 25 to 30 per cent. more than they were ten years ago. The annual returns of horses also show that the equine population steadily continues to increase. In

1901 there were a little over 3,000,000 ; in 1902, a little over 4,000,000 ; and in 1904, there were exactly 4,227,850." Most likely the majority of these horses are working ones used for trade purposes or polo ; hunting and racing are not so popular in France as in England. It should also be remembered that motor traction was in use in France many years before it was permitted in England."

### AN OLD COIN

This copper coin, or token, is in the Royal United Service Institution. We give an enlarged reproduction of it, in the



hope that some of our readers may be able to enlighten us as to its history.

### A CLAY DUMMY FOR SWORD PRACTICE

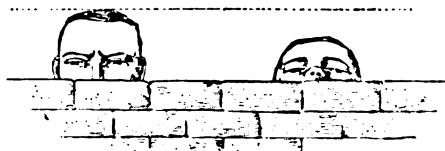
'La France Militaire' describes the use of a dummy made of clay for instructing the Cavalry soldier in cutting with his sword. It is a cone of wet clay, 20 inches high ; diameter at base, 18 inches ; at top, 8 inches. A man, when his muscles are in trim, should be able to deliver sixty cuts in rapid succession.

The clay dummy teaches how to cut truly and how much force to exert.

Glycerine or oil used in mixing the clay will keep it moist, and prevent it freezing in winter.

### TWO WAYS OF LOOKING OVER A WALL

Major A. C. Hamilton, late of the Carabiniers (6th Dragoon Guards) in the accompanying sketch shows how the scouts of



the American Cavalry avoid some inches of exposure by leaning the head back when looking over cover.

### THE ANNUAL COST OF THE SOLDIER

The average annual cost of a trained private soldier is officially stated to be as follows :—

	At Home			In India		
	£	s.	d.	£	s.	d.
Cavalry . . . . .	62	11	4	82	5	5
Horse Artillery . . . . .	64	7	4	86	14	0
Infantry of the Line . . . . .	57	8	9	75	6	2

The figures for soldiers at home include charges for barracks, arms, ammunition, &c. The figures for India include, in addition, charges for the capitation rate, passage, &c.

### MOVES

The following moves have been carried out this spring :—

The 1st Life Guards from Regent's Park to Windsor.

The 2nd Life Guards from Windsor to Regent's Park.

The 6th Dragoons from Dublin to Ballincollig, and thence to Cairo, Egypt.

The 3rd Dragoon Guards from Ballincollig to the Curragh.  
The 11th Hussars from the Curragh to Dublin.

The following is the programme of intended reliefs :—

The 8th Hussars from Aldershot to Canterbury.  
The 7th Dragoon Guards from Canterbury to Aldershot.  
The 1st Dragoon Guards from Aldershot to Hounslow.  
The 21st Lancers from Hounslow to Aldershot.  
The 14th Hussars from Shorncliffe to India.  
The 9th Lancers from India to South Africa.  
The 2nd Dragoon Guards from South Africa to Shorncliffe.

#### TRUMPET AND BUGLE SOUNDS

The following field calls for Cavalry, Imperial Yeomanry, Royal Horse and Field Artillery, and Mounted Infantry have been re-introduced :—

Field Call No. 1. Walk.

- |   |   |  |
|---|---|--|
| „ | „ | 2. Trot.   |
| „ | „ | 3. Gallop or charge.   |
| „ | „ | 4. March.  |
| „ | „ | 5. Halt.   |
| „ | „ | 6. Annul, or 'as you were.'  |
| „ | „ | 7. Head of column or heads of columns change direction half right. |
| „ | „ | 8. Head of column or heads of columns change direction half left.  |
| „ | „ | 9. Mount.  |
| „ | „ | 10. Dismount.  |

#### PROBLEM NO. 2

*Subaltern officers are reminded that the date by which Solutions of Problem No. 2, 'The Three Bridges,' must be received is August 15, 1906.*

O. LUMLEY, Colonel.

## *SPORTING NOTES*

### POINT TO POINT RACES

SINCE our last issue the following have come to our notice.

The Life Guards held their races in the Whaddon Chase country. The 1st Life Guards race was won by Mr. V. Eyre's The Tyke II., ridden by Lord H. Grosvenor, in a field of twelve runners. The 2nd Life Guards Light-weights was won by Mr. C. N. Newton's Lady Nicotine (owner). Heavy-weights by Mr. H. C. S. Ashton's Saxby (owner). Ascott Cup, Captain J. C. Brinton's Falconbridge (Captain de Crespigny).

---

The Earl of Chester's Yeomanry held their annual meeting on the Duke of Westminster's estate, near Chester. The principal event was the inter-regimental race with the Lancashire Hussars Imperial Yeomanry; the latter by one point secured the Challenge Cup for the third year running, thus winning it outright. Colonel E. R. G. Hopwood was first home. The Earl of Harrington's Cup for Yeomanry officers was won by Captain Cotton of the Denbighshire Yeomanry after a close run home with the Duke of Westminster.

The Duke of Westminster won for the fifth year in succession the cup he offers for the Cheshire Yeomanry officers, and presented it to Lieut. Jarmay, who finished second.

---

At the Salisbury Plain Military Point to Point, the Cavalry School Non-commissioned Officers' Cup was won by Staff-Sergt. Major R. R. Vaughan's Mary II. (owner), Corporal Bellamy (7th Hussars), on Mystery, being second.



The 7th Dragoon Guards races took place near Canterbury. The regimental race was won by Mr. F. C. Watson's Big Knee, with Major Dyer's Salop second. The regimental sweepstakes after a close race resulted in a win for Captain Mansell. The third race, open to horses that had been regularly hunted, was won by Mr. Palmer's (14th Hussars) Tophole, Mr. Joicey's Second to None being second.

---

The 5th Lancers held their meeting in conjunction with the Royal Welsh Fusiliers. Captain J. B. Jardine won the Regimental Light-weight Cup, and Mr. V. de Vallance the St. Patrick's Cup, owners riding.

---

The 16th Lancers held their races with the Scottish Borderers. Mr. Brooke, riding his own horses, won both the Heavy- and Light-weight Challenge Cups.

---

The Staff College races took place in the Garth Hunt country. Major R. B. Stephens (Rifle Brigade) won the Heavy-weight race, Major R. Bright (the Buffs) the Light-weight race, and Mr. D. C. Brown (K.D.G.s) the Soldiers' Race open to the Aldershot Army Corps.

---

The Royal Scots Greys ran no less than three separate Point to Point races this year. The first, for a Challenge Cup presented by Major Miller, D.S.O., was run in conjunction with the Eglinton Hunt races in Ayrshire, over a circular course about  $4\frac{1}{2}$  miles, and was ridden in colours. Sixteen faced the starter, a capital race resulting in a win for Mr. C. R. Pawson's Lion (owner). The second, for a Challenge Cup presented by Mr. Mark Sprot, was run in the Duke of Buccleuch's country. This race was one of the old-fashioned steeple-to-steeple kind, four miles as the crow flies over a stiff and varied country, catch-weights. Ten started and a good race was won by Mr. Borwick's Swell III. (owner).

The third race, for the Regimental Cup, was held in conjunction with the Fife Hunt over a circular grass and stone-wall course. There were ten competitors; notwithstanding the stiffness of the course the race was run at a good pace, much grief ensuing. Finally, Mr. Borwick again won on Swell III.

---

The Inniskilling Dragoons had a capital meeting at Fairymore over a fine sporting course. Captain T. G. Gibson won the Regimental Challenge Cup for Light-weights on his own horse, Tiddly Winks; Major F. A. B. Fryer's Sarah Jane winning the Heavy-weights, Major Paterson riding. Twenty-one runners faced the starter for the Hunt Cup open to members of the surrounding hunts, a grand race resulting in a dead heat between Mr. Cuffe and Mr. Malcolmson. The Infantry Plate and Farmers' Cup also produced large fields and close finishes.

#### PIGSTICKING IN INDIA.

For the Kadir Cup this year, which was competed for at Sherepore, there was a record entry of 133, including thirteen from the 15th Hussars, nine from the 17th Lancers, and four from the Royal Dragoons. The Cup was won by Lieut. B. Ritchie, 15th Hussars; Captain and Adjutant Livingstone-Learmonth, of the same regiment, and Second-Lieutenant W. H. Atkinson, Royal Dragoons, being in the finals.

#### THE HEIGHT OF POLO PONIES

With reference to 'Cavalier's' letter in our January issue we have received the following from Major Neil Haig, Inniskilling Dragoons:

'Personally, I cannot agree with "Cavalier," that to raise the height of ponies to 15.2 would be beneficial to military polo, but, at the same time, I feel sure everyone will welcome any suggestion likely to be advantageous to polo in the Army.

‘The advantages mentioned by “Cavalier” are :

‘1. The stronger the pony the less likelihood there is of his falling.

‘A true saying, though we take for granted that every player rides ponies suitable to his weight (not always the case even now) ; but if we raise the height we shall have greater inequality of strength by far than we have at present.

‘2. Each spring and autumn officers are put to the greatest difficulty and expense through their inability to stable both their hunters and ponies at the same time.

‘This is a fact, and should officers procure the required article, an enormous advantage might be gained ; but it is not given to every man, even in Ireland, to be able to cross a country on the class of animal that would carry him at polo : with a few it might be successful, but with the majority, no ! not even in Ireland, and we must legislate for the majority.

‘3. The more the height is increased, the easier it will be to get the required article at a reasonable price.

‘This I allow, but I would ask “Cavalier” how many officers nowadays train their own ponies with success ? I think he will allow that, except in a few isolated instances, there is not the same percentage per regiment that there used to be. Many officers who buy half-trained ponies play them all the summer, and sell them at the end of the season without loss, and in certain cases with profit. But were these ponies over 14.2, there would be no market for them outside regimental players.

‘4. Those who have not long purses would find it a great convenience to hunt, play polo, and ride on parade the same animals.

‘I think they would if they got very sound horses capable of the work. But I do not think that even this required article, having been fairly hunted all the winter, would long stand the combined work of regimental and brigade drill every morning and polo in the afternoons.

‘Now let us take the disadvantages.

## ' A DANGEROUS GAME

' You will have officers coming into the game on horses they cannot hold. A small pony is easier to ride than a big horse, and I always advise beginners to get a low, quiet, slow old stager to learn on, and I have frequently seen these old staggers handed on from one owner to another at only a slightly reduced value annually.

## ' CIVILIAN ELEMENT

' This scheme might answer at Aldershot or the Curragh, where a station game is provided, but how would it answer at stations where regiments have to play in members' games at the local club ?

' Again, many officers, even at Aldershot and the Curragh, like to play matches against civilian teams, also in various tournaments in the country. This would be rendered impossible, as no civilian polo club or tournament would knowingly allow unregistered ponies to play on their ground or in their tournament.

' Unless Hurlingham raise the standard, which I do not think there is any immediate likelihood of their doing, I cannot see that this scheme is either practical or feasible.'

## POLO ABROAD

*South Africa.*—The Open Subalterns' Tournament for the Alderson Cup was played this year on Roberts Heights, Pretoria, in May. Six teams entered. The 5th Mounted Infantry, owing to accidents to two of their team, scratched. The Queen's Bays defeated the 4th Dragoon Guards. The Northumberland Fusiliers were easily beaten by the 6th Mounted Infantry (the holders). The final between the 4th Hussars and the 6th Mounted Infantry was a good fast game ending in a win for the former by one goal and one subsidiary. The 4th Hussars were represented by Messrs. L. C. Brodie, C. D. Bell, W. F. Wormald, and A. R. Steele (back). Lady Hildyard presented the Cup.

*India.*—The final in the Infantry Polo Tournament was played at Lucknow between the Durham Light Infantry and the Queen's, the former again coming to the front in the Polo world by winning after a close game.

In the final for the Mahableshwar Tournament the 34th Poona Horse defeated the 10th Hussars after a dashing game by a subsidiary.

For the final of the Secunderabad Tournament, the 13th Hussars 'A' team beat the 13th Hussars 'B' team.

*Germany.*—Mr. H. S. Harrison, of the Blackmore Vale Polo Club, has this season undertaken the management of the Berlin Polo Club; under his guidance the conditions of Polo there have much improved. A match was recently played against the Hamburg Polo Club which resulted in a tie; after six minutes' extra play Berlin secured the winning goal.

#### POLO AT HOME

Polo in the Army, despite the recent mania to cut down expenses, regardless of whether it makes for efficiency or not, is more general and popular than ever. There are eighty playing members at Aldershot, and good reports from over a score of military clubs in various parts of the United Kingdom.

The finals for the Inter-Regimental Tournament at Hurlingham produced some grand games. Last year's winners, the Inniskilling Dragoons, having left for Cairo, were not represented and the event was very open.

The Army and we may say London society are under a deep obligation to the Hurlingham Club for not only giving the ground, but enabling this popular tournament to be played there. During the years 1903 and 1904, the Club ran the tournament at a loss of something between £100 and £200 per annum. Few people are aware that it pays the railway fares of the Polo ponies played in the *preliminary ties as well as in the final*, and these amount to between £300 and £400 per annum. Last year

the Club started charging £1 admission on the final day instead of 10s., and by this means were just able to clear expenses. Of the £1 paid at the gate, 10s. is refunded to officers on the active list who return the red receipt which they receive from the gate-keeper. We mention these facts in justice to the Hurlingham Club, which is often accused of making money over the transaction, and trust that this year a record attendance ensured it against loss, and will induce it to continue its kindly offices.

The Hurlingham Club has further just made another concession to Service members in the revision of Rule III., which now reads :

‘Officers of the Navy and Army on the Active List elected as “Service Members” will pay an Entrance Fee of £10 10s. 0d. (instead of £21) and an Annual Subscription of £5 5s. 0d. (instead of £8 8s. 0d.) until such member ceases to be on the Active List, when to continue as a Member he shall pay a further sum of Ten Guineas, and an Annual Subscription of Eight Guineas.’

We would urge on the Army Polo Committee that, in conjunction with civilian clubs, every effort should be made to induce the railway companies to lower their rates for the conveyance of Polo ponies. The Midland Railway have already made a concession, but with the increased popularity of Polo much more might be done with mutual advantage to both parties.

With lovely weather the season opened brilliantly and many good matches have taken place on the London grounds, between civilian and military teams, which space prevents our chronicling. The continued superiority of the brothers Miller and brothers Nickalls teams, with the fine play of Mr. Buckmaster, are still features of Headquarter Polo. In the North the season commenced at York with a good match between the 18th Hussars and Mr. Slocock’s team from Ireland, the latter winning by five goals to three.

In connection with the annual training of the Royal Bucks Hussars Yeomanry at High Wycombe, a capital game was

played between the Regiment and Oxford University, the Yeomen winning by four goals to two.

At Fremington, the North Devon Club played the North Devon Imperial Yeomanry, who were encamped at Alnwick. The Yeomanry were represented by Major R. A. Sanders, the popular Master of the Exmoor Staghounds, Major Bayley, Mr. Lyon Clark, and Mr. Mardon. The match resulted in a win for the Club, but they were assisted by Colonel Wilson Hoare and another officer of the Yeomanry, who were also members of the Club. Colonel Drummond umpired and it was a sporting affair.

At Brighton the Sussex Imperial Yeomanry made a good fight against the 20th Hussars, the latter eventually winning by seven goals to three.

The Aldershot Cup Tournament took place at Ranelagh on June 18; twelve teams were entered and each game consisted of four periods of eight minutes each and ten minutes in the final. Last year the Royal Horse Guards won the Cup, but were knocked out this year by the 5th Lancers, who in their turn after the best game of the day were just defeated by the 8th Hussars. The final was between this regiment and the King's Dragoon Guards; the '8th' after a fine game won the Cup by two goals to one.

#### INTER-REGIMENTAL TOURNAMENT

*First Ties.*—The Coldstream Guards scratched to the 8th Hussars.

*Second Ties.*—The 8th Hussars beat the King's Dragoon Guards by six goals to two.

8th Hussars—Major F. W. Wormald, D.S.O., Capt. G. M. Mort, Capt. Sir Chas. B. Lowther, Mr. E. Blakiston Houston.

King's Dragoon Guards—Major J. A. Bell-Smyth, Capt. W. Lockett, D.S.O., Capt. D. A. Rasbotham, Mr. St. C. Cheape.

The 5th Lancers beat the Irish Guards by seven goals to one.

5th Lancers—Capt. M. F. McTaggart, Mr. H. Faudel-Phillips, Major Brown Clayton, Capt. O. K. Chance (back).

Irish Guards—Mr. A. H. B. Fitzgerald, Capt. H. F. Crichton, Major the Hon. G. H. Morris, Sir Hill Childe, M.V.O. (back).

*Third Ties.*—The 8th Hussars beat the 5th Lancers by eight goals to two.

The 20th Hussars beat the 7th Dragoon Guards very easily.

20th Hussars—Mr. J. S. Cawley, Mr. C. MacG. Dunbar, Mr. B. A. P. Schreiber, and Capt. H. C. Hessey.

7th Dragoon Guards—Mr. H. G. Shrubbs, Mr. M. E. Lindsay, Capt. W. S. Whetherly, and Mr. F. C. Watson.

The 21st Lancers beat the 2nd Life Guards by seven goals to three.

21st Lancers—Mr. D. W. Godfree, Lieut.-Colonel Paul A. Kenna, V.C., D.S.O., Mr. C. H. Delmege, and Major A. M. Pirie, D.S.O. (back).

2nd Life Guards—Lord Montgomerie, Mr. R. G. V. Duff, Mr. H. C. S. Ashton, and Capt. C. C. de Crespigny, D.S.O. (back).

The Royal Horse Guards beat the 1st Life Guards by two goals to none.

Royal Horse Guards—Lord Ingestre, Lord Herbert, M.V.O., Capt. H. E. Brassey, Capt. G. J. Fitzgerald.

1st Life Guards—Lord Hugh Grosvenor, Major G. Milner, D.S.O., Capt. E. H. Brassey, Capt. Hon. F. Guest.

The 7th Hussars beat the 16th Lancers by six goals to two.

7th Hussars—Mr. E. Hermon, Mr. E. Brassey, Mr. E. Kelly, Major Hon. J. G. Beresford, D.S.O.

16th Lancers—Capt. A. W. Macarthur-Onslow, Mr. M. Graham, Capt. G. Bellville, Major G. Tuson, D.S.O.

The Scots Greys beat the 18th Hussars by eight goals to two.

Scots Greys—Capt. W. Long, D.S.O., Mr. M. Johnstone, Mr. M. Borwick, Major C. Bulkeley-Johnson.

18th Hussars—Capt. A. McLachlan, Mr. E. Lyon, Capt. H. Cape, Capt. N. Stewart.



*Fourth Ties.*—The 20th Hussars beat the 8th Hussars by seven goals to two.

The 21st Lancers beat the Royal Horse Guards by seven goals to four.

The Scots Greys beat the 7th Hussars by nine goals to four.

The 11th Hussars beat the 3rd Dragoon Guards very easily.

11th Hussars—Mr. F. Sutton, Major T. Pitman, Mr. M. Lakin, and Capt. J. J. Richardson (back).

3rd Dragoon Guards—Capt. G. Weir, Mr. H. Watt, Capt. J. Hayes, and Major Smith-Bingham (back).

All the above Ties were played on grounds as convenient as possible to the regiments competing.

*Semi-final Ties.*—On July 4 the 20th Hussars met the Scots Greys at Hurlingham, and in the end gained a somewhat easy victory by seven goals to one. The play was fairly even for the first half, but during the last three periods the superior combination and harder hitting of the Hussars carried all before them. The ground seemed to cut up a good deal, and the ball bumped so frequently that accurate hitting was the exception rather than the rule. For the Hussars Mr. Dunbar and Mr. Schreiber at back were most conspicuous, while for the Greys Major Bulkeley-Johnson at back put in a great deal of good work.

On July 5 the 11th Hussars met the 21st Lancers on the same ground, which seemed to play rather truer than on the previous day, but still cut up a good deal towards the latter half of the game. The Hussars rode off winners by eight goals to three, but the Lancers made a very stubborn fight of it. In the first 'chucker' Mr. Lakin hit two goals, while in the next two periods there was very little to choose between the teams, both sides scoring three goals, which left the Hussars leading by five goals to three at half-time. The latter half of the game the Hussars were constantly attacking, and hit up three more goals.

*Final Tie.*—11th Hussars v. 20th Hussars.

11th Hussars—Mr. F. H. Sutton, Capt. P. D. Fitzgerald, D.S.O., Mr. M. L. Lakin, and Capt. J. J. Richardson (back).

20th Hussars—Mr. J. S. Cawley, Mr. C. MacG. Dunbar, Capt. H. C. Hessey, and Mr. B. A. P. Schreiber (back).

*Notes by the Umpire*

On Saturday, July 7, in perfect weather, the final of this tournament was played at Hurlingham Club, the headquarters of polo.

There was an immense crowd of excited spectators to see the struggle between the two regiments left in out of the seventeen original entries.

The Prince and Princess of Wales very kindly honoured the contest with their presence, and were evidently much interested in the play.

The military tournament at Hurlingham is by far the most popular and the keenest competition of the year, and owing to excitement many old soldier-players and others could not restrain themselves from trespassing on the ground during the play in order to get a better view of the match.

Most polo experts were agreed that it would be a very even contest, and so it turned out.

During the first ten minutes the play was steady and each team obtained a goal. Then the 20th, with combined play and accurate hitting, got a lead of three goals, the scoring-board showing four to one in their favour.

The 11th Hussars played up pluckily, but at half-time the scoring-board still showed four goals to two in favour of the 20th.

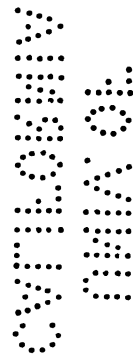
In the fourth and fifth 'chuckers' the 11th (generally led by Mr. Lakin) scored two more goals to one by the 20th, and at the commencement of the final ten minutes the 20th were five goals to four; but in a few minutes the 11th managed to equalise matters, and as no further goals were hit before the sixty minutes bell rang, play was continued for an extra sixteen minutes before the 20th Hussars managed to dribble the ball through the posts, with a great cheer.

The Prince and Princess of Wales very kindly presented the handsome cup to the winners, and said a few words of praise and congratulation to each of the team.

It was a splendid final for the Soldiers' Cup. The dashing play was the cause of several falls and three trifling accidents, which only made the competitors play up more keenly. The jostling and riding out was quite up to the old regimental tournament form, but was fair, and both teams played in a friendly way. The 11th had rather faster ponies, but the 20th made up for this by having a better command of the ball and through placing it for one another, which, given good riders, hitters, and ponies, is the great secret of success in first-class polo. Mr. Schreiber played a fine game at back for the 20th, and continually fed his forwards by hard, clean strokes, but I feel sure that the winners and others will all agree that Mr. Lakin deserves a special word of praise for his brilliant play at No. 3 for the 11th.

In closing may I express a hope that the military authorities will allow the old arrangement to be revived, when all preliminary ties were played at Hurlingham? The leave can be restricted to a week if necessary, and the cost does not now fall on regiments, as the Hurlingham Club pays return rail fares of players and ponies from wherever the teams are quartered. I do hope that soldiers past and present will assist to get the War Office to sanction the tournament being held as formerly at Hurlingham.

J. W. YARDLEY, Lieut.-Col.,  
*Sporting Editor.*





THE 21st LANCERS AT OMDURMAN.

# THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

---

OCTOBER 1906.

---

ON completion of our first year of publication we desire to thank our readers for the very encouraging support they have given to the CAVALRY JOURNAL.

We do not propose to rest on the standard attained, but if our readers will help us we want to get on to further developments; we not only ask for continuation of patronage, but for an increased reading membership. We do not do this for the money; our finances are all right—we pay our way. Our main objects are, in the first place to be of practical use, especially to young officers and non-commissioned officers in gaining a knowledge of their profession; to help in forming Cavalry opinions; and to strengthen up the bond between the Indian, Colonial, and the Home Mounted Forces.

If each one of our present readers would remember that these are our objects, and would do something towards making them known among those around them, it would be a very great help indeed. Increased circulation would of course mean increased revenue, which might enable us to pay for articles from the best authorities, to add to our illustrations, &c.

The best reward we can look for is the recognition of our task by our brother officers in the form of increased reading membership.

ARTHUR LEETHAM  
(*Managing Editor*).

VOL. I.—No. 4.

E E

*BALACLAVA*

OCTOBER 25, 1854

THIS month brings the anniversary of our great Cavalry day of modern times—of Balaclava.

The two charges of October 25 may not have been so great in magnitude as some other battles, but this was the last occasion on which we have had the opportunity of fighting Cavalry against Cavalry in any strength, and therefore we think a good deal of it.

The charge of the Light Brigade placed us on as high a footing as any Cavalry for a fine example of self-sacrifice in carrying out orders, whatever may have been the faults in the ordering of such sacrifice.

Although the charge of the Light Brigade is one which has appealed to the world and overshadowed all else in its reckless daring and heavy losses, still the successful charge of the Heavies on the same day, against apparently overwhelming odds, was equally a display of the right Cavalry spirit—namely, to kill or be killed.

In observing the anniversary of Balaclava we must not forget to give credit to our brave French allies, the 3rd Chasseurs d'Afrique, who joined in the Light Cavalry charge, supporting our left flank, and enabled the survivors to get back from the 'Valley of the Shadow of Death.'

Nor are we the only nation which has shown in modern times that Cavalry are quite as ready to sacrifice themselves in war as to look smart in peace.

At Reichshofen, Marshal MacMahon called on the French



8th and 9th Cuirassiers, by charging, to save his centre and left after his right had been beaten.

At Mars la Tour, von Bredow with his brigade charged through the French Cavalry, Infantry, and Artillery to gain time for reinforcements to come to the hard-pressed Infantry; and though the brigade was annihilated the situation was saved.

These examples remind us that Cavalry must be prepared to fight mounted against Cavalry or other arms, and that it must be imbued with the spirit of whole-hearted, reckless self-sacrifice—provided always that this is not considered as an excuse by an incompetent leader for rushing stupidly into a ‘regrettable incident’ without adequate reason. In the fifty years which have elapsed since Balaclava our Cavalry have not had a chance of a charge in brigade against other Cavalry, though they have had many a ‘scrap’ in India, Afghanistan, Egypt, and South Africa. All this goes to show that in our training we must prepare ourselves to turn our hand to almost every kind of fighting, but that at the back of it all there must ever be preparation for the greatest test of all—the Cavalry battle.

Although methods and means may differ the spirit which inspires them is one and the same all through, and that is that we engage in the fight, whatever kind it may be, with the one idea—to go in and kill, or be killed.

#### ITALIAN OFFICERS AT BALACLAVA

Lieutenant Mario Caccia writes from the Italian Cavalry School at Pinerolo that it may interest our readers to hear that two Italian officers took part in the charge—Major Govone and Lieut. Landriani. The former, in an account he sent home, says: ‘We were on the right of the first line, but neither of us saw the finish, as Landriani fell 400 or 500 yards from the Batteries, and I had my horse killed under me 50 or 100 yards further on and was wounded in the shoulder. Landriani was made a prisoner; I retired on foot.’



**OUR INDIAN CAVALRY\***

By 'RISSALAH'

A critical comparison of the Silladar and non-Silladar systems—Arguments *pro* and *con*.—Some suggestions for the future.

WITH the advent of the reforming hand of Lord Kitchener, many and vast changes have taken place, and are still taking place, in our army in India, amongst which the total reorganisation of our Indian Cavalry has frequently loomed large, and which, it is generally accepted, has only been shelved owing to other and more pressing reforms which have absorbed all available funds.

For those not cognisant of Indian words, it will be well, perhaps, before proceeding further, to explain the term silladar.

The word is an anglicised form of the two Hindustani words *Silah* (a weapon) and *Dar* (bearer of or owner of). The English word Esquire of the middle ages carried much the same meaning that silladar did at the commencement of the nineteenth century.

The word silladar is nowadays erroneously used in conjunction with the word Cavalry to differentiate between the two systems; it is also used alone, in which case it refers to a sowar† of the silladar Cavalry.

A man enlists in the Indian Cavalry (silladar or non-silladar) for a period of twenty-one years, after which he can proceed on pension, which, commencing at 4 Rs. per mensem for a sowar

\* This subject has two very pronounced sides to it, and we have no wish to enter into a controversy on it.—Ed.

† Hindustani for a rider, and used as the word trooper or private is at home.

(private), rises according to a fixed scale for the grade in which he may happen to retire. If permitted by his commanding officer, he can continue to serve for thirty-two years, after which he becomes entitled to an enhanced rate of pension commencing at 7 Rs. and rising proportionately grade for grade. If at any time he is invalided through no fault of his own, he is entitled to a pension at a fixed scale depending on service, injury, or illness. If killed on active service, his next-of-kin are entitled to pension at a fixed rate.

He is transferable to the reserve at his own request under certain conditions, and can, within certain limits, go when he chooses except in time of war. He is liable to be removed at any time within three years by the summary award of his commanding officer as unlikely to become an efficient Cavalry soldier. After three years he can only be removed by the general officer commanding or on account of certain convictions carrying with them dismissal.

He is entitled to three and a half months' furlough once in three years, and has his railway fare to and from his home paid by Government. In addition to above, commanding officers are permitted to allow annually a certain percentage of men short leave up to two months.

Such are the broad general rules for service in the Indian Cavalry, both silladar and non-silladar. We now arrive at where the two systems bifurcate, and as the latter can be dealt with in a few lines, it will be taken first.

A man enlisting in the non-silladar Cavalry does so just like a recruit in our British service. He receives 11 Rs. a month pay, rising according to scale for good conduct.

Government provide him with a horse, house, arms, certain equipment, and part of his clothing, but not food, except on active service. These are the main conditions of service under this system.

The silladar system is essentially an oriental one, and was in vogue many years before we British appeared in India, the bulk

of the Cavalry raised and maintained under the Mogul Emperors being organised in this way, which was as follows :

Any man wishing to serve brought his horse and entire kit, in return for which he received a fixed rate of pay or share of booty which covered everything, and out of which he had to support and house both himself and his horse.

Up to the outbreak of the Mutiny in 1857, the bulk of the Company's Cavalry was regular, and a great portion of it mutinied. During those troublesome times large bodies of irregular Cavalry were raised on the silladar system by various British officers, the most noted, perhaps, being Hodson's and Probyn's Horse.

Any man wishing to serve brought his own kit of whatever description he chose, and if the *tout ensemble* was acceptable to his commanding officer, he was promptly enrolled.

After the suppression of the Mutiny many of these Rissalahs (Cavalry regiments) were kept on, but it very soon became evident that this happy-go-lucky arrangement had many glaring defects, one of the main ones being utter want of any uniformity whatever. The upshot of this was that men wishing to enrol were invited to bring a certain fixed sum and no horse and kit, the regiment providing both.

This fixed sum varied according to regiments ; in some the incoming recruit had to pay down the price of his horse only, deductions being made from his pay until the remainder of his kit was paid for. Other regiments required the entire sum covering horse and outfit. In the early days the sum required under either of above was generally forthcoming, but as time went on men who would bring 350 Rs. became rarer and rarer, and nowadays a man seldom brings more than 200 Rs., the regiment advancing the balance required on loan, which is repaid by monthly instalments plus a nominal interest.

As already said, each regiment had its own system, and its own what is known as ' Assami price,' that is, the amount it required from recruits on joining, either in cash, or partly in cash and partly on loan, few regiments accepting less than 200 Rs.

in actual cash. If a man took his discharge at any time he was entitled to receive whatever sum he put down in actual cash when joining, but any sum due to him through repayment of his loan from the regiment could, at the option of the commanding officer, be paid back to him at the same rate as he paid it to the regiment. This was found so successful that various rules and regulations were drawn up on the subject, and the system which is now known as the silladar one began to crystallise into the form it at present takes.

Government, finding that it was productive of economy without any depreciation in efficiency, with the exception of their three Madras regiments, converted the remainder of their regular Cavalry to it, and it is on this footing that thirty-six out of thirty-nine of our Indian Cavalry regiments are now raised and maintained.

That is, to reiterate, a man wishing to join the silladar Cavalry brings a certain lump sum, a portion of which may be advanced by the regiment, in return for which he is provided with a horse and complete outfit known as an Assami. Government provide a rifle and 31 Rs. a month pay, out of which the man has to house and feed both himself and his mount. This also includes the upkeep of a mule and a syce, both of which are shared by a comrade known as a Joridar.\* After enrolment, certain deductions are made from his pay monthly, the principal one being towards providing a horse on his present one being cast. This deduction is calculated on the assumption that purchased as a six-year-old the animal will be cast after ten years' work.

Such is a broad outline of how this unique force is raised and organised—there are innumerable minor regulations qualifying pay, pension, compensation for food and grain in famine years, &c. Hardly any two regiments work on exactly similar lines, but the general principle is identical throughout.

The opponents of the silladar system generally put forward the following main points in support of their view.

\* Hindustani for 'a pair.'

1. *That although perhaps economical as it stands it would involve Government in vast expenditure in time of war.*—Economy, certainly nowadays, more or less decides the fate of systems of any sort. That the silladar system is economical as it stands is generally admitted by all—no other known voluntary one will provide thirty-six Cavalry regiments at the price, nor even anything approaching it; the question is, is not perhaps this economy counterbalanced by many shortcomings, and does economy alone justify the retention of the system? Let us turn to these affirmed shortcomings and see if they can be mitigated or got rid of.

2. *The system is not in accordance with modern war.*—Let us draw a hasty sketch of what will occur on the outbreak of a great war with, say, four silladar Cavalry divisions thrown on to the frontier to operate in Afghanistan or Persia.

These four divisions would absorb, say, sixteen regiments. Each regiment would proceed 500 strong, leaving at their respective depôts 125 men and about 100 horses. On leaving their bases the responsibility for feeding and clothing these regiments (both men and horses) practically passes to Government.

Judging by the wastage of horses in great wars, the peculiar severity of climate, and general inhospitality of that terrain, it is no wild statement to say that the sixteen regiments would require remounting in six months, both in mules and horses, certainly the latter. Where are the remounts to come from? The young stock, remounts, and crocks left at the dépôt will be a mere drop in the ocean.

The purchasing capacity of a silladar Cavalry regiment is approximately sixty horses per annum, and Government recognising the impossibility of regiments financing their own remount operations on field service, special provisions are made for doing so by a system of loans and compensation (*vide* Field Service Regulations).

Again, let a severe engagement reduce a regiment to half its strength, is Government to be dependent in repleting the ranks

on whether So-and-so can put down so much to serve ? Of course the dépôt and reserves can replace some, and trained men can be drawn from other non-mobilised corps, but that will not obviate the responsibility of the regiment concerned from paying up the estates of the men killed. As matters at present stand it would quite fail to fulfil its engagements in that respect, and Government would have perforce to step in ; so, irrespective of the anomaly of such a state of affairs, those who state that the cost to Government on active service would be heavy are certainly entitled to be heard, and their contention, that the system is utterly at variance with the requirements of war, is perhaps not far wrong.

3. *It is tottering on the verge of bankruptcy.*—This statement may appear too sweeping, and in many cases it is, but the following may to some extent uphold the assertion. As already pointed out, when first the system of substituting cash for horse and kit was established the incoming recruit actually paid a sufficient sum to cover the cost of his outfit, but as time went on not only did the outfit cost more, but the men willing to pay sufficient cash became scarcer and scarcer ; the result was the men either borrowed the wherewithal from sowkars \* or relatives or brought a certain amount, and the regiment advanced the balance, the advance being adjusted by the man paying it back by monthly instalments. This latter proceeding came to be looked upon as the normal one, and year by year expenses rise, year by year the recruit brings less, the direct result being heavier advances from the funds and heavier instalments from the recruit.

What effect has this on the regimental funds ? Tottering on bankruptcy may be over-stating it in many cases, but it also closely approximates the truth in an alarmingly large number, and those that are not in such a state owe it to one of two causes, viz. :

(1) Years spent in quiet backwaters where they were never hustled, and men's horses and kits had little wear and tear, and

\* Moneylenders.

where in days gone by there was little of that all-pervading scrutiny of the why and wherefore of every little detail of internal economy.

(2) Large grants of land from which regiments derive considerable profit.

Regiments under (1) and (2) are perhaps more or less independent, and come under the head of 'him that hath,' but what about the remainder? Every kind of device for making a bit of money to keep above water is resorted to. One or two are dealt with further on, it is enough to say that the young soldier in many cases undergoes exquisite penury for four or five years, and in many cases the regiment permanently so.

4. *Commanding officers and all ranks have to spend a large portion of their time administering a system of internal economy beset with difficulties and intricate questions.*—It would appear a natural inference that a system as above *would* absorb a vast amount of a commanding officer's time; in addition he has a special officer detailed to manipulate a rather complicated system of accounts incidental to what one must own is a rather complex organisation, and behind all this comes a large number of men on regimental employ. A commanding officer of a silladar Cavalry regiment must not only be a 'soldier' but should possess considerable power of financial foresight; he must be able to carry through a sound policy, without being led into byways. Such commanding officers are not always to be had: they either possess the one and lack the other or often possess only a little of either, the result being disastrous to the regiment. From a peace point of view a rotten financier may blast the entire regiment for years to come, whereas the indifferent soldier will do little permanent harm and his successor will very soon rectify matters.

Whatever way one looks at it the amount of worry and trouble caused by accounts and generally steering a course to avoid the rocks of bankruptcy may take up a considerable portion of the commanding officer's time, and consequently must detract from that which he might employ in the war training of his corps.

5. *Want of homogeneity throughout, and perpetual and never-ending legislation to meet every minor change.*—To those cognisant of our Indian Cavalry the want of a homogeneous system throughout has often been only too obvious. It will serve no useful purpose to enter into them here—little regimental idiosyncrasies, horses, funds, grass land, &c., all make up a heavy toll, the manipulation of which often considerably embarrasses the headquarters staff, resulting in endless orders to meet every varying phase. Of late years a special staff officer has been allotted to army headquarters for the purpose, resulting in a great improvement, but no one can deny that as long as the innumerable various conditions exist in the silladar Cavalry, so long will endless regulations have to be issued to meet them, and so long will the manipulation of silladar Cavalry affairs be attended with what often appears irritating inconsistency. A great deal might be done to simplify matters by a broad-minded committee, but the writer predicts distinct opposition, as conservatism pervades most silladar Cavalry officers, and each jealously upholds his own particular regimental system.

6. *Far too much latitude allowed to commanding officers.*—The casual observer may consider this the least important of the 'shortcomings' of the silladar system, but there is more in it than appears on the surface.

No one wishes for a moment to restrict the freedom of commanding officers, which if confined to broadly defined limits is a most excellent corrective to the converse, but the detractors of the system affirm that latitude often leads to

(a) Quaintly quixotic notions on the class of horses required for the ranks.

(b) Equally quixotic ideas on handling funds and general financing of a regiment.

(c) Everlasting change of equipment and adoption of fads which serve no useful purpose.

(d) Commanding officers often arrogating to themselves the idea that their regiment is almost their own property to do with as they like.



Of above (a) and (b) are unquestionably the most important, particularly (a), as it may militate against the efficiency of a regiment for war.

It may be as well to here again emphasise for those who do not know the silladar system that the remount operations are entirely in the hands of the commanding officer.

To every man is not given the gift of 'an eye for a horse,' no matter how long he may have been associated with them. One may train the mind to appreciate the main points required for a trooper, but only to a very limited extent can one train the eye to embrace these points, so that given 300 possible horses one can with ease and confidence select the 30 that would be the most suitable.

(c) Although little real harm is done here, and often much good, still great inconvenience, expense, and squandering of funds have frequently accompanied a new commanding officer's advent to power, and it seems within the bounds of common sense that, if nothing else was done, all kit and uniform might be standardised throughout the Indian Cavalry.

The supporters of the silladar system affirm :

1. *It is economical.*—There is no gainsaying the question of economy in time of peace. One has heard it stated from reliable sources that the monthly cost of a silladar and a non-silladar regiment was nearly equal. Such may be true as the two services at present stand, but the statement does not seem to take into account that a silladar regiment maintains 300 odd transport animals and 100 odd more men and horses than a non-silladar regiment; it also ignores the initial cost of remounts. A very simple computation can show, if above are included, which is the cheapest. Of course if one takes up the line of argument that the transport of a silladar Cavalry regiment is superfluous, and should be furnished as required by the Supply and Transport Corps, which can with difficulty find work for its mule corps as it is, there may be something in the assertion; but it is generally conceded that there are already too few mule cadres for war

purposes, and one may therefore doubt if the abolition of regimental transport is so desirable as some would wish one to believe, and if it is to be retained as a necessary evil as a reserve, then a regiment will keep it as cheaply as the Supply and Transport Corps.

2. *It is infinitely more mobile than the non-silladar.*—This requires some qualification. That a silladar Cavalry regiment can, so to speak, pack up its traps and march almost anywhere in twenty-four hours, provided the country can support it, is admitted, and in days gone by this was an invaluable asset. Nowadays war in India itself is looked upon as a mere chimera—a large and fairly well-organised riot is the worst that has to be apprehended, the suppression of which would hardly tax the strength of the Government. After one month of campaigning in Central Asia, however, I venture to maintain that the apparent extra mobility of the silladar Cavalry over the non-silladar would be undetectable, hence this much-talked-of mobility is purely a peace asset.

In possessing its own transport lies the chief cause of the silladar Cavalry's extra mobility in time of peace, and as this transport is also very valuable for harvesting purposes, and miscellaneous work in cantonments, one arrives at the conclusion that, although by no means essential for a unit to ensure its preparedness for war, still it is desirable, as it tends towards economy and also serves to keep the ranks in touch with the more elementary principles of supplying their own wants, a rapidly vanishing art in modern armies.

I would therefore give the non-silladar regiments similar transport on lines indicated hereafter.

3. *It is absolutely self-contained*—i.e. it looks after itself, and is independent of all the other great departments of an army, on which other branches of the service rely.

This also requires qualification—it is only true in time of peace. In war it is not—in fact, it comes on almost exactly the same footing as any other arm. Is this desirable? A great deal

of time and labour is expended in peace time by silladar Cavalry regiments in running what is called 'their own show,' and it is an open question if the 'Departments' could not run these 'shows' better, and thus release many men for their proper rôle as 'soldiers.'

4. *In time of war it provides its own reserve of men and horses.*—This is a very open question: a certain percentage of corks, a few unsound harness and such like animals, and some young stock go a long way to reduce your 100 odd horses left at the dépôt, and the casualties of a severe engagement could never be replaced from them.

If the silladar system is to prevail, regiments of similar constitution ought to be brigaded and in time of war their dépôts massed, the material there being available for any regiment of the brigade. This would probably cause some confusion over accounts &c., and class constitution which would require careful legislation, but it would possess the merit of 'soundness.'

5. *It encourages a better stamp of man to enlist, and conversely keeps out undesirables, and it is more popular.*—This must be admitted as both systems stand at present. The writer has had the good fortune to discuss the matter with senior native officers who had served in both silladar and non-silladar regiments. Of course their prejudices ran in the direction of the silladar system, as they were transfers from it to the non-silladar. Still they were broad-minded about the whole matter, and the following were the chief points they gave :—

Remove two or three minor grievances and raise the pay of the non-silladar, making it equal to that of the silladar plus the average 'batchat' (saving) throughout India of the silladar regiments, and both native officers and men would flock to the ranks willingly, and the non-silladar would, if any, become the more popular, as most nowadays recognise that the payment of 200 to 300 Rs. for an 'Assami' is not a profitable undertaking.

6. *It encourages a man to take an interest in his horse, and tends to check all unnecessary extravagance.*—This is perhaps an

obvious sequence to the horse and kit being a man's own property, but the reader must not imagine that, if a man's horse dies from say overwork on a field day, or some fatal accident, the owner replaces it; except in very rare cases the horse is replaced by the funds. A commanding officer can, under certain conditions, hold a man liable for a new horse, but the occasion for doing so rarely arises. If a man maltreats his horse a commanding officer can place him on dismounted pay, liability to which generally ensures care and consideration, both in the field and stable. As regards the latter, it is the interest of every man to keep his horse in good condition, as otherwise he has to pay the piper in the form of extra grain, and thereby gets no 'batchat.'

If a man injures his kit he has to replace it, and consequently every care is taken of it.

7. *Men are less liable to take their discharge.*—This must be admitted. A man wishing to take his discharge prematurely knows well he only gets back his original cash deposit, and that all remaining money due to him will only be refunded at the rate he paid it in. Consequently he prefers staying on till he can take it away to his village in one lump sum. In the non-silladar Cavalry there is no such attraction, and a man has only his pension to look forward to.

8. *It is not trammelled by red tape.*—Perhaps it is not, but the fact of it not being so hardly justifies any logical conclusion as to the respective merits of either.

Both sides of the question have now been entered into. I have endeavoured to do so impartially, and only to touch on the most important points. No doubt many, especially silladar Cavalry officers, will find much they disagree with. Most of it is merely reiterating almost well-worn truisms, but as already indicated few outside India, and for the matter of that few in India other than silladar Cavalry officers, have any notion how our Indian Cavalry is run, and it is for those that the writer hopes the above will appear as something more than a mere succession of platitudes.

But to return. Let us strike a balance between the points in support of the system and those in condemnation of it, and what is the result? I think economy in time of peace, and provision of some doubtful reserves in time of war, are the main items on the credit side of the silladar Cavalry, against which on the debit are :

- (1) A very doubtful economy in time of war.
- (2) An organisation utterly at variance with the requirements and stress of a great war.
- (3) Want of homogeneity throughout both in peace and war.
- (4) Lack of financial stability due to altered conditions, and changes of the times.

Bearing above in view one feels that the silladar system is found lacking in the most important essentials for 'War,' that its alleged economy in peace does not justify its maintenance. One may therefore assume that the non-silladar one should be adopted in its place.

Let us examine how this might be done and what modifications could be made if such occurred.

The first point is that of taking over the silladar Cavalry. This is the *bête noire* of the entire question. Silladar Cavalry officers invariably lend colour to the idea that it would involve vast expenditure; and unless injustice was done to the silladar, it would involve a very large sum, but nothing like what some would lead us to believe. It is often assumed that to arrive roughly at the sum necessary we must total the price required to purchase all the 'Assamis' held by sowars in the silladar Cavalry. This is quite an error. All Government has to concern itself with is that no sowar loses a single anna by the change. That some regiments would lose large allotments of land and accumulated funds is certain, but as they were either directly or indirectly due to Government it matters little.

The writer is aware that funds are at present not available for the change, but fails to see why Government could not take over, say, four regiments per annum.

Let us assume that Government take over four regiments per annum.

The next point is that, having taken them over, Government should run them on lines more approximating to the silladar rather than to the non-silladar system.

The present strength of silladar regiments should be maintained, not that of the non-silladar. If the remounting operations of the regiment were properly supervised there would be at least sixty horses as a reserve when the regiment was mobilised, which could take their place in the ranks in three months' time, and about forty or so still remaining sufficiently fit to train recruits on. The non-silladar only provide about fourteen horses for the *depôt* when mobilised, and we may assume that the former is the preferable.

Another point is the forage question, and here again, could not Government continue the silladar system—*i.e.* each newly constituted regiment would have its own forage areas made over to them and harvest their own forage in whatever cantonment they happened to be? To do this, Government would also have to allot so many Government mules to each regiment in the proportion of one to every two sowars, and likewise the allotment of syces would be in the same proportion. This would serve three purposes :

(1) Save Government the expense of providing forage from their own grass farms.

(2) The small extra expense to the State of the syces would be completely compensated for by (1), and to boot remove one of the unpopular items against the non-silladar Cavalry. A small annual grant would also be necessary to cover the harvesting operations. This has been partially tried, or is under trial, but the number of mules and syces allotted is as a rule inadequate.

In cases where no allotment of forage areas was possible, or where they were too far from cantonments for a corps to harvest them, commanding officers would be permitted, as they are now at several stations, to arrange the supply by contract, assisting as far as possible with the transport at their disposal. Some will say that this would be open to obvious objections; but up-to-date commanding officers have always loyally done their best for

Government, and there is no reason to suppose they would not do so in the future.

(3) Grain would be supplied by the Supply and Transport Corps as at present for British Cavalry, only on a reduced scale.

In addition to the above, to compensate for loss of 'batchat,' Government would have to raise the pay from 11 Rs. per month to 12.8 Rs. If this were done and some relaxation in the present pension rules introduced, a great step would be accomplished towards popularising the new venture, and it would not throw any great financial burden on the State. One or two other minor matters, such as still further grouping of regiments into brigades, the depôt of each regiment being massed into one under one British officer on mobilisation, might be introduced also. An inspecting veterinary officer should be appointed to each brigade, to assist commanding officers in casting and supervising the veterinary arrangements.

Will readers look upon the writer as a most dangerously rabid type of iconoclast when he suggests that the present system of regimental promotion be abolished and that the newly formed Cavalry be organised on similar lines to that of the Royal Horse Artillery, with one uniform and one *esprit de corps*?

Regimental *esprit de corps* is a very valuable asset in our army, if not carried, as it often is, too far. A recent writer in the 'Times' pointed out some of the less desirable features of this sentiment, so the writer does not propose touching on any here. In time of war an officer may be called on to command many castes and creeds, as it will probably be found extremely difficult to maintain regimental classes, under stress of heavy losses; and as war is the ultimate object of all military training and organisation, it would seem that it would be more advisable for an officer to be fairly well acquainted with the bulk of the various castes he may command in the field, in preference to minute knowledge of one or two.

Hosts of other suggestions and reforms will no doubt present themselves to many—only the mere fringe of the subject has been

touched on here—and many of the ideas put forward will meet with disapproval, especially the last.

The writer hopes, however, that he will not be accused of partisanship when he says that, having taken considerable pains to make himself acquainted with the two systems on which Indian Cavalry is raised and maintained, he is forced to the conclusion that, sooner or later, the silladar one will be doomed. Its organisation is archaic and wanting in many of the elementary essentials required by war; it is the product of a bygone century of mediæval warfare and not suited to modern times.

That the non-silladar system is perfect no one wishes to imply, but as one on which to raise and maintain a mounted force ensuring satisfactory results under stress of war it is undoubtedly the superior.

More expensive it may be in times of peace, but as shown, there is still room for economy in many branches which, if adopted, would provide a force which would be free from many of the defects of the silladar system, and at the same time retain many of its redeeming attributes.

‘The best is the cheapest in the long run,’ and although the expense of conversion might be heavy, and a permanent recurring charge on the annual military budget would have to be made, the Indian people and the empire at large would be well repaid.

That such reorganisation should involve the breaking up of the present regimental system, to be replaced by that of our Royal Artillery, may to many appear an altogether uncalled-for and drastic innovation; but, however much one may be devoted to one’s regiment and cherish all its traditions and little peculiarities, one cannot help feeling that such a change would raise the average standard of efficiency, as a whole, of the mounted forces, and render them more elastic for war conditions. Our navy and Regiment of Royal Artillery are standing monuments of *esprit de corps* on a larger and more broad-minded basis, and it seems within the bounds of possibility that our Indian Cavalry organised on similar lines could achieve similar, if not even greater, results, and be the finest mounted corps the world could produce.



### OUR COLONIAL CAVALRY

The following notes give a summary of the present state of the question of the support by our colonies in time of war, and incidentally a statement of the strength and composition of the various forces, which is of interest.

Two important papers\* have lately been produced by Captain Edward Lascelles, Adjutant 3rd Dragoon Guards, about the Colonial military forces of the Empire.

One, which he read at the Royal United Service Institution, describes the existing military systems of the different oversea Colonies, and suggests that they might without difficulty provide an Imperial Service Army Reserve to be at the disposal of the Imperial Government for use in case of national emergency.

He does not claim for his proposal that it is entirely new, for it was suggested at the Colonial Conference in 1902, but certain objections were there advanced which he now criticises in his paper. He shows how the forces of the different Colonies are constituted.

In *Canada* the Militia Force consists of :

1. The Permanent Corps.
2. The active Militia.
3. The reserve Militia.

The active Militia provides 60 squadrons of mounted men—*i.e.* about

8,000 all ranks, with 9,000 horses.

12 Batteries Field Artillery.

\* 'The Colonies and Imperial Defence,' see *Journal of Royal United Service Institution*, July 16, 1906, and 'The Military Forces of the Colonies,' in the *Service Magazine*, July, 1906.

- 6 Regiments Garrison Artillery.
- 4 Companies of Engineers.
- 654 Companies of Infantry.
- 8 Companies Army Service Corps.
- 8 Field Hospital Companies.
- 9 Bearer Companies.
- 500 Guides for Intelligence work.

The whole organisation could turn out 5,000 officers, 100,000 rank and file, with 17,500 horses on war establishment, backed up by a considerable number of cadet corps and rifle clubs.

In *Australia* the forces are maintained

1. For defence of Australia.
2. For Australian interests wherever threatened.

The Australian military system provides :

1. A Permanent Staff Force.
2. A Field Force.
3. A Garrison Force for local defence.

The Field Force peace establishment includes 6,000 Light Horsemen and 24 guns, expandable in war to 13,000 Light Horsemen with 36 guns, and about an equal number of Infantry and guns, the total strength of the Field Force being 13,800 of all ranks with 60 guns in peace, or 27,750 with 84 guns in war.

The Garrison Troops amount to 11,700 of all ranks, with 16 guns, for both peace and war.

The total strength of all troops being, for peace 25,700, for war 39,600, which is backed up by some 40,000 members of cadet corps and rifle clubs.

The *New Zealand* defence system includes a Permanent Staff, a Militia Force, Volunteers, Rifle Clubs, and Cadet Corps.

The establishment, whether for peace or war, amounts to 750 officers, 15,200 rank and file. The establishment of mounted riflemen amounts to 288 officers, 5,760 rank and file ; cadets amount to 14,000.

The total number of mounted troops thus provided by the three Colonies is some 20,000 on peace establishment, and 27,000 on the war establishment.

For the war in South Africa these Colonies sent 29,000 of all ranks ; Canada, 7,368 ; Australia, 16,632 ; New Zealand, 6,343.

Captain Lascélles considers that the total manhood of suitable age for service could give  $1\frac{1}{2}$  million men.

He also considers that a reserve could easily be formed from a quarter of the existing forces for Imperial needs—that is, a total of 20,000 really good men, at a cost of £200,000. This alone would increase our Cavalry in war by practically eight regiments.

In his other paper Captain Lascelles points out that good N.C.O.s would be the backbone of any colonial force, and that it would be a very great step towards efficiency if the system could be inaugurated of sending time-expired N.C.O.s from the Regulars to the colonies to settle and to be utilised in the local forces. He states it thus :

‘Employment for the Cavalryman could be readily found in Australia and New Zealand, and in the ranching districts of Canada, for he would easily adapt himself to stock and boundary riding, cattle droving, horse breaking, and sheep mustering, and his regularity of habits and discipline would render him a most reliable man after a very short apprenticeship. Saddlers and shoeing-smiths are earning good wages, while competent signallers would be a most useful addition to surveying parties in rough country ; ample work as teamsters could be found for Artillery and Army Service Corps drivers.

‘The oft-repeated statement that the training of the soldier unfits him for civil life, though it may be true as regards the United Kingdom, is hardly correct as far as life in the colonies is concerned.

‘Possession of a small amount of capital should be a necessary qualification for selection of a reservist to be sent out to the colony. A thrifty soldier should nowadays have no difficulty in

saving money at the rate of 9*d.* per day, on an average, throughout the seven years of his colour service—*i.e.* a total of £95.

‘On selection for colonial service he receives a bounty, say, of £10. This enables him to bank about £100 on arrival in the colony, where he should easily get wages at £52 per annum, “all found.”’

Captain Lascelles goes on to say that by the end of his reserve service, five years of which are spent in the colony, a man should by thrift be able to save some £375 with which to make a start in civil life at thirty years of age, after doing good service in stiffening the local forces.

Colonel E. Altham, C.B., C.M.G., in speaking on Captain Lascelles’ proposition at the Royal United Service Institution, explained how a somewhat similar scheme had been submitted by the War Office to the Conference of the Premiers in 1902.

He said: ‘The war in South Africa brought home to us in a very forcible manner that the British Empire is not an island; that its liabilities of attack are not limited to oversea attack, but that the Empire has continental responsibilities of very great magnitude, and it is that aspect of the problem to which our attention must in future be directed.

‘We must look to outside resources; we must look to the Empire to defend itself as a whole.’

Major-General Sir E. Hutton, K.C.M.G., C.B., does not consider the scheme of an Imperial reserve practicable under the existing political ideas in the Colonies, and such contribution, whether it be in men or money, would be looked upon as a tax paid to the Imperial Exchequer, while the colonial taxpayer had no voice in its employment. He considers there should be some scheme of co-operation for defence, but under present conditions it must merely be based on the sentiment of the Colonies, in which he has every confidence, since the loyalty of the Colonies to the Empire has grown enormously and into a concrete fact since the South African War.

## *MANMASTERSHIP*

By THE INSPECTOR OF CAVALRY

Although much development has of late taken place in the art of horsemastership or care of the horse in our service, the corresponding and equally important item of the care of the men, which is here termed 'Manmastership,' has not as yet received the full attention that it deserves. The following paper contains a few suggestions to that end.

WE are taught a good deal about the value of horsemastership in war, but we must not forget at the same time that manmastership, or care of the man, is also of the greatest importance.

The losses on service from sickness among the men are very numerous compared with those from wounds.

In the South African War, for instance, where we had 18,000 men admitted to hospital for wounds, we had 400,000 admitted for sickness, and half of this was due to thoughtlessness or ignorance. The Japanese in their war had a very different tale to tell, and this was largely the result of close attention to the art of manmastership.

In the Cavalry we know that horsemastership is only effective where every officer looks into it, and where every man knows the details and carries them out: officers and men are the 'preventers' of disease, while the veterinary officer is the 'curer' of disease when it occurs.

In the same way, to enable the man to be efficient on service, it is the duty of officers and men and the men themselves to be 'preventers' of disease, and of the medical officer to act as 'adviser' and as 'curer' when disease occurs.

Manmastership must be practised in peace time just as much as horsemastership if it is to be any good in war.

*It is just as much part of the soldier's duty to be healthy as to be a good rider or a good shot ; and it is just as much the duty of the officer to teach him how to be so, und to see that he is so, as to teach him to be efficient in other ways.*

Although many officers realise this, they do not all do so. But those who have seen much active service know that one of the roads to success for junior as well as for senior officers lies in the health and condition of their men. Junior officers who are likely to have charge of patrols on service must know how to keep their men fit if they hope to do the job with credit ; and so must senior officers if they want to keep their ranks full of sound men to ensure victory in place of dragging along with tired skeleton forces to risk defeat.

#### HOW TO SET ABOUT IT

Several particularly useful papers have lately been read by experts on the subject, which ought to be procured and studied widely by all ranks. Among them are :

(1) 'Military Hygiene on Active Service,' by Major T. Goodwin, D.S.O., R.A.M.C., in the 'Journal of the Royal United Service Institution,' Whitehall, S.W.

(2) 'Physical Training,' by Captain Cantan, Superintendent of Gymnasia, Dublin District, and late of the South African Constabulary. (Proceedings of the Military Society in Ireland.) Published by Dollard, Ltd., Dublin. 6d.

(3) 'War with Disease,' by Surgeon-Lieut. F. MacCabe, M.B., South of Ireland Yeomanry. A set of short lectures read to the 3rd Cavalry Brigade. Price 6d. Published by Dollard, Dublin. Very practical.

(4) 'The Health of the Soldier,' by Lieut.-Col. H. J. Barratt, R.A.M.C. Read in Meerut February 1906. See 'Journal of the R.A.M.C.' 2s. Published by Bale & Son, 89 Great Titchfield Street, W.

Also a lecture by Colonel Lane Notter to the Manchester University, and Dr. Leigh Canney at the Royal United Service

Institution. General Lord Methuen has also had a very practical course of lectures given on the subject in the Eastern Command in England, as also General Rimington in the 3rd Cavalry Brigade.

One excuse for my venturing, though a layman, to take up this subject, is that personally I have carried out on myself for some years past the principles advocated by these authorities, and am a proof of their correctness through my immunity from fever, enteric, &c. on the West Coast of Africa, on the East Coast, and in India. (The only time I got sick—with dysentery, in Matabeleland—was when I deliberately had to break those rules.) So I feel that I am competent to recommend them.

The rules themselves seem at first ridiculously small and easy for effecting so great a result as exemption from disease—but they do it. When I was in East Africa last spring, I saw the ravages that were being made among the natives by the sleeping sickness. This terrible scourge, which is rapidly decimating them, is almost entirely due to the bite of a fly, but when the natives are told this they only laugh, and will not believe that danger could come from so small a source.

Similarly, it was only a few years ago that we discovered that the spread of malarial fever was largely due to the mosquito, and that where steps are taken to destroy or keep off mosquitoes there is very little malaria. Yet we scarcely realise at present that the large proportion of our sicknesses are similarly due to very small causes, which with a little care on the part of everyone can be avoided.

The two main roads to health are (i) strengthening the body, (ii) prevention of disease.

### I. STRENGTHENING THE BODY

The first step to ensuring a soldier's health and endurance is to develop his bodily organs and muscles by physical training and proper food.

*Physical Training.*—In order to carry this out, officers and non-commissioned officers and also the men themselves must

have a knowledge of the formation of the body and various organs, and of the effect of exercise upon them. Captain Cantan's paper deals almost entirely with this question. He shows how desirable it is before doing hard muscular exercises to gradually heat up the muscles first, much on the principle of a horse taking a preliminary canter before a race. He shows how essential bathing is for health ; and also good spirits and cheeriness while working.

He also says breathlessness is a kind of poisoning from rapid generation of carbonic acid gas as partly the result of tense muscular effort (for this reason, for instance, men running with clenched fists and stiff arms get blown before those who swing their arms loosely).

Overwork or too much exercise tell rapidly on a man who is not sufficiently trained. It was noted at the French manoeuvres that reservists who were taken out for manoeuvres suffered in a far greater proportion than the soldiers already in steady training. Similarly our reservists in South Africa were at first done up in large numbers ; whereas with the Japanese the reservists prepared themselves carefully before rejoining the colours by constant marching, hill climbing, &c., to withstand the fatigues of the campaign.

Deep breathing is an exercise that largely assists health if carried out in fresh air or at frequent intervals during the day. Breathing through the nose is an important means of physical development. The evils of breathing through the mouth include not only the swallowing of microbes, but also the originating of throat troubles, dry tonsils, and even rheumatic fever and its consequent heart-troubles.

The physical exercises learnt as a recruit should be carried out for a few minutes by every man for himself at intervals during the day, not in order to make showy muscles, but to develop activity, to exercise the interior organs, and to circulate the blood.

*Food.*—As regards food, very few of our officers or men have



sufficient knowledge of the subject to know which are the best kinds to eat.

The value of food is judged by the amount of *proteid* it contains. A man requires 4 to 5 oz. of proteid daily; the Government ration contains in the meat 2 oz. of proteid, in the bread  $\frac{4}{3}$  oz., which leaves about  $1\frac{1}{3}$  oz. to be made up in the extra messing, and this should be chosen accordingly to supply the requisite amount.

It has generally been the custom to eat more meat than necessary, but people are now coming round to the much more healthy fare of fruit and corn, fresh eggs, and cheese, with a smaller amount of meat. Meat is full of dangers owing to the risk of the animal having fed on contaminated forage, or having been slaughtered and the meat handled in unclean surroundings. A certain amount of fat is valuable as food against germs.

Peas, beans, oatmeal, and especially cheese, contain large proportions of proteid, and should therefore be much used in addition to the Government ration. Apples are particularly wholesome. Raisins and sultanas, also nuts, are sustaining forms of food, especially on long field days, &c. Tea, coffee, and cocoa and alcohol are purely stimulants, and have no nourishment in them. When taken too strong they are very bad for digestion, especially tea, which if taken strong and rank is a form of poison and causes rheumatism. Strong tea and strong tobacco is said to be the reason for the shaky hands so common among soldiers.

Proper chewing of the food is most necessary for digestion, therefore the teeth must be kept sound by diligent cleaning night and morning with a tooth brush.

## II. PREVENTION OF DISEASE

When once the body and its organs have been properly built up, and the blood made to run healthily through them by physical exercises and habits as above described, most diseases are preventable by a little knowledge and care on the part of the man.

It has been suggested that a special Sanitary Corps should be organised in addition to the R.A.M.C.

But Surgeon-General Sir A. Keogh, K.C.B., the head of the Army Medical Department, says: 'Personally, in the strict sense of the term, I do not believe in a Sanitary Corps because it would be a mistake to relieve units wholly of their sanitary responsibility, and if we had a branch of the army dealing with nothing but executive sanitation, in all probability sanitation would very soon pass out of the domain of the regiment.'

We really want sanitation to move the other way and to go into the domain of every individual soldier.

Lieut.-General Sir Ian Hamilton points out, in his book on the war in Manchuria, how the good health of the Japanese troops was largely due to the men themselves carrying out very strictly the rules of sanitation. And these rules should be taught to every recruit on his joining, and afterwards impressed upon the soldier by his officer.

They may well be described to the men under the following heads on the lines which I give below, but in fuller detail, which can be got from the papers to which I have alluded—especially those by Dr. MacCabe:

1. The causes of disease.
2. How to discourage them.
3. How to keep them out of the body.
4. How to neutralise them when there.

1. *The causes of disease are generally microbes.*—Disease is generally caused by a tiny live germ or microbe getting in a man's body with his food, drink, or breath, &c., and then starting to poison the blood. These germs are of different breeds, and attack the blood in different ways; the sickness which results takes different forms accordingly; it may be enteric or pneumonia, dysentery, malaria, syphilis, &c.—that depends on the microbe.

Dr. MacCabe in his excellent lecture 'War with Disease,' describes the action of the microbe against the blood as a military

operation (see page 5). So long as the blood is healthy microbes have little chance of doing harm.

2. *Microbes, although enterprising, are easily put off by cleanliness.*—Germs live in dirt and prefer dark, dank atmosphere to fresh air and sunlight. Therefore, keep your dwelling, whether in camp or barracks, and your clothing and bedding clean and free of damp, and let in plenty of air and sunlight to destroy germs.

Also take care not to foul the ground for other people coming after you. For instance, spittle is a great spreader of disease, because many men, in fact most men, have the germs of some disease in them, but being in good condition the germs so far have had no bad effect on them.

If they spit they eject a few germs which then hang about the air ready to be breathed in by the next passer-by, who, if his blood is not in sufficiently good condition, will then get ill. Therefore in camp or on the line of march always bury spittle, rears, or urine with earth in order to destroy the germs.

One great cause of enteric has been due to men urinating on the ground close to their tents. Urine is a great conveyer of enteric germs, and as the ground dries up and becomes dust these germs are blown about with the dust into the tents and food of the other men.

Flies are regular agents for conveying germs, as they feed on any filth they can find, get their feet clogged with particles containing germs, and then fly off to a kitchen or mess-table and settle on the men's food, and thus put germs on it for them to swallow. This fact has been recently proved by careful experiments.

Water and milk are also great conveyers of germs if they come from a tainted source or are conveyed in vessels which have not been kept scrupulously clean. Therefore cleanliness with the assistance of air and sunlight, and the careful destruction or burial of all filth, are absolutely discouraging to the most enterprising of microbes.

For the same reason cleanliness of self is very necessary, and even if water is not obtainable, as was often the case in South Africa, an air bath or rub down daily with a rough or wet towel in the open air is almost as efficacious. The filthy condition of our men in South Africa was largely responsible for disease ; the Japanese, on the other hand, had elaborate arrangements for bathing in their standing camps, and disease was practically unknown on any large scale.

3. *To keep germs from getting into your body*, get into the habit of breathing only through the nostrils and not through the mouth : the germs then get hung up in the moisture in the nose and can be blown out again. It is always a good thing to blow the nose and clear the throat and lungs by coughing after being in a crowded room, or dust, or bad air of any kind. Sleep with your mouth shut : it not only looks more becoming, but it keeps out disease.

Eat only clean and well-cooked food. By 'clean food' I mean that on which flies have not settled, the meat of animals that have been fed only with clean forage and water, and vegetables that have not been grown with contaminated water. Wash your hands before meals. Microbes are apt to lodge in dirt under the nails or on the skin, and thus to contaminate any food that you touch, and to make it poisonous. They are also liable to get into cuts, &c., which should therefore be kept clean.

Drink only clean or boiled water. Don't drink on an empty stomach or between meals. Even after hard games like polo and cricket drinking refreshing drinks does one no good : it softens one, and makes one liable to chills. If you train yourself to do without, you very soon cease to feel the want. Continually swilling the inside with water on the line of march is a constant source of disease. Personally I have never carried a water-bottle on service ; if thirsty, one can always chew a pebble. General Thorneycroft also has spoken strongly on this subject, and Major Goodwin in his lecture on health on active service says : ' On active

service more men have come by their deaths by misuse of their water-bottle than by the bullets of the enemy.'

In tropical climates germs hang about near the ground, therefore try and sleep three or four feet off the ground if possible. Mosquitoes carry about malaria fever germs, and put them into you when they bite, therefore keep mosquitoes off by rubbing paraffin or other oil on you at night.

Venereal germs will not come to a man who has the self-control and self-respect to avoid contact, but where a man has been so much a fool as to risk contamination, most valuable practical advice is to be found in Dr. MacCabe's lecture, and in that of Lieut.-Col. Barratt.

Drunkenness is a danger to a man, since it not only ruins his nerves, liver, and digestion, but it leaves him an easy prey to the germs of diseases while he is off his guard to stop them.

4. *How to defeat the germs if they get into the body.*—The main point is to keep your blood in good order by daily exercise, and daily cleaning out of waste matter in your inside by regularity at the rear and by exercise that induces perspiration.

When serving in West Africa, in the malarial districts, I found that a great number of men fell sick after there had been a day's halt, and I eventually came to the conclusion it was due to their not getting the regular daily sweat to which they had been accustomed. So, personally, whenever there was a day's halt I went for a long day's march or run just the same, and with the best results, for I was never ill.

Plain food and not too much of it should be taken: most of us eat more than we can well digest. Fresh air is necessary to health; sleep with your windows open, especially at the top, since foul air rises towards the ceiling, and should be given a means of escape; every man's breath and body gives off a certain amount of gas, which becomes poisonous in a shut-up or crowded room. Avoid chills, which generally come from damp clothing. Cotton clothing is apt to keep damp more than woollen. Always, if possible, put on a dry shirt and dry socks

after your day's work, or in tropical climates whenever you take a spell of rest, meantime putting the wet things out to dry. Avoid patent medicines; these are largely sold in some canteens, and in the end are little better than poison. A man in proper health and exercise does not require them, and they have been shown to be a frequent cause of appendicitis and other illnesses. Physical exercises which twist and bend the body exercise the stomach and intestines and keep them properly working, and a glass of clean cold water before and after breakfast will do all that is wanted.

### CONCLUSION

These few pages give merely an outline of the kind of information which might with advantage be given to the men by their officers, and do not pretend by any means to cover the whole ground, nor to give the details which may be found in the above-mentioned papers.

The soldier of to-day is no longer the dull unintelligent being that he formerly was; an officer has only to explain the *reasons* for rules of health and the men will ably second him in carrying them out.

Once in India when enteric was very prevalent, I suggested to my regiment—without issuing vexatious orders on the subject—that they should try the experiment of not going down to the bazar for a few weeks, to see if that would have any effect in checking the disease. A few days later one of the men was admitted to hospital badly knocked about: there was a certain amount of mystery about the case for some time, but in the end it transpired that this man had gone down to the bazar in spite of my suggestion and the others had caught him, and had rather forcibly expressed their opinion of his action.

### THE OFFICER'S OPPORTUNITY

I have only treated in the above of the physical side of manmastership, but there is another side which I cannot within

the limits of this paper go into, and that is the moral side. The development of the man's powers of observation, individual intelligence, self-reliance, discipline, and especially of his patriotism and sense of duty—in one word the formation of his character—is equally part of the officer's duty in carrying out 'Manmastery.'

Every officer has here a great opportunity lying to his hand of helping in a national work, if he keeps this point before him as his aim, namely, that while he is training the soldier to be efficient morally as well as physically, he can also be building his character for good citizenship on his return to civil life, as well as his *threw* and *sinew* to ensure the next generation being healthy and strong.

---

P.S.—Surgeon-General Sir A. Keogh, K.C.B., M.D., Director-General of the Army Medical Service, has kindly looked over the above paper, and in addition to some very flattering remarks on it, he writes as follows :

'Enteric and dysentery are *easily* preventable. The first step is to convince all your officers of this fact. That is the process of education—Lord Methuen and Rimington have both done an enormous amount.

'Having convinced the officer that the strength of the unit can be maintained, the next thing is to propose to him a workable scheme of sanitary administration. Personally I believe the delegation of definite responsibility to one N.C.O. and eight men per Infantry battalion or regiment (and a proportionate number for other units), affords a commanding officer the means of guarding the avenues through which danger advances.

'I know of three instances in which commanding officers have adopted this system under adverse conditions—two Rifle Brigade battalions at Malta, and one Cavalry regiment at Umbala. Here great results have followed. The enteric in Umbala fell from 145 cases in 1904 to 15 in 1905. I believe a battalion would be repaid a thousandfold in war by seriously

working a sanitary section and by betraying as much interest in its work as in that of gun sections. Disposal of excreta and refuse, protection of food and water require constant and unremitting attention on the part of a definite establishment, if the environment of the man is to be safeguarded.

‘I cannot add a word to your splendid little paper except perhaps along the following lines :

‘The conditions inimical to the health of individuals living in communities as in our towns are now so admirably guarded by definite organisations charged with responsibilities as regards efficient methods of excreta and refuse disposal, and pure food and water supplies, that we are apt to lose sight of the dangerous consequences which would result if these organisations ceased to exist. The operations of war restore the soldier to the primitive conditions of man. He leads a nomadic life, and is at once deprived of the artificial contrivances for disease prevention with which he is surrounded in the cities and towns.

‘He is only made aware of his adverse conditions by the enormously increased sick rate, and by the consequent diminution of the fighting power of his force. The discoveries of Pasteur and others as to the causation and the method of spread of communicable disease, which have been the result of the remarkable scientific activity of the last thirty years, have led to the establishment of a new branch of science applicable to the science of warfare of which we have been slow to take advantage. Disease prevention in war is not a subject of interest only to the doctor. The inimical conditions are always present, are constantly varying, and require initiative and intelligence to counteract them. Unremitting vigilance is essential, and such vigilance can only be exercised by an intra-unit organisation, charged with the application of their knowledge, to the exclusion of all other duties.

‘It cannot be too strongly insisted upon that no scheme of disease prevention in war is in the least likely to succeed which is not assisted and developed by the regimental officer.’



## NOTES ON THE CAVALRY OF MOROCCO

By the late MAJOR ANGUS OGILVY, D.S.O., *Instructor  
of Cavalry to the Moorish Forces.\**

A short account of the organisation—Methods of training—Equipment and horses.

### ORGANISATION

THE military forces always at the disposal of the Sultan are of two kinds: 'guîsh' and 'asker.' The 'guîsh' are drawn from four tribes, or more properly feudal settlements, holding their land on a feudal tenure with the obligation to come up for service when required. These men are for the most part mounted, own their horses, and only receive pay when employed. No attempt has yet been made to instruct them in European drill. The 'asker' are a permanent force. Raised originally as a check on the guîsh and trained at that time by renegades, they are, with the exception of a small proportion of artillery, a purely Infantry force. It was with the idea of forming a Cavalry force from among these 'asker' that the services of a British Instructor were applied for. I was informed on my arrival that a certain

\* Major Angus Ogilvy, D.S.O.—who wrote this article for us the other day—is dead. Though not an advertised 'celebrity,' he was none the less an inspiring example to Cavalry officers, because, although handicapped by ill-health, he had a dauntless spirit of energy that brought success to him, at first as a sportsman in the Himalayas and in East Africa, and latterly as an important official in Morocco (where he was Instructor of the Sultan's Cavalry), and this, added to his charming personality, enabled him to bridge over the many differences of nationality and religion, and to bring about a cordial comradeship among the very varied society of that country, notably in Fez. It was there that he ultimately fell a victim to fever—another of the many young Britons who have given up their lives in spreading our national prestige for the bettering of our semi-civilised neighbours across the seas.—ED.

number of Colonels and their regiments were at my disposal, but, being single-handed, I was content to start on four of the former and enough of the latter to form a 16-file troop. One of the Colonels I sent about his business within a week or two, with a markedly good result on the remaining three.

For interpreter I procured an excellent fellow who had been educated for five years in France. I could hear of no one who spoke English. I had no assistants—my request for such not having been granted. I had, however, brought out with me as servant an ex-N.C.O. of my regiment, whom I got made Sergt.-Instructor and who proved of the greatest help. Two Drum Sergeants had also arrived in the country just before, and I was able later on to appropriate their services. They also proved of considerable use, especially at musketry. Considering that the one thing a Moor can do is to beat a drum, it struck me that that particular branch of the art of war got an unfair attention paid to it. However, they were excellent fellows, trained a lot of trumpeters, and generally made themselves useful all round.

The grades are as follows: Kaid Er Raha, or Colonel; Calipha, or Second-in-Command; Kaid El Mia (kaid of 100), or Captain; Makuddem, or Sergeant; Askri, or Private.

The preliminary troop, as soon as it became fairly efficient on foot, was broken up into two and the gaps filled by Makuddems. As each new troop was formed the old hands were put as Nos. 1 and 4, the newcomers Nos. 2 and 3. Great importance was paid to keeping the sections distinct and to securing good Makuddems. Each troop was mounted when more or less ready, but not before there was in addition a nucleus of sixteen old hands to start a new one on foot. No riding-school work was required, or at any rate given, the one aim being to get something to show as soon as possible. There were more serious difficulties to overcome than mere professional ones, and any success possible was contingent on continued interest being taken in the work in high quarters. The men too, at this time, liked riding almost as much as they hated walking—their successors hated both equally—so that progress was at least doubled once they were mounted. In fact by

the time three squadrons were mounted (the fourth had been sent away on an expedition and a determined attempt made to send the rest) things went swimmingly, and four months later, when the whole garrison of Fez accompanied the Sultan on his expedition against the Pretender, it was possible to move these squadrons about at a fast pace pretty well as one wanted, while



ARAB MAKING HIS HORSE DANCE WITHOUT USING THE BRIDLE.

some idea of discipline even was beginning to take root. I remember one day about this time, when advancing in line at a gallop, a jackal got up and ran in front of us for half a mile or more without a man breaking the ranks. A month before the appearance of a hare under much less exciting circumstances nearly caused a general dispersal.

I will conclude with a few notes on the following subjects.

## MEN AND METHODS

I am convinced that very fair military material exists in the country. That it can ever be utilised without strict control, financial and other, is more than doubtful. Ideas of discipline are very elementary, and no effective method exists for stopping desertion.

Two examples of their methods when on expeditions will show how necessary European instructors are.

At night no sleep is allowed, the whole force being kept on the move, patrolling and shouting. During a halt the rifles are collected and buried in the ground in the tents of the Kaid El Mias. On the other hand, the men are intelligent and quickly pick up the drill. Their aptitude for learning the words of command, which have hitherto been given in English, is quite remarkable. While not the warlike race I had expected to find, they would probably fight well enough if properly led.

## HORSES AND HORSE MANAGEMENT

The average horse in Morocco is a useful animal from 14 hands to 14.3 high, but very inferior to those found further east. Unless a man is a sportsman, and even then he rides a mule as a hack, the rich Moor never gets on a horse if he can help it. One of the Colonels above referred to once appeared on parade mounted on a mule. He never repeated the experiment. The Moor knows no pace between a walk or amble and the wild 'hurroosh' of 'powder play,' consequently anything like a long sustained trot is a novelty to both horse and rider. They feed and water their horses—even in the hottest weather—but once a day, and cannot believe that any other method would be preferable. Their manner of shoeing can only be described as barbarous. The shoe covers most of the frog, and is hammered up over the heel. Great fids are chopped off the horse's toe in a manner that takes one's breath away to watch.

## SADDLERY

It would be hard to imagine a more unsuitable saddle for military purposes than the Moorish one. Weighing about three

stone, it is both expensive and unserviceable. The bit is an instrument about the size of a gridiron, with an iron ring in place of a curb. Whether this or their method or training be the cause, the horses have good mouths and can nearly always be ridden with comfort in a snaffle.

#### MUSKETRY

Up to my coming no attempt had been made to teach the Moorish soldier to shoot. Such an accomplishment would make it a serious question as to which side he elected to fight on. The humour of this position was not diminished by the fact that Fez possesses a well-equipped small arms factory controlled by European officers, besides a considerable supply of the most up-to-date weapons. For my own men I was offered the choice between Lee-Metford rifles and carbines. After obtaining permission to start musketry I selected the latter. I constructed a small two-section range, the targets for which were admirably made in the arms factory. The first use of these targets was to convince the men that they could not shoot, and even that result was not easy to obtain. The cartridge, the rifle, Providence might be at fault, but that a Moor could not shoot! The idea was preposterous! and I was regarded as an officious amateur offering advice to an expert. Morris tubes were ordered out, musketry held daily in the afternoon, and every possible device, including pecuniary inducements, employed, but the result was meagre in the extreme. A clue to this non-success was given me one day by a most intelligent Kaid whom I employed as Instructor. In a burst of candour he pointed out how superior Moorish methods were to ours. We taught a man to fire in one direction only, while they taught him to fire to front, rear, or either flank. He alluded, of course, to their favourite 'powder play,' when they fire from horseback at full gallop in, as he truly said, every conceivable direction. It is this sublime conceit, and not lack of intelligence or capacity, that is the true hindrance to reform in Morocco.

## **CROMWELL'S CAVALRY**

By BREVET-MAJOR W. H. GREENLY, D.S.O.,  
*12th Lancers*

### **No. 3**

The Battle of Naseby—Instances of Reconnaissance—Pursuits and Raids.

THE battle of Naseby, June 14, 1645, well illustrates Cromwell's later methods of employment of Cavalry on the battlefield.

At this time, after his three years' experience of war, we not only see Cromwell himself at his best as a leader of Cavalry in battle, but we also get an insight into the high state of efficiency to which by then he had brought his command. It is worth while, therefore, to go into this battle somewhat more in detail.

On the night of June 13 the King's main body, moving north, camped at Harborough, but the army was much strung out and the rear-guard was still seven miles away at Naseby.\*

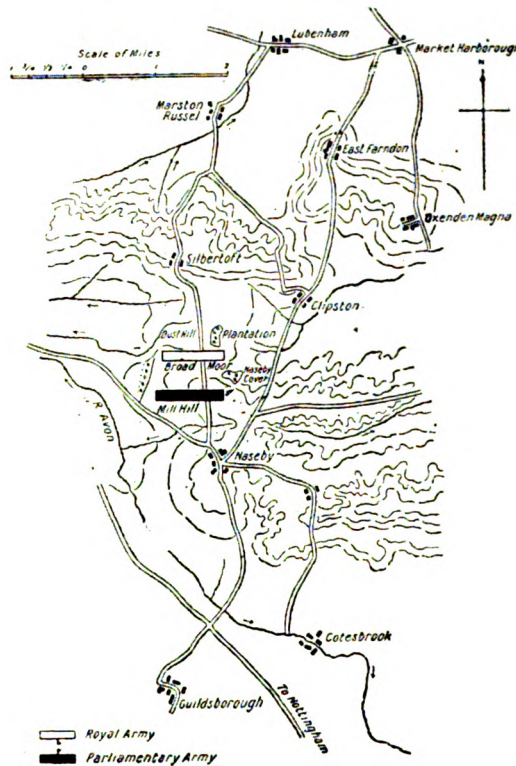
The same night Fairfax in pursuit reached Guildsborough; during the day he had had out two strong reconnaissances, under Harrison and Ireton. As the Royal Army took practically no military precautions, Ireton had been able to ride right in among their scattered forces and capture several prisoners; at night he galloped into Naseby, driving the King's rear-guard in confusion from the village.

On this news reaching the King, which it did in the middle of the night, he immediately held a council of war, and it was

\* See map 1.

determined to accept battle on the following day should Fairfax move to the attack.

Early next morning the King's army was drawn up on the high ground about East Farndon, and towards eight o'clock Scoutmaster Ruce was sent out on reconnaissance, but soon returned and reported that he could find out nothing of the rebels. Then Rupert himself rode forward to reconnoitre.



MAP 1

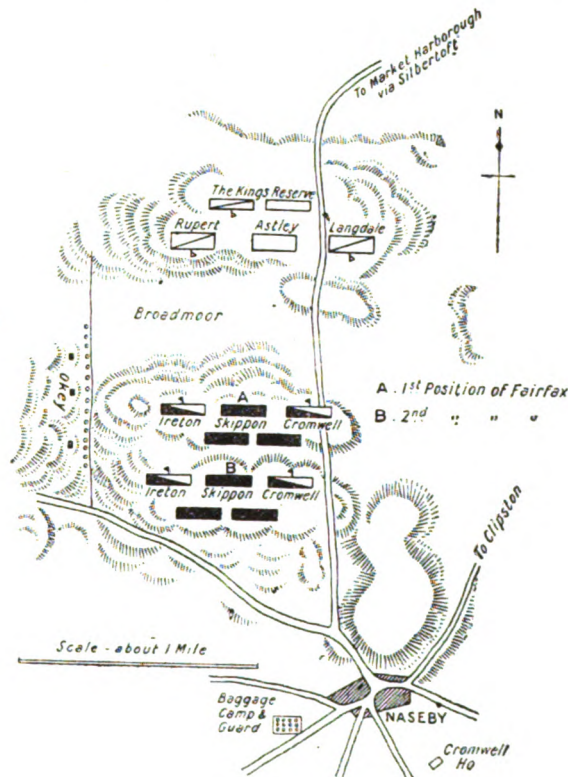
On the Parliamentary side Fairfax had paraded at three in the morning, bent on pressing the King's retreat. When he had marched about a mile beyond Naseby his scouts came back to say that the Royalists were advancing from Harborough, and Fairfax then drew up his army for battle. He first of all took up the forward position marked A on map 2, and then, on Cromwell's advice, with the object of better concealing his



strength, he drew back two or three hundred yards from the crest, to the position marked B.

This small movement, as we shall see, had a certain influence on the battle.

The country on which the battle was fought consists of a series of broad, gently undulating, and roughly parallel ridges,



MAP 2

running from south-east to north-west; at the time these ridges were probably open down-land much like that of Salisbury Plain. The two ridges on which the armies were respectively drawn up were separated by a flat grassy plain about  $1\frac{1}{2}$  to 2 miles broad, and this plain became the actual battlefield.

The order of battle of both armies is shown on map 3. The Parliamentary left was protected by the Landford Hedges along



which Okey had dismounted his dragoons. East of the Harborough road the ground was cut up by rabbit-holes and patches of bush and gorse, and Cromwell was unable to extend any further to his right; for this reason he formed up in three lines, his usual practice being in two. Before the battle, he had personally reconnoitred the ground over which he might have to act, and was therefore fully aware of its dangerous character. These seemingly unfavourable conditions, however, he hoped, by skilful use of the ground, to turn to account in enabling him to effect a surprise.

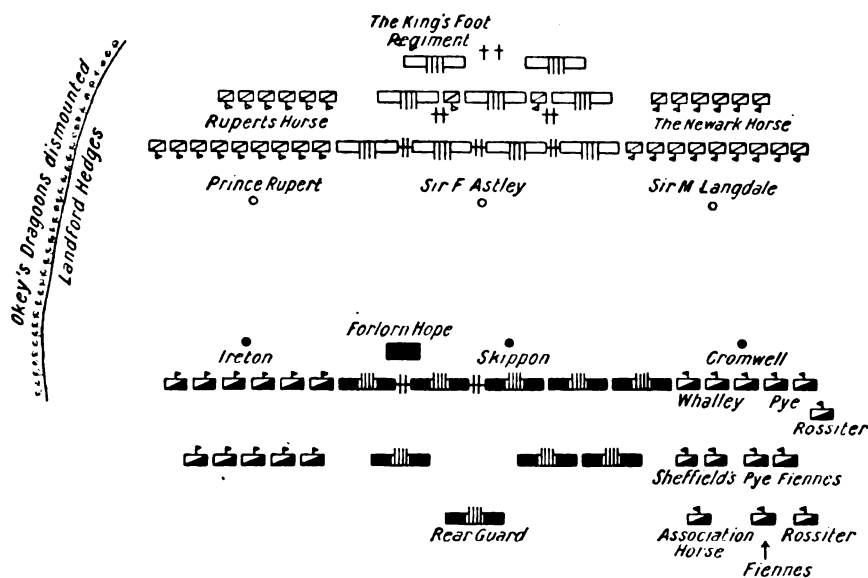
Cromwell was always most particular on the subject of reconnaissance of ground, and therefore never had to reproach himself with leading his troops into such preventable disasters as those which befell Napoleon's cuirassiers in the sunken road at Waterloo, or Michel's Cavalry brigade in its hopeless charge at Worth. These are the kind of examples from history which ignorant people are so fond of quoting, or more often misquoting, to prove that the days of shock tactics are past and gone. They prove, of course, nothing of the kind, but merely show that the results of ignorance and bungling have been much the same at all periods of history. Writing to Senator Roederer, February 11, 1809, Napoleon said: 'When the ignorance of a general causes the death of ten men when two would have sufficed, is not ignorance responsible for eight-tenths of the loss?'

Unfortunately it is not only generals who through ignorance can sacrifice the lives of men, and all such instances of the avoidable and useless waste of human life ought surely to impress upon us all that it is a sacred duty of every leader (officer and non-commissioned officer), who is entrusted with the lives of men, to learn everything he can which will help him to lead them to the best advantage.

On map 3 on the Parliamentary side there is a body of troops marked 'Forlorn Hope.' This was the usual term in England for any advanced body of troops, and was simply the English way of saying 'Der Verlorene Haufe,' the ordinary German

expression for an advanced guard. The meaning only gradually changed into what we now understand by the words the Forlorn Hope. This origin of our modern expression is rather curious, as it shows that the original had nothing whatever to do with either of the English words 'forlorn' or 'hope.'

At the moment when Rupert was reconnoitring the Parliamentary Army, Fairfax made that change of position to the rear which was mentioned above, and Rupert from what he saw at once assumed that the rebels were retreating. Consequently,



MAP 3

directly the Royalist Army came up, which it did at 10 o'clock in 'reasonable order,' Rupert gave the order to attack, fearing that Fairfax would escape. Though peppered in flank by Okey's dragoons and suffering some loss from their fire, Rupert nevertheless completely overthrew the Parliamentary Cavalry under Ireton who were opposed to him. The latter had made their attack in two lines, and Rupert rode down the first before the second could come to its support. The leader of the second line endeavoured to extricate the first by inclining away, and attacking the enemy in flank; but in doing so the troops got

among hedges and ditches, became greatly disordered, and finally turned to flight hopelessly mixed up with the men of the defeated first line.

Rupert then made the great mistake of loosing his entire force in a wild pursuit. He followed the flying Parliamentary Cavalry through Naseby village and up to Fairfax's baggage camp: his attempt to rush the latter was prevented by the steady fire of the musketeers left to guard it. Ireton's Cavalry finally rallied behind the protection of the camp.

While this was going on the Royalist Infantry, too, had pressed back the Puritan foot. Cromwell, seeing that this had exposed Langdale's right flank, sent Whalley's regiment to attack it, and this Whalley did most successfully. While Whalley attacked the front and right flank Cromwell himself, making skilful use of the ground, wheeled his three lines to the right, then wheeling heads to the left, suddenly wheeled into line to the left and dashed in on the enemy's left flank with the whole of his command except Rossiter's regiment, which he kept well away to the right to cover his flank and rear. The Royalists were completely overthrown; but Cromwell at once rallied his force and sent only Rossiter's regiment, which was still in close order, to pursue the beaten enemy. Having re-formed Cromwell renewed the attack and finally broke up practically the whole of the King's centre. While Cromwell's Cavalry, owing to his skilful handling, was still comparatively fresh after three big attacks, that of Prince Rupert, which had by this time reappeared on the battlefield, was too exhausted by its long and wild pursuit to attack again with any hope of success.

By this time, too, Ireton's regiments had been rallied and brought back, and were now in position to fall upon Rupert's flank and rear. Rupert was unable to get another move out of his squadrons, and finally the King's Infantry and Cavalry, now mixed in hopeless confusion, fell easy victims to Cromwell's victorious horse. The result of Naseby was indeed decisive. Out of 20,000, the King had lost 6,000 killed and wounded,

5,000 prisoners,\* his whole Cavalry dispersed, and 112 colours, 12 guns and 200 wagons captured, while Fairfax's whole loss amounted to only 800 killed and wounded.

The battle shows well the different methods of Rupert and Cromwell. Rupert, successful in his splendid charge, but forgetting the duty of victorious Cavalry, spoilt everything by galloping wildly in pursuit with his whole force.

Cromwell acts very differently. His great and well-combined front and flank attack on Langdale is a model for all time. He first rivets Langdale's attention by Whalley's determined attack in front, and then brings the whole of his remaining available squadrons crashing into his flank. By skilful use of the ground, too, he succeeds in concealing this main attack until his squadrons are already in the act of charging.

But Cromwell knew how narrow in a Cavalry fight is the margin between victory and defeat, and how small a force of Cavalry is needed to deal the final blow to an enemy already beaten. He therefore rallies at once the mass of his Cavalry and sends in pursuit of Langdale only the one regiment, Rossiter's, which is still fresh and has not taken part in the big attack.

Cromwell had already charged and rallied three times when he made his final attack on Prince Rupert's Cavalry. The latter, hitherto victorious, had just returned from the pursuit, but the men were tired and the horses blown, and Cromwell in a single charge swept them from the field.

But no rest was to be given to the flying foe, and the Cavalry, which had done such hard work in the battle, was still able to pursue its beaten enemy for fourteen miles, almost to the gates of Leicester.

Captain Fritz Hoenig, from whose 'Oliver Cromwell' the above account is taken, remarks that the battle shows that, with a Cromwell at their head, the same Cavalry can not only decide the battle but carry out the pursuit as well.

\* Among these, according to Whitelocke, were 'a good few ladies of quality in carriages' and 'above a hundred Irish ladies not of quality.'

As regards scouting and reconnaissance details are very difficult to find. It is certain, however, that at the beginning of the war the scouting was very bad on both sides. In October 1642, for instance, Essex was at Worcester with orders to watch the King, who was at Shrewsbury, and to prevent him moving either towards London or Bristol. On the 12th the King moved to Bridgenorth, and thence to Wolverhampton, Birmingham, and Kenilworth, which latter place he reached on the 19th. Except that the King had moved on the 12th, Essex knew nothing whatever about him till the 19th, when he discovered that he was at Kenilworth. Essex then marched twenty-three miles to Stratford, but again lost touch, and on the 22nd, the night before Edgehill, the Royalist army was within 12 miles of him without his being in the least aware of it. The Royalists knew almost as little, and for ten days the armies had been seldom more than 20 miles apart, without either knowing the position of the other.

During the night of the 22nd Rupert did discover that Essex was at Kineton, and the King then turned back and occupied Edgehill. Essex, however, only discovered the Royalists next morning when he resumed his march.

Cromwell himself attached the greatest importance to obtaining information, and by the end of 1644 we learn incidentally that he was already well known for the way in which he kept touch with the enemy, and for making the best use of his picquets and scouting parties.

In 1648, when Cromwell was commanding the army against the Scots, we have a good instance of the way in which, by that time, he used his Cavalry for scouting. A Scottish army had invaded England and was moving south through Carlisle towards Lancaster. Cromwell, whose army was concentrating between York and Leeds, had a Cavalry force under Lambert spread out towards Appleby and Kendal, along the Pennine range, a distance of about seventy-five miles west of the main army. This force never lost touch with the enemy, and as the Scottish army made

its way southwards through Lancashire, Cromwell was kept perfectly acquainted with its position. Hamilton, commanding the Scots, on the other hand knew nothing, except that what was apparently a small force of Cavalry was constantly hovering on his flank. He did not even know that Cromwell had left South Wales, where he had recently been besieging Pembroke. As later we find Napoleon laying down very careful instructions to Murat so as to ensure the Cavalry being used as he wished, so here Cromwell's orders to Lambert were very precise. 'He was not to appear in force anywhere ; never to fight, but to give way at once to pressure ; and expose as few men as possible along his front.' Hoenig, whom I have quoted above, thinks that this performance was quite equal to anything the Prussian Cavalry achieved in 1870.

Thus covered and kept informed by his Cavalry, Cromwell, after some very rapid marching, completely surprised the Scots near Preston, and though his army did not amount to half the strength of the Scots, he utterly defeated them, taking no less than 10,000 prisoners, a number which exceeded his own entire force. The numbers actually were Hamilton 22,000 ; Cromwell 8,600.

As usual, he pushed on his Cavalry in pursuit, but his horses were very done. 'If,' he writes, 'I had had a thousand horse that could but trot thirty miles, I should not doubt but to give a very good account of them, but truly we were so harassed and haggled out that we were not able to do more than walk an easy pace after them.'

One of the most important officers of Cromwell's army was the Scoutmaster-General. He was the head of the intelligence department, and had to reconnoitre not only the enemy, but the country through which the army marched. The Cavalry had to provide him with scouts, but he also employed spies and agents of his own, and often rode out with patrols himself. He was not necessarily a soldier, and indeed Cromwell, like Stonewall Jackson, was by no means averse to divines upon his staff. His Scoutmaster-General in Scotland was an Independent

minister, and in Ireland he had no less a person than a bishop of the Irish Church !

One of his scoutmasters wrote a letter to Cromwell on the subject of his men and their employment, which is perhaps worth quoting. He says : ' I have not a few times sighed that men set to work by me, have of necessity sinned, and one or two complained thereof to me, and desired therefore the greater wages, which last never troubled me ; but of late the sufferings, maims and injuries of some I have employed have had their impression upon me more than perhaps needed, and I have in both these respects a melancholy soul.'

Whether this was written by the Independent minister or by the Irish bishop, and whether he too went on to ask for greater wages to compensate for the melancholy of his soul, must be left to the imagination of the reader.

As to Cromwell's method of conducting pursuits, that after Dunbar is as good an example as any. When the enemy were fairly broken, Cromwell, who was in command of the whole army, galloped forward and *halted* the Cavalry who were pressing on in pursuit. While being rallied and re-formed, or, as Cromwell expressed it, 'gathered for the chase,' the troopers sang the 117th Psalm ; then, still calling upon the heathen 'to praise the Lord, for his merciful kindness is ever more and more towards us,' they dashed on in pursuit, and a relentless and irresistible pursuit it was. By night, out of 22,000 Scots, 3,000 had fallen, mostly in the pursuit, and 16,000 were prisoners ; in fact their army had been utterly wiped out. Cromwell always fought to destroy his enemy ; none knew better that a victory without an effective pursuit is a victory wasted, and none ever pursued with more relentless energy or with more overwhelming results.

It may be of interest here to explain how Cromwell dealt with such vast numbers of prisoners. As to their immediate disposal, at Preston, where Cromwell had to leave his prisoners under escort, he left orders with the officer in command 'to *put the prisoners to the sword* if the Scots shall presume to march against them because you cannot bring them off in safety.'

Previous to the Preston campaign, the common soldiers taken had been either exchanged or eventually released. The Scotch invaders, however, were looked upon in a different light, and Parliament determined to show them no mercy. They were sold to contractors who shipped them overseas to re-sell them either to the Virginia planters or to the Venetian Government for service in their galleys.

After Dunbar, Cromwell was in great difficulty as to the disposal of his prisoners; he was very short of food himself and could not feed 10,000 extra mouths, nor could he conveniently spare men to guard them. The day after the battle, between 4,000 and 5,000 prisoners, almost starved, sick and wounded, were released, and the remainder were sent under a convoy of four troops to Berwick and thence south: few reached their destination alive.

For the sake of brevity, all details of supply have been omitted, but it may be said here that the armies lived almost entirely on what they could collect, and being short of provisions was rather the rule than the exception. The troops were nearly always quartered in the towns and villages passed through, and the consequent dispersion generally meant that a long time was required to collect and form up the army. Tents, though used by the Scots as early certainly as 1639, seem to have been first introduced into the English army by Cromwell for his Irish campaign of 1649.

In addition to their scouting tactics on the battlefield and conduct of pursuits, Cromwell's Cavalry were also adepts at raiding convoys and communications, and even storming fortified houses. Of night work we have already seen the example of Ireton before Naseby. The record of their marches is even more extraordinary, and it is difficult sufficiently to emphasise their wonderful mobility: it is most remarkable how towards the end of the war they gained in mobility relatively to the Royalists, and in the operations ending in the battle of Worcester we find the Parliamentary horse simply riding rings round that



of the Royalists. In this, quite as much as in its manœuvring power on the battlefield and its great improvement in scouting, Cromwell's Cavalry shows the effect of his wonderfully careful training and discipline.

As the war goes on, too, we hear no more of horses breaking away ; instead it is always of prompt rallyings and renewed charges, and this, as we all know, is quite impossible for even the best men and horses, without the most thorough training. The Royalists *never* learnt this, and, as at Naseby, they were usually completely out of hand. Cromwell had no fixed rules as to strength and employment of lines, or as to how many lines to act in ; he suited his formation to the ground in every case. His main line, not necessarily his first, was always as strong as possible, and always sufficiently in hand to meet all emergencies. He was the first of all Cavalry leaders in history who made it a fixed principle of action to invariably rally rapidly after the charge so as to be ready immediately, if necessary, for further employment against a fresh objective. He stuck closely, too, to the principle of never letting go his reserves until the last of the enemy's Cavalry had been beaten off the field.

When one considers that Cromwell's Cavalry flourished 250 years ago, it is extraordinary how much that Cromwell taught then is equally valuable to us to-day.

To recapitulate a few points : first, Cromwell chose good, steady, self-respecting men, intelligent and brave ; he paid them well, and treated them well, and showed how this could go hand in hand with the strictest discipline. He chose officers who were enthusiasts, and he made it his business to see that they were thoroughly acquainted with their profession. Then followed careful individual instruction and constant drill, no detail too insignificant if it went towards perfecting the whole.

Of his methods in the field enough has already been said, it is only necessary here to add that all history since his time has shown how wise was his rule of always rallying at once, and of re-forming and keeping formed whenever possible. This comes out again and again ; it is not, as a rule, in the charge itself that

the losses have occurred, but in the subsequent headlong and disordered rush, and the scattered and confused retreat. It is always the same—Waterloo, the Crimea, in 1870 von Bredow's charge, and many more; and we cannot too often remind ourselves that after a charge to rally his men at once is the duty of every officer, and to rally to his officers the duty of every man.

Cromwell was thoroughly convinced that the cavalryman's first weapon is the horse; good horsemanship and horsemaster-ship were therefore the objects after which he was always striving.

A German Artillery officer, who held high command in 1870, when asked the three most important duties of Artillery, answered, 'First, to hit; second, to hit; third, to hit.' One can imagine Cromwell defining those of Cavalry as, 'To move, to move, to move.'

Yet Cromwell was fully alive to the value of combining fire with shock (witness Okey at Naseby), and the use he made of his dragoons would well repay careful study.

The more one reads of Cromwell's life, the more one is struck by the greatness of his achievements as a soldier.

He was by far the greatest Cavalry leader that England ever produced, but he was something more than that.

When we remember that in 1642 he was a civilian with no knowledge whatever of war, and that his last battle was only nine years later, it seems almost incredible that in that short time he should have been able to convert a wretchedly trained militia into the most perfect military force in Europe; such, however, was the fact.

In conclusion I cannot do better than quote from Colonel Baldock, who thus sums up Cromwell's military character: 'His was that combination of nerve, decision, and military insight which makes a great Cavalry leader, and which is so rare that Napoleon said but one such man appears in a century.'

The works chiefly drawn upon for these articles have been: *Oliver Cromwell*, by Captain Fritz Hoenig; Colonel Maude's *Cavalry: its Past and Future*; Colonel Baldock's *Cromwell as a Soldier*.

## *PETAWAWA ARTILLERY PRACTICE CAMP*

By CAPTAIN WALTER JAMES BROWN, *Canadian*  
*Field Artillery*

The development of local forces has been going on energetically in Canada—Suitable tracts of country have been made available for instruction—Artillery instruction camp at Petawawa described.

EXPANSION, improvement, and efficiency are to-day the watch-words of the Canadian Militia. During the past two or three years the whole organisation has been put upon a new footing. The numerical strength of the force has been materially increased, auxiliary corps have been organised and added to the strength, while the guns and rifles, ammunition, and regimental equipment are being modernised and perfected. Intelligence, enthusiasm, and self-sacrifice on the part of officers, non-commissioned officers, and men are the most striking characteristics of the latest Militia Service in Canada. The improved facilities for instruction and training provided by the authorities have already resulted in enabling the various brigades, regiments, squadrons, batteries, companies, &c., to reach the highest standard of efficiency in their history.

The Artillery, which is now classified as Horse, Field, and Garrison, is one of the most active arms of the Militia Service in Canada. The degree of technical skill and efficiency acquired during comparatively short periods of training in handling the field batteries, has been the marvel of many an inspecting officer. The guns, in numerous instances, have been manned by the rawest of recruits, while the teams were untrained horses mounted by green drivers; yet the drill was mastered,

and the individual intelligence of the men acted in co-operation with the superior knowledge and skill of their officers to reach a standard of efficiency in a few days which is seldom acquired in as many months. The secret of the splendid adaptability and aptness manifested by all ranks lies in the fact that the Artillery appeals to a class of men who are sportsmen by nature, and who are urged towards soldiering by irresistible instincts as waterfowl are urged to an aquatic life.

Among all the improvements brought about in the past few years the most important has been the setting aside of large tracts of country exclusively for military purposes. The only feasible plan to adopt in preparing a Militia for active service is to make it possible for each unit to receive its instructional training under service conditions—that is, with ample facilities for manœuvre, target practice, and combined tactics, on a comprehensive scale in a country that embraces the greatest possible variety of physical conditions within a fairly limited area, and includes within its boundaries samples of all natural obstructions likely to be met with in active service. It is practically impossible to provide anything approaching these conditions in a densely populated region ; but happily in Canada, at the present time, within a few hundred miles of the centres of population vast areas having the desired characteristics exist, which will be utilised in the future as needed for purposes of military instruction and training. One of the most important of these drill grounds so far secured by the Department of Militia and Defence is located at Petawawa in the province of Ontario, north of the town of Pembroke on the Ottawa River.

Last year the two batteries of Royal Canadian Horse Artillery from Kingston, Ontario, went to Petawawa to take their training and to prepare for the Artillery Practice Camp, which was held during September and October. The trains conveying the two batteries arrived on the field late in the afternoon ; temporary ramps were quickly constructed from railway ties piled near at hand, and the horses, guns, baggage, &c.,

were unloaded and ready to move to the site selected for the camp in less than one hour. The gunners pitched their tents in a small field, enclosed upon three sides by woods, with their front on the banks of the Petawawa River. They built sheds for the horses, arranged watering facilities, cut roads through the wood, made a topographical survey of the country, took their training, put up telephone poles and stretched wires, selected ranges of various distances, erected splinter-proof covers, located signal stations, and were ready for the active Militia batteries of Field Artillery and companies of Garrison Artillery when they came for their shell practice.

This was the first time the field batteries and garrison companies of the Canadian Artillery were able to conduct their shell practice under service conditions. The targets were hidden and the ranges were ample. For the 4.7 guns the target was placed on a rise of ground over 6,000 yards from the gun positions. In the case of the field guns the infantry target varied in distance from 2,000 to 2,500 yards, while the artillery target was somewhere in the neighbourhood of 4,000 yards from the nearest observing-point. In each case the only gun positions were behind hills, and all the shells travelled over densely-wooded, undulating country. The positions usually taken by the field batteries while ranging on the artillery target were so thickly wooded that the guns could not be seen from the observing-points occupied by the battery commanders; in fact, the individual guns with their detachments were practically hidden from one another. The 'deliberate method' was the only one used throughout the practice. An observer stationed near the targets, even though he knew the approximate location of the batteries, would have found it difficult to come within 1,000 yards in estimating the range.

The Petawawa camp grounds are in Renfrew county, near the point where the Petawawa River empties into the Ottawa. The railway company spells this word Petewawa, and the natives pronounce it Pete-wa-way. The location is ideal for military

## PETAWAWA ARTILLERY PRACTICE CAMP 448

purposes. Its altitude is only 467 feet. The field is ten miles long, extending nearly to the Chalk River on the north, and practically 10 miles wide. The main line of the Canadian Pacific Railway runs through this territory, about  $1\frac{1}{2}$  mile from the Ottawa River. The Grand Trunk Railway have their road already opened to Pembroke, 14 miles below the camp site, and will run a spur into the camp itself. The country has been swept by fire at intervals for years, and is sufficiently open to allow troops to move in any direction. The soil is almost pure sand, with a light covering of vegetable mould and a few inches of growth composed of bracken, blueberry, and wintergreen bushes. The country is rolling, with lakes, springs, and creeks scattered about, and here and there a clump of small pine trees. In some places the bush is impenetrable and covers 50 acres or more, while near are open plains more than 100 acres in extent. There is enough firewood on the ground to last for twenty years. The scenery along the Ottawa River at this point is unequalled elsewhere in southern Canada. The river is wide and deep and is dotted with innumerable small islands. There is excellent sport, a fine beach affording splendid bathing facilities, interesting boat trips, and everything to make Petawawa a delightful and healthy spot for military instruction and for pleasure.

Petawawa will be one of the central training camps for the Canadian Militia. The grounds, if properly handled, have almost unlimited possibilities from a military point of view. There is no reason why 10,000 men might not be trained there at one time. The officers and men will learn more regarding the essentials of drill, scouting, marching, military engineering, shooting, field movements, &c., on those grounds during one period of training than it was possible for them to learn in years under the restricted and artificial conditions that have necessarily obtained in the past.

*THE SECOND CAVALRY BRIGADE IN SUSSEX*

By OUR SPECIAL CORRESPONDENT

To the student of history few localities can be more interesting than the singular bulwark which Nature has erected between the Channel which separates England from the Continent and the beautiful expanse of farmsteads and woodland which stretches north even to the hills of Surrey and the valley of the Thames.

The Sussex Downs and their southern and northern slopes have been the scene of many a terrible struggle in the older days of British history. It is true that the Norman and Plantagenet kings, masters of politics and of war, linked Britons again for centuries to Gaul, till they became strong enough to reassert themselves and commence that career of expansion which has lasted with some disappointing vicissitudes even till to-day.

It is perfectly obvious from the enormous ruins of entrenchments and the tumuli and camps and *oppida* of the Cæsars which we passed hourly in our manœuvres, that neither Britons, nor Romans, nor Saxons could rely on the blue water theory for the defence of Sussex. Had the Ditchling position been held by Claudius or Vespasian, whose works are still visible, in one night they would have improvised a fortified line which would have easily repulsed all General Byng's charges.

My instructions were to attach myself to the Cavalry, and to watch them carefully. Before dwelling on their military proceedings I must state that I had the fullest opportunity of watching them on duty and off duty, and that it would be quite impossible to find a more amiable and considerate and well-conducted and patient and cheerful set of men in any walk of life. But this has been my experience of them all through my life,



## SECOND CAVALRY BRIGADE IN SUSSEX 445





through evil and good report, and I have mixed freely with them for close upon thirty years. I have also questioned civilians of all ranks about them and their conduct at manœuvres since 1896, and on each occasion I have been answered in terms of enthusiastic approval.

It was therefore with no small interest that I traversed the camps with which the Regulars and Volunteers of the Eastern Command had dotted over every convenient site from Brighton to Newhaven.

I was glad to see that the Secretary of State for War had an opportunity of observing how soldiering elevates and improves, mentally and morally and physically, all classes of the community. He could compare the officer with the barrister who is not a member of the Inns of Court Rifles, and he could contrast the average Volunteer, even though a poor man in civil life, with the average British working man, who prefers to pay gate-money to watch games, rather than to learn drill and musketry. It delighted me to see the evident partiality of the fair Sussex dames—all Saxons—for my military friends, who were the 'cynosure of every eye.'

If the officers of the Cavalry live luxurious lives, they managed to conceal these attributes in Sussex. I know that I was only a kind of camp follower, except when I got a dignified position at Divine Service on Sunday, and yet I never had a moment's rest from early morning all day long, and if I had not the use of a pony cart, like so many other camp followers in former campaigns, I could not have followed at all; and yet my duties were as nothing compared with those of the troopers who had charge of horses.

Men and horses seemed to me in very good condition indeed, and they did their work admirably. But this is quite in accordance with their traditions.

The 7th Dragoon Guards (Black Horse) has a record of service with which not one regiment of Cavalry now to be found in any other army in the world, except in our army, can for a moment

compare, not even a crack regiment of Hungarian Hussars. It has figured in some of the most important crises of modern history since, under a Schomberg, it charged at the battle of the Boyne, 1690. It was at the celebrated siege of Namur by William III. Under Marlborough it gained fame by the banks of the Rhine and the Danube and in Belgium; and under Ligonier, the distinguished Huguenot general, it charged at Dettingen by the banks of the Maine in 1743. It was at Fontenoy 1745. It helped Frederick the Great in Germany against the French at the close of the Seven Years' War, 1760-1762. It served in South Africa in 1846, and in India in 1857, and in Egypt in 1882, and was with Drury Lowe in his famous Cavalry operations, including the charge at Kassassin. Again it served in South Africa, 1900-1902.

The 20th Hussars has had a chequered history. There were three regiments of 20th Light Dragoons all disbanded in turn between 1759 and 1862, after doing good work in their time. The present 20th Hussars were Empire makers in India under the name of 2nd Bengal Light Cavalry, but when the rule of the old East India Company ceased after the Mutiny, they were transferred to the Home Government, and received their present title. Since then they have served on the Eusoofzee frontier, with the Hazara Field Force in 1867, in Egypt with the Light Camel Corps, in the Suakim expedition, 1885, in the various Nile campaigns of later date, 1886-1888, and in South Africa, 1901-1902.

It seems to me likely that both regiments, if called upon to show their mettle to-morrow, would be worthy of their old renown.

As to the Imperial Yeomanry, officers and men also did wonderfully well, and may be regarded as likely, with proper treatment, to become an invaluable adjunct to our regular Cavalry. The British Yeomanry numbered 20,000 sabres a hundred years ago, and Napier and Alison describe them as a very serviceable force. Most undoubtedly the Yeomanry who worked so heartily with us on the Downs were in every respect as good material for partisan Cavalry and for raiding and

ambuscades as either the Cossacks of Platoff or the Mounted Infantry of Stuart or of Sheridan.

We have before us the history of Cavalry in many an ancient and modern treatise since 480 B.C., and it is very clear that every nation which allowed its Cavalry to fall into decay in time of peace suffered so severely in time of war in consequence that they procured mounted men at all costs as soon as they possibly could. Men of such different types as Alexander, Hannibal, Timurlane, Gustavus, Marlborough, Frederick, Nadir Shah, Napoleon, Lee, and Grant were equally strong on this point.

To mention the name of the Royal Horse Artillery is enough. When did gunners fail to do their duty and more than their duty? '*Ubique*,' '*Quo Fas et Gloria ducunt*.'

I certainly would not have liked the task of bringing guns over some of the slopes descended and ascended at good speed during these manœuvres. Nothing could have more surprised or delighted the spectators. Indeed, the gunners made very striking displays of both judgment and daring.

Now let it be distinctly understood that there must be no trifling with our mounted forces. It is a most certain oracle of time that warfare on plains without good mounted troops is beating the air, and that in mountainous countries, even on the slopes of the Alps and Himalayas, Cavalry may be, and often are, of very great service.

General Byng was most particular to inculcate the importance of skilful reconnoitring and scouting, branches of Cavalry tactics which were quite ignored in most European armies from 1814 to 1870, with exceedingly bad results, particularly on June 16 and 17, 1815, on the French side, and on both sides in the Crimea and on both sides before Königgratz, and on both sides in 1870 up to Sedan.

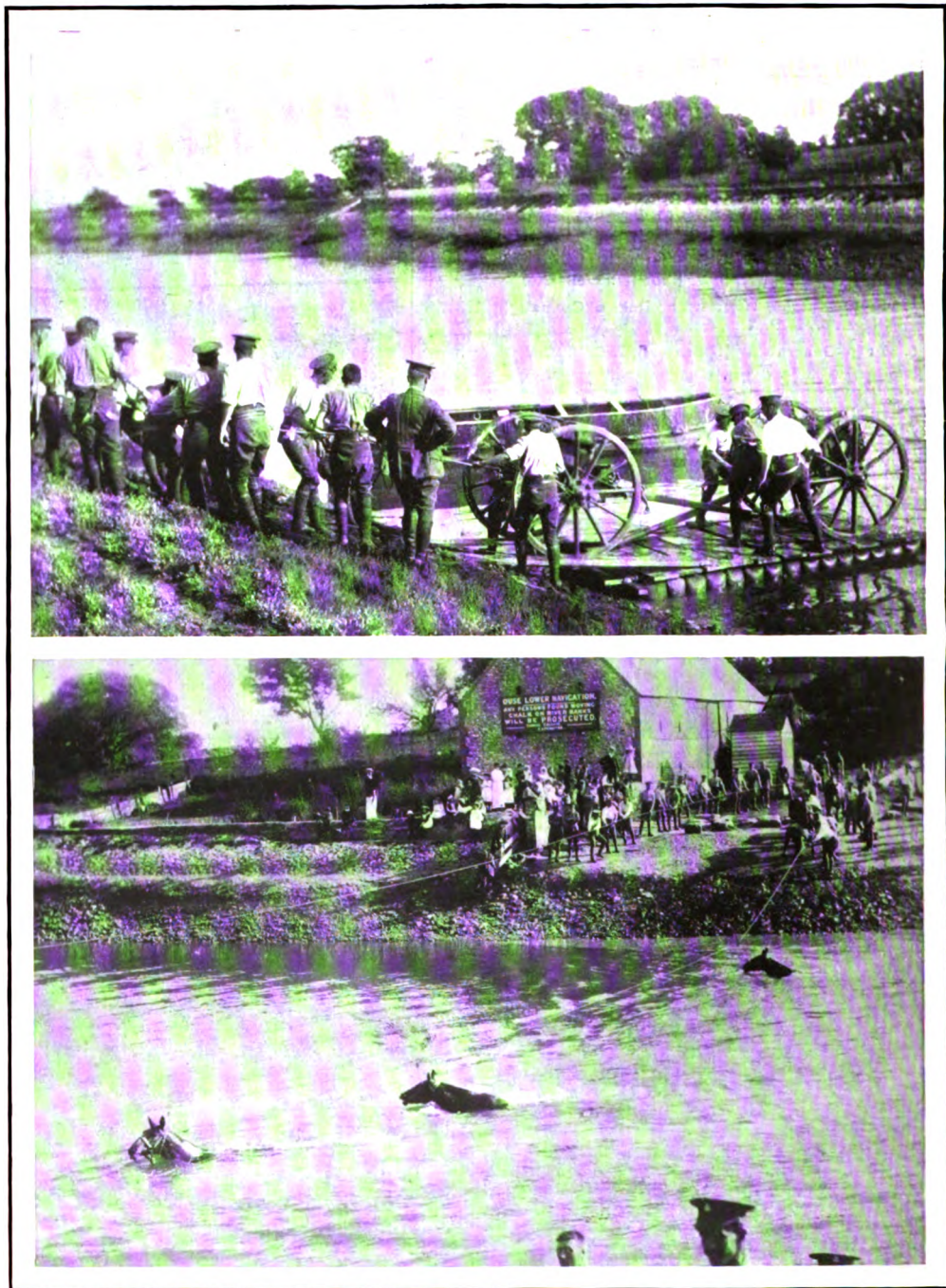
I observed that a considerable part of the Sussex training was most wisely devoted to teaching troopers that they are the 'eyes and ears of an army.' It makes no difference from this point of view what are their weapons—whether they carry revolvers, swords, lance, or carbine, or all four. No man can do his work

## **Manoeuvres** **in Sussex.**

1. General Lord Methuen, G.C.B., K.C.V.O., C.M.G.
2. The Rt. Hon. R. B. Haldane, K.C., M.P.
3. Brig.-General Hon. J. Byng, C.B., M.V.O.
4. Major-General R. S. S. Baden-Powell, C.B.
5. Field-Marshal H.R.H. The Duke of Connaught, K.G., K.T., K.P., &c., &c.
6. Brig.-General Sir J. Maxwell, K.C.B., C.V.O., &c.







MANŒUVRES IN SUSSEX.  
ARTILLERY AND CAVALRY CROSSING THE RIVER OUSE.

properly who is deaf and blind ; much less can an army effect its object if its eyes are closed.

But I cannot give details of these minor tactical exercises, however instructive and interesting. In truth, I am pursued myself, and headed with irresistible force by the Editor, and he is also limited by space.

A leading function of Cavalry has always been to gather up the fruits of victory—guns, wagons, prisoners—and no victory is complete unless followed not only by the retirement but also by the rout of the enemy.

In recent times also there have been very feeble pursuits. Wellington, Lee, and the Germans in 1870 were all defective in this branch of the art of war.

Indeed, the most effective since 1813 was the rush for Cairo after Tel-el-Kebir, and certain pursuits at the close of the Indian Mutiny.

On the other hand, Cavalry skilfully used can cover retreats and delay and mislead the enemy to a degree, especially in a country where the lines of operation are traversed by ridges and rivers. Not that *positions* will save armies ; and indeed an army which has large bodies of clever mounted troops at its disposal will by superior *mobility* dislodge the retreating army from position after position.

Now at a conference near Falmer, half-way between Brighton and Lewes, on Monday, August 6, General Byng impressed on his men the enormous value to an army of all its troopers, whether in masses or in squadrons, or even in sections, never losing touch of the enemy, keeping a tight grip of him, dogging his footsteps.

He illustrated the value in this case of the individual energy and ability of each corporal.

We soon put our theory into practice by a vigorous pursuit of the 7th Dragoon Guards, who very cleverly retired over the Downs and defended every possible standing point from Newmarket Hill over the Ouse and then by Well Bottom and Gardener's Hill southwards. But with the 20th Hussars and the Yeomanry and six Royal Horse Artillery guns we kept in

touch with them, and we dislodged them time after time, and at the Ouse Bridge our troopers captured many; they were caught in a defile with a river behind them, just as Crauford was almost caught at the Coa, and as Benningsen's men were caught at the passage of the Alle, 1807. Students of the full report of our Cavalry manœuvres will no doubt agree with me that to turn a half-won battle into a rout of the enemy by able Cavalry tactics was one of the leading aims of our leader throughout.

Nevertheless, the retreat continued, as did our pursuit; all the features of a rear-guard retirement, followed by a deliberate but persistent pursuit, were illustrated on this day, and the Brigadier was quite justified in congratulating his officers on the manner in which his orders had been conveyed to all ranks, and on their admirable execution of his design.

It must be admitted that we have hitherto been too restricted in manœuvres by red tape. It is wise for military leaders to explain their ideas to all concerned; a bit of strategical knowledge cannot do any harm, and the more the brains and souls and personalities of every man in the army are developed and the more his enthusiasm is kindled, the happier his life and the more complete his success.

It was hard work to follow these manœuvres over the Downs and their spurs up from the coast and down to the road running along their northern base, and bounding the Weald, which in Saxon times was an enormous forest, and even now contains 110,000 acres of timber.

The tactics on Tuesday, August 7, seemed desperate. We were obliged to storm a position along the telegraph road from Ditchling Beacon to High Park Corner—that is, a ridge hundreds of feet high. The camp of the Emperor Claudius is 800 feet high; it is fronted by downs and deep valleys. Moreover, the position is flanked on the left by precipitous descent, up which it would be risky to attempt to bring horses and guns for a turning movement, and on the right by woods, a park, and stone walls. But the enemy was retreating; if not routed, if not

attacked, he would get off safely, only to stand again on some other position, like Marshal Ney in Portugal. A regiment would be well sacrificed on this ancient theatre of slaughter and of heroism, if the retreat of our adversaries could be changed into headlong flight or capture. Moreover, was not a big display necessary when a Secretary of State for War was a spectator?

Squadron after squadron swept up the steep incline and over its crest with loud hurrahs, plying their swords in pursuing practice. Had the enemy not retired, they would have been cut to pieces as they were retiring down the slope, and the result would have been worse for our foes than La Serna was for Clausel's Infantry.

I stood on one of the trenches of the fort of an Italian Cæsar, which was also one of the halting-places of the far more terrible invaders from the dismal coasts of the German Ocean. As the British Cavalry achieved their final triumph of mimic war amidst the hearty applause of their countrymen, my memory wandered back to the horsemen of Homer and of Virgil, and the immortal portraits on the shield of Achilles; to the Numidian Cavalry of Hannibal and the Celtic Cavalry of the Romans, and to the knights and squires of Chaucer.

I fancied I could hear the thunders of the hoofs of British horses at Balaclava, of Austrians at Custozza, of French and Germans at Woerth and at Rezonville.

I remembered the men who charged with Seydlitz and Murat and Lake, with Paget on the Douro, and with Stuart by the Rappahannock.

Then the old fable of that centaur Cheiron, model of courage and strength and wisdom, seemed realised. The twentieth century of the Christian era has the same lesson to teach as was taught 1,200 years before Christ. The lesson is that a brave and true and skilful warrior, sound in muscle and in brain, mounted on a hardy and well-trained horse, is the consummate birth of Time, and should be cherished by every nation as one of the choicest gifts of the gods.



## *REMINISCENCES OF CAVALRY IN WAR AND PEACE*

By AN INFANTRY OFFICER

Afghanistan, 1879 — Kabul—Kandahar—Lucknow — Tel-el-Kebir—Atbara—Khartoum—A lesson learnt at manœuvres.

AN article by an Infantryman upon Cavalry from the Infantry point of view may, on the principle of seeing ourselves as others see us, be acceptable to my comrades of the Cavalry. I therefore venture to jot down some reminiscences of the mounted branch in peace and war, gathered from memory, diaries, and notes made from time to time.

My first recollections of Cavalry in the field are over a quarter of a century ago, when as a boy not long joined I stood in the lines of Sherpur, our fortified cantonment at Kabul, and saw a sorely tried squadron of that best of regiments, the 9th Lancers, ride into barracks after their gallant charge with the 14th Bengal Lancers against practically the whole Afghan Army in the Chardeh plain.

Long before they came we knew that things had gone badly, riderless horses galloping home, a desperately wounded trooper just managing to reach the gate before he fell from his horse, and anon, a small sad procession of poor Cleland, the Colonel, wounded to the death, and brought off the field by a gallant non-commissioned officer, who his many friends delight to see has lived to serve his country as a Major-General.

Next morning I saw laid out in a large marquee the 9th Lancers dead, all mutilated beyond belief, in accordance with the custom of our savage enemy.

How many glorious incidents crowd on one's memory of those never to be forgotten days in December, 1879.

Everywhere the Cavalry were ubiquitous, and until sheer weight of numbers forced Sir Frederick Roberts to withdraw his whole force within the ramparts of Sherpur, Bengal Lancers, Punjaub Cavalry, and the Guides vied with the 9th in the work they did and the charges they made on the rolling hills of the Kabul plain.

I can see now as if it was yesterday Tim Butson on December 18 riding out at the head of the 9th Lancers, for all his seniors in the regiment were *hors de combat*, and less than three hours after carried back through the same gate wrapped in a soldier's blanket, shot through the heart ; and there, following him, rides Jabber Chisholm, grievously wounded, clinging to his saddle with both hands, *but* bringing in the regiment.

Twenty years more of life were allotted to him, and then he too was to fall in the moment of victory at Elandslaagte.

And here come the Native Cavalry, chanting a wild war song, elated with success, and waving their lances, which in many cases were covered with blood for many inches down the shaft. The poor Infantryman, condemned to the prosaic task of watching the gate and guarding the walls, stood by and envied the participators in these stirring scenes, and from that day dates in his mind the warmest feeling, the deepest appreciation for the Cavalryman, and the confident belief, which the experience of maturer years has in no way altered, that the day is still for the sword and lance when properly applied.

On December 23 we were once more free, and the Afghan host disappeared into his sheltering mountains. The Cavalry did their best in pursuit, but ice-bound paths and deep snow gave no chance to the trooper against the tribesman.

Thereafter for some months as far as the Kabul Force was concerned was peace, and then the astounding news of Maiwand, and the feverish, jealous preparations for the march to Kandahar. I say jealous, for all could not go, and all wanted to go, and hated those who went whilst *they* remained disconsolate behind.

We started for Kandahar on August 8, 1880, the Cavalry

Brigade leading, and what a Brigade! The 9th Lancers, the Central India Horse, the 3rd Punjaub Cavalry, and the 3rd Bengal Cavalry.

One does not need to be a *laudator temporis acti* to say that we shall never see the like of that beautiful Brigade again.

Like a much-belauded beverage this Cavalry was indeed to us of the Infantry, toiling along the dusty road to Kandahar, most grateful and comforting.

Far in advance and on the flanks the glitter of their heliographs during the day showed us that if there was to be fighting we should have ample warning.

At length after many days the walls of Kandahar came in sight, and as we halted at the very gates one of the most stirring pictures of the bright, the glorious, the dashing side of war was the 3rd Bengal Cavalry, guided by their Brigade-Major, Brabazon of the 10th Hussars, galloping past us to take part in the reconnaissance of Ayoub's position.

Next day, September 1, was essentially an Infantry and Artillery day, and the Cavalry emphatically were not in it.

Again the scene changes, and my memory carries me back to two happy years spent at Lucknow in company with the 10th Hussars. Field-days or manoeuvres in those prehistoric times were most infrequent, but did we not have many a solemn and stately parade on the Dilkoosha Maidan, when, after the Cavalry had marched past, the Infantry Brigade in line changed front half right on the right company of the right battalion, and performed other intricate and valuable movements of that then fast expiring era?

The 10th of course took the lead at polo, and I fancy it was almost as bad to be late at the afternoon game with David Ogilvy, that gallant and ever to be lamented light-horseman, as to show tardy arrival on parade with the Colonel.

After Lucknow came Tel-el-Kebir, and here I saw but little of the Cavalry.

The noise of their movement round our flank on the night of

September 12 caused that extraordinary scare, almost approaching a panic, which occurred amongst the Infantry battalions of the Army as they were preparing to start for the night march on Tel-el-Kebir.

To my knowledge an accurate account of this alarm has never appeared in print, but it will be remembered by all survivors of that eventful day.

On the two following days Drury Lowe and his Cavalry Division made that fine march which ended in their arrival at Abbasiyeh, Cairo, at 4 P.M. on September 14, and the surrender of Arabi Pasha.

We of the Indian Division who reached Zag-a-Zig on the night of September 18, on our flat and exceedingly tired feet, always felt a little hurt that no acknowledgment was made for years of the fact that the Commission of Pashas and Notables in Council, assembled at Cairo, had already laid the submission of the country and the Army at the feet of His Highness the Khedive.

I myself stood by when General Herbert Macpherson read this telegram of submission, addressed to the English General at Zag-a-Zig, to a large assemblage of officers on the platform of the railway station at that place, about 8 P.M. on the night of September 18.

This in no way is meant to detract from the brilliant feat performed by the Cavalry, but I put forward the plea that the Infantry co-operation, albeit many miles in rear, conducted largely to the ultimate success and results of the Cavalry march.

After these stirring times succeeded to me years of peaceful soldiering in country quarters at home and in the Mediterranean garrisons, and my experience of Cavalry was practically *nil*.

The spring of 1898, however, found me taking part in Sir Herbert Kitchener's final and decisive campaign against the Dervish hosts.

In the first phase, during the operations on the Atbara, we

had no British Cavalry, and we relied entirely for reconnaissance on the Native Cavalry of the Egyptian Army.

Under Broadwood and his excellent officers they worked extremely well, but I think few who were there will deny that we could have done with some British Cavalry, had circumstances permitted their employment.

The 21st Lancers, as everyone knows, joined us for the final march on Khartoum, and I may perhaps be pardoned for relating the minor part I took in the circumstances leading up to the gallant but somewhat disastrous charge that they made on September 2.

After we had beaten off the first great attack of the Dervish Army, and were replenishing pouches, I saw the squadrons of the 21st riding out of the zareba and following up the enemy, and I watched them disappear over the lower slopes of Surgham Hill.

A quarter of an hour later a signaller of the British Division brought me a heliograph message from Colonel Martin to the Sirdar, saying that he had located a considerable body of the enemy on a hill to the front, and asking for orders.

I at once got on my horse and sought out the Sirdar, who I found surrounded by his staff, watching intently the Kerreri Hills, from which in less than an hour's time was to roll out the great attack on Macdonald's Brigade.

After listening to Colonel Martin's message, he deliberated a minute, and then said, 'Tell him to worry the enemy on the flank and try and head them off from Omdurman.' I galloped off and despatched this order, and it can only just have been received when the regiment came upon the Dervishes in that fatal khor, and suffered its very severe losses.

As regards South Africa, alas! I have no tale to tell, for I was numbered amongst those unfortunates who are said to serve though they stand and wait; but in the succeeding years I venture to think I learnt much from peace manœuvres and field-days under a Cavalry General on the deserts around Cairo.

The Cavalry regiment quartered with me in that best and most delightful of military stations, galloped like—may I say?—blazes, and at the same time was always ready to dismount and shoot.

One incident at the Egyptian manœuvres of those days comes back to me, and will serve to point the sound moral with which all stories I believe should end.

During the final stages of a large combined attack on the Blue enemy in a defensive position, a particularly dashing and sudden Cavalry charge was made on a portion of the attacking Infantry.

It was noticed how the whole fight came to a standstill, and both sides practically suspended hostilities to watch the result.

This is of course utterly wrong, and such an event is precisely the moment which the energetic Commander, whatever his rank, should seize to gain ground or to push on his retreat.

On consulting authorities I find that this reprehensible habit has been very common in war in days gone by.

Prince Frederick Charles in his 'Winke für die Offiziere' (1870) draws special attention to it, and Prince Kraft in his Letters on Cavalry (page 233) is strong upon the point.

Major W. Balck, of the German Army, a rising European author on tactics, says: 'The sight of a line of charging Cavalry which suddenly appears has such an effect on troops not immediately threatened by it, that either they do nothing but look on while the Cavalry charge, or else more troops than necessary take part in repulsing the Cavalry.'

At the battle of Vionville the German Infantry fired at the most incredible angles at the attacking French Guard Cavalry. While Bredow's Brigade was making its celebrated charge at the same battle, part of the Infantry of the 6th Division *ceased firing to look on*, though the charge was being made in a totally different part of the battle-field.

With this important lesson taught me by the Cavalry on the plains of Abbasiyeh, I will bring this I fear somewhat garrulous narrative to a close.

## *MY FIRST EXPERIENCES IN SEARCH OF REMOUNTS*

By CAPTAIN GODFREY GILLSON, R.A., *Commanding Artillery,  
Egyptian Army*

### III.—CYPRUS

The endurance of the Cyprus pony—How the breed might be improved—  
Advice to buyers.

CYPRUS possesses neither trains, trams, nor motors, which probably accounts for the light work their animals make of what we considered long and arduous journeys. For one need only compare the distances which our grandfathers habitually rode and drove to realise that the art of horse-travelling is now dead at home, and our hacks would be as startled as their owners if called upon to do one of the ordinary journeys of sixty years ago. We accordingly took the advice of a polite and loquacious inn-keeper, who had apparently less occupation than he would have liked, as business seemed very quiet in Limasol, and chartered a very heavy barge-like old ambulance, with a stuffy little 13.1 mule in the shafts and a much taller and more pretentious animal alongside him. The vehicle being duly loaded with our bags, selves, the driver and an odd boy, together with two or three sacks which could only be accounted for as ballast, we set forth on our long and jolting journey. All went merrily for the first six miles, which were fairly level, when I found to my dismay the pretentious one had thrown up the sponge and disclaimed further interest in the proceedings. I naturally began to bethink me of a suitable bivouac. The muleteer, however, had not yet lost confidence; and events approved his judgment. The small and stuffy one rose to the occasion, and putting his big head

further through his collar and his equally big heart into his job, trotted along with his great cumbrous load up and down hill through heavy dusty roads for the next thirty miles. Once only was he allowed to stop, when he was fed and afterwards watered; for the Cyprian holds that he who would water before feeding should be kept by the State out of harm's way. 'Quot homines, tot sententiæ.'

When we halted for the night I had the greatest respect for our unassuming little friend, and vowed that handsome is as handsome does. We were most hospitably entertained that evening by a gentleman we had met on board ship about a fortnight previously, who was occupied in growing wine on what appears a suitable altitude and climate for the grape. At present, he told me, he had only produced wine for exportation to England for blending purposes, but was just experimenting, and I believe successfully, on an orthodox vintage. We had a very pleasant evening, blending his wines ourselves with great satisfaction, and hearing much of the island sport in the old days when Cyprus could boast a pack of hounds, keenly contested steeplechases for island-bred animals, also plenty of polo and other like good things all of which have now passed and gone.

The reason of this lamentable falling away is mainly attributed to the departure of the soldiers, as the civilian officials, though frequently the leaders in these good old-fashioned pastimes, found that after the reduction of the garrison to its present infinitesimal dimensions they were unable to carry on the revels single-handed. So the horn no longer brings men and ponies to the hillside on the crisp winter mornings: no more do the valleys ring with the cheery music of the pack. 'Alia tempora, alii mores.'

Next morning we abandoned the ambulance and rode the two mules the remaining distance to Troordos, as the road was too steep for such a vehicle as ours. Like all other visitors we were delighted with Troordos, and could not help feeling what a boon it would be for the unlucky English families who cannot manage to avoid the Egyptian summer on account of the expensive



journey home, if there was only hotel accommodation for them in such a perfect climate and within such easy reach of Alexandria. We called on the officer commanding the detachment which forms the Cyprus garrison, and were met with real Highland hospitality. The troops seemed very happy in their summer quarters, and amazed us with the ingenuity of their schemes for their improvement. I fancy that only a Scotsman would succeed in levelling his mountain peak into a football ground. On the following morning we paid our respects to his Excellency the High Commissioner, who gave us every possible facility to enable us to carry out our purchases satisfactorily. He seemed very keen on the improvement of the various breeds of animals on the island, and by inaugurating shows in the different districts is giving a great stimulus to the trade, which he no doubt foresees will be a sure source of income to an agricultural population. A great deal has been done in the last five years by the importation of stallions, and these have been selected with the utmost forethought.

Both the mule and genet in Cyprus would seem to be assured care and encouragement, not only on account of their extreme usefulness in their own land, but also for the excellent prices they can always readily command in the convenient market of Alexandria. There they are fully appreciated, both as Artillery and Transport animals for the Army and for draught purposes throughout the country, their value in consequence being greater than that of the ordinary horse in Egypt. However, in the strength of the mule's future welfare lies the weakness of that of his relatives the pony and the donkey, since it is only natural that the high market value of the mule must encourage the owners of the best pony and donkey mares to employ these animals in producing the costly mule rather than the ridiculously cheap pony or the comparatively inexpensive ass. For whereas a big mule, if a really good one, may realise as much as £30, I bought one of the nicest ponies we came across at the fancy price of £10, his late owner admitting

afterwards that he had given £3 10s. for him the year before. This animal was six years old, 13 hands 3 in., very truly made, and so sound that I doubt if he could be lamed without the aid of a hatchet. His daily occupation was pulling the mail-cart twenty-eight miles, and his great merit was his ability to make up time when the mails were delayed.

The pure Cyprian or Paffo pony is named after the district in which a breed of hill ponies uncrossed with foreign blood has existed for ages. He runs, roughly, from 13 hands to 13.3, and may be fairly described as the old stamp of Irish hunter in miniature; a sensible large head with a bold eye, inclined somewhat to be Roman-nosed; he is very well balanced on short powerful legs, with short canon bones and great muscular development of fore-arm and second-thigh; his feet are inclined to be 'blocky,' in marked contrast to the Arab, while his girth measurement is remarkably good. As for endurance, pluck, and capability of doing continued hard work on little food, he is not to be surpassed.

It is, no doubt, owing to the good conformation of these ponies that the valuable Cyprus mule can be bred; should these ponies die out, then this class of mule must disappear with them.

While visiting the chief mule-breeding centres and purchasing mule remounts, we had an opportunity of seeing most of the imported stallions, also some of their young stock, whose owners appeared very proud of them and eager to show them to interested strangers.

We saw in all four stallions:

1. 'Stretton,' an English thoroughbred horse by 'Ayrshire.'
2. Two horses imported from Syria.
3. A Yorkshire cob; always referred to in Cyprus as 'an English polo pony.'

'Stretton' stands about 15 hands  $\frac{1}{2}$  in., is full of quality and has a great deal of bone. He is a very powerful little horse with great depth of girth. We thought him an excellent selection for his purpose.

'Stretton's' temper apparently was not as good as could be wished ; but possibly, even if this defect should be inherited by his stock, the native method of treatment would prevent its development. All the foals we saw were as tame as puppies, and habitually followed at the mother's side wherever she was ridden by her owner.

I feel sure from what we saw of this horse's stock that there is a possibility of breeding very high-class galloways or cobs, by judicious crossing of the best selected Cyprus ponies with the right sort of thoroughbred. The first generation of this cross we saw illustrated in some yearlings and two-year-olds : they will probably reach about 14 hands 2 in. They showed a great deal of quality—too much, perhaps, for service purposes. The next generation, however, is the one to look to, and I believe that the half-bred product mated with the hill pony would produce a really serviceable mount for Cavalry or Mounted Infantry. I have not the least doubt, if they were well done for the first three years of their existence, that they would grow another three inches, as is the case with any breed of pony that runs wild on poor pastures when brought on to better keep in their youth.

I would not for a moment suggest trying to make any radical change in the present breed of animals or to substitute a horse for the existing pony ; as it by no means follows that the surroundings which have proved suitable for a pony should do equally well for a horse, a not uncommon Englishman's error. It is not always true that 'The Lord tempers the wind to the shorn lamb.' Rather has the shorn lamb to temper his coat to the prevailing wind, and the horse to adapt himself to his feeding ground or suffer for his inability to do so.

All I would suggest, therefore, is, by the selection of the best only, and the suitable introduction of thoroughbred blood, aided by the ordinary common-sense supervision of a stud farm, to aim at improving the present native animal to one of the same stamp but a hand higher.

The Cyprus police, by no means light men, are all mounted on native ponies, who seem capable, in spite of their diminutive stature, to fulfil the requirements of a troop horse. Not that I would so far fly in the face of convention as to suggest that any soldier should ride a 13.2 pony, no matter how far he could carry him or on however small a forage ration he could exist. If we reduce the 15.3 troop horse by a few inches, we shall have made enormous strides in the right direction.

Of the other Government stallions and their stock which we came across during our tour, I will content myself by saying that I very greatly prefer 'Stretton' to any of them, as being himself of a much purer breed and therefore likely to impress his own good points on his stock; also as being noticeably strong himself in the points in which the native animals were weak. The same could not be claimed for the other types of stallion, nor did what we saw of their stock in any way shake this conviction.

By the time we had finished our travels in the island we had completed the number of mules we had been ordered to purchase; and although the drought had rendered many of them poor and light in condition, yet we had a very excellent class of animal to select from. They were accordingly shipped off to Alexandria, and our very interesting trip came to an end.

In conclusion, let me add a few words of advice to anyone who may find himself in like employment:

1. Never attempt to buy too many animals at one time; when the eye gets weary the judgment will fail disastrously.
2. If possible, begin with the better-class animals rather than the worse. The eye readily gets accustomed to its immediate surroundings; consequently a moderate animal amongst bad ones may be easily mistaken for a good one.
3. Never wittingly buy an inferior animal. Rest assured you will do that soon enough unwittingly.
4. Far better to be one short of your number than take a bad one, who in the end will only kill a good one by leaving him a double share of work to do.

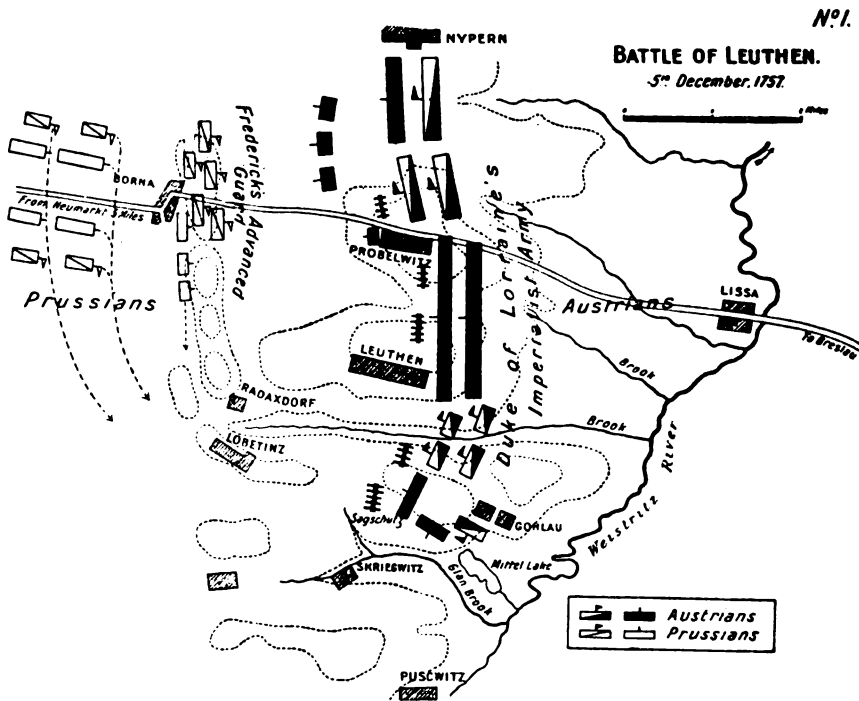
## CAVALRY IN BATTLE

By CAPTAIN P. A. CHARRIER, *Half-pay*

### II.—THE BATTLE OF LEUTHEN, December 5, 1757

This action illustrates the value of observation, instantaneous decision and rapid execution.

ON December 4, the Duke of Lorraine with an Austrian army of 72,000 men (including 14,000 Cavalry and 167 guns) \*



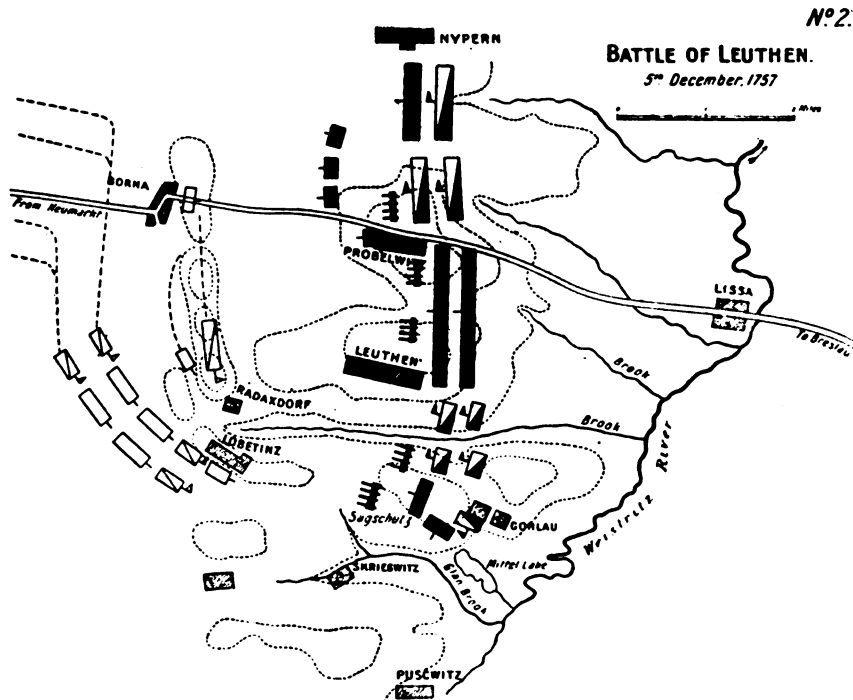
established himself in a position covering an extent of about six miles, his right at Nypern, his left resting on Glanbrook, with an advanced guard seven miles to his front at Neumarkt.

\* 'Die Zahl im Kriege,' v. Otto Berndt.

That day Frederick the Great's advanced guard (Prussians) defeated the Austrian's advanced guard at Neumarkt, making prisoners who gave him valuable information.\*

That same night the Prussian army slept near Neumarkt, the Duke of Lorraine remaining in his position, covered at Borna by five Cavalry regiments.

On December 5, at 5 A.M., Frederick's army (strength 48,000 men including 11,000 Cavalry †) marched on the Austrian army,



preceded by an advanced guard of 45 squadrons and 12 battalions.‡

At Borna the five Austrian regiments of Cavalry were defeated. Frederick seized the heights east of the village, and from thence surveyed the enemy's dispositions. He observed

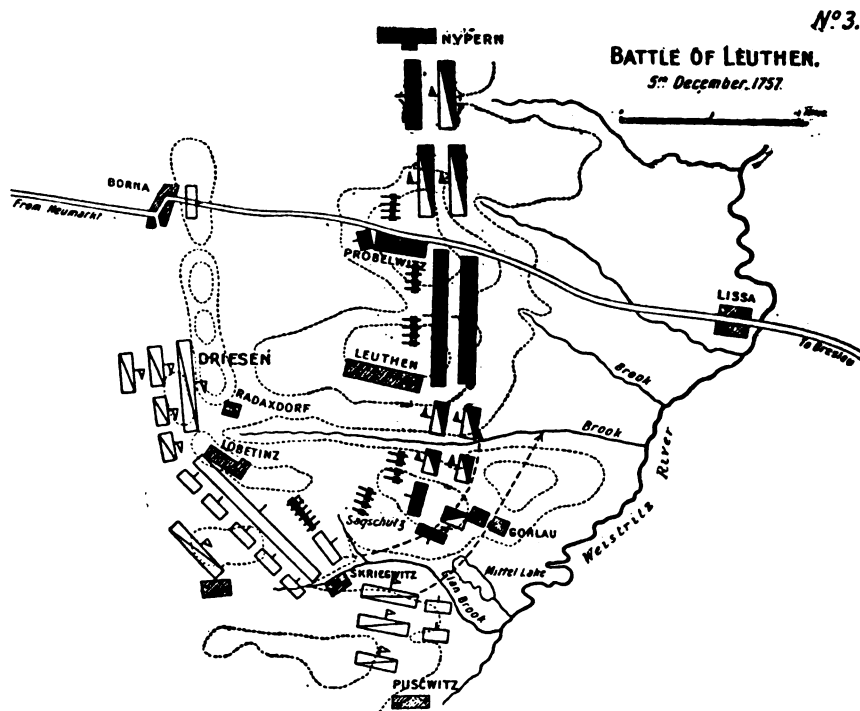
\* Waddington: 'La Guerre de Sept Ans. Histoire diplomatique et militaire.'

† 'Die Zahl im Kriege.'

‡ General Bonnal.

that their left rested on the high ground near Sagschütz, also that the range of hills running from Borna to Radaxdorf, thence towards Sagschütz, would give him a covered approach for the attack of that flank.

(Map 1.) He sent orders for the heads of columns of his main body to wheel to the right, forming thus into two columns,



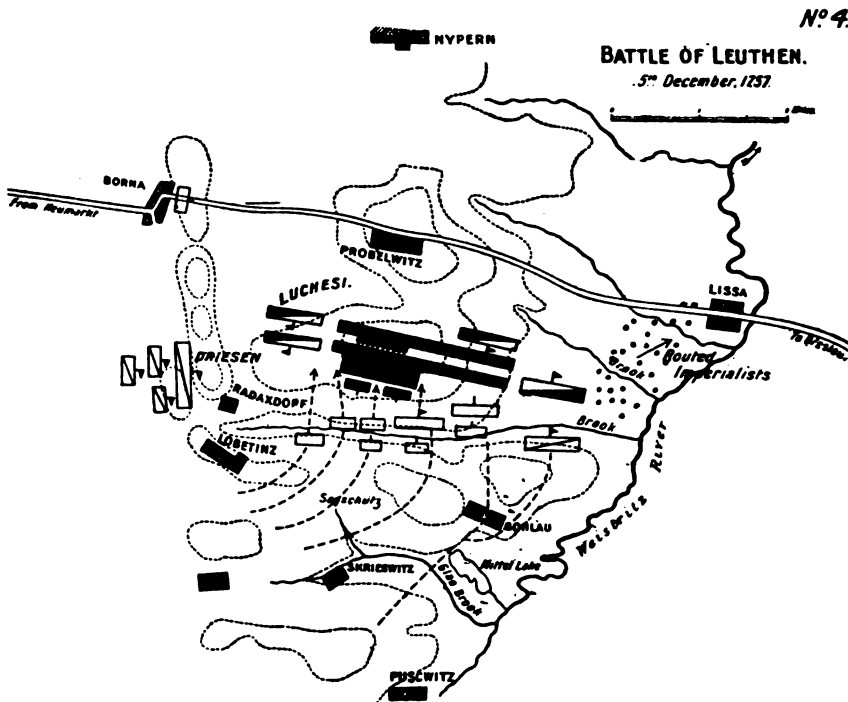
which at any moment by a simple left wheel of troops and sections would form two lines ready for battle.

To cover this manœuvre (map 2) Frederick left three battalions of his advanced guard at Borna, sent three more to lead the way at the head of the first line, and with the 45 squadrons of the advanced guard backed up by the six remaining Infantry battalions he himself covered the march of his army.

Having reached the Imperialist left flank (map 3) the Prussian army wheeled to the left into line of battle, and

supported by their Artillery and Cavalry, the Infantry violently attacked the troops opposing them between Sagschütz and Gohlau. The Prussian Cavalry on the right, crossed the Glanbrook, and drove back the squadrons opposed to them. Before this furious onslaught the Imperialist wing gave way in disorder, and it was only now that the Duke of Lorraine saw through Frederick's manœuvre.

He ordered his army to change front to the south.



Whilst the Imperial army was changing front (map 4) the Prussians were advancing in echelons, the right leading.

The village of Leuthen was captured by the Prussian Infantry; but they were unable to advance beyond owing to the fire of the Imperial Artillery. The Prussian echelons on the left following the movement engaged their enemy also, but were overwhelmed by superior fire, and gave way in disorder.

The Prussian right wing (map 5) held on with great



**CAVALRY SWORDSMANSHIP**

By STAFF-SERGEANT-MAJOR INSTRUCTOR-OF-FENCING J. E.  
WILLIAMS, 6th (Inniskilling) Dragoons.

The following article, coming as it does from a non-commissioned officer experienced in training recruits, is of special interest. It advocates the use of the thrust entirely, and the education of the recruit to be a capable user of the sword in a fight, and not to be necessarily an artistic fencer.

The ideas here stated are very much those which govern the systems at present being tried in the 2nd and 4th Brigades in England. A committee of expert Cavalry swordsmen has this year been going into the question of the new sword and new sword-instruction, and this will now be settled before long.

FOR years the system adopted for swordsmanship has been fundamentally wrong, the results obtained were naturally bad, and faith in the sword as a weapon for mounted men was lost.

Let us make a move and shake off this fatal lethargy into which we have fallen, for if we are to remain Cavalry in spirit, as well as in name, we must have a weapon (other than the rifle), and we *must* be able to use that weapon *mounted*.

With this object in view, may I be permitted to offer some few suggestions on this most important subject? And if others who like myself have some slight knowledge of the art would do likewise, useful results may be obtained.

It is now recognised that to teach swordsmanship as one would teach musical dumbbells is wrong.

The following extract from the recollections of General F. De Brack is, I think, well worthy of thought at the present time:

‘The first thing to decide is the system of swordsmanship to be taught the Cavalry. Settle on your system and then choose a weapon to suit it. But mind it does suit it.’ While on the

subject of swords, I may say that I have seen several swords in armouries and collections that, with a little alteration, would be admirably suited to the above system. If then our present-day sword-makers cannot produce a suitable weapon, I would advise them to study those made in the fifteenth and sixteenth centuries, for when men's lives depended on their swords, be sure they had suitable well-balanced ones.

And the system—I strongly advocate the Italian system, with the cut entirely eliminated. Why keep the cut—is it any good for Cavalry? I answer with an emphatic ‘No.’

I think I am right in saying that in the charge of the Heavy Brigade at Balaclava only two Russians were killed by sword-cuts.

Let us boldly strike out a line for ourselves and utterly abolish the cut. At present there seems to be a disposition to temporise and keep a cutting sword, because, although the point is admittedly the best, a cut might sometimes come in useful.

A radically wrong theory. Decide without any wavering on the thrust, and the thrust only.

I can imagine nothing more deadly than Cavalry trained to thrust hard and often, riding home on their enemy.

I have often heard it said that a Britisher will always cut no matter what he is taught, because it comes natural to him.

An utter fallacy. Cavalrymen have always cut because they have been taught to, and never encouraged to thrust—rather the reverse.

Men can be trained to use the point, and the point only, most effectively. I have trained recruits to this end, and the whole of them, while most deadly with the point, never thought of or made any effort to cut. Having got our sword and our system, how shall the men best be trained to make them good mounted swordsmen in a reasonably short time? Let us at once put out of our minds any thought of making the men good fencers. That is not practical—firstly, there is not the time, for it takes twelve months' good hard work to make a man a passable fencer ;

secondly, because not 20 per cent. of the men who join the Army would make good fencers if they were trained for twelve years. But we can make them all mounted fighters. We made a great advance in the right direction when we abolished the sword exercise, an obsolete and useless form of training, dear to the heart of the ancient drill-instructor. Let us take care that we do not relapse into something of the same groove. We must understand that we shall no more make a man a good swordsman by teaching him parries and thrusts on the barrack square, than we shall make him a good shot by teaching him to present and slope arms.

The place to teach swordsmanship is the fencing-room first and the riding-school afterwards. The man to teach in both places is the fencing-instructor, who should be a highly trained man, both as a swordsman and a rider.

The swordsmanship taught in the fencing-room should approach as nearly as possible that required when a man is mounted; I consider that to teach men the leg work necessary to a dismounted fencer, such as the advance, retire, lunge, &c., is not only useless waste of time, but is likely to do a man more harm than good when the time comes for mounted combat; for a man taught dismounted to get out of danger by a quick retirement rather than trust to his parry, will naturally be slow with those parries when, seated firmly in the saddle, he is unable to retire, but must depend solely for defence on the quickness of hand and eye.

Then, in the fencing-room should be taught expertness and quickness with the hand and eye, also suppleness of the body, on which so much depends in mounted combat. To attain this end, and speaking from my own experience only, I unhesitatingly say that men should be taught swordsmanship dismounted, in the mounted position.

In training my recruits I adopted this method, and introduced some attack and defence practices, based on the Italian system of sabre play. The lunge was made only from the hip, no

movement of the legs being allowed. After these practices had made the men quick and accurate with their parries, strong and decisive with their thrusts, loose play both to the right and left engage was indulged in. The results were fairly satisfactory, but with more experience gained by the instructors, I am convinced far better results will be obtained. Here let me say that the dismounted exercises must be regarded solely as preliminary to mounted fighting, not as a separate and distinct training, a fatal error we have previously indulged in.

The recruits having been taught to ride, the fencing-instructor must then train them to combine their swordsmanship with their riding, when the article we want will be obtained, *i.e.* a good mounted fighter. The mounted combat of the recruits trained on the above lines, although nothing from a spectacular point of view, there being an utter absence of that wild and useless slashing so dear to the crowd, is to the expert eye far more effective.

The cut which through a man's clothes would only bruise is absent, but the silent point that kills is there. Train your men to attack, attack always; it will cause countering when fighting among themselves, but what matter? When they fight with sharp swords it will not be among themselves, and they will not have judges to keep a clear ring, but the man who gets his attack home first will kill the other.

For such a thing as an actual counter, that is for two men to strike one another at precisely the same time, does not occur once in a hundred times; one hit is always first, although the eye is not always quick enough to see it.\* But in fighting with pointed weapons, that fraction of a second that divides the quick attack from the slow is of inestimable value, and means victory; for a man with a sword-point in his throat, or penetrating his ribs, must stop, or rather all muscular exertion stops, and what remains is the nerveless falling forward or downwards of the

\* In our training rules when a counter occurs it is given in favour of the man who attacks.—ED.

sword arm and body. I am inclined to think that our way of teaching men to fight in pairs according to fixed rules is a wrong one, but I fear to be too revolutionary.

My ideal Cavalryman is the man who, when he closes with the opposing squadron, thinks of nothing but thrusting viciously and desperately at everybody wearing a different coloured coat to his own that comes within his reach. His constant attack will defend him from those in front, while his rapid movement will protect him from those behind. At the same time I do not lose sight of the importance of a strong defence, but consider it should be held quite secondary to the attack; again I say the rules of the dismounted fencer should not apply to the mounted fighter.

I may say in passing that among other methods I found a good way of developing a strong attack in a man while not neglecting the defence, was to have one man attacking, opposed to a man on both his right and left, who acted entirely on the defensive.

The attacker would attack as his fancy directed, perhaps delivering a strong point at 'right's' head, then turning quickly and plunging his sword into 'left's' groin, and so on.

I have endeavoured in this short article, however inadequately, to show how the Cavalry may be raised from the present low standard of swordsmanship to be a good body of mounted fighters.

I fully realise that my methods are open to criticism and great improvement, but I am convinced that, if our Cavalry were trained on these general lines, they would ride through any Cavalry in the world like riding over a lot of dummies.

Finally, I maintain this could be arrived at without taking up nearly as much of the soldiers' time as was formerly done in the 'sword exercise' period, when, in order to catch the eye of the Inspecting Officer, so much time and labour was necessary to ensure a whole regiment going through the motions as one man.



Mr. JOHN GOLDHAM—LONDON VOLUNTEER CAVALRY.

Executing the Six Divisions of Austrian Broadsword Exercise with a Sabre in each hand.





## *BONE DISEASE IN HORSES*

This is a comparatively new disease, and the following notes on it are taken from a report by Captain A. H. Lane, Army Veterinary Department. They show that the disease is largely due to innutritious forage, and can be cured by change of food, if taken in time.

THIS disease is the most serious and expensive with which we have to deal in South Africa, and occurs chiefly at places where the staple diet is oat-hay grown in the Western Cape Colony. From what I have seen, I am sure that numbers of cases are constantly occurring, but are not recognised.

### SYMPTOMS

The symptoms of this disease, in the early stages, are by no means diagnostic and are often misleading. As any part of the bony system may be specially affected, the symptoms vary very much, and it is not surprising that veterinary surgeons with no previous experience of this disease should have altogether failed in their diagnosis, and attributed the symptoms to rheumatism, navicular disease, &c.

The first symptom is generally lameness, which is often fugitive, and there is an absence of the usual signs indicative of lameness as regards swelling and heat; but there is generally tenderness on manipulation. Some cases at first seem only to be going short in front, like navicular disease. When the disease is more advanced, it seems as if every joint of every leg is painful, giving a peculiar tottering gait.

Curiously enough, the majority of animals affected are to all appearance in good condition during the first stages. In many cases the first symptom is stiffness of the back—the lumbar



region—which may appear very suddenly, the animal rising with difficulty as if it had been cast in the stall. On pressing the lumbar region pain is evinced; on trotting, the hind limbs are moved very stiffly. Some of these cases, a day or two after admission, have been found unable to rise, and on examination the vertebræ, which in these cases were very soft and could be broken up with the fingers, proved to be fractured.

There comes a time when there is a gradual loss of flesh, and, although the animal has plenty of good food and eats well, it gradually becomes very emaciated, the belly becomes drawn up, and the whole framework of the body seems to have shrunk.

In some cases the disease will show itself quite suddenly. Several horses of the Cavalry regiment at Middelburg, Cape Colony, suddenly broke down in their fore fetlocks: some of these showed fracture of the sesamoids, in others the ligaments had come away from their attachments, the bone being so diseased. At this camp I saw two mules, to all appearance in good condition, suddenly, when at work, break down in the hock joint. There was no real fracture, but the ligaments of the small bones of the hock had come away from their attachments. In some cases there is an enlargement of the maxillary bones. Some people are of opinion that no horse, mule, or donkey can be diagnosed as suffering from 'bone disease' unless the head is affected. This idea is erroneous, for I have seen hundreds of cases of long standing without any head symptoms. The disease may especially affect any part of the bony system, but it generally concentrates in the irregular bones, the vertebræ, and more particularly the lumbar region, often in the shoulder joints, the pelvis or the ribs, sometimes in the head.

#### CAUSE

There is a good deal of difference of opinion as to the cause of this disease. Messrs. Hutcheon and Robertson, Cape Agricultural Department, who have seen some hundreds of cases, are strongly of opinion that the origin is microbic; though no

organism has been isolated, and inoculation has failed to produce the disease. French veterinarians, who have studied the disease, more especially in Madagascar, consider it is caused by an absence of lime salts and phosphoric acid in the food, paddy (rice) being the principal diet of animals in that country.

Mr. Tagg and Mr. Greenhill, who have seen many cases in Calcutta, consider the origin dietetic, owing to a low innutritious diet, and they think, as I do, that we have many more cases of this disease than we are aware of.

Hayes attributes the cause to feeding on innutritious grass and hay, even though good oats are also given, judging chiefly from his experience in Hong Kong and at the Bahawulpore Stud Farm in India.

In the United States the authorities rather incline to the microbic theory of origin.

Everything as regards origin, in my experience, has always pointed to malnutrition—that is, prolonged feeding on a diet of low nutritive quality.

In certain districts of South Africa, especially in the Western Cape Colony, there is a considerable deficiency of lime salts and phosphoric acids in the soil, and analysis of the oat-hay there has shown this deficiency as compared to that grown in the Transvaal or to the English standard.

I take it that an animal depends for the nutrition of the bones more on its hay and grazing than on its grain ration.

My first experience of this disease was in 1898 at Wynberg, Cape Colony, amongst about 400 Mounted Infantry small horses which had been brought over from the Argentine about sixteen months previously. From July to September a large proportion of these horses had been lame or stiff. I was greatly puzzled at times in locating this lameness. There had been a few fractures, including two of the lumbar vertebræ. By November there was a still larger number of crippled horses, and four had been destroyed for fractures. These 400 horses had been fed, since arrival, on mealies and oat-hay (locally grown), with a little

bran and salt. I advised the ration to be changed to oats (New Zealand), 6 lbs. ; bran, 2 lbs. ; Argentine lucerne, 8 lbs. ; green forage, 4 lbs. ; salt,  $\frac{1}{2}$  oz. ; bone meal,  $1\frac{1}{2}$  oz.

Lime was put in the water, which on analysis had shown an almost total absence of calcium. The effect of this change of diet and more care was soon very marked. In about three weeks every affected animal, however far the disease had advanced, was seen to make some improvement, and with the exception of some thirty bad cases (eight of which were destroyed and the remainder cast and sold) these horses all became effective again and went up country in October 1899 on active service.

My second experience of this disease was in October 1904, when I was posted to Middelburg, Cape Colony, on my arrival from England. The number of horses affected in the Cavalry and Artillery there was only about fifty. Several mules could scarcely move, twelve mules and seventeen donkeys were down and could not get up, so I destroyed these at once, and subsequently destroyed five more mules and several donkeys. During the previous twelve months, this company, A.S.C., alone had cast and sold 170 mules too crippled for work, while forty-four mules and forty-five donkeys had died or been destroyed, most of them suffering from this bone disease. The majority of these mules were Argentine and North American, and probably most of the donkeys were imported. They arrived at Middelburg in December 1902 showing no signs of disease, and were fed on oats and oat-hay grown in Cape Colony, with a little imported forage, until July 1903, since which date the grain ration had been almost entirely mealies and oat-hay from Western Cape Colony. They had no stabling or rugs, and had been worked hard and had had no grazing. About November 1903 a number of them were noticed to be lame, and this disease seems to have gradually become worse from that date. I changed the diet of these animals at once, the mules getting 4 lbs. to 5 lbs. imported oats, 2 lbs. to 3 lbs. bran, 8 lbs. Argentine alfalfa,  $\frac{1}{2}$  oz. salt ; donkeys half this ration, horses half as much again.

The affected ones were placed in sheltered kraals loose, not tied up—a great point in the treatment—and were watered three times daily.

The improvement was very rapid ; after six weeks of this treatment most of them were fit for work. I may mention this is a limestone district and the water very hard.

The following is a return of the mules treated :

Total	Cured	Relieved	Died or Destroyed
369	248	104	17

Most of those marked 'relieved' were sent to light duty, but owing to pressure of work had to do full duty, which they stood well.

#### POST-MORTEM APPEARANCES

The diagnostic post-mortem symptoms are only seen in the bones ; I have never traced anything diagnostic of this disease in the internal organs. In the earlier stages (horses slightly lame, &c.) a most careful post-mortem will show nothing abnormal to the naked eye, but microscopically it will be seen that the bones in places have undergone a change, especially near the joints. In later stages the bones are in such a decalcified state that they can be cut with a penknife, and in advanced cases can be pulled to pieces with the fingers. In many cases the long bones to external appearance seem fairly normal at first sight, but except in the very early stages the extreme lightness will be noticed. This lightness of all bones, reduced often to one-third the normal weight, is very marked.

When the head is affected the symptoms consist chiefly in the enlargement or bulging out of the maxillary or jaw-bones. All the bones of the head become more or less softened, and seem to have undergone the same form of degeneration as the other irregular and flat bones, and I take it that the pressure of the teeth causes the maxillary bones to bulge in this way.

These enlargements are almost always symmetrical. In animals which have broken down suddenly in the fetlocks and hocks, it is found that the ligaments and sometimes the tendons have come away from the bone at the point of attachment, and often a small piece of bone is found attached to the extremity of the ligament. The ligament is healthy, but the bone so diseased that it could not hold the ligament.

#### TREATMENT

I experimented for some months with four different batches of twenty affected animals in each batch. These experiments went to prove that, both for preventive and curative treatment, what is required is good leguminous hay, Argentine alfalfa being the best, and the next best the freshly grown lucerne. Good imported oats such as New Zealand are evidently very beneficial. A certain amount of bran, say 1 lb. to 2 lbs. per head per day, mixed with the grain certainly aids digestion and assimilation, but too much bran is not advisable. Oil-cake or well-boiled linseed is of help, and plenty of salt, say, 1 oz. per head daily, should be given. As a rule, grazing does good. If the water contains no lime, put a little unslaked lime in it. Let affected animals be loose ; if very lame, put in a loose box or small enclosure. They will thus lie down more, and exercise their joints a little. Gradually increase the exercise as the animal becomes stronger, or put in a larger enclosure ; this being loose and giving gradually increasing exercise are most important parts of the treatment.

## INTERNATIONALE REVUE: BEIHEFT 74

‘Die reiterliche Ausbildung der deutschen, österreichisch-ungarischen, italienischen, französischen und russischen Kavallerie-Offiziere.’

Some account of the training of Cavalry officers in Germany, Austria, Italy, France and Russia.

GERMANY.—The author of this brief account of the methods in use in the above-mentioned armies for the elementary and higher training in the equestrian art, begins by expressing an opinion that in Germany the system pursued leaves a good deal to be desired. Take, for instance, the Cavalry schooling of the *Offizieraspirante*; six months after their admission to the army they are sent to the War School, where, owing to want of time, they receive but scanty instruction in riding, and are then appointed to commissioned rank almost immediately upon their return to their units. The *Offizieraspirant* who joins during the training season learns but little of the *foundation* of the equestrian art, because there is then no time to spare to give up to him, while the squadron commander very properly insists on having as many of his men and horses under training as possible. The men who join from the cadet schools are in even worse case; these join straight away as officers, and have up till then had no higher instruction in riding than that which the *Fähnrich* enjoys, while both are expected to carry out the duties of their position as officers, the most important of these being the instruction in riding of their men—duties for which at this period they are naturally quite unfitted. Of course, every officer, until promoted *Rittmeister*, takes part in the officers' ride in the winter

time under a senior officer detailed by the commanding officer ; while in very many garrisons now even the most junior officers have opportunities of riding to hounds and so learning to ride across country, improving alike themselves and their horses. But these do not fill all the gaps in the *early* education in riding of the German Cavalry officer before he has to undertake his responsibilities. The Hanover Cavalry School even cannot make good lost opportunities, for no officer can hope to be detailed for this course until he has at the very least three years' service, while of course not every Cavalry officer can hope to attend.

Saxony has its own Cavalry School, which officers attend one or two years after joining their regiments, the course lasting from October to July, and the instruction including gymnastics, musketry, and tactics. The good results achieved here are acknowledged all over Germany.

Bavaria, too, has its school in Munich, but this is more on the lines of the Hanover Riding Establishment, since not merely newly joined but more senior officers are detailed for it. The disadvantages of the present system are admitted by the military authorities, and it has been suggested that more Cavalry Schools should be established wherein newly gazetted officers and Fähnrichs should receive a thorough grounding. Paderborn, Sprottau, Soltau, and Bitsch have all been mentioned, and the Reichstag has provisionally sanctioned the opening of a school at Paderborn, where a barrack is available for school purposes, and the War Minister is to report at the end of three years whether more schools are necessary. The staff of the school is to consist of a commandant and three instructors ; fifty horses have been allotted for school purposes ; the course will last for nine months from October 1, and forty officers will be detailed for each course. It is probable that Paderborn will be conducted on rather different lines to Hanover.

AUSTRIA.—In the Austrian Army, Cavalry subalterns join from the academy where they have already undergone instruction in riding for one or two years, so that when passed on to

the brigade school they have already been thoroughly well grounded, and have acquired at least a good seat. The brigade schools arose in 1869 from the regimental schools, wherein up to that date the commanding officer used to train his young officers. There are eighteen brigade schools, chiefly at brigade headquarters, and each is managed by three officers; the course lasts six months from October 15, and is attended by twelve lieutenants or cadets of the brigade, each of whom is put twice through the course. At the end there is an examination before the Brigadier and the instructional staff, and a report on the result is sent to the officer's regiment; if reported as 'unsatisfactory' he must complete two further attendances at the school. On rejoining his regiment the young officer continues his instruction under his squadron commander, before whom he is supposed to ride daily from eleven to one. There is not much opportunity in Austria for officers to ride to hounds, but long-distance rides are much practised.

The great ambition of every officer of Austrian Cavalry is to be detailed for the Cavalry Instructors' School in Vienna; for this the qualifications are very high. There are here two courses, each of a year; thirty students join the first, and of these twenty are detailed to complete another twelve months; six vacancies at the school are also filled by officers of the Austrian Landwehr. In the first year each officer rides a troop-horse, a remount, a charger, and his own private horses. In the autumn, the first-year men are taken to Holics, a seat of the Emperor's, which, together with the Schloss, is placed at the disposal of the Cavalry School. Here a large number of horses are schooled by the officers as hunters; there is a drag and a pack of staghounds, and the Master teaches theoretically and practically how hunters are made, and shows officers how to school horses over jumps.

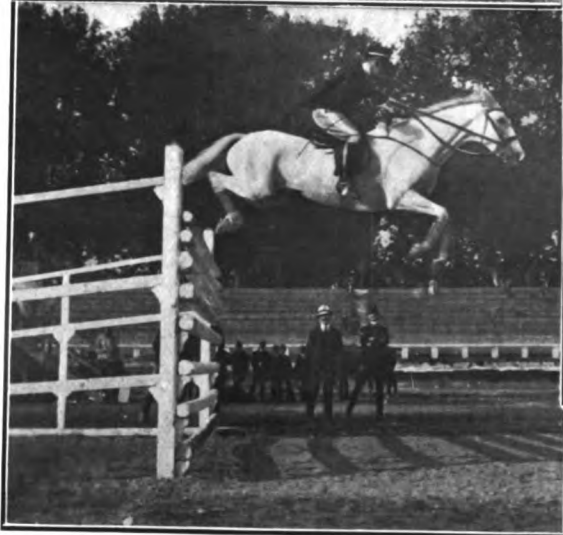
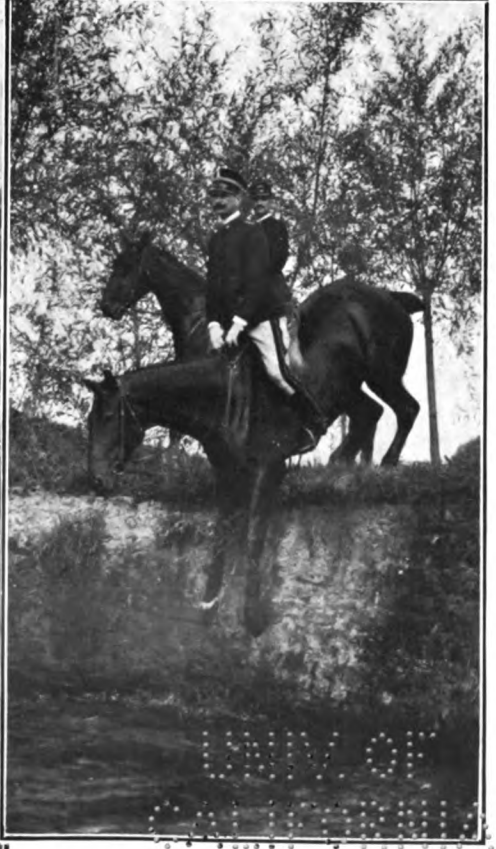
Besides the Cavalry Instructors' School there is also in Vienna the Court Riding-school, wherein the *haute école* of the old style is taught to a few specially selected officers; the course here is for one year. There is a Cavalry course for the Landwehr



troops in Wels and Olmütz held annually, from October to June, and attended by twenty-four officers. In the Honved Cavalry there are four brigade schools, organised much as in the regular army; each of these maintains a Government pack of hounds. Finally, there is in Buda-Pest a Central Cavalry School. Every lieutenant who is approaching promotion must go through the course here before he becomes a squadron commander. This School has also its own hunt, while the Buda-Pest Hunt offers both fox and stag hunting. In spring the sixteen officers attending the Central Cavalry School are taken out on staff rides under the commandant and two instructors.

ITALY.—The Cavalry School at Pinerolo, near Turin, in beautiful country at the foot of the Alps, is mainly responsible for the high standard attained by the Cavalry officers of this Army. Young officers attend the course at Pinerolo immediately on the termination of the examinations at the Modena Academy, and remain from October to July; each course accommodates thirty officers, who on entrance have to pay down 2,500 lire, in exchange for which they are given an English hunter. The Commandant of the school goes every autumn to England and Ireland to buy horses, and brings them as far as Paris, where they remain some time to become in a measure acclimatised. At the end of this time they are brought to Pinerolo, where the officers draw lots for them—a system whose fairness is incontestable, but which occasionally results in a big man receiving a horse by no means up to his weight. Officers of the other arms are also permitted to buy some of these horses, paying by instalments. The average price, including all charges, works out to from 2,200 to 2,800 lire. The Commandant also allots horses from his purchases to the hunts at Pinerolo and Tor di Quinto. The head of the school is a general officer, who has two staff officers—one of whom officiates during the winter in charge at Tor di Quinto—while there are also four or five senior lieutenants employed as instructors. The stud at Pinerolo is made up as

Photographs sent by  
Lieut. Mario Caccia.



JUMPING.  
Style of the Italian Cavalry School,  
Pinerolo.

Digitized by Google

follows: Sixty horses from the Franchetti stud in Mantua; seventy thoroughbreds; about 150 imported horses; and, lastly, about the same number of four-year-old remounts—fiddle-headed, ewe-necked brutes, but useful animals—which go well to hounds. With so large a stable, every officer has to ride daily not less than four horses. Besides officers, non-commissioned officers are trained here as regimental rough-riders. The stables at Pinerolo are very large and airy, while there is an enclosure where horses can stand all day in the open but under cover. Pinerolo is very proud of its ‘galoppatorio,’ which is distant about five miles. Here, in a wood, a galloping track about 3,000 yards round is laid out, intended for the race-training of thoroughbreds: here is also to be found every description of jump, the ditches only being few and insignificant, while there are stalls for rubbing down, paddocks, and stables where some of the new purchases complete their acclimatisation. The Veterinary School at Pinerolo is well supplied and thoroughly up to date; there are fifty boxes for sick horses, and a curious operating-room to contain a horse, enclosed on all sides by an iron grating, through the bars of which the operator can work without inconvenience, and without having to throw the animal. In the farriery a special shoe is made for riding in the hilly country; it projects considerably beyond the hoof, and is secured by from six to ten nails. For ordinary work shoes are not worn.

Tor di Quinto is six or seven miles from Rome, on a hill in the Campagna, and the course here appears to be a continuation of that at Pinerolo, and is entered upon after an officer has been for an interval of six months with his unit. The training here is nearly all carried out in the open country, officers using either their own private horses or those belonging to the school, of which there are about 175. The officers all live in Rome, and are driven out early each morning to the school. There is here an old racecourse with any number of all kinds of jumps, and there are a couple of jumping lanes—

one being on a slope of 5° to 15°—and every horse is sent through these, unriden, daily on its way to stables. All the horses will go over jumps of 4 feet 8 inches, while some will successfully negotiate obstacles of 4 feet 11 inches to 5 feet 2 inches. The most important training here is in riding to hounds on the Campagna, a country with whose main features many readers of the CAVALRY JOURNAL are doubtless well acquainted. The 'Caprili Slope' is a great feature of the place, where officers and men are trained to ride down an almost perpendicular slope of some 35 feet.

FRANCE.—The Cavalry School at Saumur is one of the best and oldest on the Continent, having been founded in 1768. Everything here is not only well done, but all is carried out on a very large scale. There are four classes of students—two of subalterns, of whom the higher are being trained for instructors; one of non-commissioned officers qualifying for promotion to commissioned rank; and one of civilian veterinary surgeons, who enter the Army at the end of the course. The first, or instructors' class, is the largest, and consists of forty to fifty senior lieutenants of Cavalry and thirty to forty Artillery subalterns. In the second class are thirty junior Cavalry subalterns who have passed through St. Cyr and take Saumur before joining their regiments; for both these the course begins in October and lasts ten months. In the third class are eighty non-commissioned officers, detailed after passing a competitive examination; these rejoin as lieutenants. They must have at least two years' service as non-commissioned officers at the end of the year wherein they are recommended for commissions, and must have served four months in the regimental pay office.

The head of the Saumur Cavalry School is a general officer or a colonel who ranks as a brigadier; among the instructors the highest class are known as the *cadre noir*, and this is formed chiefly of officers called *écuyers*. The officers of the *cadre noir* are purely instructors, while the non-commissioned officers of the same class (*sous-maîtres de manège*) are employed in the

breaking of horses. The rest of the instructional staff form the *cadre bleu*. There are 168 men employed in the stables at Saumur, and each has three horses to groom and look after: these receive 3fr. 60c. pay per diem. The stable contains 236 thoroughbreds, 277 others, and 103 from Tarbes and from Normandy; then there are also all the officers' private horses, so that there are rarely less than 1,000 at Saumur in all. About 100 young horses are bought annually for the school to replace casualties, which, owing to the hard work, are heavy. The best-bred horses are kept almost exclusively for *haute école* work and for the performances such as are carried out at the annual *Carrousel*; the Normandy horses, on the other hand, are ridden chiefly in the open and over jumps; some of these are said to have executed almost as fabulous 'leps' as the 'young one' whose purchase one is negotiating with an Irish dealer!

In order to encourage home industries few horses are now regularly purchased outside France.

Work here is not light; it begins in summer at 5 and in the winter at 6 A.M. and continues to 6 P.M., with a midday interval of  $2\frac{1}{2}$  hours, and every officer must ride daily five horses—a thoroughbred and a remount in the school, two others in the *manège*, and the so-called *cheval de carrière* in the open. The school races—for which officers are specially taught race-riding and the training of racehorses—the annual *Carrousel*, and the numerous district *concours hippiques* take the place of the riding to hounds now so much practised by the officers of the German, Austrian, and Italian Cavalry.

RUSSIA. — Up till comparatively recently in the Russian Cavalry the horse was looked upon solely as a means of conveyance, and when an officer possessed a horse of his own he generally drove it in preference to getting on its back. Under the present I.G. (the Grand Duke Nicholas), a considerable change has lately taken place. Cavalry officers are now obliged to provide their own horses for field service, in consideration of which they receive good allowances. Officers' rides are now

obligatory in all Cavalry regiments, while near Wilna a large piece of ground has been rented where officers can train themselves in steeplechasing, riding to hounds, and in long-distance riding—all formerly quite unknown in Russia. The complete reorganisation of the Cavalry School in St. Petersburg has also been taken in hand; this had been started in 1886 in order there to establish a model school of Cavalry instruction, but for some years the school did not develop on the lines expected. To-day, however, things are very different, though it must be admitted that a single school cannot possibly fulfil all the requirements of the Russian Cavalry. There are five classes in the school—viz. officers, rough-riders, the Cossack detachment, the instructional squadron, and the farriers. At the head of the school is a general officer, who is responsible only to the I.G. The Commandant has a special and numerous staff of instructors, among whom is Mr. James Fillis, in his day the best of riding-masters. The officers' class is composed of forty subalterns of the Guard and Line Cavalry, twenty-four officers of Cossack corps, a few of Horse Artillery, and a certain number of officers of Cavalry quartered in Finland, the Baltic Provinces, and Daghestan. Selections are made from among those who volunteer to attend. The course begins in October and lasts for one year and eleven months. Riding is taught in all its branches, also gymnastics, fencing, riding to hounds, swimming with horses, and cavalry pioneering. The work of the school is supervised by a committee appointed by the War Minister. All kinds of horses are represented at the school, and nearly 600 are maintained there in all.

## ***BIG GAME IN SOUTH AFRICA***

By MAJOR STEVENSON HAMILTON, *Inniskilling Dragoons.*

Major Stevenson Hamilton is the ranger of the great game preserves of the Eastern Transvaal, and in this article he describes the steps taken to protect the game from destruction.

PROTECTION of big game in Africa is a product of the last few years, a practical expression of the increasing scientific knowledge of our time, a protest of civilisation against the ruthless and wanton destruction of some of Nature's fairest works. Thanks to the evolution of this sentiment the next generation of sportsmen and of naturalists will yet perhaps have the opportunity of viewing this unequalled fauna in its wild state, and of experiencing the glorious free life of the traveller and hunter far from the madding crowd.

For many years, and all over the world, but especially in Africa, the indigenous animals had been fast disappearing in an ever-increasing ratio, as firearms improved, and as those who wielded them increased in numbers and in enterprise. It is no exaggeration to say that it would have taken but a very few years to reduce the greater part of the continent to the forlorn state, as regards animal life, of the plateau country of South Africa at the present moment, where frequently mile after mile of silent, desolate, and depressing solitude may be traversed, the wide horizon scanned in vain for any sign of life or movement ; this, too, in the very country where, little more than half a century ago, Gordon Cumming and others spoke of the herds of game as being so immense, that in their opinions no amount of shooting could ever have any noticeable effect upon their numbers.

And now consider the result of one short century of promiscuous shooting—indeed, it may fairly be said that the



principal change has covered much less than half that period, to wit, the period since the introduction of the breech-loading rifle and of the custom of trading firearms to the indigenous races. Several of the more local species of game, such as the quagga, have utterly disappeared from the earth. The elephant, which like a tree is soon laid low, but takes a long time to grow, has until quite recently been in the very greatest danger of extermination. The eland, an animal with great possibilities if domesticated, has disappeared as if it had never been, from districts where it once roamed in thousands. The white rhinoceros, the most inoffensive of great mammals, is nearly extinct; and, indeed, there is not one single well-known species which has not been obliterated from one or other of its haunts.

In the recent movement for the curbing of game destruction in Africa, Great Britain has taken the lead, but all the Powers owning territory in that continent have lent their support to the movement. In May 1900 was signed in London a convention between representatives of the following high contracting Powers:—Great Britain, Germany, France, Portugal, Italy, Spain, and the Congo Free State, which provided generally for the ‘preservation from indiscriminate slaughter throughout their possessions in Africa of the various forms existing in a wild state, which are either useful to man or harmless.’

Unfortunately, in a country such as savage Africa, it is one thing to draw up laws and make comprehensive regulations, and quite another to enforce them. In some places there is no adequate control, in others the local authorities may be indifferent or even venal. It is rarely practicable to efficiently supervise the natives, who, if they belong to the hunting tribes, and have acquired possession of the weapons of the white man, do infinite damage. It goes without saying that a matter the carrying out of which would have been simple not so very long ago, is now full of difficulty; the balance of Nature, once upset, is difficult to restore. However, without doubt, we are already some way upon the right road. Nearly every British colony and

possession in Africa now has its game sanctuary, and, so far, at all events, as the globe-trotting sportsman is concerned, game laws are usually very strictly enforced ; whether this individual, who, as a rule, only seeks a few trophies of the chase, and possibly a little excitement, does the most damage is another question. He certainly pays the most money, and, so long as he does so, deserves encouragement as forming one of the assets of game preservation.

The Cavalry officer, who during the late war may have spent some two or three years of his life marching up and down the country, east and west, north and south, probably imagined at the end of that time that he knew his Transvaal. Nothing could be more fallacious ; the country, that bare, open, wind-swept plateau which became so familiar to many a British soldier, in reality amounts to just 12 per cent. of the whole area ; some 30 per cent. is made up of mountains and bush, which, though the theatre of not infrequent passages of arms, was no great favourite with either side ; while the remainder, consisting of 52,000 square miles of densely forested, low lying, and malarious land, seldom echoed to the clamour of contending combatants.

Upon peace being happily concluded, it was determined by Government to make an effort to preserve what remained of the fauna, and some 14,000 square miles of the low country was proclaimed a reserve for game. The best part of four years having now elapsed, it is possible to glance back and take stock of progress. No shooting has been allowed, and it is roughly calculated that while the game within the reserve has doubled itself, many animals have arrived from adjoining Portuguese territory in search of a quiet life, and so greatly added to the numbers.

To anyone at all fond of sport, and generally brought up to regard any wild animal in the light of an animated target to be shot down at sight, it is at first extremely tantalising to find himself at the conclusion of a long campaign, in the midst of a big game country, and to feel that the position held precludes

advantage being taken of the opportunities offered. The rifle seems to become endowed with life and to reach the shoulder of its own volition. The attendant natives gasp with astonishment that it does not go off. 'Mawe! but this white man is surely a chief amongst fools.'

However, in an incredibly short time a revulsion of feeling takes place in the mind of the said white man; it is no longer an effort to refrain from shooting; on the contrary, on those occasions when absolute necessity demands that a victim shall be found, the deed is done with a positive feeling of repugnance; while it is difficult to conceive how one can ever have committed so atrocious an enormity as to kill an animal for sport. In point of fact game preservation does grow upon a man in a most subtle manner. To see wild animals gradually losing their fear of the human biped, to note the increase in the various herds from year to year, to watch their ways, and their life history has a charm which must be experienced to be understood.

Who that has not made trial of it can realise the joy of a ride in the cool, fresh morning, through the virgin forest, every leaf and grass blade sparkling like a separate diamond with its drop of dew, and gilded by the joyous rays of the early sun. With a crash a bushbuck ram dashes from a thicket almost under the horse's nose and seeks safety without a backward glance. Anon, a herd of impala give notice of their presence by grunts of alarm, and their graceful forms can be discerned through the dense foliage as they bound away for a few yards, and then turn to stare inquisitively at the intruder, finally returning to their occupation of browsing upon the young wait-a-bit shoots. Next lumbers across the front an old blue wildebeeste bull, turning round with whisk of tail and toss of head for a prolonged gaze. He is an honorary member of the troop of impala just seen; turned out of his own family by a stronger rival, he has attached himself to them for safety and companionship. It is necessary to keep on the alert; not the least of the charms of a forest patrol is the element of uncertainty. Morning after

morning nothing exciting may happen, and the rifle barrel requires no cleaning on return to camp, but when least expected the skulking hyena may cross the path, or a pack of wild dogs lying gorged in the shade may spring up uttering their hoarse growls of alarm, or a family of lions may be surprised taking their siesta under some little bushes which one would not have given credit to for concealing even a duyker. Least often seen of all the larger carnivora is the leopard, which, like the numerous smaller bush cats, is solitary and strictly nocturnal in its habits. The cheetah, like the lion, is not infrequently encountered in family parties.

The writer on one occasion camped rather late in some thickish bush. The 'outfit' consisted of three horses, two baggage mules, and a couple of natives. Owing to the lateness of the hour, and the fact that there were only two boys, a thorn fence was not made, but several fires were lighted round the camp, which it was anticipated would afford sufficient protection. The animals were then picketed down, military fashion, to a ground line, the mules together at one end, at which slept the two natives at a small fire, the writer putting his blanket by a similar one at the other end, close to the flanking horse—a stallion. About 9.30 P.M. one of the natives, before finally composing himself to sleep, put some more wood on his fire, and as the latter blazed up he saw standing facing him and some five yards away a large male lion. Simultaneously there was a tremendous commotion amongst the animals, the mules pulling up their end of the ground line, and carrying the horses with them tied themselves into a knot round the stallion, who stood fast throughout. When the writer emerged from among the tangle of legs and ground line, the kaffirs were hurling fire sticks and shouting at the top of their voices, but nothing betrayed the presence of the lions. Fires were made up, the horses and mules more or less quieted and disentangled, and vigil was kept until the moon rose, about 1 A.M., but no further disturbance took place, the few shots occasionally fired probably

having scared away the marauders. In the morning the tracks of two lions were discovered ; apparently just as the first one was detected, another had crept up on the other side to within a few yards of the horses, and it was clearly shown by the footmarks how this one, on the alarm being given, had 'propped,' and, turning sharp round, made off. It was a narrow escape for one or more of the horses or mules, and since that date the writer has never allowed animals to be fastened up in camp otherwise than to a ground line. Whether for horses, mules, or donkeys, nothing can approach it for general safety. On this occasion, the animals were mixed up so inextricably as to be absolutely prevented from stampeding ; and on many occasions since, the futility of other methods have been clearly demonstrated. On a larger scale and under other circumstances the same rule would seem to apply, but however that may be, it is not a cheering sight, when camped in the bush with lions roaring in the vicinity, to see the stable favourite disappear into the outer darkness in full career with an iron peg or half a tree swinging at the end of the headrope.

Though the general movement for the preservation of the game has put an end to the old irresponsible method of travelling and shooting—doubtless to the adventurous spirit by far the most delightful way of all—still there will now remain, it is to be hoped for a very long time, most excellent sport to be had in many parts of Africa ; sport to be obtained under conditions of civilisation, impossible in the old days. The camera will doubtless come more and more into use among genuine sportsmen. When the desired trophies have been successfully obtained, no man with a claim to the title can take any pleasure in killing for the mere sake of a bag, and it is just as exciting (and takes far more skill) to make a successful camera stalk as it is to crawl up rifle in hand, while the result is surely just as satisfactory, and considerably more enduring. As time goes on we become more appreciative of what is due to the harmless animals who share the earth with us.

## *FOXHUNTING AND SOLDIERING*

By COLONEL F. V. WING, C.B., R.F.A.

SOME quarter of a century ago, when many officers now serving joined the service, the dominant idea in many a soldier's ambition was to hunt six days a week.

Probably the same idea is now fondly cuddled in the bosom of lots of sporting subalterns, but with more diffidence and less publicity than was the case among the older generation.

The reason for this repression, so to speak, of the natural instinct of getting the utmost possible joy out of life, is the conscientious feeling that life's pathway more often leads us now to the cross-roads where stands the finger-post pointing in two directions, one of which is marked 'Pleasure,' the other 'Duty.'

A painful decision may then have to be made as to whether a certain day is to be devoted to the sport of kings, with perhaps an hour's hurried soldiering thrown in before starting for the meet, or else a blank refusal of the charms of the goddess Minerva, in order to espouse more thoroughly the worship of Mars.

To any officer who has to make this momentous decision I unhesitatingly appeal to take the latter course, and I feel assured that the satisfaction of following the path of duty will ultimately recompense him many times over for the minor loss of a day's pleasure.

I make this assertion truly from no non-appreciation of the joys of foxhunting, for who could own such a negative faculty after many years spent in soldiering at home, and with the natural instinct of a country-bred Briton? What memories crowd one on the other as thought travels back over a span

of years to the fair grass countries of the midlands, the rolling hills of Hampshire, the flat ploughs of Essex, the rough pastures of Northumberland and Durham, the woody glades of the New Forest, the heathery moors of Devon and Somerset, the banks and ditches of Kildare, and the wide ditches of Meath, and last but not least to the rough but lovely lowlands of Cumberland, where the wolf-like foxes come down from the hills and give many a rattling hunt, with a line as straight as an arrow, back to their homes on some grouse-inhabited fell, passing near perhaps the last resting-place of old John Peel, who, lying in his peaceful grave at Caldbeck, is still regarded by the country folk as the ideal sportsman of the last century, and whose name is kept green by being fathered to the rollicking polka that tradition ordains as the finale of every dance that is held in the county.

But halt for a moment these memories, and let me hark back to the line of our hunted fox, which is metaphorically the relation of foxhunting to soldiering.

Well, once and for all, I maintain that the man who, when his proper instincts are developed and he has had time to settle into the stride of life, lives only to hunt six days a week, is a slave-driver to himself and a waster to the community.

The temporary pleasure I will not deny, but if pleasure is to be the ambition of life, this only places him on a footing with other devotees of self-indulgence who, while their powers of enjoyment remain, probably think their own particular pleasure is the greatest in the world.

There is, however, another aspect of foxhunting, which is, that when taken in moderation and with a care not to be enslaved by its alluring bonds, it is the most manly sport, the best recreation for mind and body, and one of the best training-grounds for a soldier's life that can be found.

The first two of my assertions are not worth discussing: we may take them as carried *nem. con.*; but I would beg for a few words in respect to the last assertion for the benefit of those who are not fully cognisant of its truth.

Now what does foxhunting teach a man?

In the first place it teaches him horsemanship and horsemastership.

As regards the first of these, there can be no doubt that a man who can ride to hounds can ride a horse at any time to the best advantage from a military point of view.

As regards horsemastership, I do not refer to the wealthy man who has unlimited horses at his disposal, but rather to the average soldier who wants to get the best he can out of three or four horses. To do this in an open season he has to think a bit, not only with reference to when he can pull his horse out, but on many a long ride home he will have to think how to ease his horse by walking, dismounting, or gruelling; and the experience thus acquired must stand him in good stead when, as every soldier hopes, he may be employed some day on the hard marching and trekking that active service entails.

In the last year of the South African War, how often did the days resemble a glorified foxhunt.

A long night march to start with (this is rather ultra fox-hunting except in the earliest days of cubbing), as dawn broke some signs of departing Boers, the scent perhaps taking the form of remains of an outspan or information from local natives, then a dragging hunt after wheel tracks and more native information, till from the top of some prominent kopje a pair of Zeiss glasses gives a glimpse of a line of wagons trekking ten miles distant over a skyline hill or disappearing into a distant valley.

Then tally-ho, and away, and the jaded horses have to go best pace over miles and miles of undulating veldt; and it is well if the leaders are well versed in the horsemastership and paces of the hunting field and can nurse their horses accordingly.

And then from scent to view as the Boer convoy comes into sight a mile or two away with the wagon teams being urged into an animated trot, while some merry Mauser bullets come whizzing back past us from the escorting Boers, some of whom have dismounted and are giving us their usual welcome.

Now horsemastership has done its work, and horsemanship comes into play, for our men spread out and go full gallop with



a yell and a cheer as they ride from 'view to a death in the morning.'

The death will be probably a stern reality to one or two of them who may happen to be in the line of a Boer bullet, but by the time we are within half a mile of the wagons, the sniping Boers will be at full gallop away from us with but little chance of being ridden down, while those with the wagons, who have no horses, will have halted the teams, and by the time we reach them will be in a suppliant attitude of 'hands up,' either in the wagons or on the ground alongside.

'Who-oo!' the hunt is over and the prey is ours—perhaps a dozen prisoners with as many Mausers, some wagons, and a few useful teams of oxen.

We have expended perhaps some lives, a good number of horses, but at the same time destroyed the supply depôt of some sniping commando, and diminished the resisting power of our persistent enemies.

Then a halt and a rest, and again our horsemastership comes into play to get our tired horses back to our convoy, probably many miles distant, when the silence of the veldt was too often broken by the report of a rifle which ended the life of some exhausted horse, which the stern rules of war render necessary to shoot rather than leave it behind to recover and be used, as it most probably would, by the first Boer who came after us hunting the hunter.

But there is a greater and wider lesson that foxhunting teaches, and that is an 'eye to country.' The value of this and the necessity for this cannot be properly understood except by those who make a study of the duties of commanders of mounted troops especially, and of any bodies of troops generally.

On the possession of the talent for an eye to country will depend the efficiency with which a man will lead his troops, especially at a rapid pace and in a strange country, unseen by the enemy till he can deploy them for the attack.

On it will depend his capability to deliver the attack, whether

by shock action or rifle fire. And to the artilleryman perhaps this faculty is more important than to other branches, as he has to strive to lead his guns unseen, to come into action whence his fire can be directed at perhaps different objectives without masking the advance of his own side, and with various other considerations thrown in, such as the formation of the ground in front and rear of his position, its visibility from distant hills, and the possibility of surmounting such obstacles as may be met with in approaching it.

To gain these ends, what better training can a man have than he who is accustomed to follow the wake of hounds, who, as he jumps into one field, throws his eye on the boundary fence at the other side, and then and there determines what point to ride for and jump; and when he sees the pack streaming across a valley with perhaps several fields start, has to decide in a flash of a thought how best to ride to make up leeway in order to be in the hunt?

The man with such a training has a fifty per cent. start in soldiering capabilities on the man who has not.

Yet again there is another advantage possessed by the fox-hunter, which is the natural physical activity which his sport engenders.

To the ordinary young man this is not so important as to the man of middle age.

Activity is the natural possession of the former, but to the latter, and especially to those who hold the higher commands of the army, physical activity is a very important but not universal possession.

The man, however, who loves foxhunting and is accustomed to join in it whenever opportunity offers, will, so to speak, never lose the activity of youth, but out of pure love for the sport will be careful to keep his body active, even when the actual participation in his hobby is not within his reach, so as to be ready to enjoy it as soon as he can, as long as he can throw his leg over a horse.

One other lesson of foxhunting crosses my mind which has an important influence on a soldier's education ; this is, that the freemasonry of the hunting field teaches every man his own level and a consequent insight into human nature, which is invaluable to him whose duty it is to direct the movements, control the actions, and risk the lives of numbers of his fellow creatures.

Probably few besides hunting men will fully realise this statement, but let others remember that in the field of sport every man can take his own line and be judged accordingly, whether he be peer or pauper, and that the former on his 500-guinea hunter may not be acknowledged a better sportsman than the latter on his £20 screw.

During eighteen years of home soldiering, I have never been quartered at a place where hunting of some sort, either foxhounds, harriers or drag, was not obtainable within riding distance, so the soldier who loves the sport should always be able to manage two or three days a week, which, however much he may thirst for more, is ample for his own instruction in the points previously mentioned, and can generally be well spared during the non-training period of winter from his military work when not on leave.

In mentioning draghounds, I do not wish to infer that they are of equal merit with foxhunting for military educational purposes.

Much less eye for country is required, and those weary long rides home on a tired horse are not in the programme ; but it teaches the novice to shove along without delay, and the slow-jumping horse to jump quick, and as it usually occupies an afternoon, instead of the whole day, is of advantage to the soldier at duty, besides the certainty of no blank days.

These are the days of progress and study, and to no profession is the necessity for these more important than the military one, but the practical and physical advantages of a certain amount of foxhunting to an officer's education is still as apparent as ever.

## CORRESPONDENCE

### HORSE ARTILLERY AND CAVALRY

SIR,—In the second number of the CAVALRY JOURNAL, Colonel Wing has, in writing of Cavalry and Horse Artillery, called attention to the immensely increased fire power of the latter arm since the issue of the new quick-firing gun, and has rightly added a word of warning about the accompanying drawback of a much larger train of ammunition wagons, far more vital to the guns than formerly, which will certainly have a hampering effect on the movements of Cavalry masses, and constitute the price which Cavalry leaders must pay for the support of Artillery in the actual fighting. -

Colonel Wing also lays down the general principles of co-operation between the Cavalry commander and his Artillery officer.

But in order to get the full value of co-operation it must be carried out much more in detail, and the habit of 'thinking imperially,' so to speak, in military matters must be cultivated from the beginning of an officer's training.

The practice recently introduced of attaching junior officers for duty in exchange to the other arms is a step in the right direction for this purpose if the period during which the officer is attached is properly made use of.

It is not really necessary that officers should know every detail of interior economy of the other arms, but they should learn as subalterns, and keep up-to-date when learnt, everything connected with their fighting efficiency, *e.g.* for how many minutes a battery can keep up rapid fire, how many men

a squadron can supply for dismounted work, what obstacles will stop guns or formed bodies of Cavalry. And having this knowledge the habit must be cultivated of using it on every possible occasion.

It is not intended by this paper to endorse the idea of certain recent army reformers that the splendid traditions forming the basis of *esprit de corps* of the several arms should be ignored, and that officers should be interchangeable Jacks-of-all-trades, but the tactics of the day do demand a certain amount of more catholic feeling than has hitherto existed, and the principles and practice of combined training require to be carried much further down the scale of the military hierarchy.

This co-operation in detail of thought and action cannot be taught at combined manœuvres. The instruction and the practice of it must begin on the squadron and battery parades, and there is no reason why it should not add reality and interest to many of these.

On active service all operations even on the smallest scale are matters of combined tactics, and in view of this fact a certain number of parades should be carried out by squadron and battery commanders under the idea that some unit of the other arm is present.

One of the features of Cavalry shock tactics is that while all preliminary reconnaissance must be much more extended than in the case of Infantry fighting, it must also be much more rapid and will have reference more to terrain and numbers than to positions. Now knowledge of the ground in front is of the utmost value to the Horse Artillery commander, who can rarely afford either to reconnoitre himself or spare an officer for the purpose.

It should be a matter of habit for Cavalry officers employed on reconnaissance or with the contact squadrons to think of the guns—to add to the reports they send in, when possible, information that will be of use to the Artillery commander.

Shock tactics must no doubt be confined to fairly open

country, but even on such ideal ground as Salisbury Plain there are always obstacles such as very steep ascents or descents, railway embankments or cuttings, which will delay the movements of guns or even of formed bodies; and foreknowledge of these will often give the Artillery a few more precious moments for fire effect when the actual combat takes place.

Another aspect of co-operation in detail between the arms is that officers of junior ranks should be encouraged to suggest the assistance of the other arms when working far to the front, and should be prepared to make use of the assistance when sent. For example, a contact squadron may find itself checked by a party of the enemy holding a farmhouse or other building from which he cannot be dislodged by rifle fire. The assistance of guns should therefore be asked for, and before they arrive 'co-operation in detail' may be shown by the Cavalry selecting the best position for them, improvising shelter, having the range ready, &c.

The knowledge necessary for these purposes is the kind of knowledge of the other arms that is really required by junior officers rather than the book knowledge so often asked for in examination papers.

It is impossible to read the detailed history of the South African War without coming across numerous instances of minor engagements in which such a habit of thought and action would have saved time and valuable lives; and not much progress in such training has been made since the War.

Of course such co-operation must be in the fullest degree mutual, and entails quite as much on the Artillery as on the Cavalry; and even more practice in it is required by the officers of the former arm. The junior officers of Horse Artillery in particular receive very little instruction in what is called 'fire tactics.' This expression is probably quite unfamiliar to Infantry and Cavalry officers. It means practically the selection of the target which the tactics of the moment render most important, and can only be very indifferently illustrated at Artillery practice

camps, where Cavalry targets are not easy to represent, and where moreover, on account of the limited amount of ammunition available, the greater part of the firing is naturally conducted by the senior battery officers.

There is therefore a tendency on the part of junior officers to look for and fire at the enemy's guns—a fatal error in shock tactics.

These tactics, less than any other, have been illustrated in recent wars, and their principles consequently to a certain extent must be a matter of speculation, but as regards the employment of Horse Artillery and Cavalry, the necessity for co-operation, instant and instinctive, stands out prominently. If the day of great Cavalry battles, of charging brigades and divisions using the *armes blanches* are not over, it would be difficult to exaggerate the effect on them of well-handled quick-firing guns trained to make the fullest use of the few moments available before the collision occurs.

It is easy to see that such a fleeting opportunity may be entirely lost if, when the Cavalry leader decides to attack, and despatches his guns on their mission, the teams 'stretching like greyhounds along the plain' are suddenly checked by some obstacles, the existence of which was perfectly well known an hour before to half a dozen patrols.\*

In conclusion the writer suggests the question whether the Cavalry brigade, now a mixed unit of all arms, should not cease to be regarded as a manœuvre unit of one arm only, and the command of it be considered open to the senior officers of its other constituent units.

The position of 'second fiddle,' with no prospect of rising to conductor, is not conducive to the best spirit of co-operation.

E. LAMBART, *Colonel*.

\* The establishment of a battery is far too small to allow of extended reconnaissance being carried out by its own personnel, and the ground scouting is necessarily limited, *vide* F.A.T., to the immediate vicinity of the guns.

## 'SQUADRON CUP FINALS'

SIR,—I read with considerable interest, in your last issue, an article entitled 'The Squadron Cup Finals.' Under the guise of an allegory, it held up a high ideal: efficiency for the Cavalry arm, and a general knowledge of, and interest in, its national army by the people—two highly desirable objects.

But I must dissent from the *form* of the efficiency held up to the Cavalry. It seemed to me, when reading the article referred to, that Cavalry efficiency was to be summed up solely in mere perfection of Drill.

Now mere perfection in Drill is still a very long way from efficiency in war. I would be the last to deny the value of accuracy in Drill, though continental opinion is rapidly coming to see that even this perfection in Drill applies chiefly to *the squadron*, and *not* to brigades or divisions. These latter would employ their squadrons in the attack in separate, but closely supporting, echelons of probably not more than one squadron, the whole working together, however, for the achievement of a great *Tactical Idea*.

It is gradually being recognised that the employment of long lines, of whole brigades or divisions, and even of regiments, is not sound, emanating, as it does, from the childish plan of working out Cavalry Tactics on a blackboard, whereas in real practice the crowding and enormous pressure on the horses in long lines, the difficulties of the ground, and the casualties from fire tend to disorder and destroy the cohesion of long lines. But the *close* echelons of squadrons give the maximum of cohesion, and the disorder in the ranks caused by any of the above ever-present causes only affects the echelon concerned, and does not pass on, increasing *en route*, to the squadrons on the right and left.

Curiously enough, this very idea was expressed by one of our own most distinguished Cavalry officers as far back as 1855—viz.



by Captain Nolan, who fell in the charge of the Light Brigade at Balaclava.

But, to return to the ideal of 'perfection in Drill' apparently expressed in 'The Squadron Cup Finals,' even conceding that the Cavalry fight against Cavalry is the *only* test of Cavalry efficiency (which I, for one, cannot do), the above article seems to overlook the fact that mere perfection in Drill is not sufficient to carry a body of Cavalry successfully through even this.

Perfection in Drill, or what (most erroneously) is sometimes called 'Manceuvre,' is not an *end* in itself.

It is *only* the means to an *end*.

That end is efficiency on the battlefield—*i.e.* efficiency in *Tactics*, coupled with a determined will. And Drill is only necessary in so far as it allows the Commander to apply his conception of *Tactics* rapidly, and with proper cohesion, to the varying circumstances of the battlefield.

This is the object to be aimed at, and which should be the real test—*i.e.* a sound knowledge of, and an ability to apply, the principles of *Tactics* generally, and Cavalry *Tactics* in particular, and to carefully avoid falling into the error of mistaking the means for the end, of mistaking Drill for *Tactics*—an error which seems to me rather encouraged in the article, 'The Squadron Cup Finals,' where the Cavalry test was mere Drill.

Believe me, yours truly,

'EQUES.'

## **RESULT OF PROBLEM NO. 2**

### **‘THE THREE BRIDGES’**

THE response to this problem has in point of numbers been fair, representatives of Royal Horse Artillery, British Cavalry, Indian Cavalry, and Imperial Yeomanry having submitted solutions. There is very little to choose between three of the solutions, which are all very good. The best is adjudged to be that of :

Lieut. the Hon. D. P. Tollemache, 7th Hussars,  
to whom the prize is awarded.

The two next in order of merit are :

Lieut. P. R. Chambers, 10th Lancers, Indian Army.

Lieut. R. H. Johnson, Royal Horse Artillery.

#### *Solution by Lieut. the Hon. D. P. Tollemache, 7th Hussars*

No sooner had the well-groomed Sherlie decided on his line of action, than up comes old ‘Barlesh,’ the Pioneers’ sergeant. ‘Look here, Sergeant,’ says Sherlie, ‘we’ve got to tackle two bridges instead of one. It’s no use blowing in this brick arch, although we have got enough guncotton to do it, but it is only a narrow stream, and the arch would be repaired in no time. So you take five Pioneers and five men and go and tackle the bridge at B, and I’ll take the remainder and go and settle the one at A. The bridges are both the same ; you’ll have to attack the centre girder 3 feet from the far pier. You need only cut the top and bottom flanges, and two and a half slabs will do for

each. Tie them on in the usual way, two and a half slabs on the top of the upper flange, and two and a half slabs underneath the lower flange. This means 5 lbs. guncotton for each girder or 10 lbs. for each bridge. We have not got any instantaneous fuses, so see that you get your safety fuses the same length, join them together, and explode all four charges at once.

‘I will do exactly the same at A, and we will see who can be done first. It ought not to take either of us half an hour.’ With a clink of his heels and a stiff salute, old ‘Barlesh’ turns about.

Twenty-five minutes later two almost simultaneous explosions occurred, and the ends of the central span of each bridge fell with a crash into the roaring torrent below and were swept away, making a complete breach.

As Sherlie rode contentedly away towards Z, with the habitual smile still on his face, he was thinking to himself, ‘Some fellows might have been mugs enough to tackle the one brick arch, but it would have taken more time, more guncotton, and a quarter the time to repair.’

---

The great merit of this solution is the way that the essence of the problem has been seized. The author does not state that Sherlie took any precautions for security, such as a sentry or vedette, which he should have done. He does not say why he cuts his guncotton to arrive at  $2\frac{1}{2}$  lbs. charges; 3 lbs. for each flange would have been better. A little more detail as to the fastening of the charges would have helped, and the ‘fuse business’ is a little vague. Sherlie was lucky in having a ‘Barlesh.’

The main object of the problem was to show that when such a choice offers a metal girder bridge should nearly always be attacked in preference to a masonry one, especially when time and explosive are limited. The damage can be done more quickly, it needs less explosive, and the resulting gap will usually be wider and harder to repair.



THE FIFTH DRAGOON GUARDS ON THE VELDT.  
SOUTH AFRICA, 1906.

TO THE  
LIBRARY

## NOTES

### THE 21ST LANCERS AT OMDURMAN

OUR frontispiece is reproduced from a picture in the officers' mess of the 21st Lancers, by kind permission of the artist, Mr. Allan Stewart, who presented the picture to that Regiment.

The charge took place on September 2, 1898, and the following is a copy of the helio message which led up to it :

‘Gebel Surgam, 2 ix. 98.

‘*To Colonel Martin—21st Lancers.*

‘Annoy them as far as possible on their right flank and cut them off if possible from Omdurman.

‘SIRDAR.’

The execution of this order resulted in the gallant attack against the right reserve of the Dervish Army.

---

### LESSONS OF THE WAR

The following remarks on Cavalry by Captain Neznamov, Staff Adjutant of the Russian 35th Infantry Division, are translated from the *Russki Invalid* :

The rôle of Cavalry in modern warfare has not decreased in importance.

Owing to the complex conditions of the modern battle, the ‘weapon of the gods’ now requires greater skill for its correct employment than heretofore.

The duration of modern fights, and the exhaustion of nerve power resulting therefrom, give a wide scope for offensive action on the part of Cavalry.

If, as happened on March 9, a single cry of 'Japanese Cavalry!' was able to produce such effective confusion amongst the troops on the railway, it only shows that in this case the actual appearance of horsemen might have had enormous results.

At that moment the retreating forces (it is true they were mostly composed of baggage trains and parks) instinctively felt what constituted their greatest danger.

The mounted attack by the Siberians at Wa-fan-gou, the attack of a Japanese battery by Kosorotov's sotnia of Cossacks (when the gunners had actually removed their breech-blocks and were preparing to abandon their guns), the attack of the Japanese Cavalry on March 5 at Yun-ch'ên-pu, are incidents which show that the Cavalry attack is still possible. The increased difficulty of the actual execution of the attack implies that it is necessary to pay greater attention to the correct timing of it in battle, and to preparations to ensure the element of surprise in the case of raids.

If Cavalry can, when called on, cover as much as 60 *versts* (40 miles) in a day, provided it is not hampered with baggage and transport—in a word, if it has no tail, such as straggles behind a modern Army, with its countless supplies—then there will always be found good work for it to do.\* For if Cavalry can cover the distances mentioned above, no Infantry can stop it, and the hostile Cavalry is no more to be feared than formerly.

Magazine rifles, machine guns, and modern Artillery allow mounted troops to show greater boldness now than formerly, since they have increased the offensive powers of Cavalry, and by their action (intensity of fire, and the possibility of achieving quick results) they suit the spirit of that arm. All that is necessary is to employ Cavalry with judgment.†

\* Even the badly armed and poorly organised bands of Hun-hu-tzi (Chunchuses) caused us considerable trouble in our rear, and drew away our mounted troops. What could not real Cavalry have done?

† With a daring commander at their head, our mounted scouts, profiting by the rapidity of movement on horseback, more than once checked the threatening turning movements of the Japanese by successfully capturing small knolls and

Nowadays the duty of reconnaissance has become much more difficult ; but the difficulty involved lies with the officer who sends out the reconnaissance rather than with the troops which carry it out.

A patrol has a well-defined task to perform, and if this is explained clearly, distinctly, and intelligently, the result is good ; on the other hand, if the task is only explained in general terms, then the result is bad.

As it was before, so it is now. The result of reconnaissances (as a whole) varies according to the ability of whoever organises them. Fire has little effect on the work of reconnoitring parties.

Field-glasses (modern) greatly lighten the work of a scout.

The advantages accruing from the keener military insight of an officer-scout, as well as from superior intelligence on the part of the men, require no proof—they are self-evident.

---

#### THE OFFICERS' RIDING SCHOOL AT PADERBORN

The *Hamburger Nachrichten* of August 15 last states that this school will be opened on October 1, 1906. The object and scope of the school are to develop the personal training of newly appointed Cavalry officers to the fullest possible extent as regards its practical application for regimental service. The courses begin on October 1, and terminate on the last day of June of the following year. The first to be sent are those Cavalry lieutenants who have been under orders to go there since October 1 of the previous year. Should there not be a sufficient number of the latter—which is improbable, as there has been hitherto only one riding school for the whole of the Prussian and Württemberg Cavalry (in all 81 regiments)—cornets will then be sent who have passed their examinations as officers. For the first course a total of only four officers from the eight regiments of the Guards Corps, a total of only six officers from the six regiments of the 1st and 17th Army

outflanking these turning movements. Experience shows that ten bold men, armed with modern rifles, sometimes held in check a half or a whole company.



Corps, and only two officers from each of the remaining fifteen Army Corps, or altogether forty lieutenants, will be sent to Paderborn. Each officer has to bring his own horse and his charger, as well as a groom, who will also act as his servant. The staff of the officer's riding school consists of a staff officer, with the rank of major on the staff, as director, two riding masters and one first lieutenant as an instructor in riding, one surgeon-major, one paymaster, one sergeant, ten non-commissioned officers, and one hospital corporal. There will in addition be a trumpeter, who will be changed quarterly, forty-four men, and fifty-two chargers. Those officers ordered there as riding instructors can serve with other branches of the service in the interval between two courses.

---

#### THE FRENCH MANŒUVRES

The military correspondent of the *Times*, in an article on the above, writes that he was much struck, and so were others, with the continued improvement in the quality of French horseflesh and with the excellent condition of the horses in the squadrons. It is a sorrowful thing to confess, but it is unfortunately true, that, with the exception of the draft animals, which remain inferior to ours, the French horses are better than ours and are kept in better condition. This result is not due to any greater advantages possessed by the French, whether in breeds of horses which formed the basis of the existing remount or in opportunities for raising the young stock, but to the pains taken to encourage breeders, to the provision of the best horses that can be found, and to the excellent horsemastership in the regiments. A general of Cavalry informed the writer that he had just purchased a young horse for 2,500*f.* which had won for its breeder prizes of 4,000*f.*, and thus represented a money value to the original owner of £260. Infantry officers are mounted upon the small but hardy breeds from the South-West and North Africa, the prices paid amounting to about £38 ; but the *officier breveté*, who may at

any moment have to take up a staff appointment, is given a better stamp of horse, which may cost over £50. The officer is charged nothing for the horse, and, if the animal dies, no compensation is claimed by the State unless neglect can be proved.

---

#### INTERNATIONAL HORSE SHOW

An international horse show will be held at The Hague towards the end of June or at the beginning of July of next year. Lieut.-Colonel Punt, the President of the Committee, wishes it to be known that there will be on every day of the week one or two competitions in which British officers can take part, and that any officers attending the meeting will be cordially welcomed by the Committee.

---

#### CAVALRY AND MODERN Q.F. SHIELDED BATTERIES

The following notes on a recent visit to Okehampton have been sent to us by Major H. J. Williams, King's Dragoon Guards :

‘ Without going far into technical details, the latest developments of modern artillery may be said to tend in three directions :

- ‘ 1. Increased rapidity of fire.
- ‘ 2. Increased facility for indirect laying.
- ‘ 3. Increased protection to guns, limbers, and detachments.

‘ In our new field and horse guns these developments are brought out by the following innovations :

‘ 1. *Rapidity of Fire*.—The recoil buffer, which obviates the necessity of laying the gun after each shot. The corrector, which automatically indicates the length of fuse to the gun detachment. The probable issue, at an early date, of an automatic fuse setter.

‘ 2. *Facility for Indirect Laying*.—The goniometric sight and adjustable clinometer on the gun, the plotter and the director,

instruments which do away in a large measure with pencil and pocket-book calculations.

‘ 3. *Protection*.—The steel shields on gun and limber.

‘ Except when Cavalry are halted or within very decisive range, the first of these factors affects it adversely less than other arms, as rate of fire on a moving target must always depend on the rate at which fuses and laying can be altered. As regards the second, indirect laying on a moving target is impossible unless the exact line and rate of approach can be accurately foretold. The third factor, protection, is an important one, as it renders the gun and detachments when in action almost invulnerable from frontal shrapnel fire (the probability of direct hits being too remote for consideration); this will mean that opposing batteries, to silence each other, will have to take risks by getting into enfilading positions well out on the flanks, where they will not have the protection of the main Infantry attack. It will also probably mean that, whilst guns and detachments remain unscattered, teams and wagons (more numerous than formerly on account of increased expenditure of ammunition) will either suffer or have to be removed to a greater distance than hitherto. Herein lie chances for Cavalry in securing the flank positions for its own guns and in threatening or cutting off the enemy's batteries on the remote flanks, more especially if their mobility is impaired by casualties to teams or their distance from the guns.

‘ The chances of a successful Cavalry attack on guns appear to be greatest in the case where the position of an enemy's battery, using indirect laying from the reverse slope of a ridge, is known to the Cavalry commander. In this case the Cavalry will have little or nothing to fear from the battery itself till the crest of the ridge is passed, and even then, if the battery commander has not accurately divined the portion of the crest over which the Cavalry will appear, it will be too late for him to alter the direction of his guns. It appears from this that, when batteries are exposed to Cavalry attacks, large escorts will be necessary when indirect laying is resorted to; these escorts must, whenever

practicable, be furnished by mounted troops, and their duties will be best performed by occupying positions at considerable distances from their batteries, in front, on exposed flanks, and probably in rear, retaining a reserve close to the battery to act mounted in case of emergency or available to reinforce the covering positions. The case of an attack by Cavalry on a battery employing direct fire is very different, as assuming the last 700 yards of the attack to be across the open, a well-handled Q.F. battery could probably get seventy or eighty rounds into them. Smaller escorts to guns will therefore be required under these conditions, and their duties will be more in the nature of observation, to give early information of a hostile advance, and to guard against flanking parties of the enemy bringing enfilading rifle fire to bear on the guns.

‘The one fact, however, which appears to stand out above all others is that improvements in modern artillery must tend to the dispersion of batteries, even as the improvement in small arms has led to open Infantry formations. Mounted troops for escort or offensive purposes are the natural outcome of this dispersion.’

#### LONG DISTANCE MARCHES

The 7th Dragoon Guards, 424 horses strong, under Colonel C. W. Thompson, D.S.O., made a forced march at the recent manœuvres of 67 miles in a total of  $26\frac{1}{2}$  hours, of which 13 were marching. The rate of march was 8 to 4 miles an hour.

	Hours
Halts were: four times for watering and feeding	$8\frac{1}{2}$
Halt at Tenterden . . . . .	$9\frac{1}{2}$
Halt for 5 minutes every hour . . . . .	1
	<hr/>
	14

Men and horses came in in good condition with scarcely any casualties.

Last July four patrols of the Scots Greys went 108 miles in

24 hours, marching rate, including ordinary minor halts,  $7\frac{1}{2}$  miles an hour.

In August a contact squadron of the 11th Hussars marched 76 miles in 27 hours.

---

#### VARIATION IN THE WEIGHT OF ARMY HORSES DURING MANŒUVRES

Colonel Joshua A. Nunn, F.R.C.V.S., C.I.E., D.S.O., F.R.S.E., writes :

‘ Some interesting observations regarding the amount of flesh lost by troop horses during manœuvres have been published by Dr. Bock, a veterinary surgeon in the German Army.

‘ A certain number of horses were weighed before and after the operations, the weight ranging between 431 and 582 kilogrammes.

‘ It was found that even very hard work did not make a great diminution in the weight ; indeed, 16 per cent. of the selected animals increased, the average being 8 kilogrammes.

‘ The lightest-built horses suffered most, but recovered quickest.

‘ Medium animals, weighing 500 kilogrammes, lost on an average 12 kilogrammes, but recovered with twelve days’ rest. Young animals recovered quicker than old ones.

‘ Heavy horses, 510 kilogrammes and over, on an average lost 30 kilogrammes, and recovered more slowly than any of the others.’

---

#### SCOUT OFFICERS

In our last issue we gave a reproduction of an old French print of an English officer scouting in the Peninsula, and we quoted Baron Marbot’s admiring description of the work done by these officers.

A correspondent has since written to direct attention to a similar tribute in ‘ Müffling’s Memoirs ’ (in the Cavalry Club

library) from that celebrated German officer, who acted on Wellington's staff at Waterloo, and who afterwards, in 1822, laid the foundation of the present German general staff.

Muffling states that 'the aides-de-camp of Wellington were all drawn from the best families of England, and, mounted on their own thoroughbred horses, they made it a point of honour to bring in their messages at the rate of four German miles (*i.e.* sixteen English miles) per hour across country.'

With officers trained to note quickly the important points of the enemy and of the ground to be fought over, and capable of bringing in their information at that pace, we should be a formidable foe ; but the point remains to be seen whether it can be done with horses which are *not* thoroughbred.

---

#### AN OLD COIN

Mr. B. E. Sargeant writes in answer to our appeal for information concerning the badge or token engraved in the last issue of the CAVALRY JOURNAL :

'According to Tancred this badge was issued in silver to commemorate the departure of the Queen's Bays from Norwich barracks to join the army under the Duke of York in Flanders, and he states that it was probably struck by the Norwich Loyal Military Association.

'It is, however, also known that this particular design was issued in copper, as a token, by John Rooks, a builder and timber merchant who resided at Calvert Street, and carried on business in Fishgate Street, Norwich. He had the contract for the erection of Norwich barracks (Cavalry), begun in 1791 and finished in 1793, and this explains why he adopted the military design for his token. The total weight of the issue was one ton. From the following descriptions it appears that two dies were used :

(a) Obverse : Norwich barracks, 1793. A view of Norwich barracks.

Reverse : Pro rege et patria. Queen's Bays. A mounted Dragoon.

Edge : Payable by John Rooks, Norwich.

(b) Obverse and reverse the same as *a*. Edge plain.

(c) Obverse : The same as *a*.

Reverse : Similar to *a*, but struck from a different die, the horse's tail being further from the dots.

Edge : Plain.

'Specimens of this particular token frequently appear, even now, on the second-hand stalls in Norwich market-place.'

### THE BALANCE OF THE HORSE

A correspondent suggests that a book which might with advantage have been referred to by the writer of the article on the above subject is 'Seats and Saddles—Bits and Biting,' by Dwyer. We may almost assume that this is a book which every Cavalry officer has read ; if not, let him hasten to do so. The book is in the Cavalry Club library.

### PRACTICAL RIFLE SHOOTING

Under the above heading R.Q.M.S. Middleton Hall, of the South of Ireland Imperial Yeomanry, has published a very useful little book full of practical hints and up-to-date information on rifle shooting. The writer's aim is to assist soldier and civilian alike in taking a more active interest in all the essential details which every rifleman should know if he wishes to make the best use of his weapon.

### MOVES

The following changes in stations have taken place (or are about to take place) since our last issue :

8th Hussars, Aldershot to Colchester.

16th Lancers, Colchester to Aldershot.

- 1st Dragoon Guards, Aldershot to Hounslow.
  - 21st Lancers, Hounslow to Aldershot.
  - 14th Hussars, Shorncliffe to India.
  - 9th Lancers, India to South Africa (Potchefstroom).
  - 20th Hussars, Brighton to Shorncliffe.
- 

### THE ROYAL ENGINEERS

Considerable changes in the organisation of the field units of the Royal Engineers have been approved. The most striking of these changes are doubtless those referring to the telegraph companies, whose importance in modern warfare are now generally recognised. The following is a summary of the changes about to be carried out :—

1. Field Troops.—These have been increased from three to five, including one in South Africa. A modified establishment has been approved whereby half the sappers will be carried in carts in place of, as hitherto, all sappers being mounted.

2. Field Companies.—These companies are to be reduced from seventeen to fifteen, including three in South Africa. There are at present four field companies in the latter country, and it will therefore be necessary to bring home during the trooping season one field company. Two field company units will then disappear, one at home and one in South Africa.

3. Searchlight Companies.—One unit divisible into two sections will be maintained ; a section to comprise two plants, each complete with generator and projector, or four plants in all for the unit.

4. Bridging Companies.—These are abolished in their present form, the work hitherto done by them being turned over to the field companies. The bridging equipment will be organised into bridging trains for peace training and for war. For training with other troops, manœuvres, &c., horses and drivers will have to be found by the Army Service Corps, hired transport, or other sources. Recruiting for pontoniers will cease. Each bridging train will be attached to a field company.



5. Balloon School.—Ten drivers have been added to the existing peace establishment.

6. Telegraph Companies.—At present there are three field telegraph companies. The new establishments provide for one line of communication telegraph company, two air-line, two cable, two wireless, and six divisional telegraph companies. Of the six divisional companies only three units and three cadres will be maintained at home in times of peace.

7. Line of Communication Fortress Company.—The peace establishment approved is two officers and sixty other ranks. This company will in peace form the staff of the military workshops at the School of Military Engineering. On mobilisation it will take the place of the field parks, and it will therefore be no longer necessary to maintain the establishment of the latter in peace, and as a consequence they are to be abolished.

---

#### RECENT PUBLICATIONS

The following books and articles which have recently been published should prove of interest to the mounted branches :

The Army Council have issued a new Mounted Infantry Training Manual, which further emphasises the functions of Mounted Infantry. It begins the first chapter, which is on 'Organisation and Training,' by urging that 'Officers and men serving as Mounted Infantry are Infantry soldiers. The principles of Infantry training will govern their tactical employment. . . .' The instructions regarding horse management in stables and in the field are condensed, and should appeal to trained foot soldiers, whose time is limited, but to whom a sound knowledge of the habits of the horse is essential to enable them to become good horsemasters. Special stress is laid on this important branch of the Mounted Infantryman's training.

'History of the 3rd Regiment Imperial Yeomanry Cavalry, 1900-1902.' By Lieut.-Colonel R. L. Birkin, D.S.O.

'Records of the Dorset Imperial Yeomanry.' By Captain M. F. Gage.

'Cavalry on Service.' Translated from the German of Lieut.-General Von Pelet-Narbonne, by Major D'A. Legard, 17th Lancers.

'Streffleurs Oesterreichische Militarische Zeitschrift.' Vienna, June 1906.—'Twenty-five Years Chief of the General Staff'; 'Battle Formation of large Bodies of Cavalry.' August 1906.—'Reconnoitring Manœuvres of Cavalry.'

'Journal des Sciences Militaires.' Paris, April 1906.—'Q. F. Horse Artillery in the Cavalry Division.'

'Journal of the U.S. Cavalry Association.' Fort Leavenworth, Kansas, July 1906.—'Range-Finding for Infantry and Cavalry'; 'Sabre v. Revolver v. Carbine'; 'Revolvers v. Sabre'; 'A Plea for Pistol-Practice'; 'Regulations for Pack-Trains and Packing, U.S. Army'; 'Pack Transportation.'

'Revue de Cavalerie.' Paris, July 1906.—'Training of Young Horses for the Two Years' Period of Service'; 'Mobile Q. F. Artillery.'

---

#### OBITUARY

Lieut.-General Dunham Massey, C.B., died in Ireland on September 20. He served as an Infantry officer with conspicuous gallantry in the Crimea, where he earned his nickname of 'Redan' at the final assault on that position September 8, 1855. He was dangerously wounded in the thigh while leading the Grenadiers of the 19th Regiment. He fell into the hands of the Russians, who, supposing him to be mortally wounded, did not remove him with their other prisoners. He was recommended in a special despatch by the Commander-in-Chief in the Crimea for his gallantry at the Redan, and for the patience and fortitude with which he endured for nearly six months most severe suffering while lying wounded in camp.

In 1863 he obtained his majority, and devoted his service to the Cavalry arm, being associated with the 4th Dragoon Guards

and 5th (Royal Irish) Lancers. He commanded the latter regiment from 1871 to 1879.

In 1879 Colonel Massey was commanding an Indian Cavalry Brigade which took a prominent part in the Afghan War. For his work at Charasia, the sortie from Sherpore, and the actions round Kabul, Colonel Massey was specially mentioned in despatches.

From 1888 to 1893 he commanded the troops in Ceylon, and during that period he received the reward for distinguished and meritorious services.

In 1886 he became a major-general, and in 1893 a lieutenant-general. In 1894 he was appointed colonel of the 4th Dragoon Guards, and two years later of the 5th Lancers.

---

We regret to have to record the death of Colonel James Baker, younger brother of Sir Samuel Baker. He was Cornet in the Blues and transferred to the 8th Hussars for active service in the Crimean War. He wrote a valuable work, 'Turkey in Europe,' published 1874.

---

The 13th Hussars and many friends learnt with regret of the death of Major Ogilvy, D.S.O., in Morocco, from an attack of enteric fever. He served with this regiment during his active career in the Army, and earned so high a character that after his retirement he was chosen to fill the position of Cavalry Instructor of the forces of the Emperor of Morocco, where he has now died at the post of duty.

O. LUMLEY, *Colonel.*

## *SPORTING NOTES*

### **POLO**

A HIGH standard of Polo has been reached this season ; owing to its increased popularity and the fine weather it has been a record year.

The Subalterns' Cup Tournament, competed for at Ranelagh, was a fitting sequel to the Military Tournament at Hurlingham. The entries, which are now confined to the Aldershot radius of London, comprised the 21st Lancers, Coldstream Guards, Royal Horse Guards, King's Dragoon Guards, 1st and 2nd Life Guards, and 8th Hussars (a bye).

In the first ties the 21st Lancers defeated the Coldstream Guards by twelve goals to two, then the 1st Life Guards beat the King's Dragoon Guards by three goals to two, and the 2nd Life Guards the Royal Horse Guards (the winners last year) by six goals to four.

In the semi-finals, the 21st Lancers were victorious over the 8th Hussars by six to two, and the 1st Life Guards over the 2nd Life Guards by seven to four.

The final between the 1st Life Guards and the 21st Lancers was the most exciting game of the tournament. The 1st Life Guards were represented by the Hon. E. S. Wyndham, Lord Hugh Grosvenor, Mr. R. Hamilton-Stubber, and Mr. L. Hardy (back) ; while the 21st Lancers team was made up of Messrs. C. C. Lister, D. W. Godfree, G. N. Reynolds, and C. H. Delmege (back).

In the first ten minutes Lord Hugh Grosvenor and Mr. Wyndham scored, and Mr. Stubber placed a third goal for the

Guards in the next ten. In the third period Mr. Reynolds scored for the Lancers, so at half-time the Guards led by three to one. In the fourth and fifth ten there was no score, but in the last period Messrs. Delmege and Reynolds each scored, making it three all as the bell rang. After no less than fifteen minutes extra time had been played, Mr. Hardy hit the winning goal, and thus the Guards won this most exciting match. His Majesty the King, who witnessed the final, presented the Cup to the winners.

An interesting match was played at Wembley Park, between Whitehall and the West African Field Force, which the latter won by six goals to three. The teams were, Whitehall: Commander Makins, Mr. G. Smith, Mr. C. H. Montgomery, Commander B. Majendie. West African Field Force: Captain Macdonell, Brig.-General Morland, Colonel Hasler, Colonel Maud.

Country Polo has much benefited by the finish of the Polo season in London, and good tournaments have been witnessed at Stratford-on-Avon, Leamington, Rugby, Cirencester, Eaton Park, Blackmore Vale, Fremington, &c. A capital tournament has also been played recently at Aldershot, in which two staff teams qualified for the final. The teams were: Colonel Kenna's team—Captain Learmouth, Mr. G. M. Darell, Mr. G. V. S. Bowlby, and Colonel P. G. Kenna; 2nd Divisional team—General Bruce-Hamilton, Captain A. L. Law, Sir Hill Child, and Colonel A. I. Godley, Captain H. F. Crichton acting as umpire. General Hamilton gave his team the lead in the first five minutes, but there was no further scoring until late in the last stage, when, after a vigorous attack, Colonel Kenna's team equalised, and directly after hit the winning goal. It was a well-contested game throughout.

The Ranelagh Club, following the lead of Hurlingham, have elected Major C. W. Pirie, late 21st Lancers, official umpire.

A new service club has been started at Netheravon, situated on Salisbury Plain, where the Cavalry School is established.

## REGIMENTAL POLO CLUBS

From time to time various forms of Polo Clubs have been started in regiments, with a view to improve the standard of Polo, and to enable those officers whose funds do not permit the outlay necessary to acquire a suitable stud to join on level terms with those who are more fortunately situated. Experience has shown that as a rule these clubs, after lasting for two or three years, prove a financial failure. The most important point is the composition and capability of the committee; this generally is the weak point unless there happens to be a strong guiding hand of great activity, with a good eye for the requisite article, and tact in allocating the various ponies. For the benefit of any regiments who contemplate starting such a club, we give below the rules of a regimental Polo club, framed by a regiment well known for its conspicuous success in Polo tournaments; this club was started in 1894 with a capital of £500, but owing to the exigencies of the service, was wound up in 1901 under the very worst possible circumstances for £525. With this capital the club was restarted in 1902, and closed again on the regiment being ordered abroad in 1904 with a credit balance of £1,000, the regiment in the meantime having made a great name for itself in the Polo world.

*Rules*

- (1) Name of club.
- (2) Members to pay a monthly subscription of 10s., entitling them to hire a pony for the Polo season on payment of £10, provided that they are in possession of one pony of their own which has been passed by the Committee as fit for Polo.
- (3) The Polo season to commence on March 15, and terminate on September 30.
- (4) If a member takes a pony, he is responsible for its proper keep till the end of the season.
- (5) Ponies are not to be lent to other members without the sanction of the Committee.

(6) Ponies to be allotted to members by the Committee at the commencement of the season, and they will be liable to be changed if the Committee thinks fit.

(7) Ponies to be valued at the commencement and termination of the Polo season. Depreciation through no fault of member to be borne by club, otherwise by the member.

(8) In case of death the member will be responsible for the average price\* of a club pony at the time, except when the Committee think it altogether the member's fault, when he will be responsible for the valued price.

(9) Accidents to ponies not resulting in death, occurring whilst practising or playing Polo, will be inquired into by the Committee, and if they consider the player to be blameless in the matter, the loss will be borne by the club, otherwise the Committee will determine for what amount the player is liable. If the accident occur at any other time or manner, the member responsible for the pony at the time will be liable to make good its loss.

(10) Club ponies to be available for regimental matches and tournaments.

(11) The Committee to consist of three members.

(12) In future there will be an entrance fee of £5.†

(13) The accounts shall be produced at the quarterly mess meetings for the approval of members.

---

The All Ireland Military Cup was played for at Dublin on September 5 and 8. On the former day the 19th Hussars beat the 3rd Dragoon Guards by nine goals to five. The Dragoons team comprised Mr. H. A. Watt, Mr. H. E. Berry, Mr. C. W. Brennand, and Captain T. H. Hayes (back), while the 19th Hussars contingent was formed by Captain H. D. Franks, Captain A. W. Parsons, Mr. T. H. Curtis, and Mr. H. F. Tanner (back). On the latter day the 11th Hussars, who had drawn a bye, played the 19th Hussars, and rode off the winners

\* About £35.

† This was not enforced, as the club was in no need of extra funds.

by seven goals to three, thus carrying off the Cup. Their team consisted of Mr. F. H. Sutton, Major T. T. Pitman, Mr. M. L. Lakin, and Captain C. L. Rome (back).

---

The Hon. Secretary to the Army Polo Committee has written us that the railway companies have again been appealed to by it on the subject of lowering the rates on the conveyance of Polo ponies. He further points out with reference to the remarks on the Inter-Regimental Polo Tournament in our last issue, viz. 'May I express a hope that the military authorities will allow the old arrangement to be revived, when all preliminary ties were played at Hurlingham?' &c., that one of the agreements with Lord Roberts to restarting the tournament in 1903 was that it should be held on such lines as should result in the least possible expense to regiments and individual competitors: if therefore every regiment was to be brought to London the expense would be more than doubled, and that these are only some of the difficulties in carrying out the suggestion. The remarks were penned by the Hurlingham official umpire in his notes on the game. We quite agree with the Army Polo Committee, and consider that the present method is by far the best, most sporting, and economical.

---

The Inter-Regimental Tournament of South Africa, for a Challenge Cup presented by Major-General H. Clements, was played at Bloemfontein at the end of June. Last year the 7th Hussars beat the 5th Dragoon Guards and won the Cup. This year the ties were as follows:

The 4th Dragoon Guards beat the 5th Fusiliers.

The 6th Mounted Infantry beat the Royal Field Artillery.

The 4th Dragoon Guards beat the 5th Dragoon Guards.

The 4th Hussars beat the 5th Dragoon Guards.

The Queen's Bays beat the Royal Horse Artillery.

The 4th Dragoon Guards beat the 4th Hussars.

The Queen's Bays beat the 6th Mounted Infantry.



This left the final between the 4th Dragoon Guards and the Queen's Bays. The teams were: 4th Dragoon Guards—Mr. R. I. B. Oldrey, Mr. A. Carton de Wiart, Captain G. B. Lamont, Mr. R. W. Oppenheim (back); Queen's Bays—Mr. C. F. Stuart, Captain G. H. A. Ing, Major W. Kirk, Mr. C. C. Pinching (back). A splendid tussle ensued, the 4th Dragoon Guards winning on the post by five goals and seven subs. to five goals and one sub. The Bays hit a sixth goal just after the trumpeter had sounded the 'time.'

---

The Beresford Tournament, one of the leading tournaments in Northern India, was played recently at Simla. It was won by the 12th Lancers, who in the final defeated the 17th Lancers by two goals and a sub. to one goal and a minor point. The teams were: 12th Lancers—Mr. C. E. Reynard, Major E. Crawley, Captain H. R. Melvain, Captain G. H. Hobson; 17th Lancers—Captain B. W. Fisher, Mr. H. S. Nutting, Captain R. W. I. Carden and Major N. T. Nickalls. Four other teams competed, and the Cup was presented to the winners by the Countess of Minto.

### ROWING

One of the features of Henley this year was the fine sculling of Captain W. H. Darell (1st Life Guards), Household Brigade Rowing Club. In the final for the Diamond Challenge Sculls he met H. T. Blackstaffe of the Vesta Rowing Club. At the start Darell went away at eighteen and thirty-six strokes to the first half and full minute to Blackstaffe's seventeen and thirty-one. A fine race ensued to the top of the Island, where Blackstaffe got a slight lead. Afterwards Darell made a capital spurt in order to get on terms, but it was all without avail, for Blackstaffe stalled him off, and going away won by six lengths. Both men sculled well to the end of the race. Time, 8 mins. 36 secs.

A private match between the Royal Engineers and Royal Artillery was won by the former by three lengths. This afforded

the greatest surprise of the whole regatta, for the Royal Artillery, who had been training together for some time, were considered certain to win.

### HUNTING

The Devon and Somerset staghounds as usual opened the season brilliantly at the beginning of August; many packs of foxhounds commenced their cubbing the same month. The prospects for the coming winter are good, and if it is a good scenting season sport will be of the best.

---

We have received the following from 'Reiver,' which deserves attention :

'A very large sum—£500, I was informed—was last season awarded as damages to an unfortunate man whose leg had been broken out hunting by a kicking horse. The owner of the horse, who had pleaded that he had a red ribbon in his horse's tail, was told by the Judge that the case was aggravated by the fact that the owner knew of the horse's vice, and therefore should not have brought him into proximity with the field.

'This occurrence may, we will hope, have a wholesome effect on the criminal carelessness of those who ride kicking horses in the hunting field, and who, worse still, take them into a crowd at a gate without the slightest compunction.

'We recommend our readers, in future, instead of tying a red ribbon, or, as we once saw, half a yard of official red tape, in their horse's tail, to adopt a more sportsmanlike procedure, and that is, to cure the animal of this vice.

'Cavalry officers should lead opinion and fashion in these matters.

'We will indicate the lines to be adopted.

'In the first place, every young horse, or old horse, which is ticklish and apt to kick if touched on the hind-quarters, should be what the American breakers call "gentled" with a pole. Hayes' book on horse-breaking thoroughly explains this method.

'It merely consists in tying the horse up to a ring in a wall and applying a pole, about the size of a lance shaft, to every portion of the horse's hind-quarters till he gets tired of kicking at it. The instant after the animal kicks at the pole it is applied again to the same place, till he is tired of kicking, and leaves off.

'This is good for all young horses, but some horses kick viciously at other horses whenever they get near them. For these another plan is recommended :

- '1. Remove both hind shoes.
- '2. Put hobbles on both hind feet.
- '3. Tie cords to both rings of the bit.
- '4. Pass these cords through the ring of hobble, and draw it fairly taut.
- '5. Bring a horse close up behind the patient, and as he kicks at it, quickly draw the cord on the leg he lashes out with tighter, so that the animal may connect his kicking at another horse with the pain of a "jab" in the mouth.

'If this is quickly and cleverly worked a few times, it will cure nearly any horse.

'An exception is necessarily made in the case of mares which kick on account of diseased ovaries ; such should be operated on if the rider wishes to take the animal out hunting.'

---

The annual Drag Hunt Race between the Household Brigade, Woolwich, and Staff College drags took place in Easthampstead Park by kind permission of the Marquis of Downshire. Each pack ran three couple of draghounds. The race resulted in a win for the Staff College, Woolwich being second.

---

May I remind foreign correspondents and readers that we shall at any time be grateful for accounts of sport for insertion in the CAVALRY JOURNAL ? ' {

J. W. YARDLEY, *Lieut.-Col.,*  
*Sporting Editor.*







TY OF CAL

**RETURN TO** **CIRCULATION DEPARTMENT**  
202 Main Library

9729

LOAN PERIOD 1	2	3
<b>HOME USE</b>		
4	5	6

ALL BOOKS MAY BE RECALLED AFTER 7 DAYS

RENEWALS AND RECHARGES MAY BE MADE 4 DAYS PRIOR TO DUE DATE.  
LOAN PERIODS ARE 1-MONTH, 3-MONTHS, AND 1-YEAR.  
RENEWALS: CALL (415) 642-3405

**DUE AS STAMPED BELOW**

AUTO DISC OCT 26 1989		
JAN 08 1990		
RECEIVED BY		
DEC 20 1989		
CIRCULATION DEPT.		

UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA, BERKELEY  
FORM NO. DD6, 60m, 1/83 BERKELEY, CA 94720

®s



YD 12992

RETURN CIRCULATION DE  
200 Main

M86368

UE1

C3

v. 1

THE UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA LIBRARY

GENERAL LIBRARY - U.C. BERKELEY



8000937496



